



2 Chronicles

translationNotes

v6

Copyrights & Licensing

License:

This work is made available under a [Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License](#), which means

You are free:

- Share — copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format
- Adapt — remix, transform, and build upon the material for any purpose, even commercially.

Under the following conditions:

- Attribution — You must attribute the work as follows: “Original work available at <http://unfoldingword.org>.” Attribution statements in derivative works should not in any way suggest that we endorse you or your use of this work.
- ShareAlike — If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you must distribute your contributions under the same license as the original.

Use of trademarks: **unfoldingWord** is a trademark of Distant Shores Media and may not be included on any derivative works created from this content. Unaltered content from <http://unfoldingword.org> must include the **unfoldingWord** logo when distributed to others. But if you alter the content in any way, you must remove the **unfoldingWord** logo before distributing your work.

This work is still being revised, if you have comments or questions please email them to help@door43.org

Version: 6

Published: 2017-02-22

Table of Contents

Copyrights & Licensing	1
translationNotes	24
Introduction to 2 Chronicles	24
2 Chronicles 1 General Notes	43
2 Chronicles 1:1	44
2 Chronicles 1:2-5	45
2 Chronicles 1:6-7	47
2 Chronicles 1:8-11	48
2 Chronicles 1:12-13	50
2 Chronicles 1:14-15	51
2 Chronicles 1:16-17	52
2 Chronicles 2 General Notes	53
2 Chronicles 2:1-3	54
2 Chronicles 2:4-5	55
2 Chronicles 2:6-7	56
2 Chronicles 2:8-10	58
2 Chronicles 2:11-12	59
2 Chronicles 2:13-14	60
2 Chronicles 2:15-16	61
2 Chronicles 2:17-18	62
2 Chronicles 3 General Notes	63
2 Chronicles 3:1-3	64
2 Chronicles 3:4-5	66
2 Chronicles 3:6-7	67
2 Chronicles 3:8-9	68
2 Chronicles 3:10-12	69
2 Chronicles 3:13-14	70
2 Chronicles 3:15-17	71
2 Chronicles 4 General Notes	72
2 Chronicles 4:1-3	73
2 Chronicles 4:4-6	74
2 Chronicles 4:7-8	75
2 Chronicles 4:9-10	76
2 Chronicles 4:11-13	77
2 Chronicles 4:14-16	79
2 Chronicles 4:17-18	80
2 Chronicles 4:19-21	81
2 Chronicles 4:22	82
2 Chronicles 5 General Notes	83
2 Chronicles 5:1	84
2 Chronicles 5:2-3	85

Table of Contents

2 Chronicles 5:4-6	87
2 Chronicles 5:7-8	88
2 Chronicles 5:9-10	89
2 Chronicles 5:11-12	90
2 Chronicles 5:13-14	91
2 Chronicles 6 General Notes	92
2 Chronicles 6:1-3	93
2 Chronicles 6:4-6	94
2 Chronicles 6:7-9	96
2 Chronicles 6:10-11	97
2 Chronicles 6:12-13	98
2 Chronicles 6:14-15	99
2 Chronicles 6:16-17	100
2 Chronicles 6:18-20	101
2 Chronicles 6:21	102
2 Chronicles 6:22-23	103
2 Chronicles 6:24-25	104
2 Chronicles 6:26-27	105
2 Chronicles 6:28-31	106
2 Chronicles 6:32-33	108
2 Chronicles 6:34-35	109
2 Chronicles 6:36-39	110
2 Chronicles 6:40-42	112
2 Chronicles 7 General Notes	114
2 Chronicles 7:1-3	115
2 Chronicles 7:4-6	117
2 Chronicles 7:7	119
2 Chronicles 7:8-10	120
2 Chronicles 7:11-12	122
2 Chronicles 7:13-15	123
2 Chronicles 7:16-18	125
2 Chronicles 7:19-20	127
2 Chronicles 7:21-22	128
2 Chronicles 8 General Notes	129
2 Chronicles 8:1-2	130
2 Chronicles 8:3-4	131
2 Chronicles 8:5-6	132
2 Chronicles 8:7-8	133
2 Chronicles 8:9-10	134
2 Chronicles 8:11	135
2 Chronicles 8:12-13	136
2 Chronicles 8:14-15	137
2 Chronicles 8:16	138

2 Chronicles 8:17-18	139
2 Chronicles 9 General Notes	140
2 Chronicles 9:1-2	141
2 Chronicles 9:3-4	142
2 Chronicles 9:5-6	143
2 Chronicles 9:7-8	144
2 Chronicles 9:9	146
2 Chronicles 9:10-12	147
2 Chronicles 9:13-14	148
2 Chronicles 9:15-16	149
2 Chronicles 9:17-18	150
2 Chronicles 9:19-21	151
2 Chronicles 9:22-24	152
2 Chronicles 9:25-26	153
2 Chronicles 9:27-28	154
2 Chronicles 9:29-31	155
2 Chronicles 10 General Notes	157
2 Chronicles 10:1-2	158
2 Chronicles 10:3-5	159
2 Chronicles 10:6-7	160
2 Chronicles 10:8-9	161
2 Chronicles 10:10-11	162
2 Chronicles 10:12-14	163
2 Chronicles 10:15	164
2 Chronicles 10:16	165
2 Chronicles 10:17-19	166
2 Chronicles 11 General Notes	168
2 Chronicles 11:1	169
2 Chronicles 11:2-4	170
2 Chronicles 11:5-10	171
2 Chronicles 11:11-12	172
2 Chronicles 11:13-15	173
2 Chronicles 11:16-17	174
2 Chronicles 11:18-19	175
2 Chronicles 11:20-21	176
2 Chronicles 11:22-23	177
2 Chronicles 12 General Notes	178
2 Chronicles 12:1	179
2 Chronicles 12:2-4	180
2 Chronicles 12:5-6	181
2 Chronicles 12:7-8	182
2 Chronicles 12:9-10	184
2 Chronicles 12:11-12	185

Table of Contents

2 Chronicles 12:13-14	186
2 Chronicles 12:15-16	187
2 Chronicles 13 General Notes	188
2 Chronicles 13:1-3	189
2 Chronicles 13:4-5	190
2 Chronicles 13:6-7	191
2 Chronicles 13:8-9	192
2 Chronicles 13:10-11	194
2 Chronicles 13:12	195
2 Chronicles 13:13-15	196
2 Chronicles 13:16-18	197
2 Chronicles 13:19-22	198
2 Chronicles 14 General Notes	199
2 Chronicles 14:1-4	200
2 Chronicles 14:5-6	202
2 Chronicles 14:7-8	203
2 Chronicles 14:9-11	204
2 Chronicles 14:12-13	205
2 Chronicles 14:14-15	206
2 Chronicles 15 General Notes	207
2 Chronicles 15:1-2	208
2 Chronicles 15:3-5	209
2 Chronicles 15:6-7	210
2 Chronicles 15:8-9	211
2 Chronicles 15:10-11	213
2 Chronicles 15:12-13	214
2 Chronicles 15:14-15	215
2 Chronicles 15:16-17	216
2 Chronicles 15:18-19	217
2 Chronicles 16 General Notes	218
2 Chronicles 16:1	219
2 Chronicles 16:2-3	220
2 Chronicles 16:4-6	221
2 Chronicles 16:7-8	223
2 Chronicles 16:9-10	224
2 Chronicles 16:11-12	226
2 Chronicles 16:13-14	227
2 Chronicles 17 General Notes	228
2 Chronicles 17:1-2	229
2 Chronicles 17:3-4	230
2 Chronicles 17:5-6	231
2 Chronicles 17:7-9	232
2 Chronicles 17:10-11	233

2 Chronicles 17:12-13	234
2 Chronicles 17:14-16	235
2 Chronicles 17:17-19	236
2 Chronicles 18 General Notes	237
2 Chronicles 18:1-3	238
2 Chronicles 18:4-5	240
2 Chronicles 18:6-8	241
2 Chronicles 18:9-11	242
2 Chronicles 18:12-14	244
2 Chronicles 18:15-16	245
2 Chronicles 18:17-18	246
2 Chronicles 18:19	247
2 Chronicles 18:20-21	248
2 Chronicles 18:22	249
2 Chronicles 18:23-24	250
2 Chronicles 18:25-27	251
2 Chronicles 18:28-30	252
2 Chronicles 18:31-32	253
2 Chronicles 18:33-34	254
2 Chronicles 19 General Notes	255
2 Chronicles 19:1-3	256
2 Chronicles 19:4-5	258
2 Chronicles 19:6-7	259
2 Chronicles 19:8-9	260
2 Chronicles 19:10	261
2 Chronicles 19:11	262
2 Chronicles 20 General Notes	263
2 Chronicles 20:1-2	264
2 Chronicles 20:3-4	265
2 Chronicles 20:5-7	266
2 Chronicles 20:8-9	268
2 Chronicles 20:10-11	269
2 Chronicles 20:12-13	270
2 Chronicles 20:14-15	271
2 Chronicles 20:16-17	272
2 Chronicles 20:18-19	273
2 Chronicles 20:20-21	274
2 Chronicles 20:22-23	276
2 Chronicles 20:24	277
2 Chronicles 20:25-26	278
2 Chronicles 20:27-28	279
2 Chronicles 20:29-30	280
2 Chronicles 20:31-33	281

Table of Contents

2 Chronicles 20:34	282
2 Chronicles 20:35-37	283
2 Chronicles 21 General Notes	284
2 Chronicles 21:1-3	285
2 Chronicles 21:4-5	287
2 Chronicles 21:6-7	288
2 Chronicles 21:8-10	289
2 Chronicles 21:11	290
2 Chronicles 21:12-15	291
2 Chronicles 21:16-17	293
2 Chronicles 21:18-20	294
2 Chronicles 22 General Notes	296
2 Chronicles 22:1-3	297
2 Chronicles 22:4-5	299
2 Chronicles 22:6	300
2 Chronicles 22:7-8	301
2 Chronicles 22:9	302
2 Chronicles 22:10-12	303
2 Chronicles 23 General Notes	304
2 Chronicles 23:1-3	305
2 Chronicles 23:4-5	307
2 Chronicles 23:6-7	308
2 Chronicles 23:8-9	309
2 Chronicles 23:10-11	310
2 Chronicles 23:12-13	311
2 Chronicles 23:14-15	312
2 Chronicles 23:16-17	313
2 Chronicles 23:18-19	314
2 Chronicles 23:20-21	315
2 Chronicles 24 General Notes	316
2 Chronicles 24:1-3	317
2 Chronicles 24:4-5	318
2 Chronicles 24:6-7	319
2 Chronicles 24:8-10	321
2 Chronicles 24:11-12	322
2 Chronicles 24:13-14	323
2 Chronicles 24:15-16	324
2 Chronicles 24:17-19	325
2 Chronicles 24:20-22	327
2 Chronicles 24:23-24	329
2 Chronicles 24:25-26	330
2 Chronicles 24:27	331
2 Chronicles 25 General Notes	332

2 Chronicles 25:1-2	333
2 Chronicles 25:3-4	334
2 Chronicles 25:5-6	335
2 Chronicles 25:7-8	336
2 Chronicles 25:9-10	337
2 Chronicles 25:11-12	338
2 Chronicles 25:13	339
2 Chronicles 25:14-15	340
2 Chronicles 25:16	341
2 Chronicles 25:17	342
2 Chronicles 25:18-19	343
2 Chronicles 25:20-22	344
2 Chronicles 25:23-24	345
2 Chronicles 25:25-26	347
2 Chronicles 25:27-28	348
2 Chronicles 26 General Notes	349
2 Chronicles 26:1-3	350
2 Chronicles 26:4-5	351
2 Chronicles 26:6-8	352
2 Chronicles 26:9-10	353
2 Chronicles 26:11-13	354
2 Chronicles 26:14-15	355
2 Chronicles 26:16-18	356
2 Chronicles 26:19-20	358
2 Chronicles 26:21	359
2 Chronicles 26:22-23	360
2 Chronicles 27 General Notes	361
2 Chronicles 27:1-2	362
2 Chronicles 27:3-4	363
2 Chronicles 27:5	364
2 Chronicles 27:6-7	365
2 Chronicles 27:8-9	366
2 Chronicles 28 General Notes	367
2 Chronicles 28:1-2	368
2 Chronicles 28:3-4	369
2 Chronicles 28:5-6	370
2 Chronicles 28:7-8	371
2 Chronicles 28:9-11	372
2 Chronicles 28:12-13	374
2 Chronicles 28:14-15	375
2 Chronicles 28:16-18	376
2 Chronicles 28:19-21	377
2 Chronicles 28:22-23	378

Table of Contents

2 Chronicles 28:24-25	379
2 Chronicles 28:26-27	380
2 Chronicles 29 General Notes	381
2 Chronicles 29:1-2	382
2 Chronicles 29:3-5	383
2 Chronicles 29:6-7	384
2 Chronicles 29:8-9	385
2 Chronicles 29:10-11	386
2 Chronicles 29:12-14	387
2 Chronicles 29:15-17	388
2 Chronicles 29:18-19	390
2 Chronicles 29:20-21	391
2 Chronicles 29:22-24	392
2 Chronicles 29:25-26	393
2 Chronicles 29:27-28	394
2 Chronicles 29:29-30	395
2 Chronicles 29:31	396
2 Chronicles 29:32-33	397
2 Chronicles 29:34	398
2 Chronicles 29:35-36	399
2 Chronicles 30 General Notes	400
2 Chronicles 30:1-3	401
2 Chronicles 30:4-5	403
2 Chronicles 30:6	404
2 Chronicles 30:7-9	405
2 Chronicles 30:10-12	407
2 Chronicles 30:13-15	408
2 Chronicles 30:16-17	410
2 Chronicles 30:18-20	411
2 Chronicles 30:21-22	412
2 Chronicles 30:23-24	413
2 Chronicles 30:25-27	414
2 Chronicles 31 General Notes	415
2 Chronicles 31:1	416
2 Chronicles 31:2-3	417
2 Chronicles 31:4-5	419
2 Chronicles 31:6-8	420
2 Chronicles 31:9-10	422
2 Chronicles 31:11-13	423
2 Chronicles 31:14-15	425
2 Chronicles 31:16	426
2 Chronicles 31:17-19	427
2 Chronicles 31:20-21	428

2 Chronicles 32 General Notes	429
2 Chronicles 32:1	430
2 Chronicles 32:2-4	431
2 Chronicles 32:5	432
2 Chronicles 32:6-8	433
2 Chronicles 32:9-10	434
2 Chronicles 32:11-12	435
2 Chronicles 32:13-15	436
2 Chronicles 32:16-17	438
2 Chronicles 32:18-19	439
2 Chronicles 32:20-21	440
2 Chronicles 32:22-23	441
2 Chronicles 32:24-26	442
2 Chronicles 32:27-29	443
2 Chronicles 32:30-31	445
2 Chronicles 32:32-33	446
2 Chronicles 33 General Notes	447
2 Chronicles 33:1-3	448
2 Chronicles 33:4-6	450
2 Chronicles 33:7-9	452
2 Chronicles 33:10-11	454
2 Chronicles 33:12-13	455
2 Chronicles 33:14-15	456
2 Chronicles 33:16-17	457
2 Chronicles 33:18-20	458
2 Chronicles 33:21-23	460
2 Chronicles 33:24-25	461
2 Chronicles 34 General Notes	462
2 Chronicles 34:1-3	463
2 Chronicles 34:4-5	465
2 Chronicles 34:6-7	466
2 Chronicles 34:8-9	467
2 Chronicles 34:10-11	469
2 Chronicles 34:12-13	470
2 Chronicles 34:14-16	471
2 Chronicles 34:17-19	472
2 Chronicles 34:20-21	473
2 Chronicles 34:22	474
2 Chronicles 34:23-25	475
2 Chronicles 34:26-28	477
2 Chronicles 34:29-30	479
2 Chronicles 34:31-32	480
2 Chronicles 34:33	482

Table of Contents

2 Chronicles 35 General Notes	483
2 Chronicles 35:1-2	484
2 Chronicles 35:3-4	485
2 Chronicles 35:5-6	487
2 Chronicles 35:7-9	488
2 Chronicles 35:10-12	490
2 Chronicles 35:13-14	492
2 Chronicles 35:15	493
2 Chronicles 35:16-17	494
2 Chronicles 35:18-19	495
2 Chronicles 35:20-21	496
2 Chronicles 35:22	498
2 Chronicles 35:23-24	499
2 Chronicles 35:25	500
2 Chronicles 35:26-27	501
2 Chronicles 36 General Notes	502
2 Chronicles 36:1-2	503
2 Chronicles 36:3-4	504
2 Chronicles 36:5-7	505
2 Chronicles 36:8	506
2 Chronicles 36:9-10	507
2 Chronicles 36:11-12	508
2 Chronicles 36:13-14	509
2 Chronicles 36:15-16	511
2 Chronicles 36:17	512
2 Chronicles 36:18-19	513
2 Chronicles 36:20-21	514
2 Chronicles 36:22-23	515
translationQuestions	517
2 Chronicles 1	517
2 Chronicles 2	519
2 Chronicles 3	520
2 Chronicles 4	521
2 Chronicles 5	522
2 Chronicles 6	524
2 Chronicles 7	527
2 Chronicles 8	529
2 Chronicles 9	531
2 Chronicles 10	533
2 Chronicles 11	535
2 Chronicles 12	537
2 Chronicles 13	539
2 Chronicles 14	541

2 Chronicles 15	542
2 Chronicles 16	544
2 Chronicles 17	546
2 Chronicles 18	548
2 Chronicles 19	550
2 Chronicles 20	551
2 Chronicles 21	554
2 Chronicles 22	555
2 Chronicles 23	556
2 Chronicles 24	558
2 Chronicles 25	560
2 Chronicles 26	564
2 Chronicles 27	567
2 Chronicles 28	569
2 Chronicles 29	572
2 Chronicles 30	575
2 Chronicles 31	579
2 Chronicles 32	582
2 Chronicles 33	585
2 Chronicles 34	587
2 Chronicles 35	589
2 Chronicles 36	591
translationWords	594
Aaron	594
Abijah	595
Abraham, Abram	596
Absalom	597
adversary, enemy	598
afflict, affliction	599
Ahab	600
Ahaz	601
Ahaziah	602
Ahijah	603
altar	604
marvel, wonder, amazed, astonished	605
Amaziah	606
ambassador, representative	607
Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonitess	608
Amorite	609
Amoz	610
angel, archangel	611
angry, anger	613
anoint, anointed	614

Table of Contents

appoint, appointed	615
Arabia, Arabian	616
Aram, Aramean, Aramaic	617
archer	618
ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of Yahweh	619
armor	620
Asa	621
Asaph	622
Ashdod, Azotus	623
Asher	624
Asherah, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth	625
assembly, assemble	626
Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire	627
Athaliah	628
atonement, atone	629
authority	630
Azariah	631
Baal	632
Baasha	633
Babylon, Babylonian	634
barley	635
beast	636
Beersheba	637
beg, beggar	638
believe, believe in, belief	639
Benjamin	640
Bethel	641
Bethlehem, Ephrathah	642
Beth Shemesh	643
biblical time: day	644
biblical time: year	645
bles, blessed, blessing	646
blood	648
bloodshed	649
Boaz	650
bow, bow down	651
bow and arrow	652
bread	653
bribe	654
bronze	655
brother	656
burnt offering, offering by fire	657
bury, buried, burial	658

call, calling, called, call out	659
camel	661
captive, captivity	662
Translation Suggestions	663
cedar	664
Chaldea, Chaldean	665
chariot	666
cherubim, cherub	667
chief	668
chief priests	669
chronicles	670
city of David	671
clean, cleanse	672
clothe, clothed	673
command, to command, commandment	674
commander, command	675
compassion, compassionate	676
concubine	677
confess, confession	678
consecrate	679
consume	680
courtyard, court	681
covenant	682
covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, un failing love	684
cow, calf, bull, cattle	685
crown, to crown	686
curse, cursed	687
cut off	688
Cyrus	689
Damascus	690
Dan	691
darkness	692
David	693
death, die, dead	694
deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive	696
declare, declaration	697
decree	698
dedicate, dedication	699
descendant, descended from	700
desert, wilderness	701
devour	702
donkey, mule	703
drink offering	704

Table of Contents

earth, earthly	705
Edom, Edomite, Idumea	706
Egypt, Egyptian	707
elder	708
chosen one, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, the elect	709
Elijah	710
En Gedi	711
Ephraim	712
Ethiopia, Ethiopian	713
Euphrates River	714
evil, wicked, wickedness	715
exile, the Exile	717
face	718
faithful, faithfulness	720
false god, foreign god, god, goddess	721
family	722
famine	723
fast	724
ancestor, father, forefather	725
favor, favorable, favoritism	726
fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh	727
feast	728
fellowship offering	729
festival	730
fire	731
firstfruits	732
flesh	733
flock, herd	734
fool, foolish, folly	735
foreigner, foreign, alien	736
forever	737
forgive, forgiveness	738
forsake, forsaken, forsook	739
foundation, founded	740
freewill offering	741
fruit, fruitful	742
fulfill	744
Gad	745
gate, gate bar	746
Gath	747
Gerar	748
Gibeon, Gibeonite	749
gift	750

Gilead	751
glory, glorious	752
goat, kid	753
God	754
gold	756
good, goodness	757
governor, govern, proconsul, government	759
grace, gracious	760
grain	761
grain offering	762
guilt, guilty	763
hand, right hand, to hand over	764
harp	766
harvest	767
head	768
heal, cure	770
heart	771
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly	772
Hebron	773
Hezekiah	774
high places	775
high priest	776
Hittite	778
Hivite	779
holy, holiness	780
holy place, most holy place	781
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord	782
honey, honeycomb	784
honor, to honor	785
Horeb	786
horse	787
horsemen	788
house	789
house of David	790
house of God, Yahweh's house	791
humble, humility	792
idol, idolatrous	793
image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure	794
incense	795
inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir	796
iniquity	798
innocent	799
Isaac	801

Table of Contents

Isaiah	802
Ishmael	803
Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel	804
Issachar	805
Jacob, Israel	806
Jebusites, Jebus	807
Jehoiachin	808
Jehoiakim	809
Jehoram, Joram	810
Jehoshaphat	811
Jehu	812
Jeremiah	813
Jericho	814
Jeroboam	815
Jerusalem	816
Jesse	818
Jew, Jewish, Jews	819
Jezreel	820
Joash	821
Joppa	822
Joram	823
Jordan River	824
Josiah	825
Jotham	826
joy, joyful	827
Judah	828
judge, judgment	829
judge	831
just, justice, justly	832
kind, kinds	833
kingdom	834
kingdom of Israel	836
Judah, kingdom of Judah	837
king	839
know, knowledge, make known	840
labor, laborer	841
lamb, Lamb of God	842
lament, lamentation	844
lamp	845
lampstand	846
law, principle	847
law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh	848
Lebanon	850

leprosy, leper, leprous	851
letter, epistle	852
Levite, Levi	853
life, live, living, alive	854
lion	856
locust	857
loins	858
lord, master, sir	859
love	860
lute, lyre	862
Manasseh	863
mercy, merciful	864
messenger	866
mighty, might	867
mind	868
miracle, wonder, sign	869
Mizpah	871
Moab, Moabite, Moabites	872
mock, ridicule, scoff at	873
Moses	874
mourn, mourning	875
name	876
Naphtali	877
Nathan	878
nation	879
Nebuchadnezzar	880
Negev	881
neighbor	882
new moon	883
noble, nobleman	884
oath, swear, swear by	885
obey, obedient, obedience	886
oil	887
Omri	888
oppress, oppression, oppressor	889
ox, oxen	890
pagan	891
palace	892
palm	893
pardon	894
Passover	895
peace, peaceful	896
Pentecost, Festival of Weeks	897

Table of Contents

people group, peoples, the people, a people	898
people of God, my people	900
perfect	901
Perizzite	902
Persia, Persians	903
perverse, perversely, pervert	904
Pharaoh, king of Egypt	905
Philistines	906
pillar, column	907
plague	908
pomegranate	909
possess, possession	910
power, powers	911
praise	912
pray, prayer	913
priest, priesthood	914
prince, princess	916
prison, prisoner, imprison	917
proclaim, proclamation	918
promise	919
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess	920
prosper, prosperity, prosperous	922
prostitute, harlot, whore	923
proud, pride, prideful	924
proverb	925
punish, punishment	926
pure, purify, purification	928
purple	929
queen	930
raise, rise, risen, arise, arose	931
Ramah	933
Ramoth	934
rebel, rebellious, rebellion	935
receive	936
Rehoboam	937
reign	938
rejoice	939
remnant	940
repent, repentance	941
report	942
rest	943
restore, restoration	944
reward	945

righteous, righteousness	946
right hand	947
royal	948
ruin, ruins	949
ruler, rulers, rule	950
Sabbath	951
sacred	952
sacrifice, offering	953
saints	955
Salt Sea, Dead Sea	956
salvation	957
Samaria, Samaritan	958
Samuel	959
sanctuary	960
sandal	961
save, safe	962
scribe, expert in the Jewish law	964
seek, sought	965
send, send out, sent	966
Sennacherib	967
servant, slave, slavery	968
serve, service	970
set apart	971
shame, shameful, ashamed	972
Sheba	973
Shechem	974
sheep, ram, ewe	975
shepherd, to shepherd	976
shield	978
Shiloh	979
siege, besiege	980
sign, proof, reminder	981
silver	983
Simeon	984
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning	985
sin offering	987
slaughter	988
Solomon	989
son, son of	990
sorcery, sorcerer, witchcraft	992
soul	993
spear	994
spirit, spiritual	995

Table of Contents

statute, statutes	997
stone, stoning	998
storehouse	999
stronghold, fortress, fortified	1000
Succoth	1001
suffer, suffering	1002
sword	1003
Syria	1004
tabernacle	1005
tax, taxes	1006
temple	1007
tent	1009
tenth, tithe	1010
tent of meeting	1011
terror, terrify	1012
test	1013
testimony, testify	1014
thresh, threshing	1015
threshold	1016
throne	1017
tomb, grave, burial place	1018
transgress, transgression	1019
trespass	1020
tribe	1021
tribute	1022
trouble, troubles, troubled	1023
true, truth, come true	1024
trumpet	1026
trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness	1027
turn, turn away, turn back	1028
Tyre, Tyrians	1029
unclean	1030
unfaithful, unfaithfulness	1031
unleavened bread, Festival of Unleavened Bread	1032
Uzziah, Azariah	1033
vine	1034
virgin	1035
vision	1036
walk	1037
watchtower, tower	1038
water, waters	1039
wheat	1040
will of God	1041

wine, wineskin, new wine	1042
wise, wisdom	1043
word	1044
word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture	1045
works, deeds, work, acts	1047
worship	1048
worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless	1049
wrath, fury	1050
written	1051
Yahweh	1052
yoke	1054
Zadok	1055
Zebulun	1056
Zechariah (OT)	1057
Zedekiah	1058
Zion, Mount Zion	1059
translationAcademy	1060
Active or Passive	1060
Double Negatives	1063
Doublet	1066
Ellipsis	1068
Euphemism	1070
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information	1072
Hyperbole	1074
Hypothetical Situations	1077
Idiom	1080
Irony	1082
Litotes	1085
Merism	1087
Metaphor	1089
Metonymy	1094
Parables	1096
Parallelism	1099
Personification	1101
Reflexive Pronouns	1103
Rhetorical Question	1106
Simile	1109
Synecdoche	1112
Biblical Distance	1114
Biblical Money	1117
Biblical Volume	1119
Biblical Weight	1123
Hebrew Months	1125

Table of Contents

How to Translate Names	1128
Numbers	1132
Ordinal Numbers	1135
Translate Unknowns	1138

translationNotes

Introduction to 2 Chronicles

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of 2 Chronicles

1. The kingdom ruled by Solomon (Chapters 1–9)
 - a) Solomon put on the throne of David, his father (Chapter 1)
 - b) The building of the temple of Yahweh (2:1–5:1)
 - c) Dedication of the temple for the worship of Yahweh (5:2–7:22)
 - d) The life of Solomon (8:1–9:28)
2. The decline of Judah, to the fall and exile (Chapters 10–36)
 - a) From Rehoboam to Zedekiah (10:1–36:21)
 - b) The edict of Cyrus, permitting Israel to return to Canaan (36:22–23)

What are 1 and 2 Chronicles about?

The purpose of 1 and 2 Chronicles was to retell the genealogy of Adam to Jacob, and the history of Israel leading up to the death of David. These books were probably written for the Jews who returned from exile in Babylon. The purpose was to give the people instructions on how to avoid repeating the sins of their ancestors who were unfaithful to the covenant with Yahweh.

How should the title of this book be translated?

The traditional titles of these cases may not be meaningful to project language readers. Translators might consider as an alternative title “The events of the kings of Judah and Israel.”

Who wrote 1 and 2 Chronicles?

These books seem to contain many different historical accounts that were put together. The writers of Chronicles mention other books that they took information from in their own writing. The non-biblical sources included “The Chronicles of Samuel the Seer,” “The Chronicles of Nathan the Seer,” “The Chronicles of Gad the Seer,” “The History of Nathan the Prophet,” “The Chronicles of Shemaiah the Prophet and Iddo,” “The Story of the Prophet Iddo” and “The books of the kings of Judah and Israel.”

Why are there multiple books which give the history of the kings of Israel?

Though the Book of 1 and 2 Chronicles cover much of the same history as the Books of 1 and 2 Kings, they do not repeat everything. The purpose of 1 and 2 Chronicles was not simply to retell

the history of Israel and Judah by repeating the books of 1 and 2 Kings. Instead, the writers of these books want to reassure the people that Yahweh would still be faithful to his covenant with them.

The Books of 1 and 2 Chronicles focus on David and Solomon and the reformation that Jehoshaphat, Hezekiah, and Josiah accomplished. Those reformations were to encourage all the people of Yahweh and their leaders to obey the Law and to honor his covenant with them. (See: [covenant](#))

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

What is the role of divine retribution in 1 and 2 Chronicles?

Retribution is righteous punishment of those who deserve it. This is an important theme in 1 and 2 Chronicles. There is a record of the fulfillment of the promise to bless those who bless Israel and to curse those who curse Israel. The author attempts to show the reader God's blessing or judgment being given to each generation in accordance with their obedience or disobedience of Yahweh's commands. (See: [righteous](#), [righteousness](#))

Why are alliances with foreign countries seen as evil in these books?

Yahweh was the true leader of Israel and the protector of the nation. He was the one who should have been trusted, instead of the neighboring nations.

Part 3: Important Translation Issues

What is the meaning of the term "Israel"?

The name "Israel" is used in many different ways in the Bible. The descendants of Jacob, who was also named Israel, were a people group who became known as Israel. This people group developed into the unified nation of Israel. After the civil war in the nation of Israel, the tribes in the north took the name Israel, while the southern kingdom became known as the kingdom of Judah.

What does it mean to "seek God?"

The concept of seeking God is very common in 1 and 2 Chronicles. It does not imply that God is hidden; instead, it is a command to seek to please and honor God. (See: [Metaphor](#))

What does the phrase "to this day" mean?

This phrase was used by the narrator to refer to the time when he was writing. The translator should be aware that "to this day" refers to a time which has already passed. The translator might decide to say, "to this day, at the time when this is being written," or, "to this day, at the time of writing." This Hebrew phrase occurs in 2 Chronicles 5:9; 8:8; 10:19; 20:26; 21:10; 35:25.

List of translationAcademy Topics in 2 Chronicles

- * **Active or Passive** is found in: 34:31
- * **Double Negatives** is found in: 06:16
- * **Doublet** is found in: 06:18, 06:26, 07:08, 20:05, 20:22, 32:18, 33:12, 34:31, 36:13
- * **Ellipsis** is found in: 12:01, 14:05, 16:01, 16:04, 18:12, 29:34, 33:01, 33:10, 34:22
- * **Euphemism** is found in: 09:29, 12:15, 14:01, 14:12, 15:12, 16:02, 16:13, 18:19, 21:01, 25:13, 26:01, 26:19, 26:22, 27:08, 28:26, 29:08, 32:06, 33:18, 34:26
- * **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information** is found in: 17:03
- * **Hyperbole** is found in: 04:17, 05:04, 06:01, 06:40, 07:08, 09:05, 09:19, 09:27, 10:10, 12:02, 19:08, 23:04, 23:08, 23:12, 23:16, 24:13, 26:04, 27:01, 28:03, 32:22
- * **Hypothetical Situations]]** is found in: 06:36
- * **Idiom** is found in: 01:01, 05:09, 06:22, 06:24, 06:26, 09:07, 09:22, 09:29, 10:10, 11:02, 12:07, 12:13, 12:15, 13:13, 14:01, 15:12, 16:11, 18:01, 18:12, 19:01, 20:24, 20:31, 21:01, 21:06, 21:18, 22:04, 23:06, 24:01, 25:25, 26:06, 26:22, 28:01, 28:19, 30:04, 30:07, 32:24, 33:04, 34:01, 34:31, 34:33, 35:01, 36:08
- * **Irony]]** is found in: 20:10
- * **Litotes** is found in: 08:14
- * **Merism** is found in: 18:28, 31:14, 34:29, 35:26
- * **Metaphor** is found in: 02:11, 05:13, 06:01, 06:07, 06:18, 07:13, 07:19, 07:21, 09:22, 13:12, 15:08, 17:03, 18:09, 20:03, 21:01, 21:12, 25:09, 26:04, 26:16, 26:19, 27:06, 32:22, 34:20, 34:23, 34:26
- * **Metonymy** is found in: 06:07, 06:14, 06:32, 07:13, 07:16, 12:05, 12:07, 12:13, 14:09, 16:09, 17:01, 20:18, 29:08, 32:06, 32:18, 33:04, 33:10, 34:06, 34:26, 35:20, 35:22, 36:05, 36:11, 36:17, 36:18, 36:20, 36:22
- * **Parallelism** is found in: 09:03, 29:08
- * **Personification** is found in: 06:04, 12:11, 29:10
- * **Reflexive Pronouns** is found in: 35:13
- * **Rhetorical Question** is found in: 01:08, 02:06, 06:18, 09:29, 10:16, 12:15, 13:04, 13:08, 16:07, 18:06, 18:15, 18:17, 18:23, 19:01, 20:05, 20:12, 24:06, 25:16, 25:18, 25:25, 28:09, 32:02, 32:09, 32:11, 35:20
- * **Simile** is found in: 01:08, 01:14, 04:04, 04:11, 06:16, 07:16, 09:27, 18:15
- * **Synecdoche** is found in: 06:04, 06:34, 07:13, 08:03, 09:05, 10:01, 10:12, 12:09, 14:07, 15:14, 16:04, 18:12, 20:08, 20:12, 31:14, 32:05, 33:07, 33:16, 35:03
- * **Synecdoche]]** is found in: 20:27
- * **Biblical Distance** is found in: 03:01, 03:04, 03:08, 04:01, 04:04, 06:12, 25:23
- * **Biblical Money** is found in: 01:16, 03:08, 08:17, 09:09, 25:05, 27:05, 36:03
- * **Biblical Volume** is found in: 02:08, 04:04, 27:05

- * **Biblical Weight** is found in: 09:15
- * **Hebrew Months** is found in: 03:01, 05:02, 07:08, 15:10, 29:03, 29:15, 30:01, 30:13, 31:06, 35:01
- * **How to Translate Names** is found in: 01:02, 01:16, 02:01, 02:13, 03:01, 03:06, 03:15, 04:11, 04:17, 05:11, 07:08, 08:01, 09:10, 10:01, 10:15, 10:17, 11:02, 13:01, 13:04, 13:06, 13:19, 14:09, 15:01, 16:02, 16:07, 17:07, 17:14, 18:06, 18:09, 18:23, 18:25, 19:01, 19:11, 20:01, 20:14, 20:16, 20:18, 20:20, 20:31, 20:34, 20:35, 21:01, 21:08, 22:01, 22:04, 22:07, 22:10, 23:01, 23:14, 23:16, 24:01, 24:25, 25:01, 25:13, 25:17, 25:23, 25:27, 26:01, 26:06, 26:11, 26:22, 27:01, 28:03, 28:05, 28:07, 28:09, 28:12, 28:16, 28:19, 29:01, 29:15, 30:13, 31:11, 31:14, 32:09, 32:30, 33:18, 36:01
- * **How to Translate Names]]** is found in: 08:05, 08:17, 09:29, 11:05, 11:18, 11:20, 11:22, 12:02, 12:05, 12:15, 15:16, 16:04, 29:12, 33:14, 34:08, 34:12, 34:14, 34:20, 34:22, 35:15, 35:20, 36:03
- * **Numbers** is found in: 03:01, 15:10, 17:14, 26:01, 26:11, 35:07, 36:22
- * **Numbers]]** is found in: 08:09, 09:13, 09:25, 13:16, 14:07, 25:05, 29:32
- * **Ordinal Numbers** is found in: 03:01, 10:12, 17:07
- * **Ordinal Numbers]]** is found in: 15:10
- * **Translate Unknowns** is found in: 05:11

List of translationWords in 2 Chronicles

- * **Aaron** is found in: 13:08, 26:16, 29:20, 31:17, 35:13
- * **Abijah** is found in: 13:01, 13:13, 14:01
- * **Abraham, Abram** is found in: 20:05, 30:06
- * **Absalom** is found in: 11:20
- * **adversary, enemy** is found in: 06:24, 25:20, 26:11
- * **afflict, affliction** is found in: 06:26, 20:08
- * **Ahab** is found in: 18:01, 18:09, 18:19, 21:06, 21:12, 22:01
- * **Ahaz** is found in: 27:08, 28:01, 28:05, 28:16, 28:19
- * **Ahaziah** is found in: 20:35, 22:01, 25:23
- * **Ahijah** is found in: 09:29, 10:15
- * **altar** is found in: 01:02, 04:01, 04:19, 05:11, 06:12, 06:22, 07:08, 08:12, 14:01, 14:05, 15:08, 23:10, 23:16, 26:19, 28:24, 29:18, 29:20, 31:01, 32:11, 33:01, 33:04, 33:14, 33:16, 34:04, 35:16
- * **marvel, wonder, amazed, astonished** is found in: 02:08
- * **Amaziah** is found in: 24:27, 25:01, 25:09, 25:23, 25:27, 26:01
- * **ambassador, representative** is found in: 32:30, 35:20
- * **Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonitess** is found in: 12:13, 20:01, 20:22, 24:25, 26:06, 27:05

- * Amorite is found in: 08:07
- * Amoz is found in: 32:20
- * angel, archangel is found in: 32:20
- * angry, anger is found in: 06:36, 12:07, 16:09, 24:17, 25:09, 26:19, 28:09, 33:04, 34:20
- * anoint, anointed is found in: 06:40, 23:10
- * Arabia, Arabian is found in: 09:13, 17:10, 21:16, 22:01, 26:06
- * Aram, Aramean, Aramaic is found in: 01:16, 16:02, 18:09, 18:28, 18:33, 22:04, 24:23, 28:05
- * archer is found in: 35:23
- * ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of Yahweh is found in: 01:02, 05:02, 06:10, 06:40, 08:11, 35:03
- * armor is found in: 18:33
- * Asa is found in: 14:01, 14:07, 15:01, 15:18, 16:01, 17:01, 20:31, 21:12
- * Asaph is found in: 35:15
- * Ashdod, Azotus is found in: 26:06
- * Asher is found in: 30:10
- * Asherah, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth is found in: 14:01, 15:16, 17:05, 24:17, 31:01, 33:01, 34:01
- * assembly, assemble is found in: 01:02, 06:01, 06:12, 07:08, 20:05, 20:14, 23:01, 24:06, 28:14, 29:22, 30:13
- * Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire is found in: 28:16, 30:06, 32:01, 32:22, 33:10
- * Athaliah is found in: 22:01, 22:10, 23:12, 23:20, 24:06
- * atonement, atone is found in: 29:22
- * authority is found in: 26:11
- * Azariah is found in: 15:01, 21:01, 23:01, 26:16, 29:12, 31:09
- * Baal is found in: 17:03, 23:16, 24:06, 28:01, 33:01, 34:04
- * Baasha is found in: 16:01
- * Babylon, Babylonian is found in: 32:30, 33:10, 36:05, 36:18
- * barley is found in: 02:08, 27:05
- * beast is found in: 25:18
- * Beersheba is found in: 19:04, 24:01, 30:04
- * beg, beggar is found in: 33:12
- * believe, believe in, belief is found in: 09:05, 32:13
- * Benjamin is found in: 11:01, 14:07, 15:01, 17:17, 25:05, 31:01, 34:08, 34:31

- * Bethel is found in: 13:19
- * Bethlehem, Ephrathah is found in: 11:05
- * Beth Shemesh is found in: 25:20, 25:23, 28:16
- * biblical time: day is found in: 03:01, 10:12, 29:15, 30:13, 35:01
- * biblical time: year is found in: 03:01, 15:10, 17:07, 29:03
- * bless, blessed, blessing is found in: 02:11, 06:01, 09:07, 30:25, 31:06
- * blood is found in: 29:22, 30:16, 35:10
- * bloodshed is found in: 19:10
- * Boaz is found in: 03:15
- * bow, bow down is found in: 07:01, 07:21, 20:18, 25:14, 29:29, 33:01
- * bow and arrow is found in: 14:07, 17:17, 18:33, 26:14
- * bread is found in: 04:19, 13:10, 29:18
- * bribe is found in: 19:06
- * bronze is found in: 01:02, 02:13, 04:01, 04:14, 06:12, 07:07, 12:09
- * brother is found in: 11:02, 19:10, 28:09, 29:15, 29:34, 30:07, 35:05, 35:15
- * burnt offering, offering by fire is found in: 01:06, 02:04, 04:04, 07:01, 07:07, 08:12, 13:10, 23:18, 24:13, 28:03, 29:06, 29:18, 29:32, 30:13, 31:02, 35:10, 35:13
- * bury, buried, burial is found in: 09:29, 12:15, 14:01, 16:13, 22:09, 24:15, 25:27, 27:08, 32:32, 35:23
- * call, calling, called, call out is found in: 07:13, 10:03
- * camel is found in: 09:01, 14:14
- * captive, captivity is found in: 06:36, 29:08
- * cedar is found in: 02:01, 09:27
- * Chaldea, Chaldean is found in: 36:17
- * chariot is found in: 01:14, 08:05, 08:09, 09:25, 10:17, 12:02, 14:09, 16:07, 18:28, 21:08, 35:23
- * cherubim, cherub is found in: 03:06, 05:07
- * chief is found in: 11:22, 35:07
- * chief priests is found in: 19:11, 26:19, 31:09
- * chronicles is found in: 33:18
- * city of David is found in: 05:02, 08:11, 09:29, 12:15, 14:01, 16:13, 24:15, 24:25, 27:08, 32:05, 32:30, 33:14
- * clean, cleanse is found in: 29:15, 34:01
- * clothe, clothed is found in: 06:40, 18:09

- * **command, to command, commandment** is found in: 01:02, 02:01, 07:13, 07:16, 07:19, 08:12, 08:17, 13:10, 14:01, 17:03, 18:28, 19:10, 23:06, 24:20, 25:03, 25:05, 29:15, 29:20, 29:29, 31:04, 31:11, 31:20, 32:11, 33:04, 33:07, 34:22, 34:31, 35:10, 35:16, 36:22
- * **commander, command** is found in: 11:11, 12:09, 16:04, 17:14, 21:08, 23:01, 23:20, 26:11, 32:06, 33:10
- * **compassion, compassionate** is found in: 30:07
- * **concubine** is found in: 11:20
- * **confess, confession** is found in: 06:24, 06:26, 30:21
- * **consecrate** is found in: 05:11, 13:08, 26:16, 29:03, 29:15, 30:13, 30:16, 35:13, 36:13
- * **consume** is found in: 07:01
- * **courtyard, court** is found in: 04:09, 06:12, 07:07, 20:05, 23:04, 24:20, 29:03, 29:15, 33:04
- * **covenant** is found in: 05:09, 05:13, 07:16, 13:04, 15:12, 21:06, 23:16, 24:06, 29:10, 32:32, 34:29
- * **covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love** is found in: 01:08, 06:14, 06:40, 07:01, 07:04, 20:20
- * **cow, calf, bull, cattle** is found in: 04:01, 04:14, 11:13, 26:09, 29:20, 29:32, 30:23, 35:07
- * **crown, to crown** is found in: 23:10
- * **curse, cursed** is found in: 34:23
- * **cut off** is found in: 26:21
- * **Cyrus** is found in: 36:22
- * **Damascus** is found in: 16:02, 24:23, 28:05, 28:22
- * **Dan** is found in: 02:13, 16:04, 30:04
- * **darkness** is found in: 06:01
- * **David** is found in: 01:01, 02:06, 05:01, 06:04, 06:40, 07:08, 10:16, 11:16, 13:04, 13:08, 17:03, 21:01, 21:12, 21:18, 23:01, 23:18, 28:01, 29:01, 29:25, 30:25, 33:07, 34:01, 35:03
- * **death, die, dead** is found in: 10:17, 13:16, 13:19, 15:12, 16:13, 18:33, 20:24, 21:18, 22:04, 22:10, 24:15, 25:03, 25:25, 26:21, 32:11, 32:32, 33:24, 35:23
- * **deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive** is found in: 32:13
- * **declare, declaration** is found in: 06:22, 34:26
- * **decree** is found in: 07:16, 08:14, 18:22, 19:10, 23:10, 24:06, 33:07, 34:31
- * **dedicate, dedication** is found in: 07:04
- * **descendant, descended from** is found in: 06:16, 07:16, 08:07, 13:08, 20:05, 20:18, 21:06, 23:01, 31:17, 32:32, 35:05
- * **desert, wilderness** is found in: 01:02, 08:03, 20:16, 20:20, 20:24, 24:08, 26:09

- * devour is found in: 07:13
- * donkey, mule is found in: 09:22, 28:14
- * drink offering is found in: 29:35
- * earth, earthly is found in: 02:11, 06:14, 06:32, 09:22, 16:09, 32:18, 36:22
- * Edom, Edomite, Idumea is found in: 08:17, 21:08, 25:14, 28:16
- * Egypt, Egyptian is found in: 01:16, 05:09, 06:04, 07:08, 07:21, 09:25, 10:01, 12:02, 20:10, 26:06, 35:20, 36:03
- * elder is found in: 05:02, 34:29
- * chosen one, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, the elect is found in: 06:04, 13:01, 13:16, 33:07
- * Elijah is found in: 21:12
- * En Gedi is found in: 20:01
- * Ephraim is found in: 13:04, 15:08, 17:01, 19:04, 25:07, 25:23, 28:07, 30:01, 31:01, 34:06
- * Ethiopia, Ethiopian is found in: 12:02, 14:09, 16:07, 21:16
- * Euphrates River is found in: 09:25, 35:20
- * evil, wicked, wickedness is found in: 06:22, 06:36, 07:13, 12:13, 19:01, 20:35, 21:06, 22:01, 24:06, 27:01, 28:19, 33:01, 33:21, 36:05
- * exile, the Exile is found in: 06:36
- * face is found in: 06:40, 07:13, 30:07
- * faithful, faithfulness is found in: 19:08, 31:11, 31:20, 32:01, 34:12
- * false god, foreign god, god, goddess is found in: 02:04, 13:08, 24:17, 25:14, 28:22, 32:13, 34:23
- * family is found in: 05:02
- * famine is found in: 06:28, 32:11
- * fast is found in: 20:03
- * ancestor, father, forefather is found in: 01:02, 05:01, 11:16, 16:02, 17:14
- * favor, favorable, favoritism is found in: 06:36, 19:06
- * fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh is found in: 06:28, 06:32, 19:06, 20:03, 32:06
- * feast is found in: 05:02
- * fellowship offering is found in: 07:07, 29:35, 30:21, 31:02, 33:16
- * festival is found in: 02:04, 07:08, 08:12, 30:13, 35:16
- * fire is found in: 07:01, 16:13
- * firstfruits is found in: 31:04
- * flesh is found in: 32:06

- * flock, herd is found in: 17:10, 32:27, 35:07
- * fool, foolish, folly is found in: 16:09
- * foreigner, foreign, alien is found in: 02:17, 06:32, 30:25
- * forever is found in: 05:13, 06:01, 07:01, 07:04, 07:16, 09:07, 13:04, 20:05, 20:20, 30:07, 33:04, 33:07
- * forgive, forgiveness is found in: 06:21, 06:28, 07:13
- * forsake, forsaken, forsook is found in: 07:19, 07:21, 12:05, 13:10, 15:01, 21:08, 24:17, 24:20, 28:05, 29:06, 34:23
- * foundation, founded is found in: 03:01, 08:16, 23:04
- * freewill offering is found in: 31:14, 35:07
- * fruit, fruitful is found in: 26:09
- * fulfill is found in: 36:20
- * Gad is found in: 29:25
- * gate, gate bar is found in: 06:28, 08:05, 14:07, 18:09, 23:04, 23:14, 25:23, 26:09, 27:03, 31:02, 31:14, 35:15
- * Gath is found in: 26:06
- * Gerar is found in: 14:12
- * Gibeon, Gibeonite is found in: 01:02
- * gift is found in: 02:11, 32:22
- * Gilead is found in: 18:01, 18:12, 22:04
- * glory, glorious is found in: 05:13, 07:01, 20:20
- * goat, kid is found in: 07:04, 11:13, 15:10, 17:10, 29:20, 30:23
- * God is found in: 01:01, 01:02, 02:04, 06:04, 06:14, 06:40, 09:07, 09:22, 10:15, 11:02, 13:04, 13:12, 14:01, 15:03, 16:07, 17:03, 18:04, 18:12, 19:01, 20:12, 20:29, 21:08, 22:07, 24:17, 25:07, 25:20, 26:04, 26:16, 27:06, 29:06, 30:16, 31:06, 34:01, 34:23, 35:20, 36:05, 36:13
- * gold is found in: 01:14, 02:13, 03:04, 04:07, 04:19, 05:01, 08:17, 09:01, 09:13, 12:09, 13:08, 15:18, 16:02, 21:01, 24:13, 25:23, 32:27, 36:03
- * good, goodness is found in: 06:40, 07:01, 07:08, 10:06, 30:18, 31:20, 35:26
- * governor, govern, proconsul, government is found in: 09:13, 18:25, 23:20
- * grace, gracious is found in: 30:07
- * grain is found in: 31:04, 32:27
- * grain offering is found in: 07:07
- * guilt, guilty is found in: 19:10, 28:09

- * hand, right hand, to hand over is found in: 12:07, 13:08, 13:16, 15:06, 16:07, 17:05, 20:05, 25:20, 28:05, 30:06, 31:11, 32:11
- * harp is found in: 05:11, 09:10, 20:27, 29:25
- * harvest is found in: 31:04, 32:27
- * head is found in: 01:02, 05:02, 06:22, 13:12, 23:01, 26:11
- * heal, cure is found in: 30:18, 32:24
- * heart is found in: 01:08, 06:07, 06:14, 07:11, 09:01, 09:22, 11:16, 12:13, 15:12, 16:09, 17:05, 19:01, 19:08, 20:31, 22:09, 25:01, 26:16, 29:10, 29:31, 30:10, 32:24, 32:30, 34:26, 36:13
- * heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly is found in: 02:06, 06:12, 06:21, 06:28, 07:01, 07:13, 18:17, 28:09, 32:20, 33:01, 33:04, 36:22
- * Hebron is found in: 11:05
- * Hezekiah is found in: 28:26, 29:01, 29:18, 30:01, 30:18, 31:02, 31:20, 32:16, 32:22, 33:01
- * high places is found in: 01:02, 11:13, 14:01, 14:05, 15:16, 17:05, 20:31, 21:11, 28:03, 31:01
- * high priest is found in: 24:06, 34:08
- * Hittite is found in: 01:16, 08:07
- * Hivite is found in: 08:07
- * holy, holiness is found in: 05:04, 08:11, 20:20, 31:17, 35:03
- * holy place, most holy place is found in: 05:09, 20:08, 26:16, 29:03, 30:07, 30:25, 35:05
- * Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord is found in: 15:01, 18:23, 24:20
- * honey, honeycomb is found in: 31:04
- * honor, to honor is found in: 01:08, 16:13, 17:05, 18:01, 21:18, 24:17, 26:16, 32:27
- * Horeb is found in: 05:09
- * horse is found in: 01:16, 09:22, 23:14, 25:27
- * horsemen is found in: 01:14, 08:05, 08:09, 12:02, 16:07
- * house is found in: 01:02, 05:13, 10:16, 11:01, 17:14, 21:06, 22:01, 23:01, 25:05, 26:11, 31:09, 31:17, 35:03, 35:20
- * house of David is found in: 10:17
- * house of God, Yahweh's house is found in: 02:11, 03:01, 04:11, 05:01, 05:13, 07:01, 07:04, 08:16, 09:10, 12:09, 12:11, 15:08, 15:18, 16:02, 20:05, 22:10, 23:01, 23:08, 24:04, 24:13, 24:27, 25:23, 26:16, 28:19, 28:24, 29:03, 29:15, 30:01, 30:13, 31:09, 31:11, 31:20, 33:04, 33:07, 34:08, 34:29, 35:01, 35:07, 36:05, 36:18, 36:22
- * humble, humility is found in: 07:13, 12:05, 30:10, 32:24, 33:12, 33:18, 34:26, 36:11
- * idol, idolatrous is found in: 11:13, 24:17, 33:14

- * **image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure** is found in: 03:10, 23:16, 28:01, 33:07, 33:21, 34:01
- * **incense** is found in: 02:04, 13:10, 14:05, 25:14, 26:16, 28:03, 29:06, 30:13, 34:04, 34:23
- * **inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir** is found in: 06:26, 10:16, 20:10
- * **iniquity** is found in: 19:06
- * **innocent** is found in: 06:22
- * **Isaac** is found in: 30:06
- * **Isaiah** is found in: 26:22, 32:20, 32:32
- * **Ishmael** is found in: 23:01
- * **Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel** is found in: 01:02, 02:04, 02:11, 02:17, 05:02, 05:09, 06:01, 06:04, 06:16, 07:04, 07:08, 08:01, 08:07, 09:07, 10:01, 10:16, 11:16, 12:01, 12:13, 15:03, 15:08, 15:16, 16:11, 18:01, 18:09, 18:15, 18:28, 20:10, 20:29, 21:01, 22:04, 24:04, 25:23, 28:03, 28:07, 29:06, 29:22, 29:27, 30:04, 30:21, 31:01, 31:04, 31:06, 32:16, 33:07, 33:18, 34:06, 34:23, 35:03, 35:18
- * **Issachar** is found in: 30:18
- * **Jacob, Israel** is found in: 30:06
- * **Jebusites, Jebus** is found in: 03:01, 08:07
- * **Jehoiachin** is found in: 36:08
- * **Jehoiakim** is found in: 36:03
- * **Jehoram, Joram** is found in: 21:01, 22:01, 22:06
- * **Jehoshaphat** is found in: 17:01, 18:01, 18:17, 19:01, 20:01, 20:25, 21:12, 22:09
- * **Jehu** is found in: 19:01, 20:34, 22:07, 25:17
- * **Jeremiah** is found in: 35:25, 36:11, 36:20
- * **Jericho** is found in: 28:14
- * **Jeroboam** is found in: 09:29, 10:01, 10:12, 11:02, 12:15, 13:01, 13:13
- * **Jerusalem** is found in: 01:02, 02:06, 02:15, 03:01, 05:02, 06:04, 08:05, 09:01, 09:25, 10:17, 11:01, 12:02, 13:01, 14:14, 15:10, 17:12, 19:01, 20:05, 20:14, 20:27, 21:04, 21:18, 22:01, 24:01, 24:06, 24:23, 25:01, 25:23, 26:01, 27:01, 27:08, 28:01, 28:24, 29:01, 29:08, 30:01, 30:10, 30:21, 32:09, 32:18, 33:01, 33:07, 33:21, 34:01, 34:22, 35:01, 35:23, 36:01, 36:18
- * **Jesse** is found in: 10:16, 11:18
- * **Jew, Jewish, Jews** is found in: 32:18
- * **Jezreel** is found in: 22:06
- * **Joash** is found in: 18:25, 24:01, 24:20, 25:25
- * **Joppa** is found in: 02:15

- * Joram is found in: 22:04
- * Jordan River is found in: 04:17
- * Josiah is found in: 33:24, 34:01, 34:08, 34:33, 35:01, 35:16
- * Jotham is found in: 26:21, 27:01, 27:06
- * joy, joyful is found in: 20:27, 30:21
- * Judah is found in: 09:10, 14:05, 15:01, 16:11, 18:01, 18:09, 18:28, 20:03, 20:24, 21:01, 21:08, 22:01, 22:06, 23:08, 24:04, 24:17, 24:23, 25:05, 25:27, 27:03, 28:05, 29:08, 31:01, 31:20, 36:22
- * judge, judgment is found in: 01:08, 06:22, 19:06, 19:08, 20:08, 22:07, 24:23
- * judge is found in: 01:02, 19:04
- * just, justice, justly is found in: 09:07
- * kind, kinds is found in: 02:06
- * king is found in: 01:08, 02:11, 04:11, 05:02, 06:01, 07:04, 08:09, 09:07, 09:17, 10:01, 10:17, 11:22, 12:15, 13:01, 14:01, 16:01, 16:07, 16:11, 17:01, 18:01, 19:01, 20:34, 21:01, 22:01, 22:10, 24:11, 24:17, 24:27, 25:03, 25:23, 26:01, 26:22, 28:07, 28:26, 30:23, 31:11, 32:01, 32:22, 33:10, 33:18, 34:14, 35:10, 36:01, 36:03, 36:20
- * kingdom is found in: 02:01, 02:11, 07:16, 09:19, 11:01, 14:05, 20:29, 21:04, 22:09, 23:20, 29:20, 32:13, 36:20, 36:22
- * kingdom of Israel is found in: 10:17, 11:01, 13:04, 13:13, 16:01, 17:01, 25:05, 25:17, 25:25, 27:06, 28:01, 28:19, 28:26, 30:01, 34:20, 34:33, 35:18, 35:26, 36:08
- * Judah, kingdom of Judah is found in: 10:17, 11:01, 12:02, 13:01, 13:13, 14:01, 16:01, 17:01, 19:01, 25:11, 25:13, 25:25, 26:01, 27:06, 28:19, 28:26, 30:01, 30:23, 32:01, 32:22, 34:01, 34:08, 34:20, 35:18, 35:26, 36:03
- * know, knowledge, make known is found in: 01:08, 06:28
- * labor, laborer is found in: 08:07, 24:13
- * lamb, Lamb of God is found in: 30:13, 30:16, 35:01, 35:10
- * lament, lamentation is found in: 35:25
- * lamp is found in: 04:19
- * lampstand is found in: 04:07, 04:19, 13:10
- * law, principle is found in: 02:04, 19:10
- * law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh is found in: 06:16, 12:01, 14:01, 15:03, 17:07, 23:18, 25:03, 30:16, 31:02, 31:20, 33:07, 34:14, 35:10, 35:26
- * Lebanon is found in: 02:08, 02:15, 08:05, 09:15, 25:18
- * leprosy, leper, leprous is found in: 26:19
- * letter, epistle is found in: 30:01

- * Levite, Levi is found in: 05:04, 08:14, 11:13, 13:08, 17:07, 19:08, 19:11, 20:14, 23:01, 23:18, 24:04, 29:03, 29:12, 30:13, 30:16, 34:08, 34:29, 35:03
- * life, live, living, alive is found in: 01:08, 06:01, 06:21, 10:06, 25:11, 31:04, 36:15
- * lion is found in: 09:17
- * locust is found in: 06:28
- * loins is found in: 06:07
- * lord, master, sir is found in: 02:13, 13:06
- * love is found in: 02:11, 11:20, 26:09
- * lute, lyre is found in: 05:11, 09:10, 20:27, 29:25
- * Manasseh is found in: 15:08, 30:01, 31:01, 32:32, 33:01, 33:12, 34:06
- * mercy, merciful is found in: 30:07
- * messenger is found in: 18:12, 25:17, 28:16, 30:01, 34:29, 36:15
- * mighty, might is found in: 06:32, 13:08, 26:11
- * mind is found in: 06:40
- * miracle, wonder, sign is found in: 32:24
- * Mizpah is found in: 16:04
- * Moab, Moabite, Moabites is found in: 20:01, 20:10, 20:22, 24:25
- * mock, ridicule, scoff at is found in: 30:10, 32:16, 36:15
- * Moses is found in: 01:02, 08:12, 24:06, 33:07, 34:14, 35:05
- * mourn, mourning is found in: 35:23
- * name is found in: 02:01, 06:04, 07:13, 12:13, 13:01, 14:09, 20:08, 28:14, 31:17, 33:04, 35:03
- * Naphtali is found in: 16:04, 34:06
- * Nathan is found in: 09:29, 29:25
- * nation is found in: 15:06, 20:05, 20:29, 32:13, 32:22, 33:01
- * Nebuchadnezzar is found in: 36:05, 36:13
- * Negev is found in: 28:16
- * neighbor is found in: 06:22
- * new moon is found in: 08:12
- * noble, nobleman is found in: 23:20
- * oath, swear, swear by is found in: 06:22, 15:14, 18:15, 36:13
- * obey, obedient, obedience is found in: 26:04, 31:04, 34:20, 34:31
- * oil is found in: 02:08, 11:11, 31:04, 32:27

- * Omri is found in: 22:01
- * oppress, oppression, oppressor is found in: 16:09
- * ox, oxen is found in: 04:04, 05:04, 15:10, 18:01, 29:32, 31:06, 35:07
- * pagan is found in: 33:04
- * palace is found in: 28:07, 36:18
- * palm is found in: 03:04
- * pardon is found in: 30:18
- * Passover is found in: 30:01, 30:13, 35:01, 35:10
- * peace, peaceful is found in: 14:05, 15:03, 15:14, 18:15, 20:29, 34:26
- * Pentecost, Festival of Weeks is found in: 08:12
- * people group, peoples, the people, a people is found in: 01:08, 05:02, 05:09, 06:24, 09:07, 10:06, 10:08, 10:17, 16:09, 17:07, 26:21, 28:03, 29:12, 32:06, 32:13, 32:18, 34:33, 35:05, 35:07, 35:16, 36:01, 36:13
- * people of God, my people is found in: 01:08, 02:11, 06:04, 06:34, 07:13, 23:16, 31:06, 35:03, 36:15
- * perfect is found in: 16:09, 19:08, 25:01
- * Perizzite is found in: 08:07
- * Persia, Persians is found in: 36:20
- * perverse, perversely, pervert is found in: 06:36
- * Pharaoh, king of Egypt is found in: 08:11
- * Philistines is found in: 09:25, 17:10, 21:16, 26:06, 28:16
- * pillar, column is found in: 03:15, 04:11, 14:01, 23:12, 31:01
- * plague is found in: 06:28, 21:12
- * pomegranate is found in: 03:15, 04:11
- * possess, possession is found in: 08:05, 31:02, 32:27, 35:07
- * power, powers is found in: 13:19, 17:12, 20:12, 25:07, 26:06, 26:11, 27:06, 32:02, 32:13
- * praise is found in: 05:13, 08:14, 20:18, 20:25, 23:12, 29:29, 30:21
- * pray, prayer is found in: 06:16, 06:34, 07:01, 30:18, 30:25, 33:12, 33:18
- * priest, priesthood is found in: 04:04, 05:04, 05:11, 06:40, 07:01, 08:14, 11:13, 13:08, 15:03, 17:07, 19:08, 22:10, 23:18, 24:01, 26:16, 29:03, 30:23, 31:02, 34:04, 34:17, 34:29, 35:01, 35:10, 36:13
- * prince, princess is found in: 01:02, 06:04, 12:05, 32:30
- * prison, prisoner, imprison is found in: 16:09, 18:25, 28:05, 30:07
- * proclaim, proclamation is found in: 20:03, 24:08, 36:22

- * **promise** is found in: 01:08, 06:10, 21:06
- * **prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess** is found in: 09:29, 12:05, 12:15, 13:19, 15:08, 16:07, 18:04, 18:12, 20:20, 20:35, 24:17, 24:27, 25:14, 26:22, 28:09, 29:25, 32:20, 32:32, 34:22, 35:18, 36:11, 36:15
- * **prosper, prosperity, prosperous** is found in: 26:04
- * **prostitute, harlot, whore** is found in: 21:11
- * **proud, pride, prideful** is found in: 25:18, 32:24
- * **proverb** is found in: 07:19
- * **punish, punishment** is found in: 10:10
- * **pure, purify, purification** is found in: 03:04, 09:19, 30:16
- * **purple** is found in: 02:13
- * **queen** is found in: 09:01, 15:16
- * **raise, rise, risen, arise, arose** is found in: 06:40, 13:06, 20:20, 30:13, 36:15
- * **Ramah** is found in: 16:01, 16:04, 22:06
- * **Ramoth** is found in: 18:01, 18:12, 22:04
- * **rebel, rebellious, rebellion** is found in: 10:17, 13:06, 36:13
- * **receive** is found in: 30:16, 35:10
- * **Rehoboam** is found in: 09:29, 10:01, 11:01, 12:01, 12:15, 13:06
- * **reign** is found in: 03:01, 10:17, 12:01, 12:13, 13:01, 15:10, 15:18, 16:01, 17:07, 20:31, 21:04, 21:18, 22:10, 23:01, 24:01, 25:01, 26:01, 27:01, 28:01, 29:01, 33:01, 33:21, 36:01, 36:09
- * **rejoice** is found in: 06:40, 15:14, 20:27, 23:12, 29:35, 30:25
- * **remnant** is found in: 30:06, 34:08
- * **repent, repentance** is found in: 06:36
- * **report** is found in: 09:05, 34:14
- * **rest** is found in: 06:40, 36:20
- * **restore, restoration** is found in: 11:01, 24:04, 26:01
- * **reward** is found in: 06:22, 15:06
- * **righteous, righteousness** is found in: 06:22, 09:07, 12:05
- * **right hand** is found in: 03:15, 18:17
- * **royal** is found in: 18:28
- * **ruin, ruins** is found in: 12:07, 34:06
- * **ruler, rulers, rule** is found in: 01:01, 08:05, 09:25, 11:22, 12:07, 13:01, 17:05, 25:03

- * Sabbath is found in: 02:04, 08:12, 23:04, 31:02, 36:20
- * sacred is found in: 14:01
- * sacrifice, offering is found in: 01:06, 02:06, 05:04, 07:01, 07:11, 11:16, 15:10, 24:13, 28:03, 28:22, 29:29, 30:21, 31:09, 31:11, 31:14, 32:11, 33:21, 34:04, 35:07
- * saints is found in: 06:40
- * Salt Sea, Dead Sea is found in: 20:01
- * salvation is found in: 06:40
- * Samaria, Samaritan is found in: 18:01, 22:09, 25:13, 25:23, 28:07
- * Samuel is found in: 35:18
- * sanctuary is found in: 36:17
- * sandal is found in: 28:14
- * save, safe is found in: 20:08, 32:22
- * scribe, expert in the Jewish law is found in: 24:11, 26:11, 34:14, 34:17
- * seek, sought is found in: 14:07, 15:01, 34:01
- * send, send out, sent is found in: 02:01, 02:13, 06:26, 10:03, 16:04, 17:07, 25:17, 32:09, 36:15
- * Sennacherib is found in: 32:01, 32:16
- * servant, slave, slavery is found in: 01:02, 02:08, 06:14, 06:40, 08:17, 09:10, 10:06, 12:07, 13:06, 18:25, 24:06, 24:25, 25:03, 28:09, 29:10, 32:09, 32:16, 33:24, 34:14, 35:23
- * serve, service is found in: 05:13, 07:04, 08:14, 10:03, 12:07, 13:10, 17:14, 22:07, 23:04, 23:08, 24:11, 24:13, 29:35, 30:21, 31:02, 31:20, 33:16, 35:01, 35:10
- * set apart is found in: 02:04, 05:01, 07:07, 07:16, 07:19, 35:03
- * shame, shameful, ashamed is found in: 30:13
- * Sheba is found in: 09:01
- * Shechem is found in: 10:01
- * sheep, ram, ewe is found in: 05:04, 07:04, 14:14, 15:10, 17:10, 18:01, 29:20, 29:32, 30:23, 31:06
- * shepherd, to shepherd is found in: 14:14, 18:15
- * shield is found in: 12:09, 14:07, 17:17, 23:08, 26:14
- * Shiloh is found in: 09:29
- * siege, besiege is found in: 32:09
- * sign, proof, reminder is found in: 32:30
- * silver is found in: 01:14, 02:13, 05:01, 09:13, 15:18, 16:02, 17:10, 21:01, 24:13, 25:05, 32:27, 36:03
- * Simeon is found in: 15:08, 34:06

- * **sin, sinful, sinner, sinning** is found in: 06:22, 06:36, 07:13, 25:03, 28:09, 28:19, 33:18
- * **sin offering** is found in: 29:20, 29:22
- * **slaughter** is found in: 13:16, 25:14, 28:05, 30:16
- * **Solomon** is found in: 01:01, 02:01, 03:01, 04:11, 05:01, 06:01, 07:01, 07:08, 08:01, 08:09, 09:01, 09:10, 09:29, 10:01, 11:02, 12:09, 13:06, 30:25, 33:07, 35:03
- * **son, son of** is found in: 34:12
- * **sorcery, sorcerer, witchcraft** is found in: 33:04
- * **soul** is found in: 06:36, 15:12
- * **spear** is found in: 11:11, 14:07, 26:14
- * **spirit, spiritual** is found in: 09:03, 18:20, 20:14, 21:16, 33:04, 36:22
- * **statute, statutes** is found in: 07:16, 07:19, 19:10, 33:07, 34:31
- * **stone, stoning** is found in: 10:17, 24:20
- * **storehouse** is found in: 16:02, 31:11, 32:27
- * **stronghold, fortress, fortified** is found in: 11:11, 17:12
- * **Succoth** is found in: 04:17
- * **suffer, suffering** is found in: 15:06, 28:22
- * **sword** is found in: 20:08, 21:04, 21:12, 23:14, 23:20, 29:08, 32:20, 36:17
- * **Syria** is found in: 28:22
- * **tabernacle** is found in: 01:02
- * **tax, taxes** is found in: 24:06
- * **temple** is found in: 03:15, 04:07, 04:22, 06:18, 07:21, 23:10, 27:01, 29:15, 31:02, 34:08, 34:10, 35:20
- * **tent** is found in: 05:04, 10:16, 24:06
- * **tenth, tithe** is found in: 31:04, 31:06
- * **tent of meeting** is found in: 01:02
- * **terror, terrify** is found in: 14:14
- * **test** is found in: 09:01, 32:30
- * **testimony, testify** is found in: 24:17
- * **thresh, threshing** is found in: 03:01
- * **threshold** is found in: 03:06
- * **throne** is found in: 06:10, 09:07, 09:17, 18:09, 18:17
- * **tomb, grave, burial place** is found in: 16:13, 21:18, 24:25, 26:22, 28:26, 32:32, 34:04, 35:23
- * **transgress, transgression** is found in: 24:20

- * trespass is found in: 26:16, 28:12, 29:06, 30:07, 33:18, 36:13
- * tribe is found in: 05:02, 06:04, 11:16, 12:13, 33:07
- * tribute is found in: 09:22, 17:05, 17:10, 26:06
- * trouble, troubles, troubled is found in: 15:03, 15:06, 25:18, 28:19, 32:18
- * true, truth, come true is found in: 06:16, 09:05, 15:03, 18:15
- * trumpet is found in: 05:11, 07:04, 13:12, 13:13, 23:12, 29:25
- * trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness is found in: 20:20, 31:14
- * turn, turn away, turn back is found in: 06:24, 06:40, 07:13, 07:19, 15:03, 20:31, 25:27, 30:06, 34:33, 35:22, 36:13
- * Tyre, Tyrians is found in: 02:01, 02:11
- * unclean is found in: 23:18
- * unfaithful, unfaithfulness is found in: 12:02
- * unleavened bread, Festival of Unleavened Bread is found in: 08:12, 30:13, 35:16
- * Uzziah, Azariah is found in: 26:01, 26:16, 27:01
- * vine is found in: 26:09
- * virgin is found in: 36:17
- * vision is found in: 09:29, 32:32
- * walk is found in: 06:14, 06:26, 17:03, 21:12, 27:06, 28:01, 34:01, 34:31
- * watchtower, tower is found in: 14:07, 26:09, 27:03
- * water, waters is found in: 32:02, 32:30
- * wheat is found in: 02:08, 27:05
- * wine, wineskin, new wine is found in: 02:08, 11:11, 31:04, 32:27
- * wise, wisdom is found in: 01:08, 02:11, 09:03, 09:22, 11:22
- * word is found in: 06:10, 09:05, 10:15, 15:08, 32:06, 34:26, 35:22, 36:15
- * word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture is found in: 11:02, 12:07, 29:15, 30:10, 35:05, 36:20
- * works, deeds, work, acts is found in: 02:06, 02:13, 04:11, 05:01, 08:14, 10:03, 13:10, 15:06, 16:04, 16:11, 19:01, 24:11, 25:16, 28:26, 29:34, 31:02, 32:18, 34:10, 35:26
- * worship is found in: 07:01, 07:19, 07:21, 20:18, 24:17, 29:10, 29:27, 30:07, 32:11, 33:01, 34:33, 35:03
- * worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless is found in: 13:06
- * wrath, fury is found in: 28:09, 29:08, 36:15
- * written is found in: 09:29, 16:11, 28:26, 30:18, 31:02, 32:32, 34:20, 35:03

* **Yahweh** is found in: 01:01, 02:01, 04:14, 05:02, 06:01, 07:01, 07:21, 08:01, 09:07, 10:15, 11:13, 13:04, 13:08, 14:01, 15:01, 16:07, 16:11, 17:03, 17:14, 18:12, 18:31, 19:01, 20:25, 21:06, 21:18, 22:04, 23:12, 23:18, 24:01, 25:01, 25:27, 26:04, 26:16, 27:01, 27:06, 28:01, 28:19, 29:01, 31:16, 32:06, 32:22, 33:01, 33:10, 34:01, 34:23, 35:01, 35:10, 36:05, 36:15

* **yoke** is found in: 10:03

* **Zadok** is found in: 27:01, 31:09

* **Zebulun** is found in: 30:10

* **Zechariah (OT)** is found in: 20:14, 24:20, 26:04, 29:01

* **Zedekiah** is found in: 18:09, 18:23, 36:09

* **Zion, Mount Zion** is found in: 05:02

2 Chronicles 1 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter begins a section about King Solomon's reign (2 Chronicles 1-9).

Special concepts in this chapter

Wisdom

Solomon asks God for wisdom to rule God's people. God is pleased with this request because it is used to serve others. Therefore, God also gives Solomon tremendous wealth and a long life. (See: [wise, wisdom](#) and [people of God, my people](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 01:01 Notes](#)
- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)

2 Chronicles 1:1

UDB:

¹ King Solomon, David's son, was able to gain complete control over his kingdom, because Yahweh his God was with him and enabled him to become a very strong king.

ULB:

¹ ¹ Solomon son of David, was strengthened in his rule, and Yahweh his God was with him and made him very powerful.

translationWords:

- [Solomon](#)
- [David](#)
- [ruler, rulers, rule](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [God](#)

translationNotes:

- **strengthened in his rule** - AT: "Solomon exercised great power over Israel"
- **Yahweh** - This is the name of God that he revealed to his people in the Old Testament. See the translationWord page about Yahweh concerning how to translate this.
- **God was with him** - AT: "God supported him" or "God helped him" (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 01 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 01 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 1:2-5

UDB:

2-5 When David had been king, he arranged for a new sacred tent to be made in Jerusalem. Then David and the Israelite leaders brought God's sacred chest from the city of Kiriath Jearim to the new sacred tent. But when Solomon became the king, the first sacred tent was still in the city of Gibeon. There was a bronze altar there that Bezalel son of Uri and grandson of Hur, had made was also still at Gibeon, in front of the first sacred tent.

Solomon called together the army commanders of one thousand soldiers and the commanders of one hundred soldiers, with the judges and all the other leaders in Israel. He told them to go with him to Gibeon. So they all went to the place on the hill where idols were worshiped at Gibeon. That was the same place where God had met with his people in the tent which Moses had made. There Solomon and all the others with him prayed to Yahweh.

ULB:

² Solomon spoke to all Israel, to the commanders of thousands and of hundreds, and to the judges, and to every prince in all Israel, the heads of the fathers' houses. ³ So Solomon and all the assembly with him went to the high place that was at Gibeon, for there was the tent of meeting of God, which Moses the servant of Yahweh, had made in the wilderness. ⁴ But David had brought up the ark of God from Kiriath Jearim to the place that he had prepared for it, for he had pitched a tent for it in Jerusalem. ⁵ In addition, the bronze altar made by Bezalel son of Uri son of Hur was there before the tabernacle of Yahweh; Solomon and the assembly went to it.[1]Some older versions have, *the bronze altar made by Bezalel son of Uri son of Hur, he placed there before the tabernacle of Yahweh*, where *he* refers to David.

translationWords:

- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- command, to command, commandment
- judge
- prince, princess
- head
- ancestor, father, forefather
- house
- high places
- Gibeon, Gibeonite
- tent of meeting
- God
- Moses
- servant, slave, slavery

- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of Yahweh](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [altar](#)
- [tabernacle](#)
- [assembly, assemble](#)

translationNotes:

- **Kiriath Jearim** - A little town about 9 miles west of Jersulem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **pitched a tent** - AT: “set up a tent”
- **Bezalel son of Uri son of Hur** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 01 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 01 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 1:6-7

UDB:

⁶ Then Solomon went up to the bronze altar in front of the sacred tent, and he offered one thousand animals to be killed and completely burned on the altar.

⁷ That night God appeared to Solomon in a dream and said to him, “Request whatever you want me to give to you.”

ULB:

⁶ Solomon went up there to the bronze altar before Yahweh, which was at the tent of meeting, and offered one thousand burnt offerings on it.

⁷ God appeared to Solomon that night and said to him, “Ask! What should I give you?”

translationWords:

- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)

translationNotes:

- **up there to the bronze altar** - Solomon went to Gibeon where the altar was at the tent of meeting.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 01 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 01 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 1:8-11

UDB:

⁸ Solomon replied to God, "You were very kind to David my father, and now you have appointed me to be the next king. ⁹ So Yahweh my God, you have caused me to become the king to rule people who are as many as the dust of the earth. So do what you promised to my father David. ¹⁰ Please enable me to be wise and to know what I should do, in order that I may rule these people well, because there is no one who can rule all this great nation of yours without your help."

¹¹ God replied to Solomon, "You have not requested a huge amount of money or to be honored or that your enemies be killed. And you have not requested that you be enabled to live for a long time. Instead, you have requested that I enable you to be wise and to know what you should do in order that you may govern well my people whom I have appointed you to rule."

ULB:

⁸ Solomon said to God, "You have shown great covenant faithfulness to David my father, and have made me king in his place. ⁹ Now, Yahweh God, let your promise to David my father be carried out, for you have made me king over a people as numerous as the dust of the earth. ¹⁰ Now give me wisdom and knowledge, so that I may lead this people, for who can judge your people, who are so many in number?" ¹¹ God said to Solomon, "Because this was in your heart, and because you have not asked for riches, wealth, or honor, nor for the life of those who hate you, nor for long life for yourself, but you have asked for wisdom and knowledge for yourself, so that you might rule my people, over whom I have made you king, and this is what I will do."

translationWords:

- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love
- king
- promise
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- wise, wisdom
- know, knowledge, make known
- judge, judgment
- people of God, my people
- heart
- honor, to honor
- life, live, living, alive

translationNotes:

- carried out - AT: "done" or "brought to completion"

- **a people as numerous as the dust of the earth** - AT: “countless people” (See: [Simile](#) and [Hyperbole](#))
- **who can judge your people, who are so many in number?** - AT: “no one can judge all of your countless people” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 01 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 01 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 1:12-13

UDB:

¹² So I will enable you to be wise and to know what you should do to rule my people well. But I will also enable you to have a huge amount of money and for people everywhere to honor you, more any king before you, and more than any king who will come after you.” ¹³ Then Solomon and the people who were with him all left the sacred tent at Gibeon, and they returned to Jerusalem. There he ruled the Israelite people.

ULB:

¹² I will now give you wisdom and knowledge. I will also give you riches, wealth, and honor, as none of the kings had before you, and none after you will have.” ¹³ So Solomon came to Jerusalem from the high place that was at Gibeon, from before the tent of meeting; he reigned over Israel.

translationWords:

translationNotes:

- **from before the tent of meeting** - AT: “in front of the tabernacle”.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 01 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 01 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 1:14-15

UDB:

¹⁴ Solomon acquired 1,400 chariots and twelve thousand men who rode on horses. He put some of the chariots and horses in Jerusalem, and put some of them in various other cities. ¹⁵ During the years that Solomon was king, silver and gold were as common in Jerusalem as stones, and lumber from cedar trees were as plentiful as lumber from ordinary sycamore trees in the foothills.

ULB:

¹⁴ Solomon gathered chariots and horsemen, and he had 1,400 chariots and twelve thousand horsemen that he placed in the chariot cities, and with himself, the king in Jerusalem. ¹⁵ The king made silver and gold as common in Jerusalem as the stones, and he made cedar wood as common as the sycamore trees that are in the lowlands.

translationWords:

- [chariot](#)
- [horsemen](#)
- [silver](#)
- [gold](#)

translationNotes:

- **in the chariot cities** - This is a reference to cities which stored his chariots.
- **silver and gold as common in Jerusalem as the stones** - AT: “rare and valuable metals to be abundant” (See: [Simile](#))
- **cedar wood as common as the sycamore trees that are in the lowlands** - AT: “rare and valuable imported wood to be abundant”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 01 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 01 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 1:16-17

UDB:

¹⁶ Solomon's horses were imported from Egypt and from the region of Kue in Turkey. ¹⁷ In Egypt his men paid seven kilograms of silver for each chariot and one and seven tenths kilograms of silver for each horse. They also sold many of them to the kings of the Heth and Aram people groups.

ULB:

¹⁶ As for the importation of horses from Egypt and Kue for Solomon, his merchants bought them from Kue at a price. ¹⁷ They imported a chariot from Egypt for six hundred shekels of silver, and a horse for 150 shekels. They also exported them to the kings of the Hittites and the Arameans.

translationWords:

- [horse](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Hittite](#)
- [Aram, Aramean, Aramaic](#)

translationNotes:

- **importation** - AT: "brought in goods from outside the country"
- **Kue** - Some think that Kue was in Cilicia, in Asia Minor. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **at a price** - AT: "at a set price" or "for money"
- **shekel** - (See: [Biblical Money](#))
- **exported them** - They sold goods produced in Israel to other countries.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 01 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 01 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 2 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of Solomon's reign continues in this chapter. This chapter also begins a section on building the temple. (2 Chronicles 2-4 and [temple](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

House of God

The temple is repeatedly referred to as the "house of God" because Yahweh will dwell in the temple. (See: [house of God](#), [Yahweh's house](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 02:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 2:1-3

UDB:

¹ Solomon decided that a temple should be built where Yahweh would be worshiped, and also that he would build a palace for himself. ² He commanded seventy thousand men to carry the building supplies and eighty thousand men to cut stones from quarries in the hills. He also chose 3,600 men to supervise them.

³ Solomon sent this message to King Hiram of the city of Tyre:

”Many years ago when my father David was building his palace, you sent him cedar logs. Will you send me cedar logs, too?”

ULB:

² ¹ Now Solomon commanded the building of a house for Yahweh’s name and the building of a palace for his kingdom. ² Solomon assigned seventy thousand men to carry loads, and eighty thousand men as woodcutters in the mountains, and 3,600 men to supervise them. ³ Solomon sent a message to Hiram, the king of Tyre, saying, ”As you did with David my father, sending him cedar logs to build a house to live in, do the same with me.

translationWords:

- [Solomon](#)
- [command, to command, commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [Tyre, Tyrians](#)
- [cedar](#)

translationNotes:

- **Hiram** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 02 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 02 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 2:4-5

UDB:

⁴ We are about to build a temple to set it apart for Yahweh, to burn for him incense made from fragrant spices, to always display before him the bread, and to burn animal offerings every morning and evening and day of rest, as well as at every new moon and on the other special festivals to honor Yahweh our God. We want to do these things forever, as Yahweh has commanded. ⁵ We want this temple to be a great temple, because our God is greater than all other gods.

ULB:

⁴ See, I am about to build a house for the name of Yahweh my God, to set it apart to him, to burn incense of sweet spices before him, to set out the bread of the presence, and for the burnt offerings morning and evening, on the Sabbaths and on the new moons, and on the appointed feasts for Yahweh our God. This is forever, for Israel. ⁵ The house that I will build will be very large, for our God is greater than all other gods.

translationWords:

- [God](#)
- [set apart](#)
- [incense](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [festival](#)
- [law, principle](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [false god, foreign god, god, goddess](#)

translationNotes:

- **the bread of the presence** - This is a reference to the 12 loaves of bread that were placed in front of the altar.
- **new moons** - This was the time of a festival coinciding with the movement of the moon.
- **God is greater** - This is a reference to God being more important not larger than other gods.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 02 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 02 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 2:6-7

UDB:

⁶ But no one can build a place for God to live in, since even the heavens and the earth are not big enough for him. I myself am not worthy to build him a house, except as a place to offer sacrifices to him.

⁷ Therefore, please send me someone who is very good at making things from gold and silver and bronze and iron, and at making things from purple and red and blue cloth. He should also know well how to engrave designs. I want him to work in Jerusalem and in other places in Judah with my skilled craftsmen, the ones whom my father David appointed.

ULB:

⁶ But who is able to build God a house, since the entire universe and even heaven itself cannot contain him? Who am I to build him a house, except to burn sacrifices before him? ⁷ So send me a man who is skilled at work in gold, silver, bronze, iron, and in purple, crimson, and blue wool, a man who knows how to make all kinds of engraved wood. He will be with the skilled men who are with me in Judah and Jerusalem, whom David my father provided.

translationWords:

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [kind, kinds](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [David](#)

translationNotes:

- **who is able to build God a house, since the entire universe and even heaven itself cannot contain him? Who am I to build him a house, except to burn sacrifices before him? -**
AT: "no one is able to build a house for God because the nothing can contain him. I am no one! Only a person who can offer sacrifices to him. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)

- 2 Chronicles 02 General Notes
- 2 Chronicles 02 Translation Questions

2 Chronicles 2:8-10

UDB:

⁸ I know that your workers are skilled in cutting timber, so also please send me cedar logs, pine logs, and algum from the Lebanon mountains. My workers will work with your workers. ⁹ In that way, they will provide me with plenty of lumber. We will need plenty, because I want the temple that we will build to be large and beautiful. ¹⁰ I will pay to your workers, the men who cut the logs, 4,400 kiloliters of bushels of ground wheat, 4,400 kiloliters of barley, and 440 kiloliters of wine, and 440 kiloliters of olive oil.”

ULB:

⁸ Send me also cedar, cypress, and algum trees from Lebanon, for I know that your servants know how to cut timber in Lebanon. See, my servants will be with your servants, ⁹ in order to prepare for me timber in abundance, for the house which I am about to build will be great and marvelous. ¹⁰ See, I will give to your servants, the men who will cut the timber, twenty thousand cors of ground wheat, twenty thousand cors of barley, twenty thousand baths of wine, and twenty thousand baths of oil.”^[1]Some versions have, *twenty thousand cors of wheat as food* .

translationWords:

- Lebanon
- servant, slave, slavery
- marvel, wonder, amazed, astonished
- wheat
- barley
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- oil

translationNotes:

- **algum trees** - This was a type of tree likely used for making musical instruments or carving.
- **cors** - (See: [Biblical Volume](#))
- **ground wheat** - That is, wheat flour.
- **baths** - (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 02 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 02 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 2:11-12

UDB:

¹¹ When Hiram received this message, he replied by sending a message back to Solomon:

”Because Yahweh loves his people, he has appointed you to be their king.

ULB:

¹¹ Then Hiram, the king of Tyre, answered in writing, which he sent to Solomon: “Because Yahweh loves his people, he has made you king over them.” ¹² In addition, Hiram said, ”Blessed be Yahweh, the God of Israel, who made heaven and earth, who has given to David the king a wise son, gifted with prudence and understanding, who will build a house for Yahweh, and a house for his kingdom.

translationWords:

- king
- Tyre, Tyrians
- love
- people of God, my people
- bless, blessed, blessing
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- earth, earthly
- wise, wisdom
- gift
- house of God, Yahweh’s house
- kingdom

translationNotes:

- **gifted with prudence** - AT: “given a gift of discretion”
- **a house for his kingdom** - AT: “a palace for himself.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 02 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 02 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 2:13-14

UDB:

¹³ I will send to you Hiram, one of my skilled craftsmen. ¹⁴ His mother was from the tribe of Dan, and his father was from here in Tyre. He is able to make things from gold and silver and bronze and iron and stone and wood, but he also makes nice things from purple and blue and red cloth, and he does all kinds of engraving. He can make things using any design that you give to him. He will work with your craftsmen, and the craftsmen who did work for your father, King David.

ULB:

¹³ Now I have sent a skillful man, gifted with understanding, Hiram, my expert. ¹⁴ He is the son of a woman of the daughters of Dan. His father was a man from Tyre. He is skilled at work in gold, silver, bronze, iron, stone, and in timber, and in purple, blue, and crimson wool, and fine linen. He is also skilled in making any kind of engraving and in making any kind of design. Let a place be made for him among your skilled workers, and with those of my master, David, your father.

translationWords:

- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [Dan](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [gold](#)
- [silver](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [purple](#)
- [lord, master, sir](#)

translationNotes:

- **Hiram** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 02 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 02 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 2:15-16

UDB:

¹⁵ Now please send us the wheat, barley, olive oil, and wine that you promised to send to us. ¹⁶ When you do that, my workers will cut in the Lebanon mountains all the logs that you need and bring them down to the sea. Then we will tie the logs together to form rafts with them, and float them in the sea to the city of Joppa. From there, you can arrange for men to take them up to Jerusalem.”

ULB:

¹⁵ Now then, the wheat and the barley, the oil and the wine, of which my master has spoken, let him send these things to his servants. ¹⁶ We will cut wood from Lebanon, as much wood as you need. We will take it to you as rafts by sea to Joppa, and you will carry it up to Jerusalem.”

translationWords:

- [Lebanon](#)
- [Joppa](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

translationNotes:

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 02 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 02 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 2:17-18

UDB:

¹⁷ Solomon told his workers to count all the people from other countries who were living in Israel, similar to what his father David had done. There were 153,600 of them. ¹⁸ Solomon assigned seventy thousand of them to carry materials, and eighty thousand to cut stone from quarries in the hills, and 3,600 of them to supervise the others and be sure that they worked steadily.

ULB:

¹⁷ Solomon counted all the foreigners who were in the land of Israel, following the method that David, his father, had counted them. They were found to be 153,600. ¹⁸ He assigned seventy thousand of them to carry loads, eighty thousand to be woodcutters in the mountains, and 3,600 to be supervisors to put the people to work.

translationWords:

- [foreigner, foreign, alien](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)

translationNotes:

- **to carry loads** - AT: “to carry heavy logs”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 02 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 02 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 3 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of King Solomon and the building of the temple continues in this chapter. (See: [temple](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Location of the temple

The location of the temple was very significant. Many important events in history occurred at this location.

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 03:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 3:1-3

UDB:

¹ Then Solomon's workers started to build the temple for Yahweh in Jerusalem. They built it on Mount Moriah, where an angel from Yahweh had appeared to his father David. They built it on the ground that Ornan, a descendant of the Jebus people group, had sold to David and where David said that it should be built. ² They began the work on the second day of the second month, when Solomon had been ruling almost four years.

³ The foundation of the temple was twenty-seven meters long and nine meters wide.

ULB:

3 ¹ Then Solomon began to build the house of Yahweh at Jerusalem on Mount Moriah, where Yahweh had appeared to David his father. He prepared the place that David had planned for it, at the threshing floor of Ornan the Jebusite. ² He began to build on the second day of the second month, in the fourth year of his reign. ³ Now these are the dimensions of the foundation that Solomon laid for the house of God. Using the old style cubit, the length was sixty cubits, and the width was twenty cubits.

translationWords:

- Solomon
- house of God, Yahweh's house
- Jerusalem
- thresh, threshing
- Jebusites, Jebus
- biblical time: day
- biblical time: year
- reign
- foundation, founded

translationNotes:

- **Mount Moriah** - This is the place where Abraham offered his son, Isaac, to God.
- **Ornan the Jebusite** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **the second day of the second month** - This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. The second day is near the middle of April on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **in the fourth year** - (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **sixty ... twenty** - "60 ... 20" (See: [Numbers](#))
- **cubits** - A cubit is 46 centimeters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 03 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 03 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 3:4-5

UDB:

⁴ The entrance room across the front of the temple was also nine meters long, the same as the temple's width. The entrance room was also nine meters high. Solomon caused workmen to coat the interior of the entrance room with thin sheets of pure gold.

⁵ Solomon's workers used panels of pine wood to line the main hall of the temple. Then they covered those panels with very thin sheets of pure gold. On them they carved images of palm trees and designs that resembled chains.

ULB:

⁴ The length of the portico at the front of the house was twenty cubits, matching the building's width. Its height was also twenty cubits, and Solomon overlaid its interior with pure gold. ⁵ He fashioned the ceiling of the main hall with cypress, which he overlaid with fine gold, and which he carved with palm trees and chains.

translationWords:

- [pure, purify, purification](#)
- [gold](#)
- [palm](#)

translationNotes:

- **portico** - AT: "porch"
- **cubits** - (See: [Biblical Distance](#))
- **He fashioned** - AT: "He made"
- **the main hall** - This is a reference to a large room, not a hallway.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 03 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 03 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 3:6-7

UDB:

⁶ They decorated the temple with very valuable stones. The gold that they used was from the land of Parvaim.

⁷ They covered the ceiling beams, doorframes, walls and doors of the temple with very thin sheets of gold. They also carved statues of winged creatures on the walls.

ULB:

⁶ He decorated the house with precious stones; the gold was gold from Parvaim. ⁷ He also overlaid its beams, thresholds, walls, and doors with gold; he carved cherubs on its walls.

translationWords:

- [threshold](#)
- [cherubim, cherub](#)

translationNotes:

- **precious stones** - Stones that were beautiful, highly valued, and used for decorations.
- **Parvaim** - A general term for the east. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 03 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 03 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 3:8-9

UDB:

⁸ They also built the very holy place inside the temple. It was nine meters long, the same as the temple's width. The width of the very holy place was the same. They covered its walls with sheets of pure gold that altogether weighed about twenty-one metric tons. ⁹ Each gold nail weighed one and three-fifth kilograms. They also covered the walls of the upper rooms with thin sheets of gold.

ULB:

⁸ He built the most holy place. Its length matched the house's width, twenty cubits, and its width was also twenty cubits. He overlaid it with fine gold, amounting to six hundred talents. ⁹ The weight of the nails was fifty shekels of gold. He overlaid its high surfaces with gold.

translationWords:

translationNotes:

- **cubits** - (See: [Biblical Distance](#))
- **talents** - (See: [Biblical Money](#))
- **shekels** - (See: [Biblical Money](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 03 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 03 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 3:10-12

UDB:

¹⁰ Solomon's workers made two statues of creatures with wings to put inside the very holy place. They covered those statues with very thin sheets of gold. **11-12** Each statue had two long wings. One wing of each statue touched the wall of the temple. The other wing of each statue touched a wing of the other statue. The wingspan of each cherub was about four and three-fifth meters across. One wing of each cherub touched the wall, while the other reached to the middle of room and touched the inner wing of the other cherub. Each wing was two and one-third meters long.

ULB:

¹⁰ He made two images of cherubs for the most holy place; craftsmen overlaid them with gold.[1]Some versions have, *two wooden images of cherubs* . ¹¹ The wings of the cherubs were twenty cubits long all together; the wing of one cherub was five cubits long, reaching to the wall of the room; the other wing was likewise five cubits, reaching to the wing of the other cherub. ¹² The wing of the other cherub was also five cubits, reaching to the wall of the room; its other wing was also five cubits, touching the wing of the first cherub.

translationWords:

- [image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure](#)

translationNotes:

- **two images of cherubs** - Some interpret the text as meaning the figures of cherubs were cast in metal.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 03 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 03 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 3:13-14

UDB:

¹³ It was nine meters from the outer wing of the one statue to the outer wing of the other statue. The statues faced the doorway leading to the main room.

¹⁴ Solomon's workers made a curtain to separate the main room from the very holy place. It was made of blue, purple, and red thread and fine linen. Figures of winged creatures were embroidered on the curtain.

ULB:

¹³ The wings of these cherubs spread a total of twenty cubits. The cherubs stood on their feet, with their faces toward the main hall. ¹⁴ He made the curtain of blue, purple, and crimson wool and fine linen, and he fashioned cherubs on it.

translationWords:

translationNotes:

- **fine linen** - AT: "high quality cloth" or "good cloth"

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 03 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 03 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 3:15-17

UDB:

¹⁵ They made two bronze pillars and put them at the entrance of the temple. They were each sixteen meters high. A separate piece was attached to the top of each pillar; each of the top pieces was two and one-third meters high. ¹⁶ The workers made carvings that resembled chains and put them on top of the pillars. They made carvings that resembled pomegranates and attached them to the chains. There were one hundred of them. ¹⁷ They set up the pillars in front of the temple, one the south side of the entrance and the other on the north side. The one of the south side was named Jakin and the one on the north side was named Boaz.

ULB:

¹⁵ Solomon also made two pillars, each thirty-five cubits high, for in front of the house; the capitals that were on the top of them were five cubits high. ¹⁶ He made chains for the pillars and put them on top of them; he also made one hundred pomegranates and joined them to the chains. ¹⁷ He set up the pillars in front of the temple, one on the right hand, and the other on the left; he named the pillar on the right Jakin, and the pillar on the left Boaz.

translationWords:

- [pillar, column](#)
- [pomegranate](#)
- [temple](#)
- [right hand](#)
- [Boaz](#)

translationNotes:

- **pomegranates** - These fruits were a symbol of plenty and abundance.
- **Jakin** - Possibly a name to describe God as “The One who establishes”. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Boaz** - This name means “in strength” and here is possibly used to describe God because it means, “In Him is strength”.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 03 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 03 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 4 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of King Solomon and the building of the temple continues in this chapter. (See: [temple](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Special construction

Not only is the temple constructed in a special way, the things that are used in the temple's sacrificial system and its decorations are constructed in a special way.

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 04:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 4:1-3

UDB:

¹ Solomon's workers made a square bronze altar, nine meters long on each side, and four and three-fifth meters high. ² They also made a very large round tank, having a circumference of fourteen meters. ³ Below the outer rim there were two rows of small figures of bulls that the craftsmen had cast as part of the metal of the basin. Each row had three hundred figures of bulls.

ULB:

⁴ ¹ Moreover he made an altar of bronze; its length was twenty cubits, and its width was twenty cubits. Its height was ten cubits. ² He also made the round sea of cast metal, ten cubits from brim to brim. Its height was five cubits, and the sea was thirty cubits in circumference. ³ Under the brim encircling the sea were bulls, ten to each cubit, cast in one piece with the sea when the sea itself was cast.

translationWords:

- altar
- bronze
- cow, calf, bull, cattle

translationNotes:

- **cubits** - (See: [Biblical Distance](#))
- **the round sea of cast metal** - This is a very large metal tank.
- **brim** - This is the top edge of the container.
- **circumference** - This is the distance around the outside of a circle.
- **ten to each cubit** - AT: "ten per cubit"

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 04 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 04 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 4:4-6

UDB:

⁴ The basin was set on twelve large figures of bulls, with the bulls facing outward. Three bulls faced north, three faced west, three faced south, and three faced east. ⁵ The sides of the tank were eight centimeters thick. The tank's brim was fashioned like the brim of a cup; it resembled a lily blossom. The tank held sixty-six kiloliters of water.

⁶ The craftsmen also made ten basins for washing the articles that were to be used in making offerings. But the priests used the very large tank for washing themselves.

ULB:

⁴ The sea stood on twelve oxen, three looking toward the north, three looking toward the west, three looking toward the south, and three looking toward the east. The sea was set on top of them, and all their hindquarters were toward the inside. ⁵ The sea was as thick as the width of a hand, and its brim was forged like the brim of a cup, like a lily blossom. The sea held three thousand baths of water. ⁶ He made also ten basins for washing things; he put five on the right hand, and five on the left; items used in performing the burnt offering were to be washed in them. The sea, however, was for the priests to wash in.

translationWords:

- [ox, oxen](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)

translationNotes:

- **hindquarters** - This is the back quarter of the body of an animal with four feet. See the same word used (only other reference in the Old Testament See: 1 Kings 7:25)
- **hand** - (See: [Biblical Distance](#))
- **its brim was forged like the brim of a cup, like a lily blossom** - AT: The brim had a soft, curved edge" (See: [Simile](#))
- **baths** - (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 04 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 04 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 4:7-8

UDB:

⁷ The craftsmen also made ten gold lampstands according to how Solomon had instructed them. They put them in the temple, five on the south side and five on the north side.

⁸ They made ten tables and put them in the temple, five on the south side and five on the north side. They also made one hundred gold basins.

ULB:

⁷ He made the ten lampstands of gold that were made from the instructions for their design; he placed them in the temple, five on the right hand, and five on the left. ⁸ He made ten tables and placed them in the temple, five on the right side, and five on the left. He made one hundred basins of gold.

translationWords:

- [lampstand](#)
- [gold](#)
- [temple](#)

translationNotes:

- **basins** - This is a shallow bowl used for washing.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 04 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 04 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 4:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ They constructed one courtyard for the priests, and a larger courtyard for the other people. They made doors for the courtyards and covered them with thin sheets of bronze. ¹⁰ They placed the very large tank on the east side of the temple, facing toward the south.

ULB:

⁹ Furthermore he made the court of the priests and the great court, and doors for the court; he overlaid their doors with bronze. ¹⁰ He placed the sea on the right side of the house, on the east, facing toward the south.

translationWords:

- [courtyard, court](#)

translationNotes:**Links:**

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 04 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 04 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 4:11-13

UDB:

¹¹ They also made pots and shovels for the ashes of the altar, and other small bowls.

So Hiram and his workers finished the work that King Solomon had given him to do at the temple of God. ¹² These were the things that they made:

- the two large pillars
- the two bowl shaped tops on top of the pillars
- the two sets of carvings that resembled chains to decorate the tops of the two pillars
- ¹³ the four hundred carvings that resembled pomegranates that were placed in two rows, they were made to decorate the tops of the two pillars.
-

ULB:

¹¹ Hiram made the pots, the shovels, and the sprinkling bowls.

So Hiram finished the work that he did for King Solomon in the house of God: ¹² the two pillars, the bowl-like capitals that were on top of the two pillars, and the two sets of decorative latticework to cover the two bowl-like capitals that were on top of the pillars. ¹³ He had made the four hundred pomegranates for the two sets of decorative latticework: two rows of pomegranates for each set of latticework to cover the two bowl-like capitals that were on the pillars.

translationWords:

- works, deeds, work, acts
- king
- Solomon
- house of God, Yahweh's house
- pillar, column
- pomegranate

translationNotes:

- **Hiram** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **the sprinkling bowls** - bowls that were used in the house of God for sprinkling the altar
- **bowl-like capitals** - The upper part of a pillar is called a capital. AT: "bowl-shaped tops" or "bowl-shaped upper parts" (See: [Simile](#))
- **decorative latticework** - This refers to the decorative carving or markings on the upper part of the pillars.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 04 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 04 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 4:14-16

UDB:

¹⁴ The pomegranate carvings also were used to decorate the stands, and the basins that were placed on them,

- ¹⁵ the very large tank, and the figures of twelve bulls underneath it,
- ¹⁶ the pots, shovels, meat forks, and all the other things needed for the work at the altar.

All those things that Hiram and his craftsmen made for King Solomon were of bronze that they polished for it to gleam brightly.

ULB:

¹⁴ He also made the stands and the basins to go on the stand; ¹⁵ one sea and the twelve bulls under it, ¹⁶ also the pots, shovels, meat forks, and all the other implements. Hiram the expert made them for King Solomon, for the house of Yahweh, of polished bronze.[1]Instead of *meat forks* , some versions have *bowels* .

translationWords:

- cow, calf, bull, cattle
- Yahweh
- bronze

translationNotes:

- **the basins** - AT: “the bowls”
- **one sea** - This is a large decorative washing container.
- **other implements** - other tools or objects used for the altar
- **polished bronze** - Bronze that the workmen polished for it to reflect light.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 04 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 04 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 4:17-18

UDB:

¹⁷ They made them by pouring melted bronze into the clay molds that Hiram had set up near the Jordan River between the cities of Succoth and Zarethan. ¹⁸ All of those things that Solomon told them to make used a very large amount of bronze; no one tried to weigh it all.

ULB:

¹⁷ The king had cast them in the plain of the Jordan, in the clay ground between Succoth and Zarethan. ¹⁸ Thus Solomon made all these vessels in great abundance; indeed, the weight of the bronze could not be known.

translationWords:

- [Jordan River](#)
- [Succoth](#)

translationNotes:

- **Zarethan** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Thus Solomon made all these vessels** - Solomon did not personally make the vessels, but he commanded them to be made.
- **the weight of the bronze could not be known** - AT: “the amount of bronze was very great” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 04 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 04 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 4:19-21

UDB:

¹⁹ Solomon's workers also made all these things that they later put into the temple:

- the golden altar
- the tables on which the priests put the bread to display before God
- ²⁰ the pure gold lampstands and the pure gold lamps, in which the priests put oil to burn in front of the very holy place (as God had told Moses that the priests that they should do)
- ²¹ the pure gold decorations that resembled flowers, and the lamps and tongs.
-

ULB:

¹⁹ Solomon made all the furnishings that were in the house of God, the golden altar also, and the tables on which the bread of the presence was to be placed; ²⁰ the lampstands with their lamps, that were designed to burn before the inner room—these were made of pure gold; ²¹ and the flowers, the lamps, and the tongs, of gold, pure gold.

translationWords:

- gold
- altar
- bread
- lampstand
- lamp

translationNotes:

- **Solomon made** - Solomon's workers made things at his command.
- **all the furnishings** - all of the bowls and tools that were used in the house of God.
- **the bread of the presence** - See how you translated this in [2:4](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 04 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 04 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 4:22**UDB:**

²² The workers also made the pure gold wick trimmers and bowls for sprinkling, and dishes and incense burners,

- the gold doors of the temple,
- the gold inner doors leading to the very holy place,
- the gold doors leading to the main hall.

ULB:

²² Also the lamp trimmers, basins, spoons, and incense burners were all made of pure gold. As for the entrance into the house, its inner doors into the most holy place and the doors of the house, that is, of the temple, were made of gold.

translationWords:

- [temple](#)

translationNotes:

- **lamp trimmers** - These would have trimmed the wicks of the lamps.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 04 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 04 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 5 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of King Solomon continues in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Moving the contents of the tent

Everything from the tent was moved into the new temple. This too was done in a special way. (See: [temple](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 05:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 5:1

UDB:

¹ After Solomon's workers had finished building the temple, Solomon put in the temple storerooms everything that his father David had dedicated to Yahweh—all the silver and gold and all the other things that were used at the temple.

ULB:

5 ¹ When all the work that Solomon did for the house of Yahweh was completed, Solomon brought in the things that David, his father, had set apart for this purpose, including the silver, the gold, and all the furnishings—he placed them into the treasuries of the house of God.

translationWords:

- works, deeds, work, acts
- Solomon
- house of God, Yahweh's house
- David
- ancestor, father, forefather
- set apart
- silver
- gold

translationNotes:

- **treasuries** - This is an area where things are kept or stored.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 05 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 05 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 5:2-3

UDB:

² Then King Solomon summoned to Jerusalem all the elders of Israel, all the leaders of the tribes and of the families. He wanted them to join in bringing to the temple Yahweh's sacred chest from Mount Zion, where it was in the part of the city called the city of David. ³ So all the leaders of Israel gathered together with the king, during the Festival of Shelters, in the seventh month.

ULB:

² Then Solomon assembled the elders of Israel, all the heads of the tribes, and the leaders of the families of the people of Israel, in Jerusalem, to bring up the ark of the covenant of Yahweh from the city of David, that is, Zion. ³ All the men of Israel assembled before the king at the feast, which was in the seventh month.

translationWords:

- elder
- head
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- tribe
- family
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Jerusalem
- ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of Yahweh
- Yahweh
- city of David
- Zion, Mount Zion
- king
- feast

translationNotes:

- **at the feast, which was in the seventh month** - This is the Festival of Shelters which is on the fifteenth day of the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is near the beginning of October on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)

- 2 Chronicles 05 General Notes
- 2 Chronicles 05 Translation Questions

2 Chronicles 5:4-6

UDB:

⁴ When they had all arrived, the descendants of Levi lifted up the sacred chest, ⁵ and they carried it and the sacred tent and the sacred things that were inside it. The priests, who were also descended from Levi, carried them. ⁶ King Solomon and many of the other people of Israel who had gathered there walked in front of the sacred chest. And they sacrificed a huge amount of sheep and bulls. No one was able to count them because there were very many.

ULB:

⁴ All the elders of Israel came, and the Levites took up the ark. ⁵ They brought up the ark, the tent of meeting, and all the holy furnishing that were in the tent. The priests who were of the tribe of Levi brought these things up. ⁶ King Solomon and all the assembly of Israel came together before the ark, sacrificing sheep and oxen that could not be counted.

translationWords:

- [Levite, Levi](#)
- [tent](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [sheep, ram, ewe](#)
- [ox, oxen](#)

translationNotes:

- **furnishing** - See how you translated this in [4:19](#)
- **sheep and oxen that could not be counted** - AT: “many sheep and oxen” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 05 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 05 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 5:7-8

UDB:

⁷ The priests then brought the sacred chest into the very holy place, into the inner room of the temple, and they placed it under the wings of the figures of winged creatures. ⁸ The wings of those figures spread out over the sacred chest and over the poles by which it was carried.

ULB:

⁷ The priests brought in the ark of the covenant of Yahweh to its place, into the inner room of the house, to the most holy place, under the wings of the cherubim. ⁸ For the cherubim spread out their wings over the place of the ark, and they covered the ark and the poles by which it was carried.

translationWords:

- [cherubim, cherub](#)

translationNotes:

- **to its place** - AT: “to its appointed place”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 05 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 05 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 5:9-10

UDB:

⁹ The poles were very long, with the result that they could be seen by people who were standing the entrance to the very holy place, but they could not be seen by anyone standing outside the temple. Those poles are still there. ¹⁰ The only things that were inside the sacred chest were the two stone tablets that Moses had put there at Mount Sinai, where Yahweh had made a covenant with the Israelites after they came out of Egypt.

ULB:

⁹ The poles were so long that their ends were seen from the holy place in front of the inner room, but they could not be seen from outside. They are there to this day. ¹⁰ There was nothing in the ark except the two tablets that Moses had put there at Horeb, when Yahweh made a covenant with the people of Israel, when they came out of Egypt.

translationWords:

- [holy place, most holy place](#)
- [Horeb](#)
- [covenant](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

translationNotes:

- **to this day** - This refers to a time when the book of 2 Chronicles was written. (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 05 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 05 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 5:11-12

UDB:

¹¹ Then the priests left the holy place in the temple. All the priests who were there, without concern for which group they were from, and they set themselves apart from others and performed the cleansing rituals God required of them before they could serve him. ¹² All the descendants of Levi who were musicians—Asaph, Heman, Jeduthun, their sons and their other relatives—stood on the east side of the altar. They were wearing linen clothes, and they were playing cymbals, harps, and lyres. There were 120 other priests who were blowing trumpets.

ULB:

¹¹ It came about that the priests came out of the holy place. All the priests who were present had consecrated themselves to Yahweh, not ordering themselves according to their divisions. ¹² Also the Levites who were the singers, all of them, including Asaph, Heman, Jeduthun, and their sons and brothers, clothed in fine linen and playing cymbals, harps, and lyres, stood at the east end of the altar. With them were 120 priests blowing trumpets.

translationWords:

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [consecrate](#)
- [harp](#)
- [lute, lyre](#)
- [altar](#)
- [trumpet](#)

translationNotes:

- **Asaph, Heman, Jeduthun** - The same three led the worship when David moved the ark to Jerusalem. David later appointed them as the temple musicians. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **sons and brothers** - AT: “their relatives” or “their descendants”
- **cymbals** - two thin, round metal plates that are hit together to make a loud sound (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 05 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 05 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 5:13-14

UDB:

¹³ The men blowing trumpets, those playing the cymbals and other musical instruments, and the singers, made music together, praising Yahweh and singing this song:

”Yahweh is good to us;
he faithfully loves us forever.”

Then suddenly the temple was filled with a cloud. ¹⁴ The glory of Yahweh filled the temple, with the result that the priests were not able to continue doing their work.

ULB:

¹³ It came about that the trumpeters and singers made music together, making one sound to be heard for praising and thanking Yahweh. They raised their voices with the trumpets and cymbals and other instruments, and they praised Yahweh. They sang, “For he is good, for his covenant loyalty endures forever.” Then the house, the house of Yahweh, was filled with a cloud. ¹⁴ The priests could not stand in order to serve because of the cloud, for the glory of Yahweh filled his house.

translationWords:

- [praise](#)
- [covenant](#)
- [forever](#)
- [house](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh’s house](#)
- [serve, service](#)
- [glory, glorious](#)

translationNotes:

- **raised their voices** - AT: “they sang” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **cymbals** - See how you translated this in [5:12](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 05 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 05 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 6 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of King Solomon continues in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Temple dedication

Solomon dedicated the temple with a prayer asking God to honor the temple. It was common to dedicate something important to God when it was completed. (See: [temple](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 06:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 6:1-3

UDB:

¹ Then Solomon prayed, "Yahweh, you said that you would live in a dark cloud. ² But now I have built a glorious temple for you to live in forever!"

³ Then while all the people stood there, Solomon turned toward the people and asked God to bless them.

ULB:

6 ¹ Then Solomon said, "Yahweh has said that he would live in thick darkness, ² but I have built you a lofty residence, a place for you to live in forever." ³ Then the king turned around and blessed all the assembly of Israel, while all the assembly of Israel was standing.

translationWords:

- Solomon
- Yahweh
- darkness
- life, live, living, alive
- forever
- king
- bless, blessed, blessing
- assembly, assemble
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel

translationNotes:

- **a lofty residence** - AT: "an exalted place to live" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **all the assembly of Israel was standing** - AT: "while the people stood" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 6:4-6

UDB:

⁴ He said to them,

”Let us praise Yahweh, the God to whom we Israelites belong, who has caused to happen what he promised to my father David. What he said to David was this:

⁵ ’From the time that I brought my people out of Egypt, I have never chosen a city in Israel in which a temple should be built for people to worship me there. Nor did I choose anyone to be the leader of my Israelite people. ⁶ But now I have chosen Jerusalem to be the place for people to worship me, and I have chosen you, David, to rule my Israelite people.”

ULB:

⁴ He said, ”May Yahweh, the God of Israel, be praised, who spoke to David my father, and has fulfilled it with his own hands, saying, ⁵ ’Since the day that I brought my people out of the land of Egypt, I chose no city out of all the tribes of Israel in which to build a house, in order for my name to be there. Neither did I choose any man to be prince over my people Israel. ⁶ However, I have chosen Jerusalem, so that my name might be there, and I have chosen David to be over my people Israel.’

translationWords:

- God
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- David
- people of God, my people
- Egypt, Egyptian
- tribe
- name
- prince, princess
- chosen one, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, the elect
- Jerusalem

translationNotes:

- **has fulfilled it with his own hands** - has caused it to happen or has ensured that his promises were fulfilled (See: [Personification](#))
- **in order for my name to be there** - AT: “In order to make myself known there.” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 6:7-9

UDB:

⁷ Then Solomon said further, "My father David wanted to build a temple for Yahweh, the God to whom we Israelites belong. ⁸ But Yahweh said to him, 'It is good that you wanted to build a house for me. ⁹ However, you are not the one who I want to build the temple, It is one of your own sons who will build it.'

ULB:

⁷ Now it was in the heart of David my father, to build a house for the name of Yahweh, the God of Israel. ⁸ But Yahweh said to David my father, 'In that it was in your heart to build a house for my name, you did well for it to be in your heart. ⁹ Nevertheless, you must not build the house; instead, your son, one who will come from your loins, will build the house for my name.'

translationWords:

- [heart](#)
- [loins](#)

translationNotes:

- **in the heart of David** - AT: "a desire of David. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **for the name of Yahweh** - Yahweh's name represented His total presence. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 6:10-11

UDB:

¹⁰ And Yahweh has done what he promised to do. I have become the king of Israel to rule after my father, and I am ruling the people, as Yahweh promised, and I have arranged for this temple to be built for us to worship Yahweh, the God to whom we Israelites belong. ¹¹ I have put the sacred chest in the temple, in which are the stone tablets showing the covenant that Yahweh made with us Israelite people.”

ULB:

¹⁰ Yahweh has carried out the word that he had said, for I have arisen in the place of David my father, and I sit on the throne of Israel, as Yahweh promised. I have built the house for the name of Yahweh, the God of Israel. ¹¹ I have placed the ark there, in which is Yahweh’s covenant, which he made with the people of Israel.”

translationWords:

- [word](#)
- [throne](#)
- [promise](#)
- [ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of Yahweh](#)

translationNotes:

- **in which is Yahweh’s covenant** - AT: “in which are the stone tablets showing the covenant that Yahweh made with us Israelite people.” (UDB)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 6:12-13

UDB:

¹² Then Solomon stood in front of the altar that was in front of the people of Israel who had gathered there. He spread out his hands as he began to pray. ¹³ Now His workers had built a bronze platform there for him to stand on, which was two and one-third meters square and one and one-half meters high. They had put it in the outer courtyard. Solomon mounted that platform and then knelt down in front of all the people of Israel who had gathered there, and he spread out his arms toward heaven.

ULB:

¹² Solomon stood before the altar of Yahweh in the presence of all the assembly of Israel, and spread out his hands. ¹³ For he had made a bronze platform, five cubits long, five cubits wide, and three cubits high. He had placed it in the middle of the courtyard. He stood on it and knelt down before all the assembly of Israel, and then he spread out his hands toward the heavens.

translationWords:

- altar
- assembly, assemble
- bronze
- courtyard, court
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

translationNotes:

- **in the presence of all the assembly of Israel** - AT: "in front of the people of Israel who had gathered there."
- **cubits** - (See: [Biblical Distance](#))
- **he spread out his hands toward the heavens** - Solomon lifted up his hands and held them high as he knelt on the platform to pray.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 6:14-15

UDB:

¹⁴ Then he prayed,

”Yahweh, the God to whom we Israelite people belong, there is no God like you in heaven or on the earth. You solemnly promised in your covenant that you would faithfully love us, and that is what you have done for us who earnestly do what you want us to do.

¹⁵ You have done the things that you promised my father David, who served you very well, that you would do. Truly, you promised to do those things for him, and today we see that by your power you have caused it all to happen.

ULB:

¹⁴ He said, ”Yahweh, God of Israel, there is no God like you in the heavens or on the earth, who keeps covenant and steadfast love with your servants who walk before you with all their heart; ¹⁵ you who have kept with your servant David my father, what you promised him. Yes, you spoke with your mouth and have fulfilled it with your hand, as it is today.

translationWords:

- [God](#)
- [earth, earthly](#)
- [covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [walk](#)
- [heart](#)

translationNotes:

- **servants who walk before you with all their heart** - AT: ”us who genuinely try to do what you want us to do. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **you spoke with your mouth and have fulfilled it with your hand** - This refers to the promise that God made to David that his son would build the temple. AT: “you have fulfilled your promise.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 6:16-17

UDB:

¹⁶ So now, Yahweh, the God we Israelites worship Israel, as you promised your servant David, my father, please make sure that he will always have a descendant who will be king of Israel. For you promise you would do this if his descendants were faithful to you. ¹⁷ So now, God of us Israelite people, cause what you promised David, who served you well, to become true.

ULB:

¹⁶ Now then, Yahweh, God of Israel, carry out what you have promised to your servant David my father, when you said, 'You will not fail to have a man in my sight to sit on the throne of Israel, if only your descendants are careful to walk in my law, as you have walked before me.' ¹⁷ Now then, God of Israel, I pray that the promise you made to your servant David will come true.

translationWords:

- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [descendant, descended from](#)
- [law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [true, truth, come true](#)

translationNotes:

- **carry out** - This is a request. AT: "please do"
- **You will not fail to have a man in my sight to sit on the throne of Israel** - AT: "you will always have one of David's descendants as king" (See: [Double Negatives](#))
- **as you have walked before me** - AT: "in the way that David did" (See: [Simile](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 6:18-20

UDB:

¹⁸ But, my God, will you really live on earth among us? This temple I have built cannot contain you; not even the universe and heaven itself can contain you. ¹⁹ But Yahweh, my God, please listen to my prayer, while I am pleading with this day and do what I am requesting. ²⁰ Always protect this temple, this place where you said you would be present, in order that you might always hear me when I pray, for I am your servant.

ULB:

¹⁸ But will God actually live with mankind on the earth? Look, the entire universe and heaven itself cannot contain you—how much less can this temple that I have built! ¹⁹ Yet please respect this prayer of your servant and his request, Yahweh my God; listen to the cry and prayer that your servant prays before you. ²⁰ May your eyes be open toward this temple day and night, the place where you promised to put your name. May you listen to the prayer your servant prays toward this place.

translationWords:

- [temple](#)

translationNotes:

- **But will God actually live with mankind on the earth?** - AT: “But God, surely you will not actually live with mankind on the earth.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **the entire universe and heaven itself** - See how you translated this in [2:6](#).
- **listen to the cry and prayer** - The words “cry” and “prayer” share similar meanings. Together they emphasize the earnestness of his prayer. AT: “please answer my earnest request.” (See: [Doublet](#))
- **May your eyes be open toward this temple day and night** - “Please help those who come to you in the temple, at any time—day or night” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **where you promised to put your name** - AT: “where you said you would make people know you”
- **your servant prays toward this place** - The writer prays in the direction of the Temple.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 6:21**UDB:**

²¹ Listen to me when I pray, and listen to your Israelite people when they pray, whether we are here, or even if we just face in this direction. Listen from heaven, where you live; and when you hear us pray, forgive us.

ULB:

²¹ So listen to the requests of your servant and of your people Israel when we pray toward this place. Yes, listen from the place where you live, from the heavens; and when you listen, forgive.

translationWords:

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [forgive, forgiveness](#)

translationNotes:

- **when you listen, forgive** - AT: “when you hear the prayers, please forgive their sin”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 6:22-23

UDB:

²² If people accuse someone of doing something wrong to another person, and if they bring him in front of your altar outside this holy temple, and if he says, 'I did not do that; may God punish me if I am not telling the truth,' ²³ then please listen from heaven and decide who is telling the truth. Then punish the person who is guilty as he deserves to be punished, and do good to the other person as a reward for his innocence.

ULB:

²² If a man sins against his neighbor and is required to swear an oath, and if he comes and swears an oath before your altar in this house, ²³ then hear from the heavens and act and judge your servants, repaying the wicked, to bring his conduct on his own head. Declare the righteous innocent, to give him the reward for his righteousness.

translationWords:

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- neighbor
- oath, swear, swear by
- altar
- judge, judgment
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- head
- declare, declaration
- righteous, righteousness
- innocent
- reward

translationNotes:

- **to bring his conduct on his own head** - AT: "by punishing him as he deserves to be punished" (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 6:24-25

UDB:

²⁴ And suppose that your Israelite people are defeated by their enemies because they sinned against you, and forced to go to some distant country. Suppose further that they turn away from their sinful behavior and turn toward this temple and acknowledge that you have justly punished them; and suppose that they beg you to forgive them. ²⁵ Then please listen to them from heaven and forgive your them for the sins that they have committed, and bring them back to this land that you gave to our ancestors.

ULB:

²⁴ When your people Israel are defeated by an enemy because they have sinned against you, if they turn back to you, confess your name, pray, and request forgiveness before you in this temple— ²⁵ then please listen from the heavens and forgive the sin of your people Israel; bring them back to the land that you gave to them and to their ancestors.

translationWords:

- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [turn, turn away, turn back](#)
- [confess, confession](#)

translationNotes:

- **please listen from the heavens and** - AT: “Please, honor their prayer” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **you gave to them** - AT: “you promised to them”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 6:26-27

UDB:

²⁶ When you do not allow any rain to fall because the people have sinned against you—then, if they turn away from their sinful behavior and humbly pray to you, you who are present in this place, ²⁷ then listen from heaven and forgive the sins of your people. Teach them the right way to conduct their lives. Then send rain on the land that you gave to your people forever.

ULB:

²⁶ When the skies are shut up and there is no rain because the people have sinned against you—if they pray toward this place, confess your name, and turn from their sin when you have afflicted them—²⁷ then listen in heaven and forgive the sin of your servants and of your people Israel, when you direct them to the good way in which they should walk. Send rain on your land, which you have given to your people as an inheritance.

translationWords:

- [confess, confession](#)
- [afflict, affliction](#)
- [walk](#)
- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir](#)

translationNotes:

- **When the skies are shut up and there is no rain** - The phrase “the skies are shut up” means that no rain falls from the sky. AT: “When you do not allow any rain to fall.” (See: [Doublet](#))
- **confess your name** - With their words and by their actions, they honor God and His authority. (See: [Idiom](#))
- **turn from their sin** - AT: stop their evil ways”
- **direct them to the good way in which they should walk** - AT: “show them how to live righteously”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 6:28-31

UDB:

²⁸ And when the people of this land experience famines, or if there is a plague or mildew or locusts or grasshoppers, or when their enemies surround any of their cities in order to attack them—if any of these disaster happens to them—²⁹ and then if your Israelite people earnestly plead, or if even just one person does so—if they stretch out their hands toward this temple and pray to you because they know the weakness and sorrow in their own hearts—³⁰ then listen from your home in heaven and forgive them. You alone know what each person is thinking, so reward each person according to everything that he does. ³¹ Do this in order that they might honor you and conduct their lives as you want them to, all the time that they live in this land that you gave to our ancestors.

ULB:

²⁸ Suppose there is famine in the land, or suppose that there is disease, blight or mildew, locusts or caterpillars; or suppose that its enemies attack the city gates in their land, or that there is any plague or sickness—²⁹ and suppose then that prayers and requests are made by a person or by all your people Israel—each knowing the plague and sorrow in his own heart as he spreads out his hands toward this temple. ³⁰ Then listen from heaven, the place where you live; forgive, and reward every person for all his ways; you know his heart, because you and you only know the hearts of human beings. ³¹ Do this so that they may fear you, so that they may walk in your ways all the days that they live on the land that you gave to our ancestors.

translationWords:

- **famine**
- **locust**
- **gate, gate bar**
- **plague**
- **heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly**
- **forgive, forgiveness**
- **know, knowledge, make known**
- **fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh**

translationNotes:

- **each knowing the plague and sorrow in his own heart** - Possible meanings are: “knowing the sin in his own heart” or “knowing in his heart that the plague and sorrow are the result of his own sin.”
- **he spreads out his hands** - See how you translated this in [6:12](#)

- **all his ways** - AT: “what he has done”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 6:32-33

UDB:

³² There will be some foreigners who do not belong to your Israelite people who have come here from countries far away because they have heard that you are very great and powerful. If they turn toward this temple and pray, ³³ then from your home in heaven please listen to their prayer and do for them what they request you to do. Do that in order that all the people groups in the world will honor and obey you, as your people of Israel do. And do this so that they will know that you are present in this temple that I have built.

ULB:

³² As for the foreigner who does not belong to your people Israel, but who—because of your great name, your mighty hand, and your outstretched arm—comes and prays toward this house, ³³ then please listen from heaven, the place where you live, and do all that the foreigner asks of you, so that all the people of the earth may know your name and fear you, as do your own people Israel, and that they might know that this house I have built is called by your name.

translationWords:

- [foreigner, foreign, alien](#)
- [mighty, might](#)
- [earth, earthly](#)
- [fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh](#)

translationNotes:

- **your great name, your mighty hand, and your outstretched arm** - AT: “you are very great and powerful” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **called by your name** - AT: “known as the house of Yahweh, your possession.”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 6:34-35

UDB:

³⁴ When you send your people to go and attack their enemies, if they pray to you, no matter where they are, and if they turn toward this city that you have chosen and toward this temple that I have caused to be built to honor you, ³⁵ then will you please listen from heaven to their prayers. Listen to what they plead for you to do, and give them help.

ULB:

³⁴ Suppose that your people go out to battle against their enemies, by whatever way you may send them, and suppose that they pray to you toward this city that you have chosen, and toward the house that I have built for your name. ³⁵ Then listen from the heavens to their prayer, their request, and help their cause.

translationWords:

- [people of God, my people](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)

translationNotes:

- **I have built** - AT: "The people have built under my leadership" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 6:36-39**UDB:**

³⁶ It is true that everyone sins. So when your people sin against you, and you become angry with them, you might allow their enemies to capture them and take them to their countries, even to countries that are far away. ³⁷ When that happens, while they are in those distant countries, if they say ‘We have sinned; we have done things that are wrong and have done things that are very wicked,’ ³⁸ suppose that they repent very sincerely and pray facing this land that you gave their ancestors, and facing this city that you chose, and facing this temple that I have built for you to be present in. ³⁹ Then from your home in heaven listen to their prayer, and listen to them while they plead for your help, and do what they ask you to do, and forgive your people who have sinned against you.

ULB:

³⁶ Suppose they sin against you—since there is no one who does not sin—and suppose that you are angry with them and hand them over to the enemy, so that the enemy carries them away and takes them as captives to their land, whether distant or near. ³⁷ Then suppose they realize they are in the land where they have been exiled, and suppose that they repent and seek favor from you in the land of their captivity. Suppose that they say, ‘We have acted perversely and sinned. We have behaved wickedly.’ ³⁸ Suppose that they return to you with all their heart and with all their soul in the land of their captivity, where they took them as captives, and suppose that they pray toward their land, which you gave to their ancestors, and toward the city that you chose, and toward the house that I have built for your name. ³⁹ Then listen from the heavens, the place where you live, to their prayer and to their requests, and help their cause. Forgive your people, who have sinned against you.

translationWords:

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- angry, anger
- captive, captivity
- exile, the Exile
- repent, repentance
- favor, favorable, favoritism
- perverse, perversely, pervert
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- soul

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [Hypothetical Situations](#)
- **the enemy carries them away and takes them as captives to their land** - the enemy takes them as captives and brings them to the land of their enemies”
- **pray toward their land** - This refers to Israel. AT: “and pray facing this land that you gave their ancestors,”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 6:40-42**UDB:**

⁴⁰ Now, my God, look at us as we pray to you in this place, and please listen to us.

⁴¹ Yahweh our God, come and stay in this place with the sacred chest,
the chest that shows that you are powerful.

Yahweh God, cause your priests to know clearly that you have rescued them.

Cause us your people to rejoice because of all the good things that
you do for us.

⁴² Yahweh God, do not reject me, the king whom you have appointed to be
the king of Israel;

do not forget how faithfully were to David, your servant, because of
your covenant with him.”

ULB:

⁴⁰ Now, my God, I beg you, let your eyes be open, and let your ears be attentive to the prayer that is made in this place. ⁴¹ Now then arise, Yahweh God, to your resting place, you and the ark of your strength. Let your priests, Yahweh God, be clothed with salvation, and let your saints rejoice in your goodness. ⁴² Yahweh God, do not turn the face of your anointed away from you. Keep in mind your acts of covenant loyalty for David, your servant.”

translationWords:

- God
- raise, rise, risen, arise, arose
- rest
- ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- clothe, clothed
- salvation
- saints
- rejoice
- good, goodness
- turn, turn away, turn back
- face
- anoint, anointed
- mind
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love

- [David](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)

translationNotes:

- **let your eyes be open, and let your ears be attentive** - AT: please see us and listen” (See: [Hyperbole](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 7 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of King Solomon continues in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Solomon's dream

God appeared again to Solomon in a dream and said the temple was acceptable and he honored it with his presence. He would remain as long as Israel obeyed him. If they worshiped other gods and idols he would let their enemies destroy the temple. (See: [temple](#) and [false god, foreign god, god, goddess](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 07:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 7:1-3

UDB:

¹ When Solomon finished praying, fire came down from the sky and burned up the animals that the people had sacrificed, as well as the other offerings. And the power and light of Yahweh filled the temple. ² The light was extremely bright, with the result that the priests could not enter the temple of Yahweh. ³ When all the Israelite people who were there saw the fire coming down and the light of Yahweh above the temple, they prostrated themselves with their faces touching the stone pavement. They worshiped and thanked Yahweh, saying,

‘Yahweh is always good to us;

he will love us forever, as he promised to do.’

ULB:

⁷ ¹ Now when Solomon had finished praying, fire came down from heaven and consumed the burnt offerings and sacrifices, and the glory of Yahweh filled the house. ² The priests could not enter the house of Yahweh, because his glory filled his house. ³ All the people of Israel looked on when the fire came down and the glory of Yahweh was on the house. They bowed with their faces to the ground on the stone pavement, worshiped, and gave thanks to Yahweh. They said, “For he is good, for his covenant loyalty endures forever.”

translationWords:

- Solomon
- pray, prayer
- fire
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- consume
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- sacrifice, offering
- glory, glorious
- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- house of God, Yahweh’s house
- worship
- bow, bow down
- good, goodness
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love
- forever

translationNotes:

- **with their faces to the ground** - This is a position of prayer. AT: “they prostrated themselves with their faces touching the stone pavement.”
- **his covenant loyalty** - AT: “God’s covenant faithfulness” or “God has promised to love the people of Israel forever”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 07 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 07 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 7:4-6

UDB:

4-5 Then the king and all the people who were there dedicated the temple to Yahweh by offering more sacrifices to him. King Solomon offered twenty-two thousand cattle and 120,000 sheep and goats to be sacrificed. ⁶ The priests stood in their positions, and the other descendants of Levi stood in their positions holding the musical instruments to praise Yahweh, instruments that King David had ordered to be made for praising Yahweh and thanking him. They sang, “He faithfully loves us forever.” Opposite the other descendants of Levi the priests stood, blowing their trumpets, while all the Israelite people were standing and listening.

ULB:

⁴ So the king and all the people offered sacrifices to Yahweh. ⁵ King Solomon offered a sacrifice of twenty-two thousand oxen and 120,000 sheep and goats. So the king and all the people dedicated the house of God. ⁶ The priests stood, each standing where they serve; the Levites also with instruments of music of Yahweh, which David the king had made to give thanks to Yahweh in the song, “For his covenant faithfulness endures for ever.” All the priests sounded trumpets before them, and all Israel stood.

translationWords:

- king
- sheep, ram, ewe
- goat, kid
- dedicate, dedication
- serve, service
- house of God, Yahweh’s house
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love
- forever
- trumpet
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel

translationNotes:

- **each standing where they serve** - AT: “each standing in there appointed place”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 07 General Notes](#)

- 2 Chronicles 07 Translation Questions

2 Chronicles 7:7

UDB:

⁷ Solomon dedicated the middle part of the courtyard in front of the temple. Then he presented offerings to be completely burned there along with the fat of the animals to be sacrificed to maintain fellowship with Yahweh. The priests burned them there in the courtyard because in addition to those things there were offerings of flour, with the result that there was not enough space on the bronze altar to burn all those sacrifices.

ULB:

⁷ Solomon set apart the middle of the courtyard in front of the house of Yahweh. There he offered the burnt offerings and the fat of the fellowship offerings, because the bronze altar that he had made was not able to hold the burnt offerings, the grain offerings, and the fat.

translationWords:

- [set apart](#)
- [courtyard, court](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [fellowship offering](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [grain offering](#)

translationNotes:

- **was not able to hold the burnt offerings** - AT: “was not able to hold the large amount of burnt offerings”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 07 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 07 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 7:8-10

UDB:

⁸ Solomon and the other people celebrated the Festival of Shelters for seven days. There was a huge group of people who celebrated with him. Some of them came from as far away as Lebohamath in the far north and from the border of Egypt in the far south. ⁹ On the eighth day they gathered again to worship Yahweh. They had celebrated the dedication of the altar for seven days and the Festival of Shelters for seven days. ¹⁰ Then on the next day Solomon sent them to their homes. They were very joyful because of all the good things that Yahweh had done for David and Solomon and for all his Israelite people.

ULB:

⁸ So Solomon held the festival at that time for seven days, and all Israel with him, a very great assembly, from Lebo Hamath to the brook of Egypt. ⁹ On the eighth day they held a solemn assembly, for they kept the dedication of the altar for seven days, and the feast for seven days. ¹⁰ On the twenty-third day of the seventh month, Solomon sent the people away to their homes with glad and joyful hearts because of the goodness that Yahweh had shown to David, Solomon, and Israel, his people.

translationWords:

- festival
- assembly, assemble
- Egypt, Egyptian
- altar
- good, goodness
- David
- Solomon
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel

translationNotes:

- **and all Israel with him** - People from all over Israel came. (See: [Hyperbole](#))
- **Lebo Hamath** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **a solemn assembly** - This was a special religious gathering.
- **the twenty-third day of the seventh month** - This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. The twenty-third day is near the middle of October on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **with glad and joyful hearts** - The words “glad” and “joyful” mean basically the same thing. Together they emphasize the intensity of joy. AT: “with very glad hearts.” (See: [Doublet](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 07 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 07 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 7:11-12

UDB:

¹¹ In this way, Solomon's workers finished building the temple and Solomon's palace. And Solomon finished doing everything else that he had planned to do. ¹² Then Yahweh appeared to him one night in a dream and said to him, "I have heard your prayer, and I have chosen this temple to be the place where my people will offer sacrifices to me.

ULB:

¹¹ Thus Solomon finished the house of Yahweh and his own house. Everything that came into Solomon's heart to make in the house of Yahweh and in his own house, he successfully carried out. ¹² Yahweh appeared to Solomon by night and said to him, "I have heard your prayer, and I have chosen this place for myself as a house of sacrifice.

translationWords:

- [heart](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)

translationNotes:

- **carried out** - "finished"
- **I have heard your prayer** - AT: "I have listened to your prayer"

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 07 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 07 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 7:13-15

UDB:

¹³ When I prevent any rain from falling, or when I command locusts to eat all the crops, or when I send a plague among my people, ¹⁴ then if the people who belong to me, are sorry for their sins and stop doing them, and if they plead with me for me to forgive, then I will indeed listen from heaven. I will forgive them for having sinned, and I will cause them to prosper again. ¹⁵ I will listen to them when they pray to me in this place.

ULB:

¹³ Suppose that I shut up the heavens so that there is no rain, or if I command the locust to devour the land, or if I send disease among my people, ¹⁴ then if my people, who are called by my name, will humble themselves, pray, seek my face, and turn from their wicked ways, I will hear from heaven, forgive their sin, and heal their land. ¹⁵ Now my eyes will be open and my ears attentive to the prayers that are made in this place.

translationWords:

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- command, to command, commandment
- devour
- people of God, my people
- call, calling, called, call out
- name
- humble, humility
- face
- turn, turn away, turn back
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- forgive, forgiveness
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

translationNotes:

- **shut up the heavens so that there is no rain** - AT: “stopped the rain” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **devour the land** - The word “land” is used to mean “all the living plants and crops.” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **seek my face** - AT: “search for God” or “try to get God to pay attention to you” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **my eyes will be open ... my ears attentive** - The words “eyes” and “ears” refer to God, who chooses to see and hear their prayers. AT: “I will see them and I will listen” (See: **Synecdoche**)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 07 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 07 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 7:16-18

UDB:

¹⁶ I have decided to be present in this temple, and I have set apart it for myself. I will protect it for all time.

¹⁷ And as for you, if you obey me as David, your father, did, and if you do all that I command you to do, and if you obey all my laws and decrees, ¹⁸ I will make sure that your descendants will always be kings, which is what I promised to David your father, when I told him, ‘Persons from your descendants will always be the kings of Israel.’

ULB:

¹⁶ For I have now chosen and set apart this house that my name may be there forever. My eyes and my heart will be there every day. ¹⁷ As for you, if you walk before me as David your father walked, obeying all that I have commanded you and keeping my statutes and my decrees, ¹⁸ then I will establish the throne of your kingdom, as I said in a covenant with David your father, when I said, ‘A descendant of yours will never fail to be ruler in Israel.’

translationWords:

- [set apart](#)
- [forever](#)
- [command, to command, commandment](#)
- [statute, statutes](#)
- [decree](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [covenant](#)
- [descendant, descended from](#)

translationNotes:

- **My eyes and my heart** - “My love, careful watch, and protection” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **if you walk before me as David your father walked** - AT: “If you obey me as David, your father, did.” (See: [Simile](#))
- **establish the throne** - AT: “I will make sure that your descendants will always be kings,” (UDB)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)

- 2 Chronicles 07 General Notes
- 2 Chronicles 07 Translation Questions

2 Chronicles 7:19-20

UDB:

¹⁹ But if you Israelites turn away from me and disobey the decrees and commands that I have given to you, and you start to worship other gods, ²⁰ I will cause you to be driven away from this land that I have given to you, and I will reject the temple that I have set apart for myself. I will make people from all the other people groups laugh about what happened to it.

ULB:

¹⁹ But if you turn away, and forsake my statutes and my commandments that I have placed before you, and if you go worship other gods and bow down to them, ²⁰ then I will uproot them from out of my ground that I have given them. This house that I have set apart for my name, I will cast away from before me, and I will make it a proverb and a joke among all the peoples.

translationWords:

- [turn, turn away, turn back](#)
- [forsake, forsaken, forsook](#)
- [statute, statutes](#)
- [command, to command, commandment](#)
- [worship](#)
- [set apart](#)
- [proverb](#)

translationNotes:

- **I will uproot them from out of my ground that I have given them** - AT: "I will remove them from my land." Compares pulling plants up by their roots from the soil, with the removal of God's people of Israel from his land. The results would be destruction of the nation and sadness of the people. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 07 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 07 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 7:21-22

UDB:

²¹ Although this temple is now so magnificent, when that happens, all the people who pass by will be appalled, and they will say, ‘Why has Yahweh done terrible things like this to this country and to this temple?’ ²² And others will reply, ‘It happened because they rejected Yahweh, the God to whom their ancestors belonged, the one who brought their ancestors out of Egypt, and they have chosen to worship other gods and try to please them. And that is why Yahweh has caused them to experience all these disasters.’”

ULB:

²¹ Even though this temple is so lofty now, everyone who passes by it will be shocked and will hiss. They will ask, ‘Why has Yahweh done this to this land and to this house?’ ²² Others will answer, ‘Because they forsook Yahweh, their God, who had brought their ancestors out of the land of Egypt, and they laid hold of other gods and bowed down to them and worshiped them. That is why Yahweh has brought all this disaster on them.’”

translationWords:

- [temple](#)
- [forsake, forsaken, forsook](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [bow, bow down](#)
- [worship](#)

translationNotes:

- **they forsook Yahweh** - “they were unfaithful to Yahweh” or “they did not obey Yahweh”
- **they laid hold of other gods and bowed down to them and worshiped them** - AT: “they have chosen to worship other gods and try to please them.” (UDB) (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 07 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 07 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 8 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of King Solomon continues in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Solomon's victories

Solomon achieved many victory when he was king. This chapter records many of these victories. Israel is at its height of power when Solomon was king.

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 08:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 8:1-2

UDB:

¹ Solomon's workers took twenty years to build the temple and his palace. ² Then his workers rebuilt the cities that King Hiram had given back to him, and Solomon sent Israelites to live in those cities.

ULB:

8¹ It came about at the end of twenty years, during which Solomon had built the house of Yahweh and his own house, ² that Solomon rebuilt the towns that Hiram had given to him, and he settled the people of Israel in them.

translationWords:

- [Solomon](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)

translationNotes:

- **It came about at the end of twenty years** - AT: After 20 years,"
- **Hiram** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 08 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 08 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 8:3-4

UDB:

³ Solomon's army then went to the town of Hamathzobah and captured it. ⁴ They also rebuilt walls around the city of Tadmor in the wilderness, and in the region of Hamath, for all the towns where they kept supplies.

ULB:

³ Solomon attacked Hamathzobah and defeated it. ⁴ He built Tadmor in the wilderness, and all the store cities, which he built in Hamath.

translationWords:

- [desert, wilderness](#)

translationNotes:

- **Solomon attacked Hamathzobah** - Solomon represents his whole fighting army. AT: "Solomon's army attacked the town of Hamathzobah" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Tadmor ... Hamath** - Cities in Syria.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 08 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 08 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 8:5-6

UDB:

⁵ They rebuilt the cities of Upper Bethhoron and Lower Bethhoron, and built walls around them with gates and bars for the gates. ⁶ They also rebuilt the city of Baalath and all the cities where supplies were kept, and the cities where Solomon's chariots and horses were kept. Solomon's workers built whatever he wanted them to build, in Jerusalem and in Lebanon, and in other places in the area that he ruled.

ULB:

⁵ Also he built Bethhoron the Upper, and Bethhoron the Lower, cities fortified with walls, gates, and bars. ⁶ He built Baalath and all the store cities that he possessed, and all the cities for his chariots and the cities for his horsemen, and whatever he wished to build for his pleasure in Jerusalem, in Lebanon, and in all the lands under his rule.

translationWords:

- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [possess, possession](#)
- [chariot](#)
- [horsemen](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Lebanon](#)
- [ruler, rulers, rule](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 08 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 08 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 8:7-8

UDB:

⁷ Solomon forced people from many other groups who were not Israelites to work for him as if they were slaves. They were people from the Heth, Amor, Periz, Hiv, and Jebus people groups. ⁸ They were descendants of groups whom the Israelites had not completely destroyed. Solomon forced them to become his laborers, and they are still that at this present time.

ULB:

⁷ As for all the people who were left of the Hittites, the Amorites, the Perizzites, the Hivites, and the Jebusites, who did not belong to Israel, ⁸ their descendants who were left after them in the land, whom the people of Israel had not destroyed—Solomon made them into forced laborers, which they are to this day.

translationWords:

- [Hittite](#)
- [Amorite](#)
- [Perizzite](#)
- [Hivite](#)
- [Jebusites, Jebus](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [descendant, descended from](#)
- [labor, laborer](#)

translationNotes:

- **who were left after them in the land** - AT: “who remained in the land”
- **forced laborers** - AT: “slaves”
- **to this day** - See how you translated this in [5:9](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 08 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 08 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 8:9-10

UDB:

⁹ But Solomon did not force Israelites to work for him. Israelites became his soldiers and commanders of his chariots and his chariot drivers. ¹⁰ They were also King Solomon's chief officials. There were 250 of them, and they supervised the workers.

ULB:

⁹ However, Solomon made no forced laborers of the people of Israel. Instead, they became his soldiers, his commanders, his officers, and commanders of his chariot forces and his horsemen. ¹⁰ These were also the chief officers managing the supervisors who belonged to King Solomon, 250 of them, who supervised the people who did the work.

translationWords:

- [chariot](#)
- [horsemen](#)
- [king](#)
- [Solomon](#)

translationNotes:

- 250 - See: [Numbers](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 08 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 08 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 8:11

UDB:

¹¹ Solomon brought his wife, who was the daughter of the king of Egypt, to the place that his workers had built for her in the place outside Jerusalem called the city of David. He said, “I do not want my wife to live in the palace that my father King David’s workers built, because the sacred chest was in that palace for a while, and any place where the sacred chest has been is holy.”

ULB:

¹¹ Solomon brought the daughter of Pharaoh out of the city of David to the house that he had built for her, for he said, “My wife must not live in the house of David king of Israel, because wherever the ark of Yahweh has come is holy.”

translationWords:

- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [city of David](#)
- [ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of Yahweh](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)

translationNotes:

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 08 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 08 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 8:12-13

UDB:

¹² On the altar that Solomon's workers had built in front of the entrance to the temple, Solomon brought many offerings that were to be completely burned. ¹³ He did that obeying what sacrifices Moses had declared should be made every day, on the Sabbath days, to celebrate each day on which there was a new moon, and on the three other festivals that were celebrated each year: the Festival of Bread with No Yeast, the Festival of Harvest, and the Festival of Shelters.

ULB:

¹² Then Solomon offered burnt offerings to Yahweh on his altar that he had built in front of the portico. ¹³ He offered sacrifices just as the daily schedule required; he offered them, following the directions found in the commandment of Moses, on the Sabbath days, the new moons, and on the set festivals three times every year: the Festival of Unleavened Bread, the Festival of Weeks, and the Festival of Shelters.

translationWords:

- burnt offering, offering by fire
- altar
- command, to command, commandment
- Moses
- Sabbath
- new moon
- festival
- unleavened bread, Festival of Unleavened Bread
- Pentecost, Festival of Weeks

translationNotes:

- **portico** - This is a covered porch or walkway supported by columns, attached to a building.
- **the daily schedule required** - AT: "according to the daily requirements of the law of Moses"

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 08 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 08 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 8:14-15

UDB:

¹⁴ Obeying what his father David had commanded, Solomon appointed the groups of priests for their work, and he appointed the descendants of Levi to lead the people while they sang to praise Yahweh, and while they assisted the priests in their daily work. He also appointed groups of them to guard all the gates, because that was also what David, God's servant, had commanded. ¹⁵ The priests and other descendants of Levi obeyed completely everything that the king commanded, including the order to take care of the storerooms.

ULB:

¹⁴ In keeping with the decrees of his father David, Solomon appointed the divisions of the priests to their work, and the Levites to their positions, in order to praise God and to serve before the priests, as the daily schedule required. He also appointed the gatekeepers by their divisions to every gate, for David, the man of God, had also commanded this. ¹⁵ These people did not deviate from the commands of the king to the priests and Levites concerning any matter, or concerning the storerooms.

translationWords:

- [decree](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [Levite, Levi](#)
- [praise](#)
- [serve, service](#)

translationNotes:

- **people did not deviate from the commands** - AT: "people followed the commands" (See: [Litotes](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 08 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 08 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 8:16**UDB:**

¹⁶ They did all the work of building the temple that Solomon told them to do, until it was all completed. In the way they finished building the temple.

ULB:

¹⁶ All the work ordered by Solomon was completed, from the day the foundation of the house of Yahweh was laid until it was finished. The house of Yahweh was completed.

translationWords:

- [foundation, founded](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)

translationNotes:**Links:**

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 08 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 08 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 8:17-18

UDB:

¹⁷ Then some of Solomon's men went to the cities of Ezion Geber and Elath on the coast of the Sea of Reeds, next to a region that belonged to the Edom people group. ¹⁸ King Hiram sent him from the city of Tyre some ships that were commanded by his officers. They were men who were experienced sailors. These men went in the ships with Solomon's men to the region of Ophir and brought back about sixteen metric tons of gold, which they delivered to King Solomon.

ULB:

¹⁷ Then Solomon went to Ezion Geber and Elath, on the coast in the land of Edom. ¹⁸ Hiram sent him ships commanded by officers who were experienced sailors. They sailed with Solomon's servants to Ophir. They took from there 450 talents of gold which they brought to King Solomon.

translationWords:

- [Edom, Edomite, Idumea](#)
- [command, to command, commandment](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [gold](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **talent** - (See: [Biblical Money](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 08 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 08 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 9 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of King Solomon ends.

Special concepts in this chapter

Solomon's fame

Solomon was famous outside of Israel because of his wisdom and tremendous wealth. (See: [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 09:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 9:1-2

UDB:

¹ The queen who ruled the Sheba area in Arabia heard that Solomon had become famous, so she traveled to Jerusalem to ask him questions that were difficult to answer. She came with a large group of servants, and she brought camels that were loaded with spices, and valuable gems. When she arrived, she shared her thoughts with him. ² Solomon answered all her questions. He explained everything that she asked about, even things that were very difficult.

ULB:

9 ¹ When the queen of Sheba heard of Solomon's fame, she came to Jerusalem to test him with hard questions. She came with a very long caravan, with camels loaded with spices, much gold, and many precious gemstones. When she had come to Solomon, she told him all that was in her heart. ² Solomon answered her all her questions; nothing was too difficult for Solomon; there was no question that he did not answer.

translationWords:

- [queen](#)
- [Sheba](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [test](#)
- [camel](#)
- [gold](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [heart](#)

translationNotes:

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 09 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 09 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 9:3-4

UDB:

³ The queen realized that Solomon was very wise. She saw his palace, ⁴ she saw the food that was served on his table every day, she saw where his officials lived, their uniforms, the servants who served the food and wine, and the sacrifices that he took to the temple to be offered. She was extremely amazed.

ULB:

³ When the queen of Sheba saw Solomon's wisdom and the palace that he had built, ⁴ the food on his table, the seating of his servants, the work of his servants and their clothing, also his cupbearers and their clothing, and the manner in which he offered burnt offering in the house of Yahweh, there was no more spirit in her.

translationWords:

- wise, wisdom
- spirit, spiritual

translationNotes:

- **the palace that he had built, the food on his table, the seating of his servants, the work of his servants and their clothing, also his cupbearers and their clothing** - Sheba saw everything of Solomon's (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **cupbearers** - These were servants who tasted a drink before the King does to test it for poison.
- **there was no more spirit in her** - AT: "she was not full of pride anymore"

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 09 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 09 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 9:5-6

UDB:

⁵ She said to the king, "Everything that I heard in my own country about you and about how wise you are is true! ⁶ But I did not believe it was true until I came here and saw it myself. You are extremely wise and rich, even more than what people told me.

ULB:

⁵ She said to the king, "It is true, the report that I heard in my own land of your words and your wisdom. ⁶ I did not believe what I heard until I came here, and now my eyes have seen it. Not half was told me about your wisdom and wealth! You have exceeded the fame that I heard about.

translationWords:

- true, truth, come true
- report
- word
- believe, believe in, belief

translationNotes:

- **now my eyes have seen it** - AT: "now I have seen it for myself" (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **Not half was told me about your wisdom and wealth** - AT: "You are extremely wise and rich" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 09 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 09 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 9:7-8

UDB:

⁷ The men who work for you are very fortunate! Your servants who are constantly standing in front of you and listening to the wise things that you say are also fortunate! ⁸ I praise Yahweh your God, who has shown that he is pleased with you by appointing you to be the king of Israel for him. God has always loved the Israelite people, and he desires to assist them forever, so he has appointed you to be their king, in order that you will rule them fairly and righteously.”

ULB:

⁷ How blessed are your people, and how blessed are your servants who constantly stand before you, because they hear your wisdom.[1]Some versions have, *How blessed are your wives*, assuming that the text should read as in 1 Kings 10:8. ⁸ Blessed be Yahweh your God, who has taken pleasure in you, who placed you on his throne, to be king for Yahweh your God. Because your God loved Israel, in order to establish them forever, he had made you king over them, for you to do justice and righteousness!”

translationWords:

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [God](#)
- [throne](#)
- [king](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [forever](#)
- [just, justice, justly](#)
- [righteous, righteousness](#)

translationNotes:

- **who constantly stand before you** - AT: “who wait for your commands in your presence” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **who has taken pleasure in you** - AT: “who is pleased with you”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 09 General Notes](#)

- 2 Chronicles 09 Translation Questions

2 Chronicles 9:9**UDB:**

⁹ Then the queen gave to Solomon about four metric tons of gold and a large amount of spices and gemstones. Never had King Solomon received more spices than the queen gave him at that time.

ULB:

⁹ She gave the king 120 talents of gold and a large amount of spices and precious stones. No greater amount of spices as these that the queen of Sheba gave to King Solomon was ever given to him again.

translationWords:**translationNotes:**

- **talents** - (See: [Biblical Money](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 09 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 09 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 9:10-12

UDB:

10-12 King Solomon gave to the queen from Sheba everything that she wanted. He gave her more than she had given to him. Then she and those who came with her returned to her own land.

In the ships that belong to King Hiram, Hiram's workers and Solomon's workers brought gold from Ophir. They also brought a large amount of algum wood, a kind of wood that no one in Israel had ever seen before.

ULB:

¹⁰ The servants of Hiram and the servants of Solomon, who brought gold from Ophir, also brought algum wood and precious stones. ¹¹ With the algum wood, the king made steps for the house of Yahweh and for his house, as well as harps and lyres for the musicians. No wood like this had been seen before in the land of Judah. ¹² King Solomon gave to the queen of Sheba everything she wished for, whatever she asked, in addition to that which she had brought to the king. So she left and went back to her own land, she and her servants.

translationWords:

- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)
- [harp](#)
- [lute, lyre](#)
- [Judah](#)

translationNotes:

- **Hiram** - The king of Tyre. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Ophir** - An unknown place known for its gold.
- **algum wood** - This is a type of wood.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 09 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 09 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 9:13-14

UDB:

¹³ Each year there was brought to Solomon about twenty-three metric tons of gold. That was in addition to the taxes paid to him by the merchants and traders. ¹⁴ Also, the kings of Arabia and the governors of the districts in Israel brought gold and silver to Solomon.

ULB:

¹³ Now the weight of gold that came to Solomon in one year was 666 talents of gold, ¹⁴ besides the gold that the traders and merchants brought. All the kings of Arabia and the governors in the country also brought gold and silver to Solomon.

translationWords:

- [Arabia, Arabian](#)
- [governor, govern, proconsul, government](#)
- [gold](#)
- [silver](#)

translationNotes:

- 666 - See: [Numbers](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 09 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 09 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 9:15-16

UDB:

¹⁵ King Solomon's workers took this gold and hammered it into thin sheets and covered two hundred large shields with those thin sheets of gold; they put about 3 and one-half kilograms of gold on each shield. ¹⁶ His workers made three hundred smaller shields. They covered each of them with one and three-quarter kilograms of gold. Then the king put those shields in the Hall of the Forest of Lebanon.

ULB:

¹⁵ King Solomon made two hundred large shields of beaten gold. Six hundred shekels of gold went into each one. ¹⁶ He also made three hundred shields of beaten gold. Three minas of gold went into each shield; the king put them into the Palace of the Forest of Lebanon.

translationWords:

- [Lebanon](#)

translationNotes:

- **Six hundred shekels of gold went into each one.** - "They were made of six hundred shekels of gold."
- **shekels ... minas** - (See: [Biblical Weight](#))
- **the Palace of the Forest of Lebanon** - This was likely a storage place near the palace made of many large pieces of wood from Lebanon. This could also be called an armory.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 09 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 09 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 9:17-18

UDB:

¹⁷ His workers also made for him a large throne. Part of it was covered with ivory and part of it was covered with very fine gold. ¹⁸ There were six steps in front of the throne. There was a gold footstool that was attached to the steps. At each side of the throne there was an armrest, and alongside each armrest there was a small statue of a lion. The back of the throne was rounded at the top.

ULB:

¹⁷ Then the king made a great throne of ivory and overlaid it with the finest gold. ¹⁸ There were six steps to the throne, and the top of the throne was round behind. There were armrests on each side of the seat, and two lions standing beside the armrests.

translationWords:

- [king](#)
- [throne](#)
- [lion](#)

translationNotes:

- **ivory** - This is another name for the tusk or horn of an animal, like an elephant or rhinoceros.
- **the top of the throne was round behind** - AT: “the top of the throne was round behind where the king sat”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 09 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 09 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 9:19-21

UDB:

¹⁹ So there were twelve statues of lions. No throne like that had ever existed in any other kingdom. ²⁰ All of Solomon's cups were made of gold, and all the various dishes in the Hall of the Forest of Lebanon were made of gold. They did not make things from silver, because during the years that Solomon ruled, silver was not considered to be valuable. ²¹ The king had a fleet of ships capable of sailing far out on the ocean. It sailed along with Hiram's merchant fleet. Every three years the fleet brought gold, silver, ivory, apes, and baboons.

ULB:

¹⁹ Twelve lions stood on the steps, one on each side of each of the six steps. There was no throne like it in any other kingdom. ²⁰ All King Solomon's drinking cups were gold, and all the drinking cups in the House of the Forest of Lebanon were of pure gold. None were silver because silver was not considered valuable in Solomon's days. ²¹ The king had at sea a fleet of oceangoing ships, along with the fleet of Hiram. Once every three years the fleet brought gold, silver, and ivory, as well as apes and baboons.

translationWords:

- [kingdom](#)
- [pure, purify, purification](#)

translationNotes:

- **silver was not considered valuable in Solomon's days** - Silver was so common in Solomon's days that it had very little value. (See: [Hyperbole](#))
- **apes and baboons** - Animals from very far away, likely Africa.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 09 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 09 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 9:22-24

UDB:

²² King Solomon became richer and wiser than any other king on the earth. ²³ Kings from all over the world wanted to come and listen to the wise things that Solomon said, things that God had put into his mind. ²⁴ All the people who came to him brought presents: things made from silver or gold; they also brought robes, weapons, spices, horses, and mules. The merchants continued to do this every year.

ULB:

²² So King Solomon exceeded all the kings of the world in riches and in wisdom. ²³ All the earth sought the presence of Solomon in order to hear his wisdom, which God had put in his heart. ²⁴ Those who visited brought tribute, vessels of silver and of gold, clothes, armor, and spices, as well as horses and mules, year after year.

translationWords:

- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [earth, earthly](#)
- [God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [tribute](#)
- [horse](#)
- [donkey, mule](#)

translationNotes:

- **which God had put in his heart** - AT: "which God gave him" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **year after year** - AT: "every year" (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 09 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 09 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 9:25-26

UDB:

²⁵ Solomon had four thousand stalls for his horses and chariots, and twelve thousand men who rode horses. Solomon put some of them in Jerusalem and some of them in other cities where he kept his chariots. ²⁶ Solomon ruled over all the kings in the area from the Euphrates River in the northeast, to the region of Philistia in the west, and to the border of Egypt in the south.

ULB:

²⁵ Solomon had four thousand stalls for horses and chariots, and twelve thousand horsemen, which he stationed in the chariot cities and with himself in Jerusalem. ²⁶ He ruled over all the kings from the Euphrates River to the land of the Philistines, and to the border of Egypt.

translationWords:

- [chariot](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [ruler, rulers, rule](#)
- [Euphrates River](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [Numbers](#)
- **stalls** - This is a small enclosure where horses are kept.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 09 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 09 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 9:27-28

UDB:

²⁷ During the years that Solomon was king, he caused silver to become as common in Jerusalem as stone; and he caused cedar trees in the foothills of Judah to become as plentiful as sycamore fig trees. ²⁸ Solomon's agents brought horses from the Musri area and other places.

ULB:

²⁷ The king had silver in Jerusalem, as much as the stones on the ground. He made cedar wood to be as abundant as the sycamore fig trees that are in the lowlands. ²⁸ They brought horses for Solomon from Egypt and from all the lands.

translationWords:

- [cedar](#)

translationNotes:

- **as much as the stones on the ground** - AT: "so much silver" (See: [Hyperbole](#))
- **He made cedar wood to be as abundant as the sycamore fig trees that are in the lowlands** - AT: "very abundant" (See: [Simile](#))
- **from all the lands** - AT: "from all-around" or "from all over"

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 09 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 09 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 9:29-31

UDB:

²⁹ Lists of all the other things that Solomon did are written in the scrolls written by the prophet Nathan and by the prophet Ahijah from the city of Shiloh, and in the scroll in which was written the visions that the prophet Iddo saw concerning King Jeroboam. ³⁰ Solomon ruled in Jerusalem over all of Israel for forty years. ³¹ Then Solomon died; they buried him in the part of Jerusalem called ‘the city of David.’ And his son Rehoboam became the next king.

ULB:

²⁹ As for the other matters concerning Solomon, first and last, are they not written in The History of Nathan the Prophet, in The Prophecy of Ahijah the Shilonite, and in The Visions of Iddo the Seer concerning Jeroboam son of Nebat? ³⁰ Solomon reigned in Jerusalem over all Israel for forty years. ³¹ He slept with his ancestors and the people buried him in the city of David his father. Rehoboam, his son, became king in his place.

translationWords:

- Solomon
- written
- Nathan
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Ahijah
- Shiloh
- vision
- Jeroboam
- bury, buried, burial
- city of David
- Rehoboam

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **first and last** - AT: “everything” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **are they not written ... Jeroboam son of Nebat?** - “they are written ... Jeroboam son of Nebat.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **The History of Nathan the Prophet ... The Prophecy of Ahijah the Shilonite ... The Visions of Iddo the Seer** - These writings no longer exist.
- **He slept with his ancestors** - AT: “He died” (See: [Euphemism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 09 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 09 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 10 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This begins a section on King Rehoboam. (2 Chronicles 10-12)

Some translations prefer to set apart extended quotations through the use of indentation. The ULB indents the lines of 10:14-15.

Special concepts in this chapter

Rehoboam's taxes

The people asked Solomon's son, Rehoboam, to reduce the heavy taxes and the forced labor Solomon had demanded but Rehoboam refused. He lacked the wisdom of his father Solomon. So the ten northern tribes broke off and made Jeroboam their king. They were called "Israel" and Rehoboam's kingdom was called Judah. This will cause confusion between the the northern kingdom of Israel and the whole nation of Israel. (See: [wise, wisdom](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

The people use the metaphor of a yoke to complain about the high taxes and forced labor Solomon demanded from the people. They said, "Your father made our yoke difficult." (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 10:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 10:1-2

UDB:

¹ All the people of northern Israel went to the city Shechem in order to appoint Rehoboam to be their king. So Rehoboam also went there. ² Jeroboam son of Nebat, fled to Egypt to escape from King Solomon. But when he heard about the people wanting to appoint Rehoboam to be their king, he returned from Egypt to Israel.

ULB:

10 ¹ Rehoboam went to Shechem, for all Israel was coming to Shechem to make him king. ² It happened that Jeroboam son of Nebat heard of this (for he was in Egypt, to where he had fled from the presence of King Solomon, but Jeroboam returned from Egypt).

translationWords:

- [Rehoboam](#)
- [Shechem](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [king](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [king](#)
- [Solomon](#)

translationNotes:

- **all Israel** - “all the people of the nation of Israel”. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **son of Nebat** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 10 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 10 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 10:3-5

UDB:

³ So the leaders of the northern tribes summoned Jeroboam, and he went with them to talk to Rehoboam. They said to Rehoboam, ⁴ “Your father Solomon forced us to work very hard, but if you charge us fewer taxes than we were paying to him, and if you make us work not so much we will serve you faithfully.”

⁵ He replied, “Come back three days from now, and I will give you my answer.” So those leaders and Jeroboam left.

ULB:

³ So they sent and called him, and Jeroboam and all Israel came; they spoke to Rehoboam and said, ⁴ “Your father made our yoke difficult. Now therefore, make your father’s hard work easier, and lighten the heavy yoke that he put on us, and we will serve you.” ⁵ Rehoboam said to them, “Come again to me after three days.” So the people left.

translationWords:

- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [call, calling, called, call out](#)
- [yoke](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [serve, service](#)

translationNotes:

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 10 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 10 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 10:6-7

UDB:

⁶ Then King Rehoboam consulted his older men who had advised his father Solomon while he was still alive. He asked them, “What shall I say to answer these men?”

⁷ They replied, “If you will be kind to these people and do things that will please them, and if you say kind things to them when you answer them, they will always serve you.”

ULB:

⁶ King Rehoboam consulted with the old men who had stood before Solomon his father while he was alive; he said, “How would you advise me to bring an answer to these people?” ⁷ They spoke to him and said, “If you are good to this people and please them, and say good words to them, then they will always be your servants.”

translationWords:

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [good, goodness](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)

translationNotes:

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 10 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 10 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 10:8-9

UDB:

⁸ But he did not agree with what the older men advised him to do. Instead, he consulted the younger men who had grown up with him, who were now his advisors. ⁹ He said to them, “What do you say that I should answer the men who are asking me to reduce the work and taxes that my father required from them?”

ULB:

⁸ But Rehoboam ignored the advice of the old men that they had given him, and consulted with the young men who had grown up with him, who stood before him. ⁹ He said to them, “What advice do you give me, so that we may answer the people who spoke to me and said, ‘Lighten the yoke that your father put on us?’”

translationWords:

- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)

translationNotes:

- **Rehoboam ignored the advice** - AT: “Rehoboam did not follow the advice”
- **young men** - The “young men” refers to their lack of wisdom and experience in comparison to the old men who had advised Solomon.
- **who had grown up with him, who stood before him** - who were his long-time friends, advised him”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 10 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 10 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 10:10-11

UDB:

¹⁰ The young men who had grown up with him replied, "Those men have said that your father forced them to work very hard for him, so they want you to reduce the work and taxes that your father required from them. But this is what you should tell them: 'My little finger is thicker than my father's waist.' ¹¹ What we mean is that your father required the people to work hard and pay high taxes. But tell them that you will make those loads heavier. It was as though your father whipped them with leather whips, but you will whip you with scorpions."

ULB:

¹⁰ The young men who had grown up with Rehoboam spoke to him, saying, "This is how you should speak to the people who told you that your father Solomon made their yoke heavy, but that you must make it lighter. This is what you should say to them, 'My little finger is thicker than my father's waist. ¹¹ So now, although my father burdened you with a heavy yoke, I will add to your yoke. My father punished you with whips, but I will punish you with scorpions.'"

translationWords:

- [punish, punishment](#)

translationNotes:

- **My little finger is thicker than my father's waist** - Rehoboam's point is that he is more harsh and demanding than his father. (See: [Hyperbole](#))
- **I will punish you with scorpions** - AT: "but I will whip you with whips that have pieces of metal in them." (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 10 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 10 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 10:12-14

UDB:

¹² Three days later, Jeroboam and all the leaders came to King Rehoboam again, as he had instructed them to do. ¹³ The king ignored the advice of the older men and spoke harshly to the Israelite leaders. ¹⁴ He told them what the younger men had advised. He said, “My father put heavy burdens of work and taxes on you, but I will put heavier burdens on you. It was as though he beat you with whips, but I will beat you with scorpions!”

ULB:

¹² So Jeroboam and all the people came to Rehoboam on the third day, as the king said, “Come back to me on the third day.” ¹³ Rehoboam spoke to them harshly, ignoring the advice of the old men. ¹⁴ He spoke to them following the advice of the young men, saying, “My father made your yoke heavy, but I will add to it. My father punished you with whips, but I will punish you with scorpions.”

translationWords:

- [Jeroboam](#)
- [biblical time: day](#)

translationNotes:

- **all the people** - AT: “all the leaders” (UDB) (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **the third day** - (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 10 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 10 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 10:15

UDB:

¹⁵ So the king did not pay any attention to the people's leaders. All this happened in order that what Yahweh wanted would occur, what he had told the prophet Ahijah about Jeroboam becoming king of the ten tribes out of the twelve.

ULB:

¹⁵ So the king did not listen to the people, for it was a turn in events brought about by God, that Yahweh might carry out his word that Ahijah the Shilonite had spoken to Jeroboam son of Nebat.

translationWords:

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [word](#)
- [Ahijah](#)

translationNotes:

- **Ahijah the Shilonite ... Jeroboam son of Nebat** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 10 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 10 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 10:16

UDB:

¹⁶ When the Israelite leaders realized that the king did not pay any attention to what they said, they shouted,

”We do not want anything to do with this descendant of King David!

We will not pay attention to what this grandson of Jesse says!

You people of Israel, let us go home!

As for this descendant of David, he can look after his family himself!”

So the Israelite leaders returned to their homes.

ULB:

¹⁶ When all Israel saw that the king did not listen to them, the people answered him and said, “What share do we have in David? We have no inheritance in the son of Jesse! Each of you should go back to his tent, Israel. Now see to your own house, David.” So all Israel returned to their tents.

translationWords:

- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [David](#)
- [inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir](#)
- [Jesse](#)
- [tent](#)
- [house](#)

translationNotes:

- **What share do we have in David?** - “We do not want anything to do with this descendant of King David!” (UDB) (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 10 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 10 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 10:17-19

UDB:

¹⁷ And after that, the only Israelite people whom Rehoboam ruled over were those who lived in the territory of the tribe of Judah, in the countryside and in the cities, towns, and villages.

¹⁸ Then King Rehoboam went with Adoniram to talk to the Israelite people. Adoniram was the man who supervised all the men who were forced to work for Rehoboam. But the Israelite people killed him by throwing stones at him. When that happened, King Rehoboam quickly got in his chariot and escaped to Jerusalem. ¹⁹ Ever since that time, the people of the northern tribes of Israel have been rebelling against the descendants of King David.

ULB:

¹⁷ But as for the people of Israel who lived in the cities of Judah, Rehoboam reigned over them. ¹⁸ Then King Rehoboam sent Adoniram, who was over the forced laborers, but the people of Israel stoned him to death with stones. King Rehoboam fled quickly in his chariot to Jerusalem. ¹⁹ So Israel has been in rebellion against the house of David to this day.

translationWords:

- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [reign](#)
- [king](#)
- [stone, stoning](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [chariot](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [rebel, rebellious, rebellion](#)
- [house of David](#)

translationNotes:

- **Adoniram** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **to this day** - See how you translated this in [5:9](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)

- 2 Chronicles 10 General Notes
- 2 Chronicles 10 Translation Questions

2 Chronicles 11 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The section on King Rehoboam continues in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Strengthening their defenses

Rehoboam strengthened the defenses of Judah. Without the help of the northern tribes, the kingdom of Judah did not really have much power to defend itself from outside attacks. Therefore, Rehoboam felt it necessary to strengthen Judah's military defenses.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Israel

When the author speaks about Israel, he is now referring almost exclusively to the northern kingdom of Israel and not the united nation of Israel.

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 11:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 11:1

UDB:

¹ When Rehoboam arrived in Jerusalem, he gathered 180,000 of the best soldiers from the tribes of Judah and Benjamin. He wanted them to fight against the northern tribes of Israel and defeat them, in order that he could rule all twelve tribes again.

ULB:

11 ¹ When Rehoboam arrived in Jerusalem, he assembled the house of Judah and Benjamin, 180,000 chosen men who were soldiers, to fight against Israel, to restore the kingdom to Rehoboam.

translationWords:

- [Rehoboam](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [house](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [Benjamin](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [kingdom](#)

translationNotes:

- **chosen men who were soldiers** - AT: "of his best soldiers"

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 11:2-4

UDB:

² But Yahweh spoke to the prophet Shemaiah and said this to him: ³ "Go and tell this to Solomon's son Rehoboam, the king of Judah, and to all the Israelite people of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin: ⁴ 'Yahweh says that you must not go to fight against the people of Israel; it is as though they are your own relatives. All of you must go home. What has happened is what Yahweh wanted to happen.'" So Shemaiah went and told that to them, and they all paid attention to what Yahweh had commanded them to do; they did not attack Jeroboam and his soldiers.

ULB:

² But the word of Yahweh came to Shemaiah, the man of God, ³ "Say to Rehoboam son of Solomon, king of Judah, and to all Israel in Judah and Benjamin, ⁴ 'Yahweh says this, "You must not attack or make war against your brothers. Everyone must return to his own house, for I have caused this to happen.'" So they obeyed the words of Yahweh and turned back from attacking Jeroboam.

translationWords:

- [word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture](#)
- [God](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [brother](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)

translationNotes:

- **the word of Yahweh came** - "Yahweh spoke his word" (See: [Idiom](#))
- **Shemaiah** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 11:5-10

UDB:

⁵ Rehoboam lived in Jerusalem, and his workers built walls around several of the cities and towns in Judah to protect them against enemy attacks. ⁶ In the area that belonged to the tribes of Judah and Benjamin they built walls around Bethlehem, Etam, Tekoa, ⁷ Bethzur, Soco, Adullam, ⁸ Gath, Mareshah, ⁹ Adoraim, Lachish, Azekah, ¹⁰ Zorah, Aijalon, and Hebron.

ULB:

⁵ Rehoboam lived in Jerusalem and built cities in Judah for defense. ⁶ He built Bethlehem, Etam, Tekoa, ⁷ Bethzur, Soco, Adullam, ⁸ Gath, Mareshah, Ziph, ⁹ Adoraim, Lachish, Azekah, ¹⁰ Zorah, Aijalon, and Hebron. These are fortified cities in Judah and Benjamin.

translationWords:

- [Bethlehem, Ephrathah](#)
- [Hebron](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 11:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ He also appointed an army commander in each of those cities and towns, and gave them supplies of food, olive oil, and wine. ¹² He put shields and spears in all the cities and made them well-protected. So he continued to control the tribes of Judah and Benjamin.

ULB:

¹¹ He fortified the fortresses and put commanders in them, with stores of food, oil, and wine. ¹² He put shields and spears in all the cities and made them very strong. So Judah and Benjamin belonged to him.

translationWords:

- [stronghold, fortress, fortified](#)
- [commander, command](#)
- [oil](#)
- [wine, wineskin, new wine](#)
- [spear](#)

translationNotes:

- **Judah and Benjamin belonged to him** - Rehoboam was in control of the territories of Judah and Benjamin.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 11:13-15

UDB:

¹³ The priests and other descendants of Levi throughout Israel supported Rehoboam. ¹⁴ The descendants of Levi abandoned their property and their pastureland, and they came to Jerusalem and to other places in Judah, because Jeroboam and his sons would not allow them to do the work of priests of Yahweh. ¹⁵ Instead, Jeroboam appointed the priests that he wanted to work at the altars he commanded to be built on the hills all around the cities, to offer sacrifices to the idols that he commanded to be made that resembled goats and calves.

ULB:

¹³ The priests and the Levites who were in all Israel went over to him from within their borders. ¹⁴ For the Levites left their pasturelands and property in order to come to Judah and Jerusalem, for Jeroboam and his sons had driven them away, so that they could no longer perform priestly duties for Yahweh. ¹⁵ Jeroboam appointed for himself priests for the high places and the goat and calf idols he had made.

translationWords:

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Levite, Levi](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [high places](#)
- [goat, kid](#)
- [cow, calf, bull, cattle](#)
- [idol, idolatrous](#)

translationNotes:

- **The priests and the Levites who were in all Israel went over to him** - AT: "The priests and Levites fled Israel, the northern kingdom to go to Judah."
- **pasturelands** - Lands used for animals.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 11:16-17

UDB:

¹⁶ And people from every tribe in Israel who wanted to worship Yahweh, the God to whom the Israelites belonged, went with the descendants of Levi to Jerusalem to offer sacrifices to Yahweh, the God whom their ancestors worshiped. ¹⁷ They caused the kingdom of Judah to be strong, and for three years they were happy that Solomon's son Rehoboam was the king. During that time they conducted their lives righteously as David and Solomon had done previously.

ULB:

¹⁶ People from all the tribes of Israel came after them, those who set their hearts to seek Yahweh, the God of Israel; they came to Jerusalem to sacrifice to Yahweh, the God of their fathers. ¹⁷ So they strengthened the kingdom of Judah and made Rehoboam son of Solomon strong during three years, and they walked for three years in the way of David and Solomon.

translationWords:

- [tribe](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [ancestor, father, forefather](#)
- [David](#)

translationNotes:

- **People from all the tribes of Israel came after them** - The people from the tribes belonging to the northern kingdom who still worshiped the Lord God fled to Judah.
- **set their hearts to seek Yahweh** - AT: "who desire to worship Yahweh"
- **they walked for three years in the way of David and Solomon** - AT: "they followed the example of David and Solomon for three years"

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 11:18-19

UDB:

¹⁸ Rehoboam married Mahalath. She was the daughter of David's son Jerimoth, and her mother was Abihail, the daughter of Eliab and granddaughter of Jesse. ¹⁹ Rehoboam and Mahalath had three sons: Jeush, Shemariah, and Zaham.

ULB:

¹⁸ Rehoboam took a wife for himself: Mahalath, the daughter of Jerimoth, David's son, and of Abihail, the daughter of Eliab, Jesse's son. ¹⁹ She bore him sons: Jeush, Shemariah, and Zaham.

translationWords:

- [Jesse](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 11:20-21

UDB:

²⁰ Later Rehoboam married Maacah, the daughter of Absalom, and they had four sons: Abijah, Attai, Ziza, and Shelomith. ²¹ Rehoboam loved Maacah more than he loved any other of his wives and slave wives. Altogether he had eighteen wives and sixty slave wives, and twenty-eight sons and sixty daughters.

ULB:

²⁰ After Mahalath, Rehoboam took Maacah, Absalom's daughter; she bore him Abijah, Attai, Ziza, and Shelomith. ²¹ Rehoboam loved Maacah, Absalom's daughter, more than all his other wives and his concubines (he took eighteen wives and sixty concubines, and became the father of twenty-eight sons and sixty daughters).

translationWords:

- [Absalom](#)
- [love](#)
- [concubine](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 11:22-23

UDB:

²² Rehoboam appointed his son Abijah to be the leader of his older and younger brothers, because he wanted to appoint Abijah to be the next king. ²³ He very wisely sent some of his other sons to other cities in the areas of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin, and to other cities that had walls around them. He gave them plenty of supplies and many wives.

ULB:

²² Rehoboam appointed Abijah son of Maacah to be chief, a leader among his brothers; he had the thought of making him king. ²³ Rehoboam ruled wisely; he scattered all his sons throughout all the land of Judah and Benjamin to every fortified city. He also gave them food in abundance and looked for many wives for them.

translationWords:

- [chief](#)
- [king](#)
- [ruler, rulers, rule](#)
- [wise, wisdom](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 12 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter ends the section on King Rehoboam.

Special concepts in this chapter

Worshiping Yahweh

The safety of Israel and Judah was dependent upon the people worshiping Yahweh and not upon their military power. Because Rehoboam deserted the worship of God, God allowed the king of Egypt to take all of the wealth Solomon stored up.

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 12:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 12:1

UDB:

¹ After Rehoboam had obtained complete control of his kingdom, he and all the other people in Judah stopped obeying the laws of Yahweh.

ULB:

12¹ It came about, when Rehoboam's reign was established and he was strong, that he abandoned the law of Yahweh—and all Israel with him.

translationWords:

- [Rehoboam](#)
- [reign](#)
- [law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)

translationNotes:

- **It came about, when** - “It came about” marks a point of special significance in the story. At: “At the very time when”
- **and all Israel with him** - AT: “and both Israel and Judah followed him in his sin.” Israel also includes Judah here. (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 12 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 12 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 12:2-4

UDB:

² As a result, after Rehoboam had been king for almost five years, Yahweh sent Shishak, the king of Egypt, with his army to attack Jerusalem. ³ He brought with his army twelve hundred chariots and sixty thousand soldiers who rode horses and a very large number of troops from two regions in Libya, and from Ethiopia. ⁴ They captured many of the cities in Judah that had walls around them, and they came as far as Jerusalem.

ULB:

² It happened in the fifth year of King Rehoboam, that Shishak, king of Egypt, came up against Jerusalem, because the people had been unfaithful to Yahweh. ³ He came with twelve hundred chariots and sixty thousand horsemen. Soldiers without number came with him from Egypt: Libyans, Sukkites, and Ethiopians. ⁴ He captured the fortified cities that belonged to Judah and came to Jerusalem.

translationWords:

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [unfaithful, unfaithfulness](#)
- [chariot](#)
- [horsemen](#)
- [Ethiopia, Ethiopian](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **came up against** - AT: “came to attack”
- **Soldiers without number** - AT: “Many soldiers” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 12 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 12 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 12:5-6

UDB:

⁵ Then the prophet Shemaiah came to Rehoboam and the other leaders of Judah who had gathered in Jerusalem because they were afraid of the army of Shishak. Shemaiah said to them, “Yahweh says this: ‘You have abandoned me; so now I am abandoning you, to allow you to be captured by the army of Shishak.’”

⁶ Then the king and the other Israelite leaders humbled themselves and said, “What Yahweh is doing to us is just.”

ULB:

⁵ Now Shemaiah the prophet came to Rehoboam and to the leaders of Judah who had gathered together to Jerusalem because of Shishak. Shemaiah said to them, “This is what Yahweh says: You have forsaken me, so I have also given you over into Shishak’s hand.” ⁶ Then the princes of Israel and the king humbled themselves and said, “Yahweh is righteous.”

translationWords:

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- forsake, forsaken, forsook
- prince, princess
- humble, humility
- righteous, righteousness

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **so I have also given you over into Shishak’s hand** - AT: “so I have given you to Shishak as captives” (See: [Metonymy](#))
-

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 12 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 12 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 12:7-8

UDB:

⁷ When Yahweh realized that they had humbled themselves, he gave this message to Shemaiah: "Because they have humbled themselves, I will not allow them to be destroyed. Instead, I will soon rescue them. I will not use Shishak's army to completely destroy the people of Jerusalem, ⁸ but they will conquer Jerusalem and force the people there to do what Shishak wants them to do. As a result, the people of Jerusalem will learn that it is better to serve me than to serve the kings of other countries."

ULB:

⁷ When Yahweh saw that they had humbled themselves, the word of Yahweh came to Shemaiah; it said, "They have humbled themselves. I will not ruin them; I will rescue them to some extent, and my anger will not pour out on Jerusalem by means of Shishak's hand. ⁸ Nevertheless, they will be his servants, so that they may understand what it is to serve me and to serve the rulers of the other countries."

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- ruin, ruins
- angry, anger
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- servant, slave, slavery
- serve, service
- ruler, rulers, rule

translationNotes:

- **they had humbled themselves** - AT: "the king and the other leaders of Israel had humbled themselves," - The king and other leaders are symbolic of all the people of Israel. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the word of Yahweh came** - "Yahweh spoke his word." See how you translated this in [11:2](#). (See: [Idiom](#))
- **I will rescue them to some extent** - AT: "I will rescue them from complete destruction"
- **my anger will not pour out on Jerusalem** - AT: "I will not completely express my anger against Jerusalem"

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 12 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 12 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 12:9-10

UDB:

⁹ When Shishak's army attacked Jerusalem, they took away the valuable things that were in the temple of Yahweh and in the king's palace. They took everything that was valuable, including the gold shields that Solomon's workers had made. ¹⁰ So King Rehoboam's workers made bronze shields to be used instead of the gold ones, and gave the bronze shields to the commanders of the men who guarded the entrance to the his palace.

ULB:

⁹ So Shishak, king of Egypt came up against Jerusalem and took away the treasures in the house of Yahweh, and the treasures in the king's house. He took everything away; he also took the shields of gold that Solomon had made. ¹⁰ King Rehoboam made shields of bronze in their place and entrusted them into the hands of the commanders of the guard, who guarded the doors to the king's house.

translationWords:

- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)
- [shield](#)
- [gold](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [commander, command](#)

translationNotes:

- **entrusted them into the hands of the commanders** - AT: "gave them to the commanders"
(See: [Synecdoche](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 12 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 12 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 12:11-12

UDB:

¹¹ After that, whenever the king went to the temple, the guards went with him, carrying those bronze shields. Then when the king left, they would return the shields to the guards' room.

¹² Because Rehoboam humbled himself, Yahweh stopped being angry with him, and did not get rid of him. Instead, he caused good things to happen in Judah.

ULB:

¹¹ It happened that whenever the king entered the house of Yahweh, the guards would carry them; then they would bring them back into the guardhouse. ¹² When Rehoboam humbled himself, Yahweh's anger turned away from him, so as not to destroy him completely; besides, there was still some good to be found in Judah.

translationWords:

- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)

translationNotes:

- **It happened that whenever** - marks a time of special significance in the story. Many languages have a way to mark this significant time phrase.
- **Yahweh's anger turned away from him, so as not to destroy him completely** - AT: "Yahweh was no longer angry with him and, thus, did not destroy him completely" (See: [Personification](#))
- **besides** - "in addition"

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 12 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 12 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 12:13-14

UDB:

¹³ King Rehoboam again obtained complete control in Jerusalem, and continued to be the king of Judah. He was forty-one years old when he became the king. He ruled for seventeen years in Jerusalem, which is the city that Yahweh had chosen from all the tribes in Israel to be the place in which people were to worship him. ¹⁴ Rehoboam's mother's name was Naamah. She was from the Ammon people group. Rehoboam did evil things because he did not try to find out what Yahweh wanted him to do.

ULB:

¹³ So King Rehoboam made his kingship strong in Jerusalem, and thus he reigned. Rehoboam was forty-one years old when he began to reign, and he reigned for seventeen years in Jerusalem, the city that Yahweh had chosen from all the tribes of Israel so that he might put his name there. His mother's name was Naamah, the Ammonitess. ¹⁴ He did what was evil, because he did not fix his heart to seek Yahweh.

translationWords:

- [reign](#)
- [tribe](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [name](#)
- [Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonitess](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [heart](#)

translationNotes:

- **so that he might put his name there.** - AT: "so that he would always be honored there." (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **he did not fix his heart to seek Yahweh** - AT: "he did not have the desire and strength to obey God" (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 12 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 12 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 12:15-16

UDB:

¹⁵ An account of all the things that Rehoboam did while he was the king, and lists of the members of his family, are in the scrolls written by the prophets Shemaiah and Iddo. The armies of Rehoboam and Jeroboam were constantly fighting each other. ¹⁶ When Rehoboam died, he was buried in the part of Jerusalem called the city of David. Then his son Abijah became the king.

ULB:

¹⁵ As for the other matters concerning Rehoboam, first and last, are they not written in the writings of Shemaiah the prophet and of Iddo the seer, which also have records of genealogies and the constant wars between Rehoboam and Jeroboam? ¹⁶ Rehoboam slept with his ancestors and was buried in the city of David; Abijah his son became king in his place.

translationWords:

- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Rehoboam](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [bury, buried, burial](#)
- [city of David](#)
- [king](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **first and last** - “everything” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **are they not written ... Jeroboam?** - AT: “they are recorded ... Jeroboam.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Rehoboam slept with his ancestors** - AT: “Rehoboam died” (See: [Euphemism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 12 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 12 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 13 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Trust

Trusting in God, King Abijah of Judah was able to overcome the army of Israel even though it was twice as big as his army. (See: [trust](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 13:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 13:1-3

UDB:

¹ When Jeroboam had been ruling Israel for almost eighteen years, Abijah became the king of Judah. ² He ruled in Jerusalem for three years. His mother was Micaiah, the daughter of Uriel from the city of Gibeah.

There was a war between the armies of Abijah and Jeroboam. ³ Abijah went into the battle, taking 400,000 of his capable soldiers, and Jeroboam prepared to fight them, taking 800,000 of his capable troops.

ULB:

13 ¹ In the eighteenth year of King Jeroboam, Abijah began to reign over Judah. ² He ruled for three years in Jerusalem; his mother's name was Maacah, the daughter of Uriel of Gibeah. There was war between Abijah and Jeroboam. ³ Abijah went into battle with an army of strong, courageous soldiers, 400,000 chosen men. Jeroboam placed battle lines against him with 800,000 chosen men, strong, courageous soldiers.

translationWords:

- king
- Jeroboam
- reign
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- ruler, rulers, rule
- Jerusalem
- name
- Abijah
- chosen one, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, the elect

translationNotes:

- **Maacah, the daughter of Uriel of Gibeah** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 13:4-5

UDB:

⁴ Abijah stood on the top of Mount Zemaraim, which is in the hill country that belonged to the tribe of Ephraim, and he shouted, "Jeroboam and all you other people of Israel, listen to me! ⁵ You certainly know that Yahweh, whom we Israelites are to worship, made a covenant with David by which he promised that his descendants would always rule over Israel.

ULB:

⁴ Abijah stood on Mount Zemaraim, which is in the hill country of Ephraim, and said, "Listen to me, Jeroboam and all Israel! ⁵ Do you not know that Yahweh, the God of Israel, gave the rule over Israel to David forever, to him and to his sons by a formal covenant?"

translationWords:

- [Ephraim](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [God](#)
- [David](#)
- [forever](#)
- [covenant](#)

translationNotes:

- **Mount Zemaraim** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Do you not know ... covenant?** - AT: "You know very well ... covenant." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 13:6-7

UDB:

⁶ But Jeroboam, who was only an official of David's son King Solomon, rebelled against his king. ⁷ And when Solomon's son Rehoboam became king and was still young and inexperienced, a group of worthless scoundrels gathered around you and rebelled against him.

ULB:

⁶ Yet Jeroboam son of Nebat, the servant of Solomon son of David, rose up and rebelled against his master. ⁷ Worthless men, base fellows, gathered to him. They came against Rehoboam son of Solomon, when Rehoboam was young and inexperienced and could not withstand them.

translationWords:

- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [raise, rise, risen, arise, arose](#)
- [rebel, rebellious, rebellion](#)
- [lord, master, sir](#)
- [worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless](#)
- [Rehoboam](#)

translationNotes:

- **son of Nebat** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **base fellows** - AT: "corrupt, immoral men"
- **gathered to him** - AT: "joined with Jeroboam"

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 13:8-9

UDB:

⁸ And now you are planning to fight against the kingdom that Yahweh established to be governed by David's descendants. It is true that you have a huge army, and you and your soldiers have brought with you the golden statues of calves that Jeroboam's workers made to be your gods. ⁹ But you drove out the priests that Yahweh appointed, men who are descendants of Aaron the first high priest. You also drove out the descendants of Levi, and you appointed the priests that you wanted, like the people of other countries do. One comes to consecrate himself to Yahweh by bringing to be a priest a young bull and seven rams to be sacrificed, that same priest would be the one who just offered sacrifices to gods that were no gods at all.

ULB:

⁸ Now you say that you can resist the ruling might of Yahweh in the hand of the descendants of David. You are a large army, and with you are the golden calves that Jeroboam made as gods for you. ⁹ Have you not driven out Yahweh's priests, the descendants of Aaron, and the Levites? Have you not made for yourselves priests in the manner of the peoples of other lands? Whoever comes to consecrate himself with a young bullock and seven rams may become a priest of what are no gods.

translationWords:

- mighty, might
- Yahweh
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- descendant, descended from
- David
- gold
- false god, foreign god, god, goddess
- priest, priesthood
- Aaron
- Levite, Levi
- consecrate

translationNotes:

- **the golden calves that Jeroboam made as gods** - This is a reference to idols.
- **Have you not driven ... Levites?** - AT: "You have driven ... Levites." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Have you not made ... lands?** - AT: "You have made ... lands." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

- **Whoever comes to consecrate himself with a young bullock and seven rams may become a priest of what are no gods** - AT: “Anyone who offers a young bull and seven rams may become a priest of these golden calves that are not gods.”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 13:10-11

UDB:

¹⁰ As for us, Yahweh is our God, and we have not abandoned him. Our priests who serve Yahweh are descendants of Aaron, and the descendants of Levi assist them. ¹¹ Every morning and every evening they present to Yahweh offerings to be completely burned on the altar, and they burn fragrant incense. Each week they place on the sacred table the bread to display before Yahweh, and each morning they light the lamps that are on the gold lampstand. We are obeying what Yahweh our God requires us to do. But you have abandoned him; you no longer worship him.

ULB:

¹⁰ But as for us, Yahweh is our God, and we have not forsaken him. We have priests, descendants of Aaron, serving Yahweh, and the Levites, who are at their work. ¹¹ Every morning and evening they burn for Yahweh burnt offerings and sweet incense. They also arrange the bread of the presence on the pure table; they also tend the lampstand of gold with its lamps, for them to burn every evening. We keep the commandments of Yahweh, our God, but you have forsaken him.

translationWords:

- [forsake, forsaken, forsook](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [serve, service](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [incense](#)
- [bread](#)
- [lampstand](#)
- [command, to command, commandment](#)

translationNotes:

- **who are at their work** - AT: “who are working”
- **the bread of the presence** - The “bread of the presence” was a special kind of bread that was made as a symbol of God’s presence and of his fellowship with his people.
- **they also tend the lampstand** - AT: “they also take care of the lampstand”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 13:12

UDB:

¹² Yahweh is with us; he is our leader. The priests whom he has appointed will blow their trumpets to signal that we are ready to fight a battle against you. You Israelite men, do not fight against Yahweh, the God to whom your ancestors belonged, because you will not be successful against him.”

ULB:

¹² See, God is with us at our head, and his priests are here with the trumpets to sound an alarm against you. People of Israel, do not fight against Yahweh, the God of your ancestors, for you will not succeed.”

translationWords:

- [God](#)
- [head](#)
- [trumpet](#)

translationNotes:

- **do not fight against Yahweh** - AT: “do not rebel against Yahweh” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 13:13-15

UDB:

¹³ While he was speaking, Jeroboam sent some of his troops around the army of Judah. So while the soldiers who were with Jeroboam were in front of the army of Judah, the other soldiers of Israel were behind the army of Judah. ¹⁴ When the soldiers of Judah turned and saw that they were going to be attacked from the front and from the rear, they cried out to Yahweh. The priests blew their trumpets, ¹⁵ and the men of Judah shouted a loud battle cry. Then Yahweh enabled Abijah and the army of Judah to defeat Jeroboam and the army of Israel.

ULB:

¹³ But Jeroboam prepared an ambush behind them; his army was in front of Judah, and the ambush was behind them. ¹⁴ When Judah looked back, behold, the fighting was both in front of them and behind them. They cried out to Yahweh, and the priests blew the trumpets. ¹⁵ Then the men of Judah gave a shout; as they shouted, it came about that God struck Jeroboam and all Israel before Abijah and Judah.

translationWords:

- [Jeroboam](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [trumpet](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)
- [Abijah](#)

translationNotes:

- **ambush behind them** - AT: “a surprise attack behind the army of Judah”
- **the ambush was behind them** - AT: “the surprise attack was behind the army of Judah”
- **cried out to Yahweh** - AT: “called out loudly to Yahweh”
- **it came about that God struck** - AT: “God struck” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 13:16-18

UDB:

¹⁶ The soldiers of Israel fled from the soldiers of Judah, and God enabled the army of Judah to defeat them. ¹⁷ Abijah and his troops struck the capable soldiers of Israel and killed 500,000 of them, the best soldiers there were in Israel.

¹⁸ So the soldiers of Israel were defeated, and the soldiers of Judah won the battle because they trusted in Yahweh, the God to whom their ancestors belonged.

ULB:

¹⁶ The people of Israel fled before Judah, and God gave them into the hand of Judah. ¹⁷ Abijah and his army killed them with great slaughter; 500,000 chosen men of Israel fell dead. ¹⁸ In this way, the people of Israel were subdued at that time; the people of Judah won because they relied on Yahweh, the God of their ancestors.

translationWords:

- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [slaughter](#)
- [chosen one, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, the elect](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)

translationNotes:

- **500,000** - See: [Numbers](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 13:19-22

UDB:

¹⁹ Abijah's army pursued the army of Jeroboam, and they captured from the people of Israel the cities of Bethel, Jeshanah, and Ephron, and the surrounding villages. ²⁰ During the remaining time that Abijah ruled, Jeroboam did not become powerful again. Then Yahweh caused him to become very ill, and he died.

²¹ But Abijah became more powerful. He married fourteen wives and had twenty-two sons and sixteen daughters.

²² An account of the other things that Abijah did while he was the was king, including what he said and what he did, is in the scroll written by the prophet Iddo.

ULB:

¹⁹ Abijah pursued Jeroboam; he took cities from him: Bethel with its villages, Jeshanah with its villages, and Ephron with its villages. ²⁰ Jeroboam never recovered power again during the days of Abijah; Yahweh struck him, and he died. ²¹ But Abijah became powerful; he took fourteen wives for himself and became the father of twenty-two sons and sixteen daughters. ²² The rest of the acts of Abijah's deeds, his behavior and words are written in the commentary of the prophet Iddo.

translationWords:

- [Bethel](#)
- [power, powers](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)

translationNotes:

- **pursued** - AT: "chased after"
- **Jeshanah with its villages, and Ephron with its villages** - Jeshanah and Ephron were villages that belonged to the kingdom of Israel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 14 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter begins the section about King Asa. (2 Chronicles 14-16)

Special concepts in this chapter

Trust

Trusting in Yahweh, Asa was able to defeat million men of the army of Nubia. Trust in Yahweh is more important than military might. (See: [trust](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 14:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 14:1-4**UDB:**

¹ When Abijah died, he was buried in the part of Jerusalem called the city of David. His son Asa became the king. While Asa was ruling, there was peace in Judah for ten years.

² Asa did things that Yahweh his God considers to be right and good. ³ His workers got rid of the altars to worship foreign gods that were at the hilltops where the idols were worshiped. They smashed the stone pillars and cut down the poles that were there for the goddess Asherah. ⁴ Asa commanded the people of Judah to worship only Yahweh, the God whom their ancestors worshiped, and to seek his will and obey his commands.

ULB:

14 ¹ Abijah slept with his ancestors, and they buried him in the city of David. Asa, his son, became king in his place. In his days the land was quiet ten years. ² Asa did what was good and right in the eyes of Yahweh his God, ³ for he took away the foreign altars and the high places. He broke down the stone pillars and cut down the Asherah poles. ⁴ He commanded Judah to seek Yahweh, the God of their ancestors, and to carry out the law and the commandments.

translationWords:

- Abijah
- bury, buried, burial
- city of David
- Asa
- king
- Yahweh
- God
- altar
- high places
- sacred
- pillar, column
- Asherah, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth
- command, to command, commandment
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh

translationNotes:

- **Abijah slept with his ancestors** - AT: "Abijah died" (See: [Euphemism](#))
- **In his days** - AT: "During his reign" (See: [Idiom](#))

- **the land was quiet ten years** - AT: “there was peace in the land for ten years”
- **in the eyes of Yahweh his God** - AT: “according to Yahweh”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 14 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 14 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 14:5-6

UDB:

⁵ His workers destroyed all the places where idols were worshiped on the hilltops, and the altars for burning incense to idols, in every town in Judah. As a result, there was peace while Asa ruled the kingdom of Judah. ⁶ His workers built cities and constructed walls around them. No army attacked Judah during those years, because Yahweh enabled them to have peace.

ULB:

⁵ Also he took away the high places and the incense altars from all the cities of Judah. The kingdom had rest under him. ⁶ He built fortified cities in Judah, for the land was quiet, and he had no war in those years, because Yahweh had given him peace.

translationWords:

- [high places](#)
- [incense](#)
- [altar](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [peace, peaceful](#)

translationNotes:

- **he took away the high places and the incense altars from all the cities of Judah** - AT: "Asa had all the shrines and altars that were used for worshiping false gods in Judah destroyed" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 14 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 14 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 14:7-8

UDB:

⁷ Asa said to the people of Judah, “We should protect these towns by building walls around them, with watchtowers and gates that have bars. This country still belongs to us because we have requested Yahweh our God to help us. We requested him for his help, and he has given us peace in our entire country.” So they built buildings and succeeded in what they did.

⁸ Asa had an army of 300,000 men from Judah. They all carried large shields and spears. He also had 280,000 men from the tribe of Benjamin in his army. They also carried shields, and also bows and arrows. They were all brave soldiers.

ULB:

⁷ For Asa said to Judah, “Let us build these cities and make walls around them, and towers, gates, and bars; the land is still ours because we have sought Yahweh our God. We have sought him, and he has given us peace on every side.” So they built and succeeded. ⁸ Asa had an army that carried shields and spears; from Judah he had 300,000 men, and from Benjamin, 280,000 men who carried shields and drew bows. All of these were strong, courageous men.

translationWords:

- [Asa](#)
- [watchtower, tower](#)
- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [seek, sought](#)
- [shield](#)
- [spear](#)
- [Benjamin](#)
- [bow and arrow](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [Numbers](#)
- **Asa said to Judah** - AT: “Asa said to the people of Judah” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **we have sought Yahweh our God** - AT: “we have asked Yahweh our God to help us”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 14 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 14 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 14:9-11

UDB:

⁹ Zerah, a man from Ethiopia, attacked Judah with an army of one million men and three hundred chariots. He came to Mareshah, southwest of Jerusalem. ¹⁰ Asa went with his army to fight against them, and both armies took their positions in the Zephathah Valley.

¹¹ Then Asa cried out to Yahweh his God, saying, “Yahweh, there is no one like you who can help those who have very little power to resist large armies. We have come to fight against this huge army. Yahweh, you are our God; do not allow anyone to defeat you.”

ULB:

⁹ Zerah the Ethiopian came against them with an army of a one million soldiers and three hundred chariots; he came to Mareshah. ¹⁰ Then Asa went out to meet him, and they set the battle lines in order in the Valley of Zephathah at Mareshah. ¹¹ Asa cried to Yahweh, his God, and said, “Yahweh, there is no one but you to help one who has no strength when he is facing many. Help us, Yahweh our God, for we rely on you, and in your name we have come against this vast number. Yahweh, you are our God; do not let man defeat you.”

translationWords:

- [Ethiopia, Ethiopian](#)
- [chariot](#)
- [name](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names and Numbers](#)
- **Mareshah** - This was a city in Judah.
- **do not let man defeat you** - AT: “do not let others defeat your people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 14 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 14 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 14:12-13

UDB:

¹² Then Yahweh enabled Asa and the army of Judah to defeat the army from Ethiopia. They fled, ¹³ and Asa and his army pursued them to the southwest as far as Gerar. A huge number of the soldiers from Ethiopia were killed, with the result that those who were not killed were unable to fight anymore. They were completely defeated by Yahweh and his army, and the men of Judah carried away a great amount of their possessions.

ULB:

¹² So Yahweh struck the Ethiopians before Asa and Judah; the Ethiopians fled. ¹³ Asa and the soldiers with him pursued them to Gerar. So many Ethiopians fell that they could not recover, for they were completely destroyed before Yahweh and his army. The army carried away very much plunder.

translationWords:

- [Gerar](#)

translationNotes:

- **Ethiopians fell** - AT: "Ethiopians died" (See: [Euphemism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 14 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 14 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 14:14-15

UDB:

¹⁴ The men of Judah were able to destroy the villages near to the city of Gerar because Yahweh had caused the people there to become terrified and unable to fight. The army of Judah took away all the valuable things from those villages. ¹⁵ They also attacked the places where the local people who took care of domestic animals had set up their tents, and they took away large flocks and herds of sheep and goats and camels. Then they returned to Jerusalem.

ULB:

¹⁴ The army destroyed all the villages around Gerar, for terror of Yahweh had come on the inhabitants. The army plundered all the villages, and there was much booty in them. ¹⁵ The army also destroyed the tent settlements of the shepherding nomads; they carried away sheep in abundance, as well as camels, and then they returned to Jerusalem.

translationWords:

- [terror, terrify](#)
- [shepherd, to shepherd](#)
- [sheep, ram, ewe](#)
- [camel](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

translationNotes:

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 14 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 14 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 15 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The section about King Asa continues in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Promise

The people promise to serve the Lord. This is something they will ultimately fail to do. (See: [promise](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Idiom

The phrase “seek Yahweh” means “wanting to believe and obey Yahweh.” This is a common way to describe proper worship of Yahweh. It is possible the meaning of this idiom is about a desire to properly worship. (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 15:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 15:1-2

UDB:

¹ The Spirit of God came on Azariah son of Oded. ² Azariah went to talk with Asa and said to him, "Asa and all you men of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin, listen to me. Yahweh is with you whenever you are with him. If you request him to help you, he will help you, but if you abandon him, he will abandon you.

ULB:

15 ¹ The spirit of God came on Azariah son of Oded. ² He went out to meet Asa and said to him, "Listen to me, Asa, and all Judah and Benjamin: Yahweh is with you, while you are with him. If you seek him, he will be found by you; but if you forsake him, he will forsake you.

translationWords:

- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord](#)
- [Azariah](#)
- [Asa](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Benjamin](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [seek, sought](#)
- [forsake, forsaken, forsook](#)

translationNotes:

- **The spirit of God came on Azariah** - AT: "The spirit of God gave Azariah the ability to prophesy"
- **Oded** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 15:3-5

UDB:

³ For many years the Israelite people did not have the true God, and they did not have priests or God's laws. ⁴ But when they experienced trouble, they turned to Yahweh, our God, and requested him to help them. And he helped them. ⁵ At that time, people were not safe when they traveled, because all the people who lived in those countries were experiencing many difficulties.

ULB:

³ Now for a long period, Israel was without the true God, without a teaching priest, and without the law. ⁴ But when in their distress they turned to Yahweh, the God of Israel, and sought him, he was found by them. ⁵ In those times there was no peace for him who traveled away, nor for him who traveled to here; instead, great troubles were on all the inhabitants of the lands.

translationWords:

- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [true, truth, come true](#)
- [God](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh](#)
- [turn, turn away, turn back](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [peace, peaceful](#)
- [trouble, troubles, troubled](#)

translationNotes:

- **Israel was without the true God** - Israel had stopped obeying God.
- **without a teaching priest** - AT: "without a priest able to teach them"
- **he was found by them** - AT: "God responded to the Israelites' search for Him."

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 15:6-7

UDB:

⁶ The people of various nations were crushed by armies of other nations, and people in some cities were crushed by armies from other cities, because God was allowing them to experience many difficulties. ⁷ But you people, you must be strong and do not become discouraged, because God will reward you for what you do to please him.”

ULB:

⁶ They were broken in pieces, nation against nation, and city against city, for God troubled them with all kinds of suffering. ⁷ But be strong, and do not let your hands be weak, for your work will be rewarded.”

translationWords:

- nation
- trouble, troubles, troubled
- suffer, suffering
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- works, deeds, work, acts
- reward

translationNotes:

- **They were broken in pieces, nation against nation, and city against city** - AT: “They were defeated by other nations and cities”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 15:8-9

UDB:

⁸ When Asa was encouraged by hearing what the Azariah, the son of Oded, prophesied. Asa commanded his workers to remove all the detestable idols from everywhere in the tribes of Judah and Benjamin, and from the towns that his soldiers had captured in the hills of the tribe of Ephraim. Asa's workers repaired the altar where people offered sacrifices to Yahweh that was front of the entrance to the temple in Jerusalem. ⁹ Then he gathered all the people of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin and many people from the tribes of Ephraim, Manasseh, and Simeon who were living among them. He was able to do that because many people from those tribes in Israel had come to Judah him, after they had realized that Yahweh was helping him.

ULB:

⁸ When Asa heard these words, the prophecy of Oded the prophet, he took courage and drove away the disgusting things from all the land of Judah and Benjamin, and from the cities that he had captured from the hill country of Ephraim, and he rebuilt Yahweh's altar, which was in front of the portico of Yahweh's house. ⁹ He gathered all Judah and Benjamin, and those who stayed with them—people from of Ephraim and Manasseh, and from Simeon. For they came from Israel to him in great numbers, when they saw that Yahweh his God was with him.

translationWords:

- word
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Ephraim
- altar
- house of God, Yahweh's house
- Manasseh
- Simeon
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel

translationNotes:

- **the prophecy of Oded the prophet** - Many versions, including the UDB, make this passage read, “the prophecy of Azariah, the son of Oded the prophet.” They do this in order to make the sense agree with [15:1](#). Translators will probably want to do the same in their versions.
- **drove away the disgusting things** - AT: “removed the idols”
- **Yahweh his God was with him** - AT: “Yahweh was helping him” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 15:10-11

UDB:

¹⁰ After Asa had been ruling for almost fifteen years, in the third month of that year, those people gathered in Jerusalem. ¹¹ At that time they sacrificed to Yahweh seven hundred bulls and seven thousand sheep and goats, from the animals that they had captured when they defeated the army of Ethiopia.

ULB:

¹⁰ So they gathered together at Jerusalem in the third month, in the fifteenth year of Asa's reign. ¹¹ They sacrificed to Yahweh in that day some of the plunder that they had brought: seven hundred oxen and seven thousand sheep and goats.

translationWords:

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [biblical time: year](#)
- [reign](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [ox, oxen](#)
- [sheep, ram, ewe](#)
- [goat, kid](#)

translationNotes:

- **So they gathered together** - "They" here refers to the tribes of Judah and Israel that were with Asa.
- **the third month** - This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of May and the first part of June on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#))
- **third ... fifteenth** - See: [Ordinal Numbers](#)
- **seven hundred ... seven thousand** - "700 ... 7,000" (See: [Numbers](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 15:12-13

UDB:

¹² They solemnly made an agreement to worship very sincerely Yahweh, the God whom our ancestors worshiped. ¹³ They promised to execute all those who would not worship Yahweh, including those who were important and who were not important, both men and women.

ULB:

¹² They entered into a covenant to seek Yahweh, the God of their ancestors, with all their heart and with all their soul. ¹³ They agreed that whoever refused to seek Yahweh, the God of Israel, should be put to death, whether the person was small or great, whether man or woman.

translationWords:

- [covenant](#)
- [heart](#)
- [soul](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)

translationNotes:

- **with all their heart and with all their soul** - AT: “honestly and completely” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **be put to death** - AT: “be killed” (See: [Euphemism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 15:14-15

UDB:

¹⁴ They shouted and blew trumpets and other horns while they solemnly promised to do that. ¹⁵ All the people who were living in Judah were happy to promise to do that because they had solemnly promised to do it very sincerely. They eagerly asked Yahweh to guide them, and he helped them. So he enabled them to have peace throughout their country.

ULB:

¹⁴ They swore to Yahweh with a loud voice, with shouting, and with trumpets and horns. ¹⁵ All Judah rejoiced at the oath, for they had sworn with all their heart, and they sought God with their whole desire, and he was found by them. Yahweh gave them peace all around them.

translationWords:

- [oath, swear, swear by](#)
- [rejoice](#)
- [peace, peaceful](#)

translationNotes:

- **he was found by them** - See how you translated this in II Chronicles 15:4
- **All Judah rejoiced** - AT: "Many of the people who lived in Judah rejoiced" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 15:16-17

UDB:

¹⁶ King Asa's grandmother Maacah had made a disgusting pole for worshiping the goddess Asherah. So Asa commanded his workers to cut down that pole, chop it into pieces, and burn it in the Kidron Valley. He did not allow Maacah to continue to influence the people because she was the mother of the previous king. ¹⁷ Although Asa's workers did not get rid of places where people worshiped idols, and those high places remained on the hills throughout Asa's reign. But still, Asa was determined to do what pleased Yahweh all during the years that he was alive.

ULB:

¹⁶ He also removed Maacah, his grandmother, from being queen, because she had made a disgusting figure out of an Asherah pole. Asa cut down the disgusting figure, ground it to dust and burned it at the brook Kidron. ¹⁷ But the high places were not taken out of Israel. Nevertheless, Asa's heart was completely devoted all his days.

translationWords:

- [queen](#)
- [Asherah, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth](#)
- [high places](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **a disgusting figure** - AT: "an idol"
- **Asa's heart was completely devoted all his days** - AT: "Asa obeyed and followed Yaweh his whole life"

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 15:18-19**UDB:**

¹⁸ He ordered his workers to bring into God's temple all the silver and gold and other valuable items that he and his father had dedicated to God.

¹⁹ There were no more wars in Judah until Asa had been ruling Judah almost thirty-five years.

ULB:

¹⁸ He brought into the house of God the things of his father and his own things that belong to Yahweh: silver and gold objects. ¹⁹ There was no more war until the thirty-fifth year of Asa's reign.

translationWords:

- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)
- [silver](#)
- [gold](#)
- [Asa](#)
- [reign](#)

translationNotes:**Links:**

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 16 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The section about King Asa is completed in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Asa did not trust Yahweh

When Baasha was building Ramah to blockade him, Asa asked the king of Aram to help him instead of trusting God to help him. This was sinful because he disobeyed Yahweh. (See: [trust](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#)) and [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metonymy

The phrase “the eyes of Yahweh run everywhere” is a metonym. It means Yahweh is “looking everywhere” for something or someone. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 16:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 16:1

UDB:

¹ When Asa had been ruling Judah for almost thirty-six years, King Baasha of Israel went with his army to attack Judah. They captured the town of Ramah north of Jerusalem and started to build a wall around it, in order to prevent any people from entering or leaving the area in Judah that King Asa ruled.

ULB:

16 ¹ In the thirty-sixth year of Asa's reign, Baasha, king of Israel, acted aggressively against Judah and built up Ramah, so that he might not allow anyone to leave or enter into the land of Asa, king of Judah.

translationWords:

- [Asa](#)
- [reign](#)
- [Baasha](#)
- [king](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [Ramah](#)

translationNotes:

- **built up Ramah** - Here “built up” means to build walls around a city so that the city can be defended from attackers. (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 16 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 16 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 16:2-3

UDB:

² So Asa told his workers to take all the silver and gold that was in the storerooms of the temple and in his own palace, and take and give it to Ben Hadad, the king of Aram, who was ruling in Damascus. He sent him a message, saying, ³ “I want there to be a peace treaty between me and you, like there was between my father and your father. Look, I am sending you much silver and gold. So please cancel the treaty that you have made with Baasha, the king of Israel, in order that he will take his soldiers away from attacking mine, because he will be afraid of your army.”

ULB:

² Then Asa brought the silver and gold out of the storerooms in the house of Yahweh and of the king's house, and sent it to Ben Hadad king of Aram, who lived in Damascus. He said, ³ “Let there be a covenant between me and you, as there was between my father and your father. Look, I have sent to you silver and gold. Break your covenant with Baasha, king of Israel, so that he may leave me alone.”

translationWords:

- [silver](#)
- [gold](#)
- [storehouse](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)
- [Aram, Aramean, Aramaic](#)
- [Damascus](#)
- [ancestor, father, forefather](#)

translationNotes:

- **Ben Hadad** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **leave me alone** - AT: “not attack me” (See: [Euphemism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 16 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 16 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 16:4-6

UDB:

⁴ Ben Hadad agreed to do what King Asa suggested. He sent the commanders of his armies with their soldiers to attack some of the towns in Israel. They captured Ijon, Dan, Abelmaim, and all the cities in the tribe of Naphtali where supplies were kept. ⁵ When Baasha heard about that, he commanded his troops to stop fortifying Ramah. ⁶ Then King Asa gathered all the men of Judah, and they took away from Ramah all the stones and timber that Baasha's men had been using to build the wall around that town. They took those materials to the cities of Geba and Mizpah north of Jerusalem and built walls around them.

ULB:

⁴ Ben Hadad listened to King Asa and sent the commanders of his armies against the cities of Israel. They attacked Ijon, Dan, Abelmaim, and all the storage cities of Naphtali. ⁵ It came about that when Baasha heard this, he stopped building up Ramah, and let his work cease. ⁶ Then Asa the king took all Judah with him. They carried away the stones and timbers of Ramah with which Baasha had been building up the city. Then King Asa used that building material to build up Geba and Mizpah.

translationWords:

See: [How to Translate Names](#)

- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [commander, command](#)
- [Dan](#)
- [Naphtali](#)
- [Ramah](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [Mizpah](#)

translationNotes:

- **sent the commanders of his armies against the cities** - “sent his armies to attack the cities” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **Ijon, Dan, Abelmaim ... storage cities of Naphtali** - These are cities in Israel.
- **let his work cease** - “he commanded his troops to stop fortifying Ramah and doing other work there.” (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **timbers** - Timbers are large pieces of wood used to build houses or walls.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 16 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 16 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 16:7-8

UDB:

⁷ At that time the prophet Hanani went to King Asa and said to him, "Because you relied on the king of Aram and not on Yahweh our God, the army of the king of Aram has escaped from you. ⁸ Remember that the huge armies from Ethiopia very powerful. But when you relied on Yahweh, he enabled your army to defeat them.

ULB:

⁷ At that time Hanani the seer went to Asa, king of Judah, and said to him, "Because you have relied on the king of Aram, and have not relied on Yahweh your God, the army of the king of Aram has escaped out of your hand. ⁸ Were not the Ethiopians and the Libyans a huge army, with very many chariots and horsemen? Yet, because you relied on Yahweh, he gave you victory over them.

translationWords:

- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [king](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [God](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [Ethiopia, Ethiopian](#)
- [chariot](#)
- [horsemen](#)

translationNotes:

- **Hanani** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Were not the Ethiopians and the Libyans a huge army, with very many chariots and horsemen?** - AT: "The Ethiopians and the Libyans were a huge army, with very many chariots and horsemen." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 16 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 16 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 16:9-10

UDB:

⁹ That happened because Yahweh sees what is happening all over the earth, and he strengthens those who completely trust him. You have done a very foolish thing, so from now on other armies will be fighting your army.”

¹⁰ Asa was very angry with the prophet because of what the prophet had said. So he commanded his officials to put Hanani in prison. At that same time, he started to treat some of his people very cruelly.

ULB:

⁹ For the eyes of Yahweh run everywhere throughout the whole earth, so that he might show himself strong on behalf of those whose hearts are perfect toward him. But you have acted foolishly in this matter. From now on, you will have war.” ¹⁰ Then Asa was angry with the seer; he put him into prison, for he was angry with him over this matter. At the same time, Asa oppressed some of the people.

translationWords:

- earth, earthly
- heart
- perfect
- fool, foolish, folly
- prison, prisoner, imprison
- angry, anger
- oppress, oppression, oppressor
- people group, peoples, the people, a people

translationNotes:

- **the eyes of Yahweh run everywhere** - AT: “Yahweh sees what is happening all over the earth.” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **so that he might show himself strong on behalf of** - AT: “and Yahweh protects with his strength”
- **those whose hearts are perfect toward him** - AT: “those who are completely committed to following him”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)

- 2 Chronicles 16 General Notes
- 2 Chronicles 16 Translation Questions

2 Chronicles 16:11-12

UDB:

¹¹ All the things that Asa did while he was ruling, from the time he started to rule until he died, are written in the Book of the Kings of Judah and Israel. ¹² When Asa had been ruling for almost thirty-nine years, he was afflicted with a disease in his feet. The disease was very severe, but in spite of that, he did not request help from Yahweh. Instead he sought help only from doctors.

ULB:

¹¹ Behold, the deeds of Asa, from first to last, behold, they are written in The Book of the Kings of Judah and Israel. ¹² In the thirty-ninth year of his reign, Asa was diseased in his feet; his disease was very severe. Even so, he did not seek help from Yahweh, but only from physicians.

translationWords:

- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [written](#)
- [king](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

translationNotes:

- **from first to last** - AT: “everything he did” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **The Book of the Kings of Judah and Israel** - This is a book that no longer exists.
- **Asa was diseased in his feet** - AT: “Asa had a disease in his feet”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 16 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 16 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 16:13-14

UDB:

¹³ When he had been ruling for almost forty years, he died. ¹⁴ People buried him in the tomb that his workers had made for him in the part of Jerusalem called “the city of David.” They laid his corpse on a bed covered with spices and various perfumes that had been mixed together. They also lit a huge fire to honor him.

ULB:

¹³ Asa slept with his ancestors; he died in the forty-first year of his reign. ¹⁴ They buried him in his own tomb, which he had dug out for himself in the city of David. They laid him on a bier that was filled with sweet odors and various kinds of spices prepared by skilled perfumers. Then they made a very great fire in his honor.

translationWords:

- [death, die, dead](#)
- [bury, buried, burial](#)
- [tomb, grave, burial place](#)
- [city of David](#)
- [fire](#)
- [honor, to honor](#)

translationNotes:

- **Asa slept with his ancestors** - AT: “Asa died.” (See: [Euphemism](#))
- **bier** - A bier is a table on which a dead body is placed at a funeral.
- **sweet odors and various kinds of spices prepared by skilled perfumers** - Putting plants that smell good with the dead body was one of the burial customs of the people of Israel. AT: “sweet smelling plants prepared by people skilled in this custom”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 16 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 16 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 17 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter begins the story of King Jehoshaphat.

This chapter indents some of the lines of 17:14-18 because they are long lists.

Special concepts in this chapter

Trust in Yahweh

Jehoshaphat trusted and obeyed God. Because of this, God made him strong. (See: [trust](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 17:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 17:1-2

UDB:

¹ Then Asa's son Jehoshaphat became the king of Judah, and he enabled his army to become very strong, with the result that they could resist attacks from the army of Israel. ² He put soldiers in all the cities in Judah around which they had built walls, and he put soldiers in other places in Judah and in the towns in the tribe of Ephraim that soldiers of his father Asa had captured.

ULB:

17 ¹ Jehoshaphat son of Asa became king in his place. Jehoshaphat strengthened himself against Israel. ² He placed forces in all the fortified cities of Judah, and set garrisons in the land of Judah and in the cities of Ephraim, which Asa his father had captured.

translationWords:

- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [king](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [Ephraim](#)
- [Asa](#)

translationNotes:

- **strengthened himself against Israel** - The idea of "himself" stands here for the king's army. AT: "prepared the army to be able to battle Israel" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **garrisons** - These are military encampments for protection.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 17:3-4

UDB:

³ Yahweh helped Jehoshaphat because when he started to rule Judah, he did the things that pleased Yahweh as his ancestor King David had done. He did not seek help from the idols of Baal. ⁴ Instead, he sought advice from the God whom his father had worshiped, and he obeyed God's commands; he did not do the evil things that the kings of Israel kept doing.

ULB:

³ Yahweh was with Jehoshaphat because he walked in the first ways of his father David, and did not seek the Baals.[1]Some ancient copies do not have *David* , and some modern versions leave it out. ⁴ Instead, he relied on the God of his father, and walked in his commandments, not after the behavior of Israel.

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [walk](#)
- [David](#)
- [Baal](#)
- [God](#)
- [command, to command, commandment](#)

translationNotes:

- **walked in the first ways of his father** - Behaving is spoken of as if it were walking. AT: "lived in the righteous ways of his ancestor" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **did not seek the Baals** - Did not worship the Baal idols in order to seek help from them. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 17:5-6

UDB:

⁵ Yahweh enabled him to completely control his kingdom. All the people of Judah brought gifts to him, with the result that he became very rich and was greatly honored. ⁶ He was completely devoted to doing what pleased Yahweh. His workers got rid of the places on hilltops where idols were worshiped and the places where poles were set up and used to worship the goddess Asherah all throughout Judah.

ULB:

⁵ So Yahweh established the rule in his hand; all Judah brought tribute to Jehoshaphat. He had riches and honor in abundance. ⁶ His heart was committed to Yahweh's ways. He also removed the high places and the Asherah poles from Judah.

translationWords:

- ruler, rulers, rule
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- tribute
- honor, to honor
- heart
- high places
- Asherah, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth

translationNotes:

- **Asherah poles** - See how you translated this in [14:3](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 17:7-9

UDB:

⁷ When he had been ruling Judah for almost three years, he sent some of his officials—Benhail, Obadiah, Zechariah, Nethanel, and Micaiah—to teach the people in various cities in Judah. ⁸ With them he sent several descendants of Levi—Shemaiah, Nethaniah, Zebadiah, Asahel, Shemiramoth, Jehonathan, Adonijah, Tobijah, and Tobadonijah, along with two priests, Elishama and Jehoram. ⁹ They took with them a scroll on which was written the laws of Yahweh and they taught them to the people in all the towns throughout Judah.

ULB:

⁷ In the third year of his reign he sent his officials Benhail, Obadiah, Zechariah, Nethanel, and Micaiah, to teach in the cities of Judah. ⁸ With them were Levites: Shemaiah, Nethaniah, Zebadiah, Asahel, Shemiramoth, Jehonathan, Adonijah, Tobijah, and Tobadonijah; and with them were the priests Elishama and Jehoram. ⁹ They taught in Judah, having The Book of the Law of Yahweh with them. They went about throughout all the cities of Judah and taught among the people.

translationWords:

- [biblical time: year](#)
- [reign](#)
- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [Levite, Levi](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)

translationNotes:

- **In the third year** - (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **Benhail, Obadiah, Zechariah, Nethanel, and Micaiah ... Shemaiah, Nethaniah, Zebadiah, Asahel, Shemiramoth, Jehonathan, Adonijah, Tobijah, and Tobadonijah ... Elishama and Jehoram** - These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 17:10-11

UDB:

¹⁰ The people in all the kingdoms surrounding Judah became very afraid of what Yahweh might do to punish them if they fought against Judah, so they did not try to fight Jehoshaphat's army. ¹¹ Some people from Philistia brought gifts to Jehoshaphat, and they also brought to him the silver that he demanded that they pay to him. Some Arabs brought to him 7,700 rams and 7,700 goats.

ULB:

¹⁰ Terror of Yahweh fell on all the kingdoms of the lands that were around Judah, so that they made no war against Jehoshaphat. ¹¹ Some of the Philistines brought Jehoshaphat presents, and silver as tribute. Arabians also brought him flocks, 7,700 rams, and 7,700 goats.

translationWords:

- [Philistines](#)
- [silver](#)
- [tribute](#)
- [Arabia, Arabian](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [sheep, ram, ewe](#)
- [goat, kid](#)

translationNotes:

- **Terror of Yahweh fell on all the kingdoms of the lands** - AT: "The people in all the kingdoms surrounding Judah became very afraid of what Yahweh might do to punish them"

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 17:12-13

UDB:

¹² Jehoshaphat continued to become more powerful. His workers built forts and places to store supplies in various towns in Judah. ¹³ Then they put large amounts of supplies in those storehouses. Jehoshaphat also placed in Jerusalem soldiers who were experienced.

ULB:

¹² Jehoshaphat became very powerful. He built fortresses and store cities in Judah. ¹³ He had many supplies in the cities of Judah, and soldiers—strong, courageous men—in Jerusalem.

translationWords:

- [power, powers](#)
- [stronghold, fortress, fortified](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

translationNotes:

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 17:14-16

UDB:

¹⁴ The leaders and numbers from each tribe were as follows:

- From the tribe of Judah, Adnah was the leader of the soldiers, and he commanded 300,000 soldiers.
- ¹⁵ His assistant was Jehohanan, who commanded 280,000 soldiers.
- ¹⁶ Next was Zicri's son Amasiah, who volunteered to serve Yahweh in this way; he commanded 200,000 courageous soldiers.
-

ULB:

¹⁴ Here is a list of them, order by the name of their fathers' houses: From Judah, the commanders of thousands; Adnah the commander, and with him 300,000 fighting men; ¹⁵ next to him Jehohanan the commander, and with him 280,000 men; ¹⁶ next to him Amasiah son of Zichri, who willingly offered to serve Yahweh; and with him 200,000 fighting men.

translationWords:

- ancestor, father, forefather
- house
- commander, command
- serve, service
- Yahweh

translationNotes:

- Adnah ... Jehohanan ... Amasiah son of Zichri - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- 300,000 ... 280,000 ... 200,000 - (See: [Numbers](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 17:17-19

UDB:

¹⁷ From the tribe of Benjamin, Eliada, who was a brave soldier, was the leader of the soldiers; he commanded 200,000 men who had bows, arrows, and shields.

- ¹⁸ Next was Jehozabad, who commanded 180,000 men who had weapons for fighting battles.

¹⁹ Those were the soldiers who served the king in Jerusalem, in addition to the men whom the king had placed in the other cities in Judah that had walls around them.

ULB:

¹⁷ From Benjamin: Eliada a powerful man of courage, and with him 200,000 armed with bows and shields; ¹⁸ next to him Jehozabad, and with him 180,000 ready prepared for war. ¹⁹ These were those who served the king, besides those whom the king put in the fortified cities throughout all Judah.

translationWords:

- Benjamin
- bow and arrow
- shield

translationNotes:

- besides those - AT: "in addition to"

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 18 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of Jehoshaphat as king continues in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

The will of God is accomplished, even when people try to avoid it. Ahab tried to disguise himself to hide from the soldiers of Aram but an arrow still hit and killed him. (See: [will of God](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 18:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 18:1-3

UDB:

¹ Jehoshaphat became very wealthy and was greatly honored. But then he arranged for one of his family to marry someone from the family of King Ahab of Israel. ² Several years later, he went down from Jerusalem to Samaria to visit Ahab. Ahab welcomed him, and the people who had come with him by slaughtering many sheep and cattle for a feast. ³ Then he asked Jehoshaphat, “Will you and your army go with my army to attack the city of Ramoth in the region of Gilead?” Jehoshaphat replied, “My soldiers and I are at your orders. We will go to war when you tell us to go.”

ULB:

18 ¹ Now Jehoshaphat had great riches and honor; he allied himself with Ahab by having one of his family marry his daughter. ² After some years, he went down to Ahab in Samaria. Ahab killed many sheep and oxen for him and the people who were with him. Ahab also persuaded him to attack Ramoth Gilead with him. ³ Ahab, king of Israel, said to Jehoshaphat, king of Judah, “Will you go with me to Ramoth Gilead?” Jehoshaphat answered him, “I am like you, and my people are like your people; we will be with you in the war.”

translationWords:

- Jehoshaphat
- honor, to honor
- Ahab
- Samaria, Samaritan
- sheep, ram, ewe
- ox, oxen
- Ramoth
- Gilead
- king
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- Judah

translationNotes:

- **he allied himself with Ahab** - AT: “he aligned himself with Ahab” or “he made himself a friend of Ahab”
- **I am like you, and my people are like your people** - Jehoshaphat is stating his allegiance to Ahab. AT: “I offer myself and my soldiers to you to use in any way you want.” (See: **Idiom**)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 18:4-5**UDB:**

⁴ Then he added, “But we should ask Yahweh first, to find out what he wants us to do.”

⁵ So the king of Israel gathered all his four hundred prophets and asked them, “Should we go to fight the people of Ramoth, or should we not?”

They replied, “Yes, go and attack them because God will enable your army to defeat them.”

ULB:

⁴ Jehoshaphat said to the king of Israel, “Please first seek the word of Yahweh for your answer.”

⁵ Then the king of Israel gathered the prophets together, four hundred men, and said to them, “Should we go to Ramoth Gilead to battle, or should I not?” They said, “Attack, for God will give it into the hand of the king.”

translationWords:

- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [God](#)

translationNotes:**Links:**

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 18:6-8

UDB:

⁶ But Jehoshaphat asked, “Is there no prophet of Yahweh here whom we can ask?”

⁷ The king of Israel replied, “There is still one man here, whom we can ask to find out what Yahweh wants, His name is Micaiah son of Imlah. But I hate him because he never says that anything good about me. He always predicts that bad things will happen to me.”

Jehoshaphat replied, “King Ahab, you should not say that!”

⁸ So the king of Israel told one of his officials to summon Micaiah immediately.

ULB:

⁶ But Jehoshaphat said, “Is there not here still another prophet of Yahweh with whom we might seek advice?” ⁷ The king of Israel said to Jehoshaphat, “There is still one man by whom we may seek the advice of Yahweh, Micaiah son of Imlah, but I hate him because he never prophesies good concerning me, but always evil.” But Jehoshaphat said, “The king should not say that.” ⁸ Then the king of Israel called an officer and said, “Quickly bring Micaiah son of Imlah.”

translationWords:

translationNotes:

- **Is there not here ... advice?** - “I am sure there must be here ... advice.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Micaiah son of Imlah** - He was a prophet of the Lord. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 18:9-11

UDB:

⁹ Now the king of Israel and the king of Judah were sitting there on thrones, wearing their royal robes. They were sitting by the gate of Samaria, and all the prophets were busy saying words of prophecy to them.

¹⁰ One of them whose name was Zedekiah son of Kenaanah, had made from iron something that resembled the horns of a bull. He proclaimed to Ahab, “This is what Yahweh says: ‘With horns like these, your army will keep attacking the army of Aram like a bull attacks another animal, until you completely destroy them.’” ¹¹ All the other prophets of Ahab agreed. They said, “Yes! If you attack Ramoth in Gilead, you will be successful, because Yahweh will enable you to defeat them.”

ULB:

⁹ Now Ahab the king of Israel and Jehoshaphat the king of Judah were sitting each on a throne, clothed in their robes, in an open place at the entrance of the gate of Samaria, and all the prophets were prophesying before them. ¹⁰ Zedekiah son of Kenaanah made himself horns of iron and said, “Yahweh says this: With these you will push the Arameans until they are consumed.” ¹¹ All the prophets prophesied the same, saying, “Attack Ramoth Gilead and win, for Yahweh has given it into the hand of the king.”

translationWords:

- Ahab
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- Judah
- throne
- clothe, clothed
- gate, gate bar
- Zedekiah
- Aram, Aramean, Aramaic

translationNotes:

- **son of Kenaanah** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **horns of iron** - This is a reference to the horns of a bull but they made of metal.
- **you will push the Arameans until they are consumed** - AT: “You will defeat them” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Yahweh has given it into the hand of the king** - AT: “Yahweh will give you victory”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 18:12-14

UDB:

¹² The messenger who went to summon Micaiah said to him, “Listen to me! All the other prophets are predicting the same thing. You had better do as they are doing!”

¹³ But Micaiah said, “As surely as Yahweh lives, I will tell him only what he tells me to say.”

¹⁴ When Micaiah arrived, the king of Israel asked him, “Should we go to attack Ramoth, or not?” Micaiah replied, “Sure, go! Yahweh will enable your army to defeat them!”

ULB:

¹² The messenger who went to call Micaiah spoke to him, saying, “Now look, the words of the prophets declare good things to the king with one mouth. Please let your word be like the word of one of them and say good things.” ¹³ Micaiah replied, “As Yahweh lives, it is what God says that I will say.” ¹⁴ When he came to the king, the king said to him, “Micaiah, should we go to Ramoth Gilead for battle, or not?” Micaiah answered him, “Attack and be victorious! For it will be a great victory.”

translationWords:

- messenger
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Yahweh
- God
- Ramoth
- Gilead

translationNotes:

- **Micaiah** - See how you translated this in [17:7](#)
- **let your word** - This is a reference to the whole of the prophets message.
- **with one mouth** - AT: “with one opinion” or “and they all agreed” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **As Yahweh lives** - AT: “I assure you” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **or not** - “or should we not go” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 18:15-16

UDB:

¹⁵ But King Ahab wished to appear reverent toward Yahweh in front of Jehoshaphat. He said to Micaiah, “I keep telling you to say only what Yahweh tells you to say!”

¹⁶ Then Micaiah replied, “The truth is that in a vision I saw all the troops of Israel scattered on the mountains. They seemed to be like sheep that did not have a shepherd. And Yahweh said, ‘Their master has been killed. So tell them all to go home peacefully.’”

ULB:

¹⁵ Then the king said to him, “How many times must I require you to swear to tell me nothing but the truth in the name of Yahweh?” ¹⁶ So Micaiah said, “I saw all Israel scattered on the mountains, like sheep who have no shepherd, and Yahweh said, ‘These have no shepherd. Let every man return to his house in peace.’”

translationWords:

- [oath, swear, swear by](#)
- [true, truth, come true](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [shepherd, to shepherd](#)
- [peace, peaceful](#)

translationNotes:

- **How many times must I require you to swear to tell me nothing but the truth in the name of Yahweh?** - AT: “I told you to only speak the truth in the name of Yahweh” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **like sheep who have no shepherd** - AT: “without good leadership” (See: [Simile](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 18:17-18

UDB:

¹⁷ Ahab turned to Jehoshaphat and said, "I told you that Micaiah never says anything good will happen to me! He only predicts bad things for me."

¹⁸ But Micaiah continued, saying, "Listen to what Yahweh showed to me! In a vision I saw Yahweh sitting on his throne, with all the armies of heaven standing around him, on his right side and on his left side.

ULB:

¹⁷ So the king of Israel said to Jehoshaphat, "Did I not tell you that he would not prophesy good concerning me, but only disaster?" ¹⁸ Then Micaiah said, "Therefore all of you should hear the word of Yahweh: I saw Yahweh sitting on his throne, and all the host of heaven were standing on his right hand and on his left.

translationWords:

- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [throne](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [right hand](#)

translationNotes:

- **Did I not tell you that he would not prophesy good concerning me, but only disaster?**
- AT: "I told you that he would prophesy that disaster would come to me" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 18:19

UDB:

¹⁹ And Yahweh said, ‘Who can persuade Ahab, the king of Israel, to go to fight against the people of Ramoth, in order that he may be killed there?’

Some suggested one thing, and others suggested something else.

ULB:

¹⁹ Yahweh said, ‘Who will entice Ahab, king of Israel, so that he may go up and fall at Ramoth Gilead?’ One said this and another that.

translationWords:

- [Ahab](#)

translationNotes:

- **entice** - This means to attract someone by offering something appealing.
- **fall** - AT: “be seriously hurt” or “die” (See: [Euphemism](#))
- **One said this and another that** - This indicates that there was more than one opinion.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 18:20-21

UDB:

²⁰ Finally one spirit forward and said, 'I can do it!'

Yahweh asked him, 'How will you do it?'

²¹ The spirit replied, 'I will go and inspire all of Ahab's prophets to tell lies.' Yahweh said, 'You will be successful; go and do it!'

ULB:

²⁰ Then a spirit came forward and it stood before Yahweh and said, 'I will entice him.' Yahweh said to him, 'How?' ²¹ The spirit replied, 'I will go out and I will become a lying spirit in the mouth of all his prophets.' Yahweh replied, 'You will entice him, and you will also be successful. Go now and do so.'

translationWords:

- [spirit, spiritual](#)

translationNotes:

- **lying spirit in the mouth of all his prophets** - AT: "a spirit who makes the prophets lie"

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 18:22

UDB:

²² So now I tell you that Yahweh has caused your prophets to lie to you. Yahweh has decided that something terrible will happen to you.”

ULB:

²² Now see, Yahweh has put a lying spirit in the mouth of these prophets of yours, and Yahweh has decreed disaster for you.”

translationWords:

- [decree](#)

translationNotes:

- **decreed disaster for you** - AT: “determined that terrible things will happen to you”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 18:23-24

UDB:

²³ Then Zedekiah walked over to Micaiah and slapped him on his face. He said, “Do you think that Yahweh’s spirit left me in order to speak to you?”

²⁴ Micaiah replied, “You will find out for yourself to which of us Yahweh’s spirit has truly spoken on the day when you go into a room of some house to hide from the Aramean soldiers!”

ULB:

²³ Then Zedekiah son of Kenaanah, came up, slapped Micaiah on the cheek, and said, “Which way did the Spirit of Yahweh take to go from me to speak to you?” ²⁴ Micaiah said, “Look, you will know that on that day, when you run into some inner room to hide.”

translationWords:

- [Zedekiah](#)
- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord](#)

translationNotes:

- **Zedekiah son of Kenaanah** - This is not the same Zedekiah as referenced above, but a prophet loyal to Ahab (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Which way did the Spirit of Yahweh take to go from me to speak to you?** - AT: The spirit of God did not leave me to speak to you” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **when you run into some inner room to hide** - AT: “when you run, in fear, to hide”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 18:25-27

UDB:

²⁵ King Ahab commanded his soldiers, "Arrest Micaiah and take him to Amon, the governor of this city, and to my son Joash. ²⁶ Tell them that I have commanded that they should put this man in prison and give him only bread and water. Do not give him anything else to eat until I return safely from the battle!"

²⁷ Micaiah replied, "If you return safely, it will be clear that it was not Yahweh who told me what to say to you!" Then he said to all those who were standing there, "Do not forget what I have said to King Ahab!"

ULB:

²⁵ The king of Israel said to some servants, "You people seize Micaiah and take him to Amon, the governor of the city, and to Joash, my son. ²⁶ You people will say to him, 'The king says: Put this man in prison and feed him with only a little bread and only a little water, until I return safely.'"

²⁷ Then Micaiah said, "If you return safely, then Yahweh has not spoken by me." Then he added, "Listen to this, all you people."

translationWords:

- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [governor, govern, proconsul, government](#)
- [Joash](#)
- [prison, prisoner, imprison](#)

translationNotes:

- **king of Israel** - This is a reference to Ahab.
- **Amon** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **If you return safely, then Yahweh has not spoken by me** - Micaiah knows that Yahweh has spoken through him.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 18:28-30

UDB:

²⁸ So the king of Israel and the king of Judah led their armies to Ramoth in Gilead. ²⁹ King Ahab said to Jehoshaphat, “I will put on different clothes, in order that no one will recognize that I am the king. But you should wear your royal robe.” So the king of Israel disguised himself, and they both went into the battle.

³⁰ The king of Aram had told his soldiers who were driving the chariots, “Attack only the king of Israel! Do not attack anyone else.”

ULB:

²⁸ So Ahab, the king of Israel, and Jehoshaphat, the king of Judah, went up against Ramoth Gilead.

²⁹ The king of Israel said to Jehoshaphat, “I will disguise myself and go into the battle, but you put on your royal robes.” So the king of Israel disguised himself, and they went into the battle.

³⁰ Now the king of Aram had commanded the captains of his chariots, saying, “Do not attack the unimportant or the important soldiers. Instead, attack only the king of Israel.”

translationWords:

- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [royal](#)
- [Aram, Aramean, Aramaic](#)
- [command, to command, commandment](#)
- [chariot](#)

translationNotes:

- **went up against** - AT: “fought against”
- **Ramoth Gilead** - See how you translated this in [18:2](#)
- **disguise** - This means to change the usual appearance so as not to be identified.
- **Do not attack the unimportant or the important soldiers** - AT: “Do not attack any of the soldiers” (See: [Merism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 18:31-32

UDB:

³¹ So when the soldiers who were driving the Aramean chariots saw Jehoshaphat wearing the royal robes, they thought, “He must be the king of Israel!” ³² So they turned to attack him. But when Jehoshaphat cried out, Yahweh helped him, and they realized that he was not the king of Israel. And God caused them to stop pursuing him.

ULB:

³¹ It came about that when the captains of the chariots saw Jehoshaphat they said, “That is the king of Israel.” They turned around to attack him, but Jehoshaphat cried out, and Yahweh helped him. God turned them away from him. ³² It came about that when the commanders of the chariots saw that it was not the king of Israel, they turned back from pursuing him.

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)

translationNotes:

- **That is the king of Israel** - Jehoshaphat was wrongly identified as the king of Israel because Ahab had insisted that he wear kingly robes.
- **God turned them away from him** - AT: “God caused them to stop pursuing him.”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 18:33-34

UDB:

³³ But one Aramean soldier shot an arrow at Ahab, without knowing who he was. The arrow struck Ahab between the places where the parts of his armor joined together. Ahab told the driver of his chariot, "Turn the chariot around and take me out of here! I have been severely wounded!" ³⁴ The battle continued all the day. Ahab was sitting propped up in his chariot, facing the Aramean soldiers. And late in the afternoon, when the sun was setting, he died.

ULB:

³³ But a certain man drew his bow at random and shot the king of Israel between the joints of his armor. Then Ahab said to the driver of his chariot, "Turn around and carry me out of the battle, for I am badly wounded." ³⁴ The battle grew worse that day, and the king of Israel was held up in his chariot facing the Arameans until the evening. About the time that the sun was going down, he died.

translationWords:

- [bow and arrow](#)
- [armor](#)
- [Aram, Aramean, Aramaic](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)

translationNotes:

- **between the joints of his armor** - This is a place where two pieces of armor meet and is susceptible to arrows and swords.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 19 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of Jehoshaphat as king continues in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Levite judges

Jehoshaphat appointed many Levites to be judges and told them to be very fair. (See: [appoint](#), [appointed](#) and [judge, judgment](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 19:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 19:1-3

UDB:

¹ When King Jehoshaphat returned safely to his palace in Jerusalem, ² the prophet Jehu son of the prophet Hanani, went out of the city to meet the king, and said to him, "It was not right for you to help a wicked man and to love those who hate Yahweh. Because of what you have done, Yahweh is angry with you. ³ But you have done some good things; you got rid of the poles in this country for worshiping the goddess Asherah, and you have been determined to do what pleases God."

ULB:

19 ¹ Jehoshaphat the king of Judah safely returned to his house in Jerusalem. ² Then Jehu son of Hanani, the seer, went out to meet him and said to King Jehoshaphat, "Should you be helping the wicked? Should you be loving those who hate Yahweh? For this deed, anger from Yahweh is on you. ³ However, there is some good to be found in you, in that you have taken the Asherah poles out of the land, and you have fixed your heart to seek God."

translationWords:

- Jehoshaphat
- king
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- Jerusalem
- Jehu
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- Yahweh
- works, deeds, work, acts
- heart
- God

translationNotes:

- **son of Hanani** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Should you be helping the wicked? Should you be loving those who hate Yahweh?** - AT: "You should not help the wicked! You should not love those who hate Yahweh!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Asherah poles** - See how you translated this in [14:3](#)
- **fixed your heart** - AT: "firmly decided" (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 19 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 19 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 19:4-5

UDB:

⁴ Jehoshaphat lived in Jerusalem. But one time, like he had done once previously, he went out among all the people in the country, from the city of Beersheba in the far south to the hill country of the tribe of Ephraim in the far north, and he convinced them to return to worshiping Yahweh, the God whom their ancestors worshiped. ⁵ He appointed judges throughout Judah, in each of the cities that had walls around them.

ULB:

⁴ Jehoshaphat lived in Jerusalem; and he went out again among the people from Beersheba to the hill country of Ephraim and brought them back to Yahweh, the God of their fathers. ⁵ He placed judges in the land throughout all the fortified cities of Judah, city by city.

translationWords:

- [Beersheba](#)
- [Ephraim](#)
- [judge](#)

translationNotes:

- **brought them back to Yahweh** - AT: “restored their faith in Yahweh”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 19 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 19 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 19:6-7

UDB:

⁶ He told them, "Make your decisions carefully, because you are judging cases not in order to please people, but to please Yahweh. And he will be watching you whenever you make a decision. ⁷ So now revere Yahweh and judge cases carefully and do not forget that Yahweh our God never acts unjustly, and that he never does what people want because they offer him money."

ULB:

⁶ He said to the judges, "Consider what you should do, because you are not judging for man, but for Yahweh; he is with you in the act of judging. ⁷ Now then, let the fear of Yahweh be upon you. Be careful when you judge, for there is no iniquity with Yahweh our God, nor is there any favoritism or bribe taking."

translationWords:

- judge, judgment
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- iniquity
- favor, favorable, favoritism
- bribe

translationNotes:

- **let the fear of Yahweh be upon you** - AT: "You should remember to fear Yahweh when you judge"

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 19 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 19 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 19:8-9

UDB:

⁸ In Jerusalem, Jehoshaphat also appointed some priests and other descendants of Levi and some leaders of Israelite families to be judges. He told them to do what Yahweh's laws said was right when they settled disputes. Those men lived in Jerusalem. ⁹ He told them this: "You must always do your work faithfully, honoring Yahweh.

ULB:

⁸ Moreover, in Jerusalem Jehoshaphat appointed some of the Levites and the priests, and some of the heads of the ancestral houses of Israel, for carrying out judgment for Yahweh, and for the sake of disputes. They lived in Jerusalem. ⁹ He instructed them, saying, "You must serve in reverence for Yahweh, faithfully, and with your whole heart.

translationWords:

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Levite, Levi](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [judge, judgment](#)
- [faithful, faithfulness](#)
- [perfect](#)
- [heart](#)

translationNotes:

- **ancestral houses of Israel** - AT: "ancient families of Israel"
- **for the sake of disputes** - AT: "to help resolve arguments"
- **with your whole heart** - (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 19 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 19 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 19:10

UDB:

¹⁰ In every dispute that your fellow Israelites who live in the cities want you to settle, you must warn them to not sin against Yahweh by telling lies during the trial—regardless of whether the trial is about murder, or about various laws, or about various royal decrees. If you do not warn them, God will punish you. Do this so that he does not become angry with you or your fellow Israelites.

ULB:

¹⁰ Whenever any dispute comes to you from your brothers who live in their cities, whether concerning bloodshed, whether about laws and commands, statutes or decrees, you must warn them, so they do not to become guilty before Yahweh, or anger will come toward you and toward your brothers. You shall do this and you will not be guilty.

translationWords:

- [brother](#)
- [bloodshed](#)
- [law, principle](#)
- [command, to command, commandment](#)
- [statute, statutes](#)
- [decree](#)
- [guilt, guilty](#)

translationNotes:

- **anger will come toward you and toward your brothers** - AT: “God will be angry with you ante your brothers”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 19 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 19 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 19:11

UDB:

¹¹ Amariah, the high priest, will supervise you in any matter that Yahweh is concerned about, and Zebadiah son of Ishmael, the leader of the tribe of Judah, will supervise you in any matter that I am concerned about. And the descendants of Levi will assist you. Act courageously, and I pray that Yahweh will help those who do their work well.”

ULB:

¹¹ See, Amariah the chief priest is over you in all the matters of Yahweh. Zebadiah son of Ishmael, the leader of the house of Judah, is in charge of in all the matters of the king. Also, the Levites will be officers serving you. Be strong and obey your instructions, and may Yahweh be with those who are good.”

translationWords:

- [chief priests](#)
- [Levite, Levi](#)

translationNotes:

- **Amariah** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Zebadiah son of Ishmael** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 19 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 19 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 20 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of King Jehoshaphat is completed in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Deliverance and trust

God rescues those who trust him. An enormous army came against Jehoshaphat but God promised that he would defeat them without Judah having to fight. Then the enemy fought among themselves and when the army of Judah arrived there were dead bodies. (See: [trust](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#) and [promise](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 20:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 20:1-2

UDB:

¹ Later armies from Moab and Ammon and some soldiers from region of Meun, near Edom, came to fight against Jehoshaphat's army.

² Some men came and told Jehoshaphat, "A huge army is coming to attack your army. They are coming from the region of Edom, from the other side of the Dead Sea. They have already come to Hazazon Tamar!" Another name for that place is Engedi.

ULB:

20 ¹ It came about after this, that the people of Moab and Ammon, and with them some Meunites came against Jehoshaphat to do battle.[1]The reading *some Meunites* represents a correction to the Hebrew text, which reads, *some Ammonites* . It is thought that *Meunites* was original, and that a copyist changed it to *some Ammonites* . But this last reading makes no sense, because Ammonites have already been mentioned in this verse. However, different versions deal with this problem in different ways. ² Then some came who told Jehoshaphat, saying, "A large multitude is coming against you from beyond the Dead Sea, from Edom. See, they are in Hazazontamar," that is, Engedi.[2]Instead of *Edom* , some ancient and modern versions read, *Aram* .

translationWords:

- [Moab, Moabite, Moabites](#)
- [Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonites](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [Salt Sea, Dead Sea](#)
- [En Gedi](#)

translationNotes:

- **Meunites** - This was a people group that probably lived near Edom, east of the Jordan River. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Hazazontamar** - This is another name for Engedi.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 20:3-4

UDB:

³ Jehoshaphat became very afraid, so he decided to ask Yahweh what he should do. He also proclaimed that all the people of Judah should fast. ⁴ The people of Judah gathered together to request Yahweh to help them. They came to Jerusalem from every town in Judah to seek help from Yahweh.

ULB:

³ Jehoshaphat became afraid and set himself to seek Yahweh. He proclaimed a fast throughout all Judah. ⁴ Judah gathered together to seek Yahweh; they came to seek Yahweh from all the cities of Judah.

translationWords:

- [fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [proclaim, proclamation](#)
- [fast](#)
- [Judah](#)

translationNotes:

- **set himself** - AT: “determined”
- **to seek Yahweh** - AT: “to try to get God to pay attention to them” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 20:5-7

UDB:

⁵ Then Jehoshaphat stood up in front of the people of Judah in front of the new courtyard of the temple, ⁶ and he prayed this:

”Yahweh, the God whom our ancestors belonged to, you rule from heaven. You rule over all the kings and nations on earth. You can do anything; no one can successfully oppose you. ⁷ Our God, you drove out the people who lived in this land while your Israelite people advanced into it, and you certainly gave it to us who are descendants of Abraham, so that the land would belong to us forever.

ULB:

⁵ Jehoshaphat stood in the assembly of Judah and Jerusalem, at the house of Yahweh, in front of the new courtyard. ⁶ He said, ”Yahweh, the God of our ancestors, are you not God in heaven? Are you not the ruler over all the kingdoms of the nations? Power and might are in your hand, so no one is able to resist you. ⁷ Our God, did you not drive out the inhabitants of this land before your people Israel, and give it forever to the descendants of Abraham?

translationWords:

- assembly, assemble
- Jerusalem
- house of God, Yahweh’s house
- courtyard, court
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- nation
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- forever
- descendant, descended from
- Abraham, Abram

translationNotes:

- **are you not God in heaven? Are you not the ruler over all the kingdoms of the nations?** - AT: “You are indeed God in heaven and the ruler over all the kings of the earth.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Power and might are in your hand** - The words “Power” and “might” mean basically the same thing and emphasize the greatness of Yahweh’s power. The word “hand” refers to possession. AT: “You possess great power.” (See: [Doublet](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

- **did you not drive out the inhabitants of this land before your people Israel, and give it forever to the descendants of Abraham?** - AT: “It was you who drove out those who lived in this land for the sake of your people Israel and who gave it permanently to the descendants of Abraham.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 20:8-9

UDB:

⁸ Our ancestors lived here and built a temple at which to worship you. At that time they prayed:

⁹ ‘If we experience disasters, either from our enemies attacking us, or from disease or hunger, we will assemble at this temple in your presence, for you agreed to be present here. We will plead with you because of the things we are suffering, and you will hear us and will rescue us.’

ULB:

⁸ They lived in it and built you a holy place in it for your name, saying, ⁹ ‘If disaster comes on us—the sword, judgment, or disease, or famine—we will stand before this house, and before you (for your name is in this house), and we will cry to you in our affliction, and you will hear us and save us.’^[1] Instead of *judgment*, some ancient and modern versions read *flood*.

translationWords:

- [holy place, most holy place](#)
- [name](#)
- [sword](#)
- [judge, judgment](#)
- [afflict, affliction](#)
- [save, safe](#)

translationNotes:

- **your name is in this house** - AT: “your presence is here in this house” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 20:10-11

UDB:

¹⁰ You would not allow our Israelite ancestors to enter the countries of Ammon, Moab, or Edom when they were traveling from Egypt to Canaan. So our ancestors turned away from those areas and did not attack the people there and did not destroy them. But now they are coming here to attack us. ¹¹ We did good things for them. But now look at how they are repaying us by trying to drive out us from the land that you gave to our ancestors to belong to them and their descendants forever!

ULB:

¹⁰ See now, here are the people of Ammon, Moab, and Mount Seir whom you would not let Israel invade when they came out of the land of Egypt; instead, Israel turned away from them and did not destroy them. ¹¹ See how they are rewarding us; they are coming to drive us out of your land that you have given us to inherit.

translationWords:

- [Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonitess](#)
- [Moab, Moabite, Moabitess](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir](#)

translationNotes:

- **Mount Seir** - This was a place where the Edomites lived.
- **See how they are rewarding us; they are coming to drive us out of your land** - AT: "This is how they 'repay' us for the mercy we showed to them; they are coming to drive us out of your land" See: [Irony](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 20:12-13

UDB:

¹² So, our God, please punish them. We cannot defeat the enormous army that is coming to attack us. We do not know what to do, but we are depending on you to help us.”

¹³ All the men of Judah and their wives, children, and babies were standing there in the presence of Yahweh while Jehoshaphat prayed.

ULB:

¹² Our God, will you not judge them? For we have no power against this great army that is coming against us. We do not know what to do, but our eyes are on you.” ¹³ All Judah stood before Yahweh, with their little ones, wives, and children.

translationWords:

- [God](#)
- [power, powers](#)

translationNotes:

- **will you not judge them?** - AT: “please judge them.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **our eyes are on you** - AT: “we are looking to you for help” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 20:14-15

UDB:

¹⁴ Then the Spirit of Yahweh came upon Jahaziel son of Zechariah, who was son of Benaiah, who was son of Jeiel, who was son of Mattaniah. He was a descendant of Levi and a descendant of Asaph. He stood up in front of the whole group that was gathered there, ¹⁵ and said, "King Jehoshaphat and all you who live in Jerusalem and in other places in Judah, listen! This is what Yahweh says to you: 'Do not be afraid or discouraged because of this huge army that is coming to attack you, because it is not you who will win this battle. It is God who will win it.

ULB:

¹⁴ Then in the middle of the assembly, the spirit of Yahweh came on Jahaziel, son of Zechariah, son of Benaiah, son of Jeiel, son of Mattaniah, the Levite, one of the sons of Asaph. ¹⁵ Jahaziel said, "Listen, all Judah and you inhabitants of Jerusalem, and King Jehoshaphat. This is what Yahweh says to you, 'Do not fear; do not be discouraged because of this great army, for the battle does not belong to you, but to God.

translationWords:

- [assembly, assemble](#)
- [spirit, spiritual](#)
- [Zechariah \(OT\)](#)
- [Levite, Levi](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

translationNotes:

- **the spirit of Yahweh came on** - See how you translated this in [15:1](#)
- **Jahaziel ... Zechariah ... Benaiah ... Jeiel ... Mattaniah ... Asaph** - men's names (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 20:16-17

UDB:

¹⁶ Tomorrow march down toward them. They will be climbing up through the pass of Ziz north of En Gedi. You will meet them at the end of the gorge near wilderness of Jeruel. ¹⁷ But you will not need to fight this battle. You soldiers from Jerusalem and other places in Judah, just take your positions, and then stand still and watch what will happen. You will see Yahweh rescue you. Do not be afraid or discouraged. March toward them tomorrow, and Yahweh will be with you.”

ULB:

¹⁶ You must go down against them tomorrow. See, they are coming up by way of the pass of Ziz. You will find them at the end of the valley, before the wilderness of Jeruel. ¹⁷ You will not need to fight in this battle. Stand in your positions, stand still, and see the rescue of Yahweh with you, Judah and Jerusalem. Do not fear nor be discouraged. Go out against them tomorrow, for Yahweh is with you.”

translationWords:

- [desert, wilderness](#)

translationNotes:

- **go down against** - AT: “go to” or “go to battle”
- **pass of Ziz** - This is a narrow valley between two mountains southeast of Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **rescue of Yahweh** - God will fight the battle and rescue the people

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 20:18-19

UDB:

¹⁸ Jehoshaphat prostrated himself with his face touching the ground, and all the people of Jerusalem and other places in Judah who were there knelt down to worship Yahweh. ¹⁹ Then some descendants of Levi who were descendants of Kohath and Korah stood up and loudly praised Yahweh, the God whom the Israelites belonged to.

ULB:

¹⁸ Jehoshaphat bowed his head with his face to the ground. All Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem fell down before Yahweh, worshiping him. ¹⁹ The Levites, those of the descendants of the Kohathites and Korahites, stood up to praise Yahweh, the God of Israel, with a very loud voice.

translationWords:

- [bow, bow down](#)
- [worship](#)
- [descendant, descended from](#)
- [praise](#)

translationNotes:

- **All Judah** - AT: "All the people of Judah" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Kohathites and Korahites** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 20:20-21

UDB:

²⁰ Early the next morning the army left to go to the desert near the town of Tekoa. While they were leaving, Jehoshaphat stood up and said to them, “You people of Jerusalem and other places in Judah, listen to me! Trust in Yahweh our God; if you do that, you will be strong. Trust in what his prophets have said; if you do that, you will be successful.” ²¹ Then, after consulting with the people’s leaders, Jehoshaphat assigned some persons to sign praise of Yahweh for his greatness, and for these individuals to lead the entire army to the enemy. They were singing,

”Thank Yahweh,
because he faithfully loves us forever.”

ULB:

²⁰ Early in the morning they arose and went out into the wilderness of Tekoa. As they went out, Jehoshaphat stood and said, “Listen to me, Judah, and you inhabitants of Jerusalem! Trust in Yahweh your God, and you will be supported. Trust in his prophets, and you will succeed.” ²¹ When he had consulted with the people, he appointed those who should sing to Yahweh and give him praise for his holy glory, as they went out preceding the army, and say, “Give thanks to Yahweh, for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.”

translationWords:

- raise, rise, risen, arise, arose
- desert, wilderness
- trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- appoint, appointed
- holy, holiness
- glory, glorious
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love
- forever

translationNotes:

- **Tekoa** - This was a town south of Jerusalem (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **you will be supported** - AT: “Yahweh will help you”
- **Trust in his prophets, and you will succeed** - AT: “If you trust in Yahweh’s prophets, then you will succeed”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 20:22-23

UDB:

²² While they began to sing and praise Yahweh, Yahweh caused some enemy soldiers to unexpectedly attack the others from Ammon and Moab and Edom. They defeated the others in their army.

²³ Then the soldiers from Ammon and Moab attacked the soldiers from Edom and completely annihilated them. After they finished slaughtering the men from Edom, they slaughtered each other.

ULB:

²² When they began to sing and to praise, Yahweh set men in ambush against the people of Ammon, Moab, and Mount Seir, who were coming against Judah. They were defeated. ²³ For the people of Ammon and Moab rose to fight the inhabitants of Mount Seir, in order to completely kill them and destroy them. When they had finished with the inhabitants of Mount Seir, they all helped to destroy each other.

translationWords:

- [Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonitess](#)
- [Moab, Moabite, Moabitess](#)

translationNotes:

- **Mount Seir** - See how you translated this in [20:10](#)
- **set men in ambush** - AT: “prepared a surprise attack”
- **in order to completely kill them and destroy them** - These two phrases mean basically the same thing. The second intensifies the first. AT: “to completely annihilate them” (UDB). (See: [Doublet](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 20:24

UDB:

²⁴ When the soldiers from Judah came to the place where they could look down over the wilderness, they looked toward that huge army of their enemies, and they saw only corpses lying on the ground. No one had survived.

ULB:

²⁴ When Judah came to a place overlooking the wilderness, they looked out on the army. Behold, they were dead, fallen to the ground; none had escaped.

translationWords:

- [Judah](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)

translationNotes:

- **Behold, they were dead** - This was a surprise. All their enemies had destroyed each other.
- **they were dead, fallen to the ground** - The phrase “fallen to the ground” is an idiomatic way to say that “they were dead.” AT: “they were all dead on the ground.” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Doublet](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 20:25-26

UDB:

²⁵ So Jehoshaphat and his soldiers went to take the possessions of their enemies, and they saw that there was a lot of equipment and clothing and other valuable things; there was more than they could carry away. There were very many things, with the result that it took three days for them to collect them all. ²⁶ The following day they gathered in Beracah Valley and praised Yahweh there. That is why that valley is still called Beracah, which means praise.

ULB:

²⁵ When Jehoshaphat and his people came to take plunder from them, they found among them abundant goods, clothing, and valuable articles, which they took for themselves, more than they could carry away. It took them three days to carry off the plunder, there was so much of it.[1]Instead of *among them*, some ancient and modern versions read *cattle*. Instead of *clothing*, some ancient and modern versions read *dead bodies*. ²⁶ On the fourth day they assembled in the Valley of Beracah. There they praised Yahweh, so the name of that place is the “Valley of Beracah” to this day.

translationWords:

- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [praise](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

translationNotes:

- **to this day** - See how you translated this in [5:9](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 20:27-28

UDB:

²⁷ Then while Jehoshaphat led them, all the soldiers who were from Jerusalem and other places in Judah returned to Jerusalem. They were happy because Yahweh had enabled them to defeat their enemies. ²⁸ When they arrived at Jerusalem, they went to the temple, playing harps, lutes, and trumpets.

ULB:

²⁷ Then they returned, every man of Judah and Jerusalem, and Jehoshaphat in their lead, to go again to Jerusalem with joy, for Yahweh had made them rejoice over their enemies. ²⁸ They came to Jerusalem and to the house of Yahweh with lyres, harps, and trumpets.

translationWords:

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [joy, joyful](#)
- [rejoice](#)
- [lute, lyre](#)
- [harp](#)

translationNotes:

- **every man of Judah and Jerusalem** - This is a reference to every fighting man (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **Jehoshaphat in their lead** - King jehoshaphat was in front of the whole army as they went back to Jerusalem.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 20:29-30

UDB:

²⁹ People in the kingdoms of the nearby countries became very afraid when they heard how Yahweh had fought against the enemies of the Israelites. ³⁰ Then there was peace in the kingdom that Jehoshaphat ruled, because God had enabled him to have peace throughout the country.

ULB:

²⁹ The terror of God was on all the kingdoms of the nations when they heard that Yahweh had fought against Israel's enemies. ³⁰ So Jehoshaphat's kingdom was quiet, for his God gave him peace all around him.

translationWords:

- [God](#)
- [nation](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [peace, peaceful](#)

translationNotes:

- **The terror of God was on all the kingdoms of the nations** - "All the kings of the nations greatly feared God"
- **kingdoms** - This refers to governments with a single ruler.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 20:31-33

UDB:

³¹ Jehoshaphat continued to rule Judah. He was thirty-five years old when he became king of Judah, and he ruled in Jerusalem for twenty-five years. His mother's name was Azubah, the daughter of Shilhi. ³² He did things that were pleasing to Yahweh, like his father Asa had done, and he did not stop doing those things. ³³ But he did not get rid of the places where idols were worshiped on the hills in the countryside, and most of the people still not erious about obeying the God whom their ancestors had worshiped.

ULB:

³¹ Jehoshaphat reigned over Judah: He was thirty-five years old when he began to reign, and he reigned in Jerusalem for twenty-five years. His mother's name was Azubah, the daughter of Shilhi. ³² He walked in the ways of Asa, his father; he did not turn away from them; he did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh. ³³ However, the high places were not taken away. The people still had not directed their hearts to the God of their ancestors.

translationWords:

- [reign](#)
- [Asa](#)
- [turn, turn away, turn back](#)
- [high places](#)
- [heart](#)

translationNotes:

- **Azubah, the daughter of Shilhi** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **walked in the ways** - AT: "followed his father's example" (See: [Idiom](#))
- **he did what was right in the eyes** - See how you translated this in [14:2](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 20:34

UDB:

³⁴ A record of the other things that Jehoshaphat did while he ruled, from the beginning until he died, is in the scrolls written by the prophet Jehu son of Hanani. They are also in the scroll on which was written a record of the activities of the kings of Israel.

ULB:

³⁴ As for the other matters concerning Jehoshaphat, first and last, behold, they are written in the history of Jehu son of Hanani, which is recorded in The Book of the Kings of Israel.

translationWords:

- [Jehu](#)
- [king](#)

translationNotes:

- **son of Hanani** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **The Book of the Kings of Israel** - See how you translated this in [16:11](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 20:35-37

UDB:

³⁵ Later, Jehoshaphat made a treaty with Ahaziah, the king of Israel, who was a very wicked king. ³⁶ They agreed that their workers would build a fleet of ships to use to buy and sell things with other countries. After those ships were built at Ezion Geber, ³⁷ Eliezer son of Dodavahu of the city of Mareshah, prophesied against Jehoshaphat. He said, "You have made an alliance with Ahaziah, who is a wicked king. Therefore, Yahweh will destroy the ships that your workers have made." And the ships were wrecked, and were never able to sail to other countries.

ULB:

³⁵ After this Jehoshaphat, king of Judah, allied himself with Ahaziah, king of Israel, who committed much wickedness. ³⁶ He allied himself with him to build ships to go to Tarshish. They built the ships at Ezion Geber. ³⁷ Then Eliezer son of Dodavahu of Mareshah, prophesied against Jehoshaphat; he said, "Because you have allied yourself with Ahaziah, Yahweh has destroyed your projects." The ships were wrecked so that they were not able to sail.

translationWords:

- [Ahaziah](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)

translationNotes:

- **ships** - These are ships capable of traveling on large bodies of water.
- **Ezion Geber** - See how you translated this in [8:17](#).
- **Mareshah** - See how you translated this in [11:08](#).
- **Eliezer** - See how you translated this same name of another man in [7:08](#).
- **Dodavahu** - man's name (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 21 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Evil

Doing evil causes the country to decline. Jehoshaphat's son was evil. Edom and Libna successfully revolted against him, the Arabs plundered him and he died of an intestinal disease. (See: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Simile

The author compares worship of Baal to being a prostitute: “to act like a prostitute.” Idolatry by the people of God is often pictured as prostitution. (See: [Simile](#) and [people of God, my people](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 21:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 21:1-3

UDB:

¹ Then Jehoshaphat died and was buried where his ancestors were buried in the part of Jerusalem called the city of David. His son Jehoram became the next king of Judah. ² Jehoram's younger brothers were Azariah, Jehiel, Zechariah, Azariah, Michael, and Shephatiah. ³ Before Jehoshaphat died, he had given them large gifts of silver and gold and other valuable things. He also appointed them to rule various cities in Judah that had walls around them. But he appointed Jehoram to be the king of Judah, because Jehoram was his oldest son.

ULB:

21 ¹ Jehoshaphat slept with his ancestors and was buried with them in the city of David; Jehoram, his son, became king in his place. ² Jehoram had brothers, sons of Jehoshaphat: Azariah, Jehiel, Zechariah, Azariah, Michael, and Shephatiah. All these were sons of Jehoshaphat, king of Israel. ³ Their father had given them large gifts of silver, gold, and other precious things, and also fortified cities in Judah, but he gave the throne to Jehoram, because he was his firstborn.

translationWords:

- David
- Jehoram, Joram
- king
- Azariah
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- silver
- gold
- Judah

translationNotes:

- **slept with his ancestors** - AT: "died" (See: [Euphemism](#))
- **city of David** - This is the city of Jerusalem. (See: [Idiom](#))
- **Azariah, Jehiel, Zechariah, Azariah, Michael, and Shephatiah** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Jehoshaphat, king of Israel** - The southern kingdom was technically called "Judah," but the writer of this book apparently wanted to make the point that the southern kingdom was, in its obedience to God, the true Israel.
- **gave the throne** - Jehoshaphat decided that Jehoram should be the king after he died (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 21:4-5

UDB:

⁴ After Jehoram was completely in control of his father's kingdom, he caused all of his younger brothers to be killed, along with some of the leaders of the nation. ⁵ Jehoram was thirty-two years old when he became the king, and he ruled in Jerusalem for eight years.

ULB:

⁴ Now when Jehoram had risen up over his father's kingdom and had firmly established himself as king, he killed all his brothers with the sword, and also various other leaders of Israel. ⁵ Jehoram was thirty-two years old when he began to reign, and he reigned for eight years in Jerusalem.

translationWords:

- [kingdom](#)
- [sword](#)
- [reign](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

translationNotes:

- **risen up over his father's kingdom** - AT: "taken complete control over his father's kingdom"

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 21:6-7

UDB:

⁶ But he did many of the evil things that the kings of Israel had done. He did many things that Yahweh said were evil, things that the family of Ahab had done, because he married one of Ahab's daughters. ⁷ However, because of the covenant that Yahweh had made with King David, Yahweh did not want to get rid of the descendants Judah.

ULB:

⁶ He walked in the ways of the kings of Israel, as the house of Ahab was doing, for he had Ahab's daughter as his wife, and he did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh. ⁷ However, Yahweh did not wish to destroy the house of David, because of the covenant that he had made with David; he had promised that he would always give life to him and his descendants.

translationWords:

- [house](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [covenant](#)
- [promise](#)
- [descendant, descended from](#)

translationNotes:

- **walked in the ways** - See how you translated this in [20:32](#)
- **in the sight of Yahweh** - AT: "according to Yahweh" (See: [Idiom](#))
- **he had promised that he would always give life to him and his descendants** - AT: "he had promised that David's descendants would always be the ones who ruled Judah."

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 21:8-10

UDB:

⁸ While Jehoram was ruling, the people in the region of Edom rebelled against the king of Judah and appointed their own king. ⁹ So Jehoram and his officers and his men in chariots went to Edom. There, the army of Edom surrounded them. However, Jerhoram and his army attacked them and broke free from them; then they escaped during the night. ¹⁰ But the king of Judah was never able to regain control of Edom, and Edom is still not controlled by Judah. The people in the city of Libnah between Judah and Philistia also rebelled against Judah. Those things happened because Jehoram turned away from obeying Yahweh, the God whom his ancestors belonged to.

ULB:

⁸ In Jehoram's days, Edom revolted from the control of Judah, and they set a king over themselves. ⁹ Then Jehoram crossed over with his commanders and all his chariots. It was night when he rose up and fought against the Edomites who had surrounded him and his chariot commanders. ¹⁰ So Edom has been in rebellion from the control of Judah to this present day. Libnah also revolted at the same time from his control, because Jehoram had forsaken Yahweh, the God of his ancestors.

translationWords:

- Edom, Edomite, Idumea
- Judah
- commander, command
- chariot
- forsake, forsaken, forsook
- God

translationNotes:

- **In Jehoram's days** - AT: "While Jehoram was king"
- **from the control of Judah** - "against Judah's control"
- **crossed over** - AT: "crossed the border into Edom"
- **to this present day** - See how you translated this in [5:9](#)
- **Libnah** - This was a town in Judah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 21:11**UDB:**

¹¹ On the hilltops in Judah he had also built high places, where they worshiped idols. He caused the people of Judah to stray away from Yahweh by worshiping foreign gods.

ULB:

¹¹ In addition, Jehoram had also built high places in the mountains of Judah and he made the inhabitants of Jerusalem to live like prostitutes, and he led Judah astray.

translationWords:

- [high places](#)
- [prostitute, harlot, whore](#)

translationNotes:**Links:**

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 21:12-15

UDB:

¹² One day, Jehoram received a letter from the prophet Elijah. Elijah had written this:

- "This is what Yahweh, the God whom your ancestor King David worshiped, says: 'You have not done things that please me like your father Jehoshaphat did or what King Asa did. ¹³ Instead, you have continually done the evil things that the kings of Israel have done. You have encouraged the people in Jerusalem and other places in Judah to stop worshiping Yahweh and to be unfaithful to him. And you have killed your brothers, men who were better than you are.'
- ¹⁴ So now Yahweh is about to cause disasters to strike very severely the people in your kingdom and even your own children and your wives, and everything that you own. ¹⁵ And you yourself will have an intestinal disease that will continue to become worse, and you will suffer from it until you die."

ULB:

¹² A letter from the prophet Elijah came to Jehoram. It said, "This is what Yahweh, the God of David, your ancestor, says: Because you have not walked in the ways of Jehoshaphat, your father, nor in the ways of Asa, king of Judah, ¹³ but have walked in the ways of the kings of Israel, and have made Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem to act like a prostitute, as the house of Ahab did—and because you have also killed your brothers in your father's family with the sword, men who were better than yourself— ¹⁴ see, Yahweh will strike with a great plague your people, your children, your wives, and all your wealth. ¹⁵ You yourself will have much sickness because of a disease in your intestines, until your intestines fall out because of the sickness, day after day."

translationWords:

- [Elijah](#)
- [David](#)
- [walk](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [Asa](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [sword](#)
- [plague](#)

translationNotes:

- **until your intestines fall out because of the sickness** - AT: "until this disease causes your death" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 21:16-17

UDB:

¹⁶ Then Yahweh caused some men from the Philistia people group and some Arabs who lived near the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, where people from Ethiopia had settled, to become angry with Jehoram. ¹⁷ Their army invaded Judah and took away from Jerusalem all the valuable things that they found in the king's palace; they also took away his sons and wives. His youngest son, Jehoahaz, was the only one of his sons whom they did not take away.

ULB:

¹⁶ Yahweh stirred up against Jehoram the spirits of the Philistines and of the Arabians who were near the Ethiopians. ¹⁷ They attacked Judah, invaded it, and carried away all the wealth that was found in the king's house. They also carried away his sons and his wives. No son was left to him except Jehoahaz, his youngest son.

translationWords:

- [spirit, spiritual](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [Arabia, Arabian](#)
- [Ethiopia, Ethiopian](#)

translationNotes:

- **stirred up against Jehoram the spirits of the Philistines and of the Arabians** - AT: "caused the Philistines and Arabians to become very angry with Judah"

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 21:18-20

UDB:

¹⁸ After that happened, Yahweh caused Jehoram to be afflicted with an intestinal disease that no doctor could cure. ¹⁹ About two years later, while he had great pain, he died because of that disease. The people of Judah had made bonfires to honor his ancestors when they died, but they did not make a bonfire for Jehoram.

²⁰ Jehoram was thirty-two years old when he became the king, and he ruled in Jerusalem for eight years. No one regretted it when he died. His corpse was buried in the part of Jerusalem called the city of David, but he was not buried where the other kings of Judah had been buried.

ULB:

¹⁸ After all this, Yahweh struck him in his intestines with an incurable disease. ¹⁹ It came about in due time, at the end of two years, that his intestines fell out because of his sickness, and that he died of severe disease. His people made no fire in his honor as they had done for his ancestors. ²⁰ He had begun to reign when he was thirty-two years old; he reigned in Jerusalem for eight years, and he died unlamented. They buried him in the city of David, but not in the royal tombs.

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [honor, to honor](#)
- [reign](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [David](#)
- [tomb, grave, burial place](#)

translationNotes:

- **struck him in his intestines with an incurable disease** - AT: “gave him an incurable disease in his intestines”
- **in due time** - AT: “in the proper time” or “when the time was right” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **made no fire in his honor** - AT: “did not honor him with a bonfire”
- **unlamented** - AT: “without sadness”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)

- 2 Chronicles 21 General Notes
- 2 Chronicles 21 Translation Questions

2 Chronicles 22 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter is the beginning of the story of Queen Athaliah.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

The author compares Athaliah's evil deeds to Ahab's family's evil lives. "walked in the ways of the house of Ahab." Ahab is pictured as the epitome of evil. (See: [Metaphor](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#) and [works](#), [deeds](#), [work](#), [acts](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 22:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 22:1-3

UDB:

¹ The people of Jerusalem appointed Jehoram's youngest son Ahaziah to be their king, because the men from Philistia who had invaded Judah with some Arabs had killed all of Jehoram's other sons. So Ahaziah started to rule Judah.

² Ahaziah was twenty-two years old when he became king. He ruled in Jerusalem for one year. His mother's name was Athaliah, a granddaughter of King Omri of Israel.

³ King Ahab conducted his life just like the members of Ahab's family had done, because his mother encouraged him to do things that are wrong.

ULB:

22 ¹ The inhabitants of Jerusalem made Ahaziah, Jehoram's youngest son, king in his place, for the band of men that came with the Arabians into the camp had killed all his older sons. So Ahaziah son of Jehoram, king of Judah, became king. ² Ahaziah was forty-two years old when he began to reign; he reigned for one year in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Athaliah; she was the daughter of Omri. ³ He also walked in the ways of the house of Ahab for his mother was his advisor in doing wicked things.

translationWords:

- Jerusalem
- Ahaziah
- Jehoram, Joram
- Arabia, Arabian
- king
- Judah
- Athaliah
- Omri
- house
- Ahab
- evil, wicked, wickedness

translationNotes:

- **Athaliah** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **He also walked in the ways** - See how you translated this in [20:32](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 22 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 22 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 22:4-5

UDB:

⁴ He did many things that Yahweh said were evil, like the descendants of Ahab had done, because after Ahaziah's father died, they became his advisors. And Ahaziah died as a result of heeding their bad advice. ⁵ Before he died, he did what they encourage him to do by going with Joram son of King Ahab of Israel, to fight against the army of Hazael, the king of Aram, at Ramoth Gilead. Joram was wounded there by the Arameans.

ULB:

⁴ Ahaziah did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh, as the house of Ahab was doing, for they were his advisors after the death of his father, to his destruction. ⁵ He also followed their advice; he went with Joram son of Ahab, king of Israel, to fight against Hazael, king of Aram, at Ramoth Gilead. The Arameans wounded Joram.

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [Joram](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [Aram, Aramean, Aramaic](#)
- [Ramoth](#)
- [Gilead](#)

translationNotes:

- **in the sight of Yahweh** - AT: "in Yahweh's opinion" (See: [Idiom](#))
- **Hazael** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 22 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 22 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 22:6**UDB:**

⁶ After he was wounded, Joram went back to the city of Jezreel to recover from his battle wounds. Then King Ahaziah went down to Jezreel to see Joram son of King Ahab, because he had been wounded.

ULB:

⁶ Joram returned to be healed in Jezreel of the wounds that they had given him at Ramah, when he fought against Hazael, king of Aram. So Ahaziah son of Jehoram, king of Judah, went down to Jezreel to see Joram son of Ahab, because Joram had been wounded.

translationWords:

- [Jezreel](#)
- [Ramah](#)
- [Jehoram, Joram](#)
- [Judah](#)

translationNotes:**Links:**

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 22 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 22 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 22:7-8

UDB:

⁷ God caused Ahaziah to die as a result of his going to visit Joram. When Ahaziah arrived, he went with Joram to meet Jehu son of Nimshi, whom Yahweh had appointed to kill all the descendants of Ahab. ⁸ While Jehu and the men who were with him were killing Ahab's descendants, they found the leaders of Judah and the sons of Ahaziah's relatives who had been working for Ahaziah, and they killed all of them also.

ULB:

⁷ Now the destruction of Ahaziah was brought about by God through Ahaziah's visit to Joram. When he had arrived, he went with Jehoram to attack Jehu son of Nimshi, whom Yahweh had chosen to destroy the house of Ahab. ⁸ It came about, when Jehu was carrying out God's judgment on the house of Ahab, that he found the leaders of Judah and the sons of Ahaziah's brothers serving Ahaziah. Jehu killed them.

translationWords:

- [God](#)
- [Jehu](#)
- [judge, judgment](#)
- [serve, service](#)

translationNotes:

- **Nimshi** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 22 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 22 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 22:9

UDB:

⁹ Then Jehu went to find Ahaziah, and his soldiers found Ahaziah while he was hiding in the city of Samaria. They brought him to Jehu and executed him. Then they buried his corpse, because they said, “He deserves to be buried, because he was a descendant of Jehoshaphat, who tried hard to please Yahweh.” After that, there were no descendants of Ahaziah who were powerful enough to become the kings of Judah.

ULB:

⁹ Jehu looked for Ahaziah; they caught him hiding in Samaria, brought him to Jehu, and killed him. Then they buried him, for they said, “He is a son of Jehoshaphat, who sought Yahweh with all his heart.” So the house of Ahaziah had no more power to rule the kingdom.

translationWords:

- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)
- [bury, buried, burial](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [heart](#)
- [kingdom](#)

translationNotes:

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 22 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 22 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 22:10-12

UDB:

¹⁰ When Athaliah, the mother of Ahaziah, saw that her son had been killed, she commanded that all the members of Ahaziah's family who might become king must be executed. ¹¹ But Jehosheba, the daughter of King Jehoram, took Joash, Ahaziah's very young son, away from the other sons of the king who were about to be murdered, and she hid him and his nursemaid in a bedroom in the temple. Because Jehosheba, who was the daughter of King Jehoram and the wife of the high priest Jehoiada, was Ahaziah's sister, she was able to hide the child, with the result that Athaliah could not kill him. ¹² He remained hidden there for six years while Athaliah ruled Judah.

ULB:

¹⁰ Now when Athaliah, the mother of Ahaziah, saw that her son was dead, she arose and killed all the royal children in the house of Judah. ¹¹ But Jehoshaba, a daughter of the king, took Joash, a son of Ahaziah, and spirited him away from among the king's sons who were killed. She put him and his nurse into a bedroom. So Jehoshaba, a daughter of King Jehoram, the wife of Jehoiada the priest (for she was the sister of Ahaziah), hid him from Athaliah, so that Athaliah did not kill him. ¹² He was with them, hidden in the house of God for six years, while Athaliah reigned over the land.

translationWords:

- [Athaliah](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [king](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)
- [reign](#)

translationNotes:

- **Jehoshaba ... Jehoiada** - men's names (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 22 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 22 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 23 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The chapter ends the story of Queen Athaliah and begins the story of King Joash.

Special concepts in this chapter

Having a king

The High Priest organized a coup and made seven year old, Joash, king. Athaliah objected so the chief priest had her killed. This was an attempt by the priests to force the fulfill the covenant God made with David.(See: [high priest](#), [priest](#), [priesthood fulfill](#) and [covenant](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 23:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 23:1-3

UDB:

¹ The next year, Jehoiada decided that it was necessary to do something. So he made an agreement with the army commanders of groups of one hundred soldiers: Azariah son of Jeroham, Ishmael son of Jehohanan, Azariah son of Obed, Maaseiah son of Adaiah, and Elishaphat son of Zicri. ² They went throughout Judah and gathered the descendants of Levi and the leaders of Israelite families from all the cities. When they came to Jerusalem, ³ the whole group went to the temple and made an agreement with the young king there. Jehoiada said to them, "This is the son of the previous king of Judah. So he is the one who must rule, like Yahweh promised that the descendants of King David must do.

ULB:

23 ¹ In the seventh year, Jehoiada showed his strength and entered into a covenant with the commanders of hundreds, Azariah son of Jeroham, Ishmael son of Jehohanan, Azariah son of Obed, Maaseiah son of Adaiah, and Elishaphat son of Zichri. ² They went about in Judah and gathered the Levites from all the cities of Judah, as well as the heads of the ancestral houses of Israel, and they came to Jerusalem. ³ All the assembly made a covenant with the king in the house of God. Jehoiada said to them, "See, the king's son will reign, as Yahweh has said concerning the descendants of David.

translationWords:

- commander, command
- Azariah
- Ishmael
- Levite, Levi
- head
- house
- assembly, assemble
- house of God, Yahweh's house
- reign
- descendant, descended from
- David

translationNotes:

- **Jehoiada** - the chief priest who served in the temple and was faithful to God. He was an advisor to Joash. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Obed ... Maaseiah ... Adaiah ... Elishaphat ... Zichri** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 23:4-5

UDB:

⁴ So this is what you must do: One third of you priests and other descendants of Levi who are starting to work on the Sabbath day must guard the temple doors. ⁵ One third of you must guard the king's palace, and one third of you must guard the Foundation Gate. All the other people will be in the courtyard outside the temple.

ULB:

⁴ This is what you must do: a third of you priests and of the Levites who come to serve on the Sabbath, will be guards at the doors. ⁵ Another third will be at the king's house, and the other third will be at the Foundation Gate. All the people will be in the courtyard of the house of Yahweh.

translationWords:

- [serve, service](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [foundation, founded](#)
- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [courtyard, court](#)

translationNotes:

- **All the people** - AT: "Many people" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 23:6-7

UDB:

⁶ Only the priests and the descendants of Levi who work there are allowed to enter the temple, because they are set apart for that work. All the others must remain in the courtyard, obeying what Yahweh has commanded. ⁷ You descendants of Levi must stand around the young king, each of you with your weapon in your hand. You must kill anyone else who tries to enter the temple. And stay close to the king, wherever he goes.”

ULB:

⁶ Allow no one to come into the house of Yahweh, except for the priests and the Levites who are serving. They may enter because they are consecrated. But all the other people must obey the commands of Yahweh. ⁷ The Levites must surround the king on all sides, every man with his weapons in his hand. Whoever comes into the house, let him be killed. Stay with the king when he comes in and when he goes out.”

translationWords:

- [command, to command, commandment](#)

translationNotes:

- **when he comes in and when he goes out** - Possible meanings are 1) “at all times” or 2) “wherever he goes.” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 23:8-9

UDB:

⁸ So the descendants of Levi and all the men of Judah did what Jehoiada had told them. He did not allow anyone to go home after he finished his work on that day. Each commander took his men, the ones who were finishing their work on that Sabbath day and those who were starting their work on that day. ⁹ Then Jehoiada gave each of the commanders the spears and the large and small shields that had been put there in the temple by King David.

ULB:

⁸ So the Levites and all Judah served in every way in the manner in which Jehoiada the priest commanded. Each one took his men, those who were to come in to serve on the Sabbath, and those who were to leave off serving on the Sabbath, for Jehoiada, the priest, had not dismissed any of their divisions. ⁹ Then Jehoiada, the priest, brought to the commanders spears and small and large shields that had been King David's that were in the house of God.

translationWords:

- [Judah](#)
- [serve, service](#)
- [shield](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)

translationNotes:

- **all Judah served in every way in the manner in which Jehoiada the priest commanded** - AT: "most of the people were obedient to the commands of the high priest" (See: [Hyperbole](#))
- **were to leave off serving on the Sabbath** - AT: "were finishing their work on that Sabbath day"

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 23:10-11

UDB:

¹⁰ He commanded all the guards to stand in their positions, each with his sword in his hand, all around the king—near the altar and near the temple, from the north side to the south side.

¹¹ Then Jehoiada and his sons brought Joash out. They put a crown on his head and gave him a scroll on which were written the rules that the kings needed to obey, and they proclaimed that he was now the king. They anointed him with olive oil and shouted, “We desire that the king will live for many years!”

ULB:

¹⁰ Jehoiada placed all the soldiers, each man with his weapon in his hand, from the right side of the temple to the left side of the temple, along by the altar and the temple, surrounding the king.

¹¹ Then they brought out the king’s son, put the crown on him, and gave him the covenant decrees. Then they made him king, and Jehoiada and his sons anointed him. Then they said, “Long live the king.”

translationWords:

- [temple](#)
- [altar](#)
- [crown, to crown](#)
- [decree](#)
- [anoint, anointed](#)

translationNotes:

- **gave him the covenant decrees** - AT: “Recited the terms of the covenant”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 23:12-13

UDB:

¹² When Athaliah heard the noise being made by the people running toward the king and cheering, she ran to the temple. ¹³ She saw the young king there standing alongside the pillar at the entrance of the temple, which is the place at the temple where the kings usually stood. The army commanders and trumpet players were standing beside the king, and all the people of Judah were rejoicing and blowing trumpets, and singers with their musical instruments were leading the people while they praised God. Then Athaliah tore her robes and started screaming, “You are committing treason!”

ULB:

¹² When Athaliah heard the noise of the people running and praising the king, she came to the people in the house of Yahweh. ¹³ and she looked, and, behold, the king was standing by his pillar at the entrance, and the commanders and the trumpeters were by the king. All the people of the land were rejoicing and blowing trumpets, and the singers were playing musical instruments and leading the singing of praise. Then Athaliah tore her clothes and shouted, “Treason! Treason!”

translationWords:

- [Athaliah](#)
- [praise](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [pillar, column](#)
- [rejoice](#)
- [trumpet](#)

translationNotes:

- **All the people of the land** - AT: “Almost all of the people” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 23:14-15

UDB:

¹⁴ Jehoiada the high priest said to the army commanders, “Kill her, but do not kill her at the temple of Yahweh!” Then he said to them, “Bring Athaliah out between your ranks and kill anyone who tries to follow her!” ¹⁵ She tried to flee, but they seized her as she reached the Horse Gate, before the palace, and they killed her there.

ULB:

¹⁴ Then Jehoiada, the priest, brought out the commanders of hundreds who were over the army and said to them, “Bring her out between the ranks; anyone who follows her, let him be killed with the sword.” For the priest had said, “Do not kill her in the house of Yahweh.” ¹⁵ So they made way for her, and she went by way of the Horse Gate to the king’s house, and there they killed her.

translationWords:

- sword
- horse
- gate, gate bar

translationNotes:

- **Jehoiada** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **who were over the army** - AT: “who were leaders in the army”
- **between the ranks** - AT: “in the midst of the soldiers”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 23:16-17

UDB:

¹⁶ Then Jehoiada made an agreement that he and the king and all the other people would be Yahweh's people. ¹⁷ Then all the people who were there went to the temple of Baal and tore it down. They smashed the altars of Baal. They also killed Mattan, the priest of Baal, in front of those altars.

ULB:

¹⁶ Then Jehoiada made a covenant between himself, all the people, and the king, that they should be Yahweh's people. ¹⁷ So all the people went to the house of Baal and tore it down. They smashed Baal's altars and his images to pieces, and they killed Mattan, the priest of Baal, in front of those altars.

translationWords:

- [covenant](#)
- [people of God, my people](#)
- [Baal](#)
- [altar](#)
- [image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure](#)

translationNotes:

- **all the people went to the house of Baal** - AT: "almost all the people went to the temple of Baal" (See: [Hyperbole](#))
- **Mattan** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 23:18-19

UDB:

¹⁸ Then Jehoiada appointed the priests, who were also descended from Levi, to take care of the temple. They were part of the group to whom King David had given various work at the temple, to sacrifice the animals that were to be completely burned on the altar, doing what was written in the laws that Moses had given to them. He also told them to rejoice and sing, which was also what David had commanded. ¹⁹ He also put gatekeepers at the gates of the temple in order that anyone who was unacceptable to God would not be allowed to enter.

ULB:

¹⁸ Jehoiada appointed officers for the house of Yahweh under the hand of the priests, who were Levites, whom David had assigned to the house of Yahweh, to offer the burnt offerings to Yahweh, as it was written in the law of Moses, together with rejoicing and singing, as David had given direction. ¹⁹ Jehoiada set guards at the gates of the house of Yahweh, so that no one that was unclean in any way should enter.

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Levite, Levi](#)
- [David](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh](#)
- [unclean](#)

translationNotes:

- **under the hand of the priests** - AT: "under the direction of the priests"
- **no one that was unclean in any way should enter** - AT: "no one unclean is allowed to enter for any reason"

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 23:20-21

UDB:

²⁰ Jehoiada took with him the army commanders, the important men, the leaders and many others, and brought the king down from the temple. They went into the palace through the Upper Gate, and put the king on his throne. ²¹ Then all the people of Judah rejoiced. And there was quiet throughout the city, because Athaliah had been killed.

ULB:

²⁰ Jehoiada took with him the commanders of hundreds, the noblemen, the governors of the people, and all the people of the land. He brought down the king from the house of Yahweh; the people came through the Upper Gate to the king's house and sat the king on the throne of the kingdom.[1]Some modern versions have, *they brought down the king* . ²¹ So all the people of the land rejoiced, and the city was quiet. As for Athaliah, they had killed her with the sword.

translationWords:

- [commander, command](#)
- [noble, nobleman](#)
- [governor, govern, proconsul, government](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [Athaliah](#)
- [sword](#)

translationNotes:

- **He brought down the king from the house of Yahweh** - The temple was built on the highest hill in Jerusalem. AT: "He brought the king from the temple at the top of the hill to the palace"

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 24 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of King Joash is completed in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Joash repairs the temple

Joash decided to repair the temple. The Levites collected money from people and gave it to the workmen to repair the temple. This was a sign of worship towards Yahweh. (See: [temple](#) and [sign, proof, reminder](#))

Joash becomes evil

When Joash stopped worshipping Yahweh, he had many troubles. Joash remained loyal to Yahweh as long as the chief priest lived, but when the chief priest died Joash started following other gods. The chief priest's son warned him that he would have trouble, so he had him killed. The army of Aram defeated and plundered him and his servants murdered him. (See: [priest, priesthood](#) and [false god, foreign god, god, goddess](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 24:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 24:1-3

UDB:

¹ Joash was seven years old when he became the king of Judah, and he ruled in Jerusalem for forty years. His mother's name was Zibiah; she was from the city of Beersheba. ² Joash did what pleased Yahweh all during the years that Jehoiada was the high priest. ³ Jehoiada chose two women to be Joash's wives. And they bore Joash sons and daughters.

ULB:

24 ¹ Joash was seven years old when he began to reign; he reigned for forty years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Zibiah, of Beersheba. ² Joash did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh all the days of Jehoiada, the priest. ³ Jehoiada took for him two wives, and he became the father of sons and daughters.

translationWords:

- [Joash](#)
- [reign](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Beersheba](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)

translationNotes:

- **Zibiah** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **what was right in the eyes of Yahweh** - See how you translated this in [14:1](#)
- **all the days of Jehoiada, the priest** - AT: "as long as Jehoiada was alive" (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 24:4-5

UDB:

⁴ Some years later, Joash decided that the temple should be repaired. ⁵ He summoned the priests and other descendants of Levi and said to them, “Go to the cities of Judah and collect from the people the tax money that they are required to pay each year, and use that money to pay for repairing the temple. Do it immediately.” But the descendants of Levi did not do it immediately.

ULB:

⁴ It came about after this, that Joash decided to restore the house of Yahweh. ⁵ He gathered together the priests and the Levites, and he said to them, “Go out every year to the cities of Judah and gather from all Israel money to repair the house of your God. Make sure that you start right away.” The Levites did nothing at first.

translationWords:

- [restore, restoration](#)
- [Levite, Levi](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh’s house](#)

translationNotes:

- **right away** - AT: “immediately”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 24:6-7

UDB:

⁶ So the king summoned Jehoiada and said to him, “Why have you not required the descendants of Levi to bring to Jerusalem from various places in Judah the annual tax that Moses said that the people of Judah must pay, for taking care of the sacred tent?”

⁷ The temple needed to be repaired because the sons of that wicked woman Athaliah had entered into the temple and had wrecked some of the things, and had also used some of the sacred items that were in it for the worship of Baal.

ULB:

⁶ So the king called for Jehoiada, the high priest, and said to him, “Why have you not required the Levites to bring in from Judah and Jerusalem the tax levied by Moses the servant of Yahweh and by the assembly of Israel, for the tent of the covenant decrees?” ⁷ For the sons of Athaliah, that wicked woman, had broken up the house of God and had given all the holy things of the house of Yahweh to the Baals.

translationWords:

- high priest
- Jerusalem
- tax, taxes
- Moses
- servant, slave, slavery
- assembly, assemble
- tent
- covenant
- decree
- Athaliah
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- Baal

translationNotes:

- **Why have you not required the Levites ... covenant decrees?** - “You have behaved wickedly. I told you to require the Levites ... covenant decrees, but you have not done it.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **for the tent of the covenant decrees** - Although it refers to the temple that Solomon built, it is a reminder that the “tent of meeting” was the first holy place for the people of God.
- **holy things** - This refers to the items used in the temple.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 24:8-10

UDB:

⁸ So, obeying what the king commanded, the descendants of Levi made a chest and placed it outside the temple, at one of the entrances. ⁹ Then the king sent letters everywhere in Judah, requesting everyone to bring their tax money to the temple, as Moses had required the Israelite people to do when they were in the wilderness. ¹⁰ All the officials and the other people agreed, and they brought their contributions gladly. They put the money into the chest until it was full.

ULB:

⁸ So the king commanded, and they made a chest and placed it outside at the entrance to the house of Yahweh. ⁹ Then they made a proclamation through Judah and Jerusalem, for the people to bring in for Yahweh the tax that Moses the servant of God levied on Israel in the wilderness. ¹⁰ All the leaders and all the people rejoiced and brought money in and put it into the chest until they finished filling it.

translationWords:

- [proclaim, proclamation](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)

translationNotes:

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 24:11-12

UDB:

¹¹ Whenever the descendants of Levi brought the chest to the king's officials, and they saw that there was a lot of money in it, the king's secretary and the assistant to the high priest would take all the money from the chest and then put the chest back in its place. They did this frequently, and they collected a huge amount of money. ¹² The king and Jehoiada gave the money to the men who were supervising the work of repairing the temple. Those men hired stoneworkers and carpenters to repair the temple. They also hired men who worked with iron and bronze to repair the things in the temple that were broken.

ULB:

¹¹ It happened that whenever the chest was brought to the king's officials by the hand of the Levites, and whenever they saw that there was much money in it, the king's scribe and the high priest's official would come, empty the chest, and take it and carry it back to its place. They did this day after day, gathering large amounts of money. ¹² The king and Jehoiada gave the money to those who did the work of serving in the house of Yahweh. These men hired stonemasons and carpenters to restore the house of Yahweh, and also those who worked in iron and bronze.

translationWords:

- [king](#)
- [scribe, expert in the Jewish law](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [serve, service](#)

translationNotes:

- **stonemasons and carpenters** - AT: "those who built with stone and those who built with wood"
- **worked in iron and bronze** - AT: "those who worked with metal"

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 24:13-14

UDB:

¹³ The men who did the repair work worked hard, and the work of repairing the temple progressed. They rebuilt the temple to make it as it was originally, and they made it stronger. ¹⁴ When they had finished the repair work, they brought to the king and to Jehoiada the money that they had not used for the repairs. That money was used to make things to use for performing the sacrifices that were to be completely burned on the altar, and to make bowls and other gold and silver things for the temple. As long as Joash lived, the people continually brought to the temple sacrifices that were to be completely burned on the altar.

ULB:

¹³ So the workmen labored, and the work of repairing went forward in their hands; they set up the house of God in its original design and strengthened it. ¹⁴ When they finished, they brought the rest of the money to the king and Jehoiada. This money was used to make furnishing for the house of Yahweh, utensils with which to serve and make offerings—spoons and utensils of gold and silver. They offered burnt offerings in the house of Yahweh continually for all the days of Jehoiada.

translationWords:

- labor, laborer
- house of God, Yahweh's house
- serve, service
- sacrifice, offering
- gold
- silver
- burnt offering, offering by fire

translationNotes:

- **went forward in their hands** - AT: "they did with their hands"
- **continually for all the days of Jehoiada** - AT: "everyday during the life of Jehoiada" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 24:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ Jehoiada became very old. He died when he was 130 years old. ¹⁶ He was buried where the kings had been buried, in the part of Jerusalem called the city of David. He was buried there because of the good things that he had done in Judah for God and for God's temple.

ULB:

¹⁵ Jehoiada grew old and was full of days, and then he died; he was 130 years old when he died. ¹⁶ They buried him in the city of David among the kings, because he had done good in Israel, toward God, and to God's house.

translationWords:

- [death, die, dead](#)
- [bury, buried, burial](#)
- [city of David](#)

translationNotes:**Links:**

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 24:17-19

UDB:

¹⁷ After Jehoiada died, the leaders of Judah went to Joash, bowed in front of him, and persuaded him to do what they wanted. ¹⁸ So they and the other people stopped worshiping at the temple, and they started worshiping the poles dedicated to the goddess Asherah and other idols. Because they were doing those sinful things, God was very angry with the people of Jerusalem and with the people in other places in Judah. ¹⁹ Although Yahweh sent prophets to persuade them to return to him, and although the prophets testified about the evil things that they had done, the people would not pay attention.

ULB:

¹⁷ Now after the death of Jehoiada, the leaders of Judah came and did honor to the king. Then the king listened to them. ¹⁸ They forsook the house of Yahweh, the God of their ancestors, and worshiped the Asherah gods and the idols. God's anger came on Judah and Jerusalem for this wrongdoing of theirs. ¹⁹ Yet he sent prophets to them to bring them again to himself, Yahweh; the prophets testified against the people, but they refused to listen.

translationWords:

- Judah
- honor, to honor
- king
- forsake, forsaken, forsook
- God
- worship
- Asherah, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth
- false god, foreign god, god, goddess
- idol, idolatrous
- angry, anger
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- testimony, testify

translationNotes:

- **did honor to the king** - AT: "gave honor to the king"
- **this wrongdoing of theirs** - AT: "their sin"

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 24:20-22

UDB:

²⁰ Then God's Spirit came upon Zechariah son of Jehoiada the high priest. He stood up front of the people and said, "This is what God says: Why are you violating Yahweh's commandments? You will not be able prosper if you do that. Since you have stopped obeying Yahweh, he will stop taking care of you."

²¹ But the people planned to kill Zechariah. And the king permitted them to kill him. They killed him by throwing stones at him in the temple courtyard. ²² King Joash forgot about how Zechariah's father Jehoiada had been kind to him. So he commanded them to kill Jehoiada's son Zechariah, who said as he was dying, "I hope that Yahweh will see what you are doing to me and punish you for doing it."

ULB:

²⁰ The Spirit of God came on Zechariah son of Jehoiada, the priest; Zechariah stood above the people and said to them, "God says this: Why do you transgress the commandments of Yahweh, so that you cannot prosper? Since you have forsaken Yahweh, he has also forsaken you." ²¹ But they plotted against him; at the king's command, they stoned him with stones in the courtyard of the house of Yahweh. ²² In this manner, Joash, the king, ignored the kindness that Jehoiada, Zechariah's father, had done to him. Instead, he killed Jehoiada's son. When Zechariah was dying, he said, "May Yahweh see this and call you to account."

translationWords:

- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord
- Zechariah (OT)
- transgress, transgression
- command, to command, commandment
- forsake, forsaken, forsook
- stone, stoning
- courtyard, court
- Joash

translationNotes:

- **ignored the kindness that Jehoiada, Zechariah's father, had done to him.** - Joash did not pay attention or remember the great kindness of Jehoiada, Zechariah's father.
- **call you to account** - AT: "you will pay for the wrong you have done"

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 24:23-24

UDB:

²³ Near the end of that year , the army of Aram marched to attack the army of Joash. They invaded Judah and attacked Jerusalem and killed all the leaders of the people. They seized many valuable things and sent them to their king in Damascus, their capital city. ²⁴ The army of Aram that came to Judah was very small, but Yahweh allowed them to defeat the large army of Judah, because he was punishing Joash and the other people of Judah for having abandoned him, the God whom their ancestors worshiped.

ULB:

²³ It came about at the end of the year, that the army of the Aram came up against Joash. They came to Judah and Jerusalem; they killed all the leaders of the people and sent all the plunder from them to the king of Damascus. ²⁴ The army of the Arameans had come with a small army, but Yahweh gave them victory over a very great army, because Judah had forsaken Yahweh, the God of their ancestors. In this way the Arameans brought judgment on Joash.

translationWords:

- [Aram, Aramean, Aramaic](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Damascus](#)
- [judge, judgment](#)

translationNotes:

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 24:25-26**UDB:**

²⁵ Before the battle ended, Joash was severely wounded. Then his officials decided to kill him for murdering Zechariah son of Jehoiada the high priest. They killed him while he was in his bed. They buried him in the part of Jerusalem called the city of David, but they did not bury him in the place where the other kings had been buried.

²⁶ Those who conspired to kill him were Zabad son of Shimeath, who was a woman from the Ammon people group, and Jehozabad son of Shimrith, who was a woman from the Moab people group.

ULB:

²⁵ By the time that the Arameans had gone, Joash had been severely wounded. His own servants plotted against him because of the murder of the sons of Jehoiada, the priest. They killed him in his bed, and he died; they buried him in the city of David, but not in the tombs of the kings. ²⁶ These were the persons who plotted against him: Zabad son of Shimeath, the Ammonitess; and Jehozabad son of Shimrith, the Moabite.

translationWords:

- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [city of David](#)
- [tomb, grave, burial place](#)
- [Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonitess](#)
- [Moab, Moabite, Moabite](#)

translationNotes:

- **Zabad son of Shimeath, the Ammonitess; and Jehozabad son of Shimrith, the Moabite**
- (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 24:27

UDB:

²⁷ An account of the things that were done by the sons of Joash and the many prophecies about Joash and what he did to repair the temple are written in The Commentary on The Book of the Kings of Judah and Israel. Then after Joash died, Amaziah his son became the king.

ULB:

²⁷ Now the accounts about his sons, the important prophecies that were spoken about him, and the rebuilding of the house of God, see, they are written in The Commentary on the Book of the Kings. Amaziah his son, became king in his place.

translationWords:

- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)
- [king](#)
- [Amaziah](#)

translationNotes:

- **The Commentary on the Book of the Kings** - This is a book which no longer exists.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 25 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Worshiping other gods

When Amaziah trusted God he was successful against Edom. But when he started worshiping the idols of Edom he was badly defeated. (See: [trust](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#) and [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 25:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 25:1-2

UDB:

¹ Amaziah was twenty-five years old when he became the king of Judah, and he ruled from Jerusalem for twenty-nine years. His mother was Jehoaddan. She was from Jerusalem. ² Amaziah did many things that pleased Yahweh, but he did not want to do them very much.

ULB:

25 ¹ Amaziah was twenty-five years old when he began to reign; he reigned twenty-nine years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Jehoaddan, of Jerusalem. ² He did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh, but not with a perfectly devoted heart.

translationWords:

- [Amaziah](#)
- [reign](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [perfect](#)
- [heart](#)

translationNotes:

- **Jehoaddan** - This is a woman's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **what was right in the eyes of Yahweh** - See how you translated this in [14:02](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 25:3-4

UDB:

³ As soon as he was in complete control of his kingdom, he caused others to execute the officials who had murdered his father. ⁴ But he did not order their sons to be executed; he obeyed what was in the laws that Moses had written. In those laws Yahweh had commanded, “People must not be executed because of what their children have done, and children must not be executed for what their parents have done. People must be executed only for the sins that they themselves have committed.”

ULB:

³ It came about that as soon as his rule was well established, he killed the servants who had murdered his father, the king. ⁴ But he did not put the children of the murderers to death, but acted according to what was written in the law, in the book of Moses, as Yahweh had commanded, “The fathers must not die for the children, nor must the children die for the fathers. Instead, every person must die for his own sin.”

translationWords:

- ruler, rulers, rule
- servant, slave, slavery
- king
- death, die, dead
- law, law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh
- command, to command, commandment
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

translationNotes:

- **the book of Moses** - This is a reference to the books of Genesis, Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers and Deuteronomy.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 25:5-6

UDB:

⁵ Amaziah summoned the men of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin to come to Jerusalem, and there he put them into groups, each clan in a group by themselves. Then he appointed officers to command each group. Some officers commanded one hundred men, and some commanded one thousand men. They counted the men who were at least twenty years old; altogether there were 300,000 men. They were all men who were ready to be in the army, and able to fight well, using spears and shields. ⁶ Amaziah also hired 100,000 capable soldiers from Israel; he paid almost 3 and one-half metric tons of silver for them.

ULB:

⁵ Moreover, Amaziah gathered Judah together, and registered them by their ancestors' houses, under commanders of thousands and commanders of hundreds—all of Judah and Benjamin. He numbered them from twenty years old and upward, and found them to be 300,000 chosen men, able to go to war, who could handle spear and shield. ⁶ He hired also 100,000 fighting men from Israel for one hundred talents of silver.

translationWords:

- [Judah](#)
- [house](#)
- [command, to command, commandment](#)
- [Benjamin](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)
- [silver](#)

translationNotes:

- **registered** - He had their names written on an official list.
- **300,000 ... 100,000** - See: [Numbers](#)
- **talents** - (See: [Biblical Money](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 25:7-8

UDB:

⁷ But a prophet came to him and said, "Your Majesty, you must not allow those soldiers from Israel to march with your soldiers, because Yahweh does not help the people of the tribe of Ephraim or from anywhere else in Israel. ⁸ Even if your soldiers go and fight courageously in battles, God will cause your enemies to defeat you; do not forget that God has the power to help armies or to cause them to be defeated."

ULB:

⁷ But a man of God came to him and said, "King, do not let the army of Israel go with you, for Yahweh is not with Israel—none of the people of Ephraim. ⁸ But even if you do go and are courageous and strong in battle, God will throw you down before the enemy, for God has power to help, and power to throw down."

translationWords:

- [God](#)
- [Ephraim](#)
- [power, powers](#)

translationNotes:

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 25:9-10

UDB:

⁹ Amaziah asked that prophet, “If I do that, what about the huge amount of silver that I paid to hire those soldiers from Israel?”

The prophet replied, “Yahweh is able to pay you back more money than you paid to hire those soldiers.”

¹⁰ So Amaziah told those soldiers from Israel to return home. They left to go home, but they were very angry with the king of Judah for not allowing them to stay and fight.

ULB:

⁹ Amaziah said to the man of God, “But what will we do about the one hundred talents that I have given to the army of Israel?” The man of God answered, “Yahweh is able to give you much more than that.” ¹⁰ So Amaziah separated the army that had come to him from Ephraim; he sent them home again. So their anger was greatly kindled against Judah, and they returned home in fierce anger.

translationWords:

- [Amaziah](#)
- [angry, anger](#)

translationNotes:

- **So their anger was greatly kindled** - AT: “So they began to burn with anger (like a fire)” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **in fierce anger** - AT: “very angry”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 25:11-12

UDB:

¹¹ Then Amaziah became brave, and he led his army to the Valley of Salt. There they killed ten thousand soldiers from the Edom people group. ¹² The army of Judah also captured ten thousand other soldiers, took them to the top of a cliff, and threw them all down over the cliff, with the result that their bodies were all smashed to pieces.

ULB:

¹¹ Amaziah took courage and led his people to go out to the Valley of Salt; there he defeated ten thousand men of Seir. ¹² The army of Judah carried away alive another ten thousand. They took them to the top of the cliff and threw them down from there, so that they were all broken in pieces.

translationWords:

- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)

translationNotes:

- **Valley of Salt** - This is an area near the Dead Sea.
- **so that they were all broken in pieces** - AT: “so that they all died”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 25:13

UDB:

¹³ While that was happening, the soldiers from Israel whom Amaziah had sent home raided cities and towns in Judea, from the city of Samaria to the city of Bethhoron. They killed three thousand people and took away a great amount of valuable things.

ULB:

¹³ But the men of the army which Amaziah sent back, so that they should not go with him to battle, attacked the cities of Judah from Samaria to Bethhoron. They struck down three thousand of the people and took much plunder.

translationWords:

- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)

translationNotes:

- **Bethhoron** - This was a village near Jerusalem in Ephraim. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **struck down** - AT: "killed" (See: [Euphemism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 25:14-15

UDB:

¹⁴ When Amaziah returned to Jerusalem after his army had slaughtered the soldiers from Edom, he brought the idols that his enemies had worshiped. He set them up to be his own gods. Then he bowed down to worship them and offered sacrifices to them. ¹⁵ Because of that, Yahweh was very angry with Amaziah. He sent a prophet to him, who said, “Why do you worship these foreign gods who were not even able to save their own people when your army attacked them?”

ULB:

¹⁴ Now it came about, after that Amaziah had returned from the slaughter of the Edomites, that he brought the gods of the people of Seir, and set them up to be his own gods. He bowed down before them and burned incense to them. ¹⁵ So Yahweh’s anger was kindled against Amaziah. He sent a prophet to him, who said, “Why have you sought after the gods of a people who did not even save their own people from your hand?”

translationWords:

- slaughter
- Edom, Edomite, Idumea
- false god, foreign god, god, goddess
- bow, bow down
- incense
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

translationNotes:

- **set them up to be his own gods** - AT: “worshiped these false gods”
- **Why have you sought after the gods of a people who did not even save their own people from your hand** - AT: “You have worshiped the gods of a people that did not even save their own people from you, King Amaziah.” (See [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 25:16

UDB:

¹⁶ While he was still speaking, the king said to him, “We certainly did not appoint you to be one of my advisors. So stop talking! If you say anything more, I will tell my soldiers to kill you!”

So the prophet said, “I know that God has determined to get rid of you, because you have begun to worship idols, and have not heeded my advice.” Then the prophet said nothing more.

ULB:

¹⁶ It came about that as the prophet was speaking with him, the king said to him, “Have we made you an advisor to the king? Stop! Why should you be killed?” Then the prophet stopped and said, “I know that God has decided to destroy you because you have done this deed and have not listened to my advice.”

translationWords:

- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)

translationNotes:

- **Have we made you an advisor to the king? Stop. Why should you be killed?** - AT: “We certainly did not appoint you to be one of my advisors. So stop talking! If you say anything more, I will tell my soldiers to kill you!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 25:17**UDB:**

¹⁷ Some time later Amaziah, the king of Judah, consulted his advisors. Then he sent a message to Jehoash, the king of Israel. He wrote, "Come and meet me face to face in battle."

ULB:

¹⁷ Then Amaziah king of Judah consulted with advisors and sent messengers to Jehoash son of Jehoahaz son of Jehu, king of Israel, saying, "Come, let us meet each other face to face in battle."

translationWords:

- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [Jehu](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)

translationNotes:

- **Jehoash ... Jehoahaz** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 25:18-19

UDB:

¹⁸ But Jehoash replied this to King Amaziah: "One time a thistle growing in the mountains in Lebanon sent a message to a cedar tree, saying, 'Give your daughter to my son in order that he can marry her.' But a wild animal in Lebanon came along and trampled the thistle under his feet. ¹⁹ What I mean is that you are saying to yourself that your army has defeated the army of Edom, so you have become very proud. You can be proud of your victory, but you should not fight me. If you do, you will only make trouble for yourself. I will defeat you, and Judah with you."

ULB:

¹⁸ But Jehoash the king of Israel sent messengers back to Amaziah king of Judah, saying, "A thistle that was in Lebanon sent a message to a cedar in Lebanon, saying, 'Give your daughter to my son for a wife,' but a wild beast in Lebanon walked by and trampled down the thistle. ¹⁹ You have said, 'See, I have struck down Edom,' and your heart has lifted you up. Take pride in your victory, but stay at home, for why should you cause yourself trouble and fall, both you and Judah with you?"

translationWords:

- [Lebanon](#)
- [beast](#)
- [proud, pride, prideful](#)
- [trouble, troubles, troubled](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This story is a [Parables](#).
- **thistle** - This is a small bush.
- **cedar** - A very large type of tree. Here it represents the soldiers of Israel.
- **for why should you cause yourself trouble and fall, both you and Judah with you?** - AT: "you should not cause yourself trouble and fall, both you and Judah with you." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 25:20-22

UDB:

²⁰ But Amaziah paid no attention to Jehoash's message. This happened because God wanted Jehoash's army to defeat them, because they were worshiping the gods of Edom. ²¹ So Jehoash's army attacked. Their two armies faced each other at the city of Beth Shemesh in Judah. ²² The army of Judah was badly defeated by the army of Israel, and all the soldiers of Judah fled to their homes.

ULB:

²⁰ But Amaziah would not listen, because this event was from God, so he might hand over the people of Judah into the hand of their enemies, because they had sought advice from the gods of Edom. ²¹ So Jehoash, king of Israel, attacked; he and Amaziah, king of Judah, met each other face to face at Beth Shemesh, which belongs to Judah. ²² Judah was struck down before Israel, and every man fled home.

translationWords:

- [God](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [Beth Shemesh](#)

translationNotes:

- **struck down before** - AT: "defeated by"

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 25:23-24

UDB:

²³ King Jehoash's army also captured King Amaziah there. Then he brought Amaziah to Jerusalem, and his soldiers tore down the wall that was around the city, from the Ephraim Gate to the Corner Gate. That was a section that was one-hundred and eighty meters long. ²⁴ His soldiers also carried away the gold, silver, and other valuable objects from the temple that the descendants of Obed Edom had been guarding. They also took away the valuable things in the palace, and they took to Samaria some prisoners whom they had captured.

ULB:

²³ Jehoash, king of Israel, captured Amaziah son of Jehoash son of Ahaziah, king of Judah, at Beth Shemesh. He brought him to Jerusalem and tore down the wall of Jerusalem from the Ephraim Gate to the Corner Gate, four hundred cubits in distance. ²⁴ He took all the gold and silver, all the objects that were found in the house of God with Obed Edom, and the valuable things in the king's house, with hostages also, and returned to Samaria.

translationWords:

- [king](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [Amaziah](#)
- [Ahaziah](#)
- [Beth Shemesh](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Ephraim](#)
- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [gold](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)
- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)

translationNotes:

- **cubits** - (See: [Biblical Distance](#))
- **Obed Edom** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 General Notes](#)

- 2 Chronicles 25 Translation Questions

2 Chronicles 25:25-26

UDB:

²⁵ King Jehoash of Israel died, and King Amaziah of Judah lived for fifteen years after that. ²⁶ An account of all the other things that Amaziah did while he was the king of Judah is written in The Book of the Kings of Judah and Israel.

ULB:

²⁵ Amaziah son of Joash, king of Judah, lived fifteen years after the death of Jehoash, son of Jehoahaz, king of Israel. ²⁶ As for the other matters concerning Amaziah, first and last, behold, are they not written in The Book of the Kings of Judah and Israel?

translationWords:

- [Joash](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)

translationNotes:

- **first and last** - AT: “everything” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **are they not written ... Israel?** - AT: “they are written ... Israel.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 25:27-28

UDB:

²⁷ From the time that Amaziah started to disobey Yahweh, some men in Jerusalem planned to kill him. He was able to escape to the city of Lachish, but those who wanted to kill him sent another group of people to Lachish and killed him there. ²⁸ They put his corpse on a horse and brought it back to Jerusalem and buried it where his ancestors had been buried in the part of Jerusalem called the city of David.

ULB:

²⁷ Now from the time that Amaziah turned away from following Yahweh, they began to make a conspiracy against him in Jerusalem. He fled to Lachish, but they sent men after him to Lachish and killed him there. ²⁸ They brought him back on horses and buried him with his ancestors in the City of Judah.

translationWords:

- [Amaziah](#)
- [turn, turn away, turn back](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [horse](#)
- [bury, buried, burial](#)
- [Judah](#)

translationNotes:

- **Lachish** - A city in Judah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **City of Judah** - another name for City of David, or Jerusalem

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 26 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Uzzah the leper

Uzzah was powerful when he followed Yahweh. When he entered the temple to burn incense like a priest; God made him a leper. A leper could not properly worship Yahweh because they were always unclean. (See: [temple](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#) and [unclean](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 26:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 26:1-3

UDB:

1-2 After King Amaziah died, all the people took his son Uzziah to be their king. Uzziah was sixteen years old at that time. One of the things that happened while he was the king was that his workers captured the city of Elath, and rebuilt it.

³ Uzziah ruled in Jerusalem for fifty-two years. His mother was Jecoliah; she was from Jerusalem.

ULB:

26 ¹ All the people of Judah took Uzziah, who was sixteen years old, and made him king in place of his father Amaziah. ² It was he who rebuilt Elath and restored it to Judah. After that the king slept with his ancestors. ³ Uzziah was sixteen years old when he began to reign. He reigned for fifty-two years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Jechiliah; she was from Jerusalem.

translationWords:

- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [Uzziah, Azariah](#)
- [king](#)
- [Amaziah](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [reign](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

translationNotes:

- **sixteen ... fifty-two** - "16 ... 52" (See: [Numbers](#))
- **Elath** - This was a town on the Gulf of Aqaba. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **the king slept with his ancestors** - AT: "the king died" (See: [Euphemism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 26:4-5

UDB:

⁴ Uzziah did things that Yahweh said are good, like his father Amaziah had done. ⁵ He tried to please God while the priest Zechariah was living, because Zechariah taught him to revere God. As long as Amaziah tried to please God, God enabled him to be successful.

ULB:

⁴ He did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh, following the example of his father, Amaziah, in everything. ⁵ He set himself to seek God in the days of Zechariah, who gave him instructions for obeying God. As long as he sought Yahweh, God made him prosper.

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [God](#)
- [Zechariah \(OT\)](#)
- [obey, obedient, obedience](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)

translationNotes:

- **He did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh** - See how you translated this in [14:2](#)
- **in everything** - AT: “in the same way” (See: [Hyperbole](#))
- **He set himself to seek** - AT: “He was determined to please” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 26:6-8

UDB:

⁶ Amaziah and his army went to attack the army of Philistia. They tore down the walls of the cities of Gath, Jabneh, and Ashdod. Then they rebuilt the cities near Ashdod and in other places in Philistia. ⁷ God helped them to fight the army of Philistia and the Arabs who lived in the city of Gur Baal, and the descendants of Meun who had come to that area from Edom. ⁸ Even the Ammon people group paid taxes to Amaziah each year. So Amaziah became famous as far as the border of Egypt, because he had become very powerful.

ULB:

⁶ Uzziah went out and fought against the Philistines. He broke down the city walls of Gath, Jabneh, and Ashdod; he built cities in the country of Ashdod and among the Philistines. ⁷ God helped him against the Philistines, against the Arabians who lived in Gurbaal, and against the Meunites. ⁸ The Ammonites paid tribute to Uzziah, and his fame spread, even to the entrance of Egypt, because he was becoming more powerful.

translationWords:

- [Philistines](#)
- [Gath](#)
- [Ashdod, Azotus](#)
- [Arabia, Arabian](#)
- [Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonites](#)
- [tribute](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [power, powers](#)

translationNotes:

- **Jabneh** - This was a town in northern Judah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Gurbaal** - This was a town in Arabia.
- **Meunites** - This is likely the kingdom of the Maon people near Mount Seir.
- **the entrance of Egypt** - AT: “the border of Egypt” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 26:9-10

UDB:

⁹ Amaziah's workers built watchtowers in Jerusalem at the Corner Gate, at the Valley Gate, and at the place where the wall turns, and they placed weapons in those towers. ¹⁰ They also built watchtowers in the wilderness and dug many wells. They did that to provide water for a lot of the king's cattle that were in the foothills and in the plains. Amaziah was very interested in farming, so he also stationed workers to take care of his fields, vineyards in the hills, and in the fertile areas.

ULB:

⁹ In addition, Uzziah built towers in Jerusalem at the Corner Gate, at the Valley Gate, and at the turning of the wall, and fortified them. ¹⁰ He built watchtowers in the wilderness and dug many cisterns, for he had much cattle, in the lowlands as well as in the plains. He had farmers and vine growers in the hill country and in the fruitful fields, for he loved farming.

translationWords:

- [watchtower, tower](#)
- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [cow, calf, bull, cattle](#)
- [vine](#)
- [fruit, fruitful](#)
- [love](#)

translationNotes:

- **cisterns** - A cistern is a large underground room used to store water from rain.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 26:11-13

UDB:

¹¹ Amaziah's army was trained for fighting battles. They were in groups that were always ready to go into battles. Jeiel, the king's secretary, and Maaseiah, one of the army officers, counted the men and placed them in groups. Hananiah, one of the king's officials, was their commander. ¹² There were leaders appointed to be in charge of the soldiers. They came from the traditional families of Judah, and were 2,600 in number. ¹³ In the groups that those leaders commanded there was a total of 307,500 well-trained soldiers. It was a very powerful army, ready to fight the king's enemies.

ULB:

¹¹ In addition, Uzziah had an army of fighting men who went out to war in groups which were organized by their number that were counted by Jeiel, the scribe, and Maaseiah, the officer, under the authority of Hananiah, one of the king's commanders. ¹² The whole number of the heads of ancestral houses, fighting men, was 2,600. ¹³ Under their hand was an army of 307,500 men that made war with mighty power to help the king against the enemy.

translationWords:

- scribe, expert in the Jewish law
- authority
- commander, command
- head
- house
- mighty, might
- power, powers
- adversary, enemy

translationNotes:

- Jeiel, the scribe, and Maaseiah, the officer, under the authority of Hananiah, one of the king's commanders - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- 2,600 ... 307,500 - (See: [Numbers](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 26:14-15

UDB:

¹⁴ Amaziah gave to each soldier a shield, a spear, a helmet, a vest made of iron plates, a bow and arrows, and a sling for throwing stones. ¹⁵ In Jerusalem his skilled workers made machines to put on the watchtowers and on the corners of the walls, to shoot arrows and to hurl large stones. He became very famous even in distant places, because God helped him very much and enabled him to become very powerful.

ULB:

¹⁴ Uzziah prepared for them—for all the army—shields, spears, helmets, coats of mail, bows, and stones for slinging. ¹⁵ In Jerusalem he built engines, invented by skillful men, to be on the towers and on the battlements, with which to shoot arrows and large stones. His fame spread to distant lands, for he was greatly helped until he became very powerful.

translationWords:

- [shield](#)
- [spear](#)
- [bow and arrow](#)

translationNotes:

- **helmets** - A helmet is a protective head covering.
- **coats of mail** - This is a covering for the body made of metal links or chains.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 26:16-18

UDB:

¹⁶ But because Amaziah was very powerful, he became very proud, and that caused him to be punished. He disobeyed what Yahweh his God had commanded. He went into the temple to burn incense on the altar where God had said that only the priests should burn incense. ¹⁷ Azariah, the high priest, and eighty other brave priests followed him into the temple. ¹⁸ They rebuked him and said to him, “Amaziah, it is not right for you are set apart to burn incense to honor Yahweh. That duty is for the priests, those who are descendants of Aaron our first high priest! You must leave immediately, because you have disobeyed Yahweh our God, and he will not honor you for what you have done!”

ULB:

¹⁶ But when Uzziah had become powerful, his heart was lifted up so that he acted corruptly; he trespassed against Yahweh, his God, for he went into the house of Yahweh to burn incense on the altar of incense. ¹⁷ Azariah, the priest, went in after him, and with him eighty priests of Yahweh, who were courageous men. ¹⁸ They resisted Uzziah, the king, and said to him, “It is not for you, Uzziah, to burn incense to Yahweh, but for the priests, the sons of Aaron, who are consecrated to burn incense. Go out of the holy place, for you have unfaithful and you will not be honored by Yahweh God.”

translationWords:

- heart
- trespass
- Yahweh
- God
- house of God, Yahweh’s house
- incense
- Azariah
- priest, priesthood
- Uzziah, Azariah
- Aaron
- consecrate
- holy place, most holy place
- honor, to honor

translationNotes:

- **his heart was lifted up** - AT: “He became proud” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the sons of Aaron** - AT: “the descendants of Aaron”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 26:19-20

UDB:

¹⁹ Now Amaziah was holding in his hand a pan for burning incense. He became very angry with the priests, but suddenly there spots of leprosy appeared on his forehead. ²⁰ When Azariah the high priest and all the other priests who were there looked at him, they saw the leprosy on his forehead, so they quickly took him outside. And truly the king was eager to leave the temple, because he knew that it was Yahweh who had caused him to have that leprosy, and he did not want it to become worse.

ULB:

¹⁹ Then Uzziah became angry. He was holding a censer in his hand to burn incense. While he was angry with the priests, leprosy broke out on his forehead before the priests in the house of Yahweh, beside the altar of incense. ²⁰ Azariah the chief priest and all the priests looked at him, and, behold, he had become leprous on his forehead. They quickly drove him out of there. Indeed, he hurried to go out, because Yahweh had struck him.

translationWords:

- [angry, anger](#)
- [leprosy, leper, leprous](#)
- [altar](#)
- [chief priests](#)

translationNotes:

- **censer** - This is a special pan or bowl used for burning incense.
- **They quickly drove him out of there** - AT: "They quickly made him leave" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Yahweh had struck him** - AT: "Yahweh made him ill" (See: [Euphemism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 26:21

UDB:

²¹ King Amaziah had leprosy until he died. Because he had leprosy, he lived in a house that was not near other houses, and he was not allowed to enter the courtyard of the temple. His son Jotham supervised the palace and ruled the people of Judah.

ULB:

²¹ Uzziah, the king, was a leper to the day of his death and lived in a separate house since he was a leper, for he was cut off from the house of Yahweh. Jotham, his son, was over the king's house and ruled the people of the land.

translationWords:

- death, die, dead
- cut off
- Jotham
- people group, peoples, the people, a people

translationNotes:

- **lived in a separate house** - This indicates that he lived away from other houses and other people.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 26:22-23

UDB:

²² A record of all the other things that Amaziah did while he was the king of Judah was written by the prophet Isaiah son of Amoz. ²³ Because Amaziah was a leper, when he died they would not bury him in the royal tombs. Instead, they buried him in a nearby cemetery that the kings owned. Then his son Jotham became the king of Judah.

ULB:

²² As for the other matters concerning Uzziah, first and last, are in what Isaiah son of Amoz, the prophet, wrote. ²³ So Uzziah slept with his ancestors; they buried him with his ancestors in a burial ground that belonged to the Kings, for they said, "He is a leper." Jotham, his son, became king in his place.

translationWords:

- [Isaiah](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [tomb, grave, burial place](#)
- [king](#)

translationNotes:

- **first and last** - AT: "everything" (See: [Idiom](#))
- **son of Amoz** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **So Uzziah slept with his ancestors** - AT: "So Uzziah died" (See: [Euphemism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 27 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Trust in Yahweh

Jotham was able to conquer the people of Ammon because he obeyed the Lord. For Yahweh, trust in Yahweh is the key to victory in battle. (See: [trust](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 27:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 27:1-2

UDB:

¹ Jotham was twenty-five years old when he became the king of Judah. He ruled from Jerusalem for sixteen years. His mother was Jerushah, the daughter of the priest Zadok. ² Jotham did many things that pleased Yahweh as his father Amaziah had done. He obeyed Yahweh and did things that are right. He did many good things that his father Amaziah had done, and he also did not burn incense in the temple, as his father had done. However, the people of Judah continued to sin against Yahweh.

ULB:

27 ¹ Jotham was twenty-five years old when he began to reign; he reigned sixteen years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Jerushah; she was the daughter of Zadok. ² He did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh, following the example of his father, Uzziah, in everything. He also refrained from going into the temple of Yahweh. But the people were still behaving in evil ways.

translationWords:

- [Jotham](#)
- [reign](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Zadok](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Uzziah, Azariah](#)
- [temple](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)

translationNotes:

- [Jerushah](#) - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **He did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh** - See how you translated this in [14:2](#)
- **in everything** - AT: "in the same way" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 27 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 27 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 27:3-4

UDB:

³ Jotham's workers rebuilt the Upper Gate of the temple, and they did a lot of work to repair the wall near the hill of Ophel. ⁴ They built cities in the hills of Judah, and they built forts and towers for defense in the forests.

ULB:

³ He built the upper gate of the house of Yahweh, and on the hill of Ophel he built much. ⁴ Moreover he built cities in the hill country of Judah, and in the forests he built castles and towers.

translationWords:

- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [watchtower, tower](#)

translationNotes:

- **the hill of Ophel** - This is a hill in Jerusalem.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 27 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 27 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 27:5

UDB:

⁵ During the time that he was the king of Judah, his army attacked and defeated the army of the Ammon people group. Then, every year during the next three years, he required them to pay to him about three and one half metric tons of silver, 2,200 kiloliters of wheat, and 2,200 kiloliters of barley.

ULB:

⁵ He fought also with the king of the people of Ammon and defeated them. In that same year, the people of Ammon gave him one hundred talents of silver, ten thousand measures of wheat, ten thousand measures of barley. The people of Ammon gave him the same in the second and third years.

translationWords:

- [Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonites](#)
- [wheat](#)
- [barley](#)

translationNotes:

- **talents** - (See: [Biblical Money](#))
- **measures** - (See: [Biblical Volume](#))
- **in the second and third years** - AT: “in the second and third years after he defeated them”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 27 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 27 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 27:6-7

UDB:

⁶ Jotham faithfully obeyed Yahweh his God, and as a result he became a very powerful king.

⁷ A record of everything else that Jotham did during the time that he was the king, including the wars that his army fought, is written in the Book of the Kings of Judah and Israel.

ULB:

⁶ So Jotham became powerful because he walked firmly before Yahweh his God. ⁷ As for the other matters concerning Jotham, all his wars, and his ways, see, they are written in The Book of the Kings of Israel and Judah.

translationWords:

- [Jotham](#)
- [power, powers](#)
- [walk](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [God](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)

translationNotes:

- **he walked firmly before Yahweh his God** - AT: “he obeyed Yahweh without straying” or “he lived completely dedicated to Yahweh” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **The Book of the Kings of Israel and Judah** - This is a book that no longer exists.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 27 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 27 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 27:8-9**UDB:**

⁸ After he had ruled Judah for sixteen years, he died when he was forty-one years old. ⁹ He was buried in Jerusalem, and his son Ahaz became the next king of Judah.

ULB:

⁸ He was twenty-five years old when he began to reign; he reigned for sixteen years in Jerusalem.
⁹ Jotham slept with his ancestors, and they buried him in the city of David. Ahaz, his son, became king in his place.

translationWords:

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [bury, buried, burial](#)
- [city of David](#)
- [Ahaz](#)

translationNotes:

- **Jotham slept with his ancestors** - AT: "Jotham died," (See: [Euphemism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 27 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 27 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 28 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

King Ahaz's idolatry

Judah was defeated by all of the neighboring countries because King Ahaz was worshiping all sorts of foreign gods. (See: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 28:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 28:1-2

UDB:

¹ Ahaz was twenty years old when he became the king of Judah. He ruled from Jerusalem for sixteen years. His ancestor King David had been a good king, but Ahaz was not like David. He constantly disobeyed Yahweh ² and was as sinful as the kings of Israel had been. He made idols of the god Baal by having craftsmen cast them in metal.

ULB:

28 ¹ Ahaz was twenty years old when he began to reign, and he reigned sixteen years in Jerusalem. He did not do what was right in the eyes of Yahweh, as David his ancestor had done. ² Instead, he walked in the ways of the kings of Israel; he also made cast metal figures for the Baals.

translationWords:

- [Ahaz](#)
- [reign](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [walk](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)
- [image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure](#)
- [Baal](#)

translationNotes:

- **He did not do what was right in the eyes of Yahweh** - See how you translated this in [14:2](#)
- **he walked in the ways of the kings of Israel** - AT: "he sinned just like the kings of Israel before him" (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 28:3-4

UDB:

³ He burned incense in the Valley of Ben Hinnom. He even killed some of his own sons in fires as sacrifices. That imitated the disgusting customs that the people groups who previously lived there had done, people whom Yahweh had drive out when the Israelites were advancing through the land. ⁴ He offered sacrifices to idols at the houses built upon hilltops and under every big green tree.

ULB:

³ In addition, he burned incense in the Valley of Ben Hinnom and put his children into fire, according to the idolatrous practices of the people that Yahweh forced out of their land before the people of Israel. ⁴ He sacrificed and burned incense at the high places and on the hills and under every green tree.

translationWords:

- [incense](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [high places](#)

translationNotes:

- **the Valley of Ben Hinnom** - This is a valley in Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **under every green tree** - AT: "everywhere" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 28:5-6

UDB:

⁵ Therefore Yahweh his God allowed his army to be defeated by the army of the king of Aram. They captured many soldiers of Judah and took them as prisoners to Damascus. The army of the king of Israel also defeated the army of Judah and killed very many of their soldiers. ⁶ In one day the army of Remaliah's son, King Pekah of Israel, killed 120,000 fine soldiers in Judah. That happened because the people of Judah had abandoned Yahweh, the God whom their ancestors worshiped.

ULB:

⁵ Therefore Yahweh the God of Ahaz, gave him into the hand of the king of Aram. The Arameans defeated him and carried away from him a great crowd of prisoners, bringing them to Damascus. Ahaz was also given into the hand of the king of Israel who defeated him in a great slaughter. ⁶ For Pekah son of Remaliah, killed in Judah 120,000 soldiers in one day, all of them courageous men, because they had forsaken Yahweh, the God of their ancestors.

translationWords:

- [Ahaz](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [Aram, Aramean, Aramaic](#)
- [prison, prisoner, imprison](#)
- [Damascus](#)
- [slaughter](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [forsake, forsaken, forsook](#)

translationNotes:

- **Pekah son of Remaliah** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 28:7-8

UDB:

⁷ Zicri, a warrior from the tribe of Ephraim, killed King Ahaz's son Maaseiah, Azrikam, who was in charge of the palace, and Elkanah, the king's assistant. ⁸ The soldiers of Israel captured 200,000 of the people of Judah, including many wives and sons and daughters of the soldiers of Judah. They also seized and took back to Samaria many valuable things.

ULB:

⁷ Zicri, a powerful man from Ephraim, killed Maaseiah the king's son, Azrikam, the official over the palace, and Elkanah, who was next to the king. ⁸ The army of Israel took captive from their relatives 200,000 wives, sons, and daughters. They also took much plunder, which they carried back to Samaria.

translationWords:

- [Ephraim](#)
- [king](#)
- [palace](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)

translationNotes:

- **Zicri ... Maaseiah ... Azrikam ... Elkanah** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 28:9-11

UDB:

⁹ But a prophet of Yahweh, whose name was Oded, was in Samaria. He went out of the city to meet the army as it was returning. He said to them, "Yahweh, the God to whom your ancestors belongs, was angry with the people of Judah, so he has handed them over to you, and you have slaughtered so many in a towering rage. ¹⁰ And now you want to sin by causing men and women from Judah to become your slaves, but you have certainly offended Yahweh, our God, in this matter. ¹¹ So listen to me! Send back to Judah your fellow countrymen whom you have captured, because Yahweh is extremely angry with you for what you did to them."

ULB:

⁹ But a prophet of Yahweh was there, his name was Oded. He went out to meet the army coming into Samaria. He said to them, "Because Yahweh, the God of your ancestors, was angry with Judah, he gave them into your hand. But you have slaughtered them in a rage that reached up to heaven. ¹⁰ Now you intend to keep the men and women of Judah and Jerusalem as your slaves. But are you not guilty of sins of your own against Yahweh your God? ¹¹ Now then, listen to me: Send the prisoners back, those whom you have taken of your own brothers, for Yahweh's fierce wrath is on you."

translationWords:

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- angry, anger
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- servant, slave, slavery
- guilt, guilty
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- brother
- wrath, fury

translationNotes:

- **Oded** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **he gave them into your hand** - AT: "he help you to defeat them"
- **But are you not guilty ... against Yahweh your God?** - AT: "But remember, you are guilty ... against Yahweh your God." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 28:12-13

UDB:

¹² Then some of the leaders of the tribe of Ephraim—Azariah son of Johanan, Berechiah son of Meshillemoth, Jehizkiah son of Shallum, and Amasa son of Hadlai—rebuked those who were returning from the battle. ¹³ They said to them, “You must not bring those prisoners here! If you do that, Yahweh will consider that we are guilty of sinning. We are already guilty of committing many sins; do you want to cause us to be even more guilty by committing another sin? God is already very angry with us people of Israel!”

ULB:

¹² Then certain leaders of the people of Ephraim—Azariah son of Johanan, Berechiah son of Meshillemoth, Jehizkiah son of Shallum, and Amasa son of Hadlai, stood up against those who came back from the war. ¹³ They said to them, “You must not bring the prisoners here, for you intend something that will bring on us sin against Yahweh, to add to our sins and trespasses, for our trespass is great, and there is fierce wrath against Israel.”

translationWords:

- [trespass](#)

translationNotes:

- **Azariah son of Johanan, Berechiah son of Meshillemoth, Jehizkiah son of Shallum, and Amasa son of Hadlai** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 28:14-15

UDB:

¹⁴ So, while their leaders and others were watching, the soldiers released the prisoners, and also gave back to them the valuable things that they had captured. ¹⁵ The leaders assigned some men to take care of the prisoners. These men took some of the clothes that the soldiers had taken from the people of Judah and gave those clothes to the people who were naked. They also gave to the prisoners sandals and other clothes, as well as things to eat and drink, and they gave them olive oil to rub on their wounds. They gave donkeys to those who were very weak, in order that they could ride on them. Then they led them all to Jericho, the city that had many palm trees. Finally those men returned to Samaria.

ULB:

¹⁴ So the armed men left the prisoners and the plunder before the leaders and all the assembly. ¹⁵ The men who were assigned by name got up and took the prisoners, and clothed all who were naked among them with the plunder. They clothed them and gave them sandals. They gave them food to eat and drink. They treated their wounds and put the weak ones on donkeys. They took them back to their families in Jericho, (called the City of Palms). Then they returned to Samaria.

translationWords:

- [assembly, assemble](#)
- [name](#)
- [sandal](#)
- [donkey, mule](#)
- [Jericho](#)

translationNotes:

- **sandals** - This is a type of shoe.
- **treated their wounds** - AT: "They gave them medical attention"
- **put the weak ones on donkeys** - AT: "gave donkeys to those unable to walk"

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 28:16-18

UDB:

¹⁶ About that time, King Ahaz sent a message to the king of Assyria requesting help. ¹⁷ He did that because the army from the Edom people group had come again and attacked Judah and taken away many of the people of Judah as prisoners. ¹⁸ At the same time, men from Philistia raided towns in the foothills and in the southern Judean wilderness. They captured the cities of Beth Shemesh, Aijalon, and Gederoth, as well as those of Soco, Timnah, and Gimzo with its nearby villages.

ULB:

¹⁶ At that time King Ahaz sent messengers to the kings of Assyria to ask them to help him. ¹⁷ For once again the Edomites had come and attacked Judah, carrying prisoners away. ¹⁸ The Philistines also invaded the cities of the lowlands and of the Negev of Judah. They took Beth Shemesh, Aijalon, Gederoth, Soco with its villages, Timnah with its villages, and also Gimzo with its villages. They went to live in those places.

translationWords:

- [Ahaz](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire](#)
- [Edom, Edomite, Idumea](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [Negev](#)
- [Beth Shemesh](#)

translationNotes:

- **Beth Shemesh, Aijalon, Gederoth, Soco with its villages, Timnah with its villages, and also Gimzo** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 28:19-21

UDB:

¹⁹ Yahweh allowed those things to happen in order to humble King Ahaz, because he had encouraged the people of Judah to do wicked things and had disobeyed Yahweh very much. ²⁰ Tiglath Pileser, the king of Assyria, sent his army saying that they would help Ahaz, but instead of helping him, they caused him trouble. ²¹ Ahaz's soldiers took some of the valuable things from the temple and from the king's palace and from other leaders of Judah, and sent them to the king of Assyria to pay him to help them, but the king of Assyria refused to help Ahaz.

ULB:

¹⁹ For Yahweh brought Judah low because of Ahaz, king of Israel; for he had acted wickedly in Judah and had sinned against Yahweh very heavily. ²⁰ Tilgath Pileser, king of Assyria, came to him and troubled him instead of strengthening him. ²¹ For Ahaz plundered the house of Yahweh and the houses of the king and the leaders, to give the valuable things to the kings of Assyria. But doing this did not benefit him.

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [Ahaz](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [trouble, troubles, troubled](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)

translationNotes:

- **Yahweh brought Judah low because of Ahaz** - AT: "Yahweh humbled Ahaz" (See: [Idiom Synecdoche](#))
- **Tilgath Pileser** - This is Tilgath Pileser III, also known as Pul. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 28:22-23

UDB:

²² While King Ahaz was experiencing those troubles, he disobeyed Yahweh even more. ²³ He offered sacrifices to the gods that were worshiped in Damascus, whose army had defeated his army. He thought, “The gods that are worshiped by the kings of Aram have helped them, so I will offer sacrifices to those gods in order that they will help me.” But worshiping those gods caused Ahaz and all of Israel to be ruined.

ULB:

²² This same King Ahaz sinned even more against Yahweh in his time of suffering. ²³ For he sacrificed to the gods of Damascus, gods that had defeated him. He said, “Because the gods of the kings of Aram helped them, will I sacrifice to them, so that they might help me.” But they were the ruin of him and of all Israel.

translationWords:

- [suffer, suffering](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [false god, foreign god, god, goddess](#)
- [Damascus](#)
- [Syria](#)

translationNotes:

- **in his time of suffering** - AT: “when he was suffering”
- **will I sacrifice to them** - AT: “I will sacrifice to them”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 28:24-25

UDB:

²⁴ Ahaz gathered all the furnishings that were used in the temple and broke them into pieces. He locked the doors of the temple and set up altars for worshipping idols at every street corner in Jerusalem. ²⁵ In every city in Judah, his workers built houses on the hilltops, and there they burned sacrifices to other gods, and that caused Yahweh, the God whom their ancestors worshiped, to be very angry with them.

ULB:

²⁴ Ahaz gathered together the furnishings of the house of God and cut them to pieces. He shut the doors of the house of Yahweh and he made for himself altars in every corner of Jerusalem. ²⁵ In every city of Judah he made high places to burn sacrifices to other gods. He provoked Yahweh, the God of his ancestors, to anger.

translationWords:

- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)
- [altar](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

translationNotes:

- **furnishings** - "furniture and other objects"
- **in every corner of Jerusalem** - AT: "in all of Jerusalem"

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 28:26-27

UDB:

²⁶ A record of the other things that Ahaz did while he was the king, from when he started to rule until he died, is written in the Book of the Kings of Judah and Israel. ²⁷ Ahaz died and was buried in Jerusalem, but he was not buried in the tombs where the other kings of Israel had been buried. Then his son Hezekiah became the king.

ULB:

²⁶ Now the rest of his deeds, and all his ways, first and last, see, they are written in The Book of the Kings of Judah and Israel. ²⁷ Ahaz slept with his ancestors, and they buried him in the city, in Jerusalem, but they did not bring him into the tombs of the kings of Israel. Hezekiah, his son, became king in his place.

translationWords:

- works, deeds, work, acts
- written
- king
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- kingdom of Israel
- tomb, grave, burial place
- Hezekiah

translationNotes:

- **all his ways, first and last** - AT: "everything he did"
- **The Book of the Kings of Judah and Israel** - This is a book that no longer exists.
- **Ahaz slept with his ancestors** - "Ahaz died" (See: [Euphemism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 29 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter begins the story of King Hezekiah. (2 Chronicles 29-32)

Special concepts in this chapter

Cleansing the temple

King Hezekiah was a great king. He cleaned and rededicated the temple. This was a sign that he wanted the people to return to worshiping Yahweh. (See: [clean](#), [cleanse](#), [temple](#) and [sign](#), [proof](#), [reminder](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 29:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 29:1-2

UDB:

¹ Hezekiah was twenty-five years old when he became the king of Judah. He ruled from Jerusalem for twenty-nine years. His mother was Abijah, the daughter of a man whose name was Zechariah.

² Hezekiah did things that Yahweh considered to be right, like his ancestor King David had done.

ULB:

29 ¹ Hezekiah began to reign when he was twenty-five years old; he reigned twenty-nine years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Abijah; she was the daughter of Zechariah. ² He did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh, just as David his father had done.

translationWords:

- [Hezekiah](#)
- [reign](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Zechariah \(OT\)](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)

translationNotes:

- **Abijah** - This is a woman's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **He did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh** - See how you translated this in [14:1](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 29:3-5

UDB:

³ During the first month of the first year that Hezekiah was ruling Judah, he unlocked the doors of the temple, and his workers repaired them. ⁴ Then he gathered the priests and other descendants of Levi in the courtyard on the east side of the temple, ⁵ and he said to them, "You descendants of Levi, listen to me! Set yourselves apart, and prepare the house of Yahweh so it is a place that honors Yahweh, whom your ancestors worshiped; carry out all the filthiness that is in the holy place.

ULB:

³ In the first year of his reign, in the first month, Hezekiah opened the doors of the house of Yahweh and repaired them. ⁴ He brought in the priests and the Levites, and gathered them together into the courtyard on the east side. ⁵ He said to them, "Listen to me, you Levites! Consecrate yourselves, and consecrate the house of Yahweh, the God of your ancestors, and carry away the filthiness from the holy place.

translationWords:

- [biblical time: year](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Levite, Levi](#)
- [courtyard, court](#)
- [consecrate](#)
- [holy place, most holy place](#)

translationNotes:

- **in the first month** - This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of March and the first part April on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **carry away the filthiness** - AT: "remove uncleanness" or "remove the dirtiness"

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 29:6-7

UDB:

⁶ Our ancestors disobeyed God; they did many things that he says are evil, and they did things that are not pleasing to him. They abandoned this place where Yahweh lives, and they have turned away from him. ⁷ They locked the doors of the temple and extinguished the lamps. They did not burn any incense, and they did not offer any sacrifices that were to be completely burned on the altar in the holy place.

ULB:

⁶ For our ancestors trespassed and did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh our God; they forsook him, turned away their faces from the place where Yahweh lives, and turned their backs on it. ⁷ Also they shut up the doors of the porch and put out the lamps; they did not burn incense or offer burnt offerings in the holy place to the God of Israel.

translationWords:

- [trespass](#)
- [God](#)
- [forsake, forsaken, forsook](#)
- [incense](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)

translationNotes:

- **did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh** - See how you translated this in [21:6](#)
- **where Yahweh lives** - See how you translated this in [18:13](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 29:8-9

UDB:

⁸ Therefore, Yahweh has become very angry with us people of Jerusalem and other places in Judah, and he has caused other people to become frightened and horrified us. And they ridicule us. You know this very well. ⁹ That is why our fathers have been killed in battles, and our sons and daughters and our wives have been captured and taken to other countries.

ULB:

⁸ Therefore the wrath of Yahweh had fallen on Judah and Jerusalem, and he has made them to be an object of terror, of horror, and of scorn, as you can see with your own eyes. ⁹ This is why our fathers have fallen by the sword, and our sons, our daughters, and our wives are in captivity for this.

translationWords:

- [wrath, fury](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [sword](#)
- [captive, captivity](#)

translationNotes:

- **terror, of horror, and of scorn** - (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **as you can see with your own eyes** - AT: "as you can see for yourselves" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **This is why our fathers have fallen by the sword** - AT: "This is why our fathers have been killed in war." (See: [Euphemism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 29:10-11

UDB:

¹⁰ But now I intend to make a covenant with Yahweh, our God, in order that he will no longer be angry with us. ¹¹ You who are like my sons, do not waste any time. Do immediately what Yahweh wants you to do. Yahweh has chosen you to stand in his presence and offer sacrifices and burn incense.”

ULB:

¹⁰ Now it is in my heart to make a covenant with Yahweh, the God of Israel, so that his fierce anger may turn away from us. ¹¹ My sons, do not be lazy now, for Yahweh has chosen you to stand before him, to worship him, and that you should be his servants and burn incense.”

translationWords:

- [heart](#)
- [covenant](#)
- [worship](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)

translationNotes:

- **his fierce anger may turn away from us** - AT: “he may not act on his anger toward us” (See: [Personification](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 29:12-14

UDB:

¹² Then these descendants of Levi started to work in the temple.

- From the descendants of Kohath there were Mahath the son of Amasai, and Joel the son of Azariah.
- From the descendants of Merari there were Kish the son of Abdi, and Azariah the son of Jehallelel.
- From the descendants of Gershon there were Joah the son of Zimmah, and Eden the son of Joah.
- ¹³ From the descendants of Elizaphan there were Shimri and Jeiel.
- From the descendants of Asaph there were Zechariah and Mattaniah.
- ¹⁴ From the descendants of Heman there were Jehiel and Shimei.
- From the descendants of Jeduthun there were Shemaiah and Uzziel.

ULB:

¹² Then the Levites arose: Mahath son of Amasai, and Joel son of Azariah, of the people of the Kohathites; and of the people of Merari, Kish son of Abdi, and Azariah son of Jehallelel; and of the Gershonites, Joah son of Zimmah, and Eden son of Joah; ¹³ of the sons of Elizaphan, Shimri and Jeuel; and of the sons of Asaph, Zechariah and Mattaniah; ¹⁴ of the sons of Heman, Jehuel and Shimei; and of the sons of Jeduthun, Shemaiah and Uzziel.

translationWords:

- [Levite, Levi](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [Azariah](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 29:15-17

UDB:

¹⁵ When those men had gathered their fellow descendants of Levi, and when they had all did all to set themselves apart as they prepare to obey the king, who was following Yahweh's commands, and went into the temple to clean it up. ¹⁶ The priests entered the temple to purify it. They brought out into the courtyard of the temple everything that they had found in the temple that was not pleasing to Yahweh. Then the descendants of Levi took those things down to the Kidron Valley and burned them there. ¹⁷ The priests and other descendants of Levi started this work on the first day of the first month and finished setting apart for the honor of Yahweh, the courtyard of the temple on the eighth day of that month, and they finished the work of setting the temple apart for the honor of Yahweh, one week later.

ULB:

¹⁵ They gathered their brothers, they consecrated themselves, and they went in, as the king commanded, following the words of Yahweh, to cleanse the house of Yahweh. ¹⁶ The priests went in to the inner part of the house of Yahweh to cleanse it; they brought out all the filth that they found in the temple of Yahweh into the courtyard of the house. The Levites took it to carry it out to the brook Kidron. ¹⁷ Now they began the consecration on the first day of the first month. By the eighth day of the month they reached the porch of Yahweh. Then for eight more days they consecrated the house of Yahweh. On the sixteenth day of the first month they finished.

translationWords:

- brother
- consecrate
- command, to command, commandment
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- clean, cleanse
- house of God, Yahweh's house
- temple
- courtyard, court
- biblical time: day
- consecrate

translationNotes:

- **brook Kidron** - A small body of water that flows on the east side of Jerusalem. At times it was used as a trash dump. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

- **the first day of the first month** - This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. The first day marks the day when Yahweh brought the people out of Egypt. This is near the middle of March on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **the eighth day of the month** - This is near the end of March on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **sixteenth day of the first month** - This is near the beginning of April on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 29:18-19

UDB:

¹⁸ Then they went to King Hezekiah and reported this: "We have purified all parts of the temple, and the altar where sacrifices are completely burned, and all the items used at the altar, the table on which the priests display the bread before Yahweh, and the things used at that table. ¹⁹ Ahaz ruled over us, he disobeyed what Yahweh had commanded, and he threw away many of the tools and implements from the temple many things that should be there, but now we have brought them back, we dedicated them to Yahweh's service, and then we placed them in front of the altar of Yahweh, where they can be seen."

ULB:

¹⁸ Then they went to Hezekiah, the king, inside the palace and said, "We have cleansed all the house of Yahweh, the altar for burnt offerings with all its implements, and the table of the bread of the presence, with all its implements. ¹⁹ So we have prepared and we have consecrated all the items that King Ahaz removed when he acted unfaithfully during his reign. See, they are in front of the altar of Yahweh."

translationWords:

- [Hezekiah](#)
- [altar](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [bread](#)

translationNotes:

- **during his reign** - AT: "during the time when he reigned"

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 29:20-21

UDB:

²⁰ Early the next morning, King Hezekiah gathered together the city officials, and they went to the courtyard of the temple. ²¹ They took with them seven bulls, seven rams, seven male lambs, and seven male goats to be an offering in order that Yahweh would forgive the sins of all the people in the kingdom of Judah, and in order to purify the temple. The king commanded that the priests, who were descendants of Aaron, should offer those animals to be sacrifices to Yahweh on the altar.

ULB:

²⁰ Then Hezekiah the king rose early in the morning and gathered the leaders of the city; he went up to the house of Yahweh. ²¹ They brought seven bulls, seven rams, seven lambs, and seven male goats as a sin offering for the kingdom, for the sanctuary, and for Judah. He commanded the priests, the sons of Aaron, to offer them on the altar of Yahweh.

translationWords:

- [cow, calf, bull, cattle](#)
- [sheep, ram, ewe](#)
- [goat, kid](#)
- [sin offering](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [command, to command, commandment](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [altar](#)

translationNotes:

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 29:22-24

UDB:

²² So first the priests slaughtered those bulls, and took the blood and sprinkled it on the altar. Then they slaughtered the rams and sprinkled their blood on the altar. Then they slaughtered the lambs and sprinkled their blood on the altar. ²³ The goats that were slaughtered to be an offering in order that Yahweh would forgive the sins of the people were brought to the king and the others who were there. Then the king and those who were present laid their hands on those goats. ²⁴ Then the priests slaughtered those goats and splashed their blood on the altar, to atone for the sins of Israel. The priests did that because the king had commanded that offerings that would be completely burned on the altar and other sacrifices should be made for all the people of Israel.

ULB:

²² So they killed the bulls, and the priests received the blood and sprinkled it on the altar. They killed the rams and sprinkled the blood on the altar; they also killed the lambs and sprinkled the blood on the altar. ²³ They brought the male goats for the sin offering before the king and the assembly; they laid their hands on them. ²⁴ The priests killed them, and they made a sin offering with their blood on the altar to make atonement for all Israel, for the king had commanded that a burnt offering and a sin offering should be made for all Israel.

translationWords:

- [blood](#)
- [assembly, assemble](#)
- [sin offering](#)
- [atonement, atone](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)

translationNotes:

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 29:25-26

UDB:

²⁵ The king then told the descendants of Levi to stand in the temple with their cymbals, harps, and lyres, obeying what David and his prophets Gad and Nathan had commanded. Those were things that Yahweh had told his prophets that the descendants of Levi should do. ²⁶ So the descendants of Levi went and stood in the temple, and began to play the musical instruments that King David had given to them. And the priests began to blow their trumpets.

ULB:

²⁵ Hezekiah placed the Levites in the house of Yahweh with cymbals, harps, and lyres, arranging them by the command of David, Gad, the king's seer, and Nathan, the prophet, for the command was from Yahweh by means of his prophets. ²⁶ The Levites stood with the instruments of David, and the priests with the trumpets.

translationWords:

- [harp](#)
- [lute, lyre](#)
- [David](#)
- [Gad](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Nathan](#)
- [trumpet](#)

translationNotes:

- **cymbals** - See how you translated this in [5:12](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 29:27-28**UDB:**

²⁷ Then Hezekiah told some of the priests to slaughter the animals that would be completely burned on the altar. When they started to slaughter the animals, the people started to sing to praise Yahweh, while the other descendants of Levi were playing their instruments. ²⁸ All the people who were there bowed to worship Yahweh, while the singers sang and the trumpeters played. They continued to do this until they had finished slaughtering all the animals that would be completely burned.

ULB:

²⁷ Hezekiah commanded them to offer the burnt offering on the altar. When the burnt offering began, the song of Yahweh began also, with the trumpets, together with the instruments of David, king of Israel. ²⁸ All the assembly worshiped, the singers sang, and the trumpeters played; all this continued until the burnt offering was finished.

translationWords:

- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [worship](#)

translationNotes:**Links:**

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 29:29-30

UDB:

²⁹ When they finished making those offerings, the king and all those who were there knelt down and worshiped Yahweh. ³⁰ Then King Hezekiah and his officials commanded the descendants of Levi to praise Yahweh, singing the songs composed by David and Asaph the prophet. So they sang songs joyfully, and bowed their heads to worship.

ULB:

²⁹ When they had finished the offerings, the king and all who were present with him bowed and worshiped. ³⁰ Moreover, Hezekiah, the king, and the leaders commanded the Levites to sing praises to Yahweh with the words of David and of Asaph, the seer. They sang praises with gladness, and they bowed down and worshiped.

translationWords:

- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [bow, bow down](#)
- [command, to command, commandment](#)
- [praise](#)

translationNotes:

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 29:31

UDB:

³¹ Then Hezekiah said, “You have now set yourselves apart for the honor of Yahweh. So come close to the temple and bring animals to be sacrificed, and also bring the other offerings to thank Yahweh for what he has done for you.” Then those who wanted to bring animals to be completely burned on the altar brought them.

ULB:

³¹ Then Hezekiah said, “Now you have consecrated yourselves to Yahweh. Come here and bring sacrifices and thank offerings into the house of Yahweh.” The assembly brought sacrifices and thank offerings, and all who had a willing heart brought burnt offerings.

translationWords:

- [heart](#)

translationNotes:

- **thank offerings** - These were offerings of thanksgiving.
- **who had a willing heart** - AT: “who desired”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 29:32-33

UDB:

³² Altogether they brought seventy bulls, one hundred rams, and two hundred male lambs to be completely burned on the altar. ³³ The other animals that they brought were six hundred bulls and three thousand sheep and goats that were set apart for the honor of Yahweh, to be sacrifices.

ULB:

³² The number of the burnt offerings that the assembly brought was seventy bulls, one hundred rams, and two hundred male lambs. All these were for a burnt offering to Yahweh. ³³ The consecrated offerings were six hundred oxen and three thousand sheep.

translationWords:

- burnt offering, offering by fire
- cow, calf, bull, cattle
- ox, oxen
- sheep, ram, ewe

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [Numbers](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 29:34

UDB:

³⁴ There were not enough priests to remove the skins from the animals that would be completely burned on the altar. So their fellow descendants of Levi helped them until that work was finished, and until other priests had set themselves apart for the work of honoring Yahweh, themselves for that work, like the descendants of Levi had also set themselves apart to honor Yahweh.

ULB:

³⁴ But the priests were too few to skin all the burnt offerings, so their brothers, the Levites, helped them until the work was done, and until the priests could consecrate themselves, for the Levites had been more careful to consecrate themselves than the priests.

translationWords:

- [brother](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)

translationNotes:

- **had been more careful to consecrate themselves** - AT: “had been more careful to follow the rules for purifying themselves” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 29:35-36

UDB:

³⁵ In addition to the all the offerings that were completely burned on the altar, the priests burned the fat of the accompanying animals that were sacrificed to maintain good fellowship with Yahweh; there were also offerings of wine.

In this way the worship at the temple began again. ³⁶ And Hezekiah and all the other people of Judah celebrated, because God had enabled them to do all the repair work very quickly.

ULB:

³⁵ In addition, there were very many burnt offerings; they were performed with the fat of the fellowship offerings, and there were drink offerings for every burnt offering. So the service of the house of Yahweh was set in order. ³⁶ Hezekiah rejoiced, and all the people also, because of what God had prepared for the people, for the work had been done quickly.

translationWords:

- [fellowship offering](#)
- [drink offering](#)
- [serve, service](#)
- [rejoice](#)

translationNotes:

- **they were performed with the fat of the fellowship offerings** - AT: “the priests burned the fat of the accompanying animals that were sacrificed to maintain good fellowship with Yahweh;” (UDB)
- **set in order** - AT: “reestablished by the priests according to the rules ”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 30 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of Hezekiah continues in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Passover

Hezekiah invited everyone in Judah and in Israel to come to Jerusalem and celebrate the Passover. It had not been celebrated since King Solomon's day. (See: [Passover](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 30:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 30:1-3

UDB:

1-3 King Hezekiah, his officials, and all the other people who had gathered in Jerusalem wanted to celebrate the Passover festival. But they were not able to celebrate it at the usual time, because many of the priests had still not been able to perform all the rites of purity for themselves, so they were not allowed to do the work of that festival. Also, not everyone had come to Jerusalem to celebrate it. So they decided to celebrate the festival the following month.

ULB:

30 ¹ Hezekiah sent messengers to all Israel and Judah, and also wrote letters to Ephraim and Manasseh, that they should come to the house of Yahweh in Jerusalem, to celebrate the Passover to Yahweh, the God of Israel. ² For the king, his leaders, and all the assembly in Jerusalem had consulted together, deciding to celebrate the Passover in the second month. ³ They could not celebrate it right away, because there were not enough priests who had not consecrated themselves, nor had the people gathered together in Jerusalem.

translationWords:

- Hezekiah
- messenger
- kingdom of Israel
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- letter, epistle
- Ephraim
- Manasseh
- house of God, Yahweh's house
- Passover
- Jerusalem

translationNotes:

- **deciding to celebrate the Passover in the second month** - The Israelites normally celebrated the passover during the first month of the Hebrew calendar. The first month is during the last part of March and the first part April on Western calendars.
- **second month** - This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 30:4-5

UDB:

⁴ The king and all the other people who had gathered thought that this was a good plan. ⁵ So they decided to send messages to all the cities and villages in Judah and in Israel, from Beersheba in the far south to Dan in the far north, including places in the tribes of Ephraim and Manasseh, to invite people to come to the temple in Jerusalem to celebrate the Passover to honor Yahweh, the God whom the Israelite people worshiped. Many of the people had not previously celebrated that festival, even though it had been written in the law of Moses that they should do that.

ULB:

⁴ This proposal seemed right in the eyes of the king and of all the assembly. ⁵ So they agreed to make a proclamation throughout all Israel, from Beersheba to Dan, that the people should come to celebrate the Passover to Yahweh, the God of Israel, at Jerusalem. For they had not observed it with large numbers of people, according to what was written.

translationWords:

- [Beersheba](#)
- [Dan](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)

translationNotes:

- **in the eyes of** - See how you translated this in [14:2](#)
- **Beersheba to Dan** - AT: "all the people of Israel" (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 30:6

UDB:

⁶ Obeying what the king commanded, messengers went throughout Judah and Israel, taking messages that had been written by the king and his officials. This is what they wrote:

- "You Israelite people, you who survived after being slaves of the kings of Assyria, return to Yahweh, the God whom our great ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob worshiped, in order that he may return to you. Your fathers and your fellow countrymen did not faithfully obey Yahweh, the God whom our ancestors worshiped.

ULB:

⁶ So couriers went with the letters from the king and his leaders throughout all Israel and Judah, by the command of the king. They said, "You people of Israel, turn back to Yahweh, the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Israel, so that he may turn back to the remnant of you who have escaped from the hand of the kings of Assyria.

translationWords:

- [turn, turn away, turn back](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [Isaac](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [remnant](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire](#)

translationNotes:

- **couriers** - This was a person who carried a message.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 30:7-9

UDB:

⁷ Do not act like they did, because what they did caused Yahweh to punish them so severely that other people were horrified when they heard of what he had done. ⁸ Do not be stubborn as our ancestors were. Do what Yahweh desires. Come to Jerusalem to the temple, which he has set apart for his honor forever. Do what pleases Yahweh our God, in order that he will no longer be angry with you. ⁹ If you return to Yahweh, the people who have captured our brothers and sisters and our children will act kindly toward them, and allow them to return to this land. Do not forget that Yahweh our God is kind and merciful. If you return to him, he will no longer reject you.”

ULB:

⁷ Do not be like your ancestors or your brothers, who trespassed against Yahweh, the God of their ancestors, so that he gave them up to destruction, as you see. ⁸ Now do not be stubborn, as your ancestors were; instead, give yourselves to Yahweh and come into his holy place, which he has consecrated forever, and worship Yahweh your God, so that his fierce anger may turn away from you. ⁹ For if you turn back to Yahweh, your brothers and children will find compassion before those who led them away as prisoners, and they will come back into this land. For Yahweh your God, is gracious and merciful, and will not turn his face away from you, if you return to him.”

translationWords:

- brother
- trespass
- holy place, most holy place
- forever
- worship
- compassion, compassionate
- prison, prisoner, imprison
- grace, gracious
- mercy, merciful
- face

translationNotes:

- **he gave them up to destruction** - AT: “he caused them to be destroyed” (See: **Idiom**)
- **give yourselves to Yahweh** - AT: “obey Yahweh” or “dedicate yourselves to Yahweh”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 30:10-12

UDB:

¹⁰ The messengers went to all the cities in the tribes of Ephraim and Manasseh, as far north as the tribe of Zebulun, and gave them this message, but most of the people there scorned them and ridiculed them. ¹¹ But some of the people of the tribes of Asher, Manasseh, and Zebulun acknowledged their sin and went to Jerusalem. ¹² Also in Judah God made the people want together to obey Yahweh, which is what the king and his officials had told them to do in the message that they sent.

ULB:

¹⁰ So the couriers passed from city to city throughout the regions of Ephraim and Manasseh, all the way to Zebulun, but the people laughed at them and mocked them. ¹¹ However, certain men of Asher and Manasseh and of Zebulun humbled themselves and came to Jerusalem. ¹² The hand of God also came on Judah, to give them one heart, to carry out the command of the king and leaders by the word of Yahweh.

translationWords:

- [Zebulun](#)
- [mock, ridicule, scoff at](#)
- [Asher](#)
- [humble, humility](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [heart](#)
- [word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture](#)

translationNotes:

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 30:13-15

UDB:

¹³ So a huge crowd of people gathered in Jerusalem in the second month of the year, to celebrate the Festival of Unleavened Bread. ¹⁴ They removed the altars of Baal in Jerusalem and took away the altars for burning incense to honor other gods; they burned them all in the Kidron Valley.

¹⁵ They slaughtered the Passover lambs on the fourteenth day of that month. The priests and the other descendants of Levi who had not performed the rituals to purify themselves, they were ashamed; and they set about to make themselves qualified for the service to Yahweh, and they brought to the temple animals to be completely burned on the altar in the house of Yahweh.

ULB:

¹³ Many people, a very great assembly, gathered in Jerusalem to celebrate the Festival of Unleavened Bread in the second month. ¹⁴ They rose and took away the altars that were in Jerusalem, and all the altars for incense; they threw them into the brook Kidron. ¹⁵ Then they killed the Passover lambs on the fourteenth day of the second month. The priests and Levites were ashamed, so they consecrated themselves and brought burnt offerings into the house of Yahweh.

translationWords:

- assembly, assemble
- festival
- unleavened bread, Festival of Unleavened Bread
- raise, rise, risen, arise, arose
- incense
- Passover
- lamb, Lamb of God
- biblical time: day
- Levite, Levi
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- consecrate
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- house of God, Yahweh's house

translationNotes:

- **second month** - This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

- **brook Kidron** - This was a small stream of water in the Kidron Valley. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **the fourteenth day of the second month** - This is near the beginning of May on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 30:16-17

UDB:

¹⁶ Then they stood in the places that Moses had written in his law that they should stand in. Then the descendants of Levi gave to the priests bowls containing blood of the animals that were being sacrificed, and the priests sprinkled the altar with some of the blood. ¹⁷ Many people in the crowd had not purified themselves, and therefore they were not able to kill the lambs and dedicate them to Yahweh. So it was necessary for the descendants of Levi to kill the lambs for them.

ULB:

¹⁶ They stood in their place by their divisions, following the directions given in the law of Moses, the man of God. The priests sprinkled the blood that they received from the hand of the Levites. ¹⁷ For there were many in the assembly who had not consecrated themselves. Therefore the Levites slaughtered the Passover lambs for everyone who was not purified and could not consecrate their sacrifice to Yahweh.

translationWords:

- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- God
- blood
- receive
- Levite, Levi
- consecrate
- slaughter
- pure, purify, purification
- lamb, Lamb of God

translationNotes:

- **They stood in their place by their divisions** - AT: "They stood in their appointed places"
- **slaughtered the Passover lambs** - AT: "ritually killed the lambs for Passover"

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 30:18-20

UDB:

¹⁸ Although most of the people who had come from the tribes of Ephraim, Manasseh, and Issachar had not purified themselves, they ate the food of the Passover Festival anyway, ignoring the rules written by Moses. But Hezekiah prayed for them, saying "Yahweh, you always do what is good; I pray that you will forgive everyone ¹⁹ who sincerely wants to honor you, the God whom our ancestors worshiped, even if they have not purified themselves by obeying the sacred laws that you gave to us." ²⁰ And Yahweh heard what Hezekiah prayed; he forgave the people, and did not punish them.

ULB:

¹⁸ For a great many of the people, many of them from Ephraim and Manasseh, Issachar and Zebulun, had not purified themselves, yet they ate the Passover meal, against the written instructions. For Hezekiah had prayed for them, saying, "May the good Yahweh pardon everyone ¹⁹ who sets his heart to seek God, Yahweh, the God of his ancestors, even though he is not purified by the purification standards of the holy place." ²⁰ So Yahweh listened to Hezekiah and healed the people.

translationWords:

- [Issachar](#)
- [written](#)
- [Hezekiah](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [good, goodness](#)
- [pardon](#)
- [heal, cure](#)

translationNotes:

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 30:21-22

UDB:

²¹ The Israelite people who were there in Jerusalem celebrated the Festival of Unleavened Bread for seven days. They rejoiced greatly as they celebrated, while the priests and other descendants of Levi sang to Yahweh every day and played musical instruments to praise God.

²² Hezekiah thanked all the descendants of Levi for doing this work for Yahweh, and for very skillfully leading the people who were worshiping. For those seven days the people ate the Passover food and brought offerings to maintain fellowship with Yahweh and praised Yahweh, the God whom their ancestors had worshiped.

ULB:

²¹ The people of Israel who were present in Jerusalem kept the Festival of Unleavened Bread for seven days with great joy. The Levites and the priests praised Yahweh day after day, singing with loud instruments to Yahweh. ²² Hezekiah spoke encouragingly to all the Levites who understood the service of Yahweh. So they ate throughout the festival for the seven days, offering sacrifices of fellowship offerings, and making confession to Yahweh, the God of their ancestors.

translationWords:

- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [joy, joyful](#)
- [praise](#)
- [serve, service](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [fellowship offering](#)
- [confess, confession](#)

translationNotes:

- **instruments** - This is a reference to musical instruments.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 30:23-24

UDB:

²³ Then the whole group decided to celebrate for seven more days, so they did: they celebrated joyfully for seven .more days. ²⁴ King Hezekiah provided one thousand bulls and seven thousand sheep to be slaughtered for the people to eat during the festival, and the officials also gave them one thousand bulls and ten thousand sheep and goats. Many priests set themselves apart for serving Yahweh and to honor him, at this festival.

ULB:

²³ The whole assembly then decided to celebrate for another seven days, and they did so with joy. ²⁴ For Hezekiah king of Judah gave the assembly one thousand bulls and seven thousand sheep as an offering; and the leaders gave to the assembly one thousand bulls and ten thousand sheep and goats. A large number of priests consecrated themselves.

translationWords:

- [king](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [cow, calf, bull, cattle](#)
- [sheep, ram, ewe](#)
- [goat, kid](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)

translationNotes:

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 30:25-27

UDB:

²⁵ All the people of Judah rejoiced, including the priests and other descendants of Levi and all the people from Israel who had come, and including some from other countries who were living in Israel and some from other countries who were living in Judah. ²⁶ Everyone in Jerusalem was very joyful, because nothing like this had happened in Jerusalem since the time when David's son Solomon was the king of Israel. ²⁷ The priests and the other descendants of Levi stood up to bless the people, and God heard them, because their prayers reached up to heaven, the holy place where God lives.

ULB:

²⁵ All the assembly of Judah, with the priests and the Levites, and all the people who came together from Israel, as well as the foreigners who came from the land of Israel and those who lived in Judah—they all rejoiced. ²⁶ So there was great joy in Jerusalem, for since the time of Solomon son of David, king of Israel, there had not been anything like it in Jerusalem. ²⁷ Then the priests, the Levites, rose and blessed the people. Their voice was heard, and their prayer went up to heaven, the holy place where God lives.

translationWords:

- [foreigner, foreign, alien](#)
- [rejoice](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [David](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [holy place, most holy place](#)

translationNotes:

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 31 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of King Hezekiah continues in this chapter.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Idiom

To express Hezekiah's desire to please God, the author uses two idioms "to seek God" and "with all his heart." This means that he really wanted to do what God wanted. (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 31:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 31:1

UDB:

¹ After the festival ended, the Israelites who were there went to all the cities in Judah and smashed the stones for worshipping idols, and cut down the poles for worshipping the goddess Asherah. They destroyed the high places where idols were worshiped, and the altars of Baal throughout the tribes of Judah and Benjamin, and also in the tribes of Ephraim and Manasseh. After destroying all of them, they returned to their own cities and towns.

ULB:

31 ¹ Now when all this was finished, all the people of Israel who were there went out to the cities of Judah and broke to pieces the stone pillars and they cut down the Asherah poles, and they broke down the high places and the altars in all of Judah and Benjamin, and in Ephraim and Manasseh, until they had destroyed them all. Then all the people of Israel returned, every one to his own possession and his own city.

translationWords:

- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [pillar, column](#)
- [Asherah, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth](#)
- [high places](#)
- [altar](#)
- [Benjamin](#)
- [Ephraim](#)
- [Manasseh](#)

translationNotes:

- **all the people of Israel returned** - It is possible to take this as [Hyperbole](#). AT: “almost all of Israel””

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 31:2-3

UDB:

² Hezekiah divided the priests and other descendants of Levi into groups. He appointed some of the groups to offer sacrifices that would be completely burned on the altar and offerings to maintain fellowship with Yahweh. He appointed some groups to do other work at the temple: Some to lead the people in their worship, some to thank Yahweh, and some to sing songs to praise Yahweh at the gates of the temple. ³ The king contributed some of his own funds to buy animals that would be sacrificed in the morning and in the evening of each day, and on the Sabbath days, to celebrate the new moons, and during the other feasts, according to what was written in the laws that Yahweh gave to Moses.

ULB:

² Hezekiah assigned the divisions of the priests and the Levites organized by their divisions, each man assigned to his work, both the priests and the Levites. He assigned them to make the burnt offerings and fellowship offerings, to serve, to give thanks, and to praise at the gates of Yahweh's temple. ³ He also assigned the king's portion for the burnt offerings from his own possessions, that is, for the morning and evening burnt offerings, and the burnt offerings for the Sabbath days, the new moons, and the fixed festivals, as it was written in the law of Yahweh.

translationWords:

- Hezekiah
- priest, priesthood
- works, deeds, work, acts
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- fellowship offering
- serve, service
- gate, gate bar
- temple
- possess, possession
- Sabbath
- written
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh

translationNotes:

- **assigned the king's portion for the burnt offerings from his own possessions** - Hezekiah took the meat and grain used for the burnt offerings out of his own possessions.
- **new moons** - This was a festival coinciding with the movement of the moon.
- **the fixed festivals** - This references festivals which occur on specific dates.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 31:4-5

UDB:

⁴ Hezekiah told the people living in Jerusalem to give to the priests and the other descendants of Levi the portions of meat that should be given to them, in order that they could devote all their time to obeying the laws of Yahweh. ⁵ As soon as he told that to them, they generously gave the first part of their harvest of grain, and the first part of the new wine that they produced, and olive oil and honey, and of the crops that grew in their fields. They brought to the temple a tenth of all their crops.

ULB:

⁴ Moreover, he commanded the people who lived in Jerusalem to give the portion for the priests and the Levites, so that they might concentrate on obeying the law of Yahweh. ⁵ As soon as the command was sent out, the people of Israel generously gave the firstfruits of grain, new wine, oil, honey, and from all their harvest of the field. They brought in a tithe of everything; which was a great quantity.

translationWords:

- [command, to command, commandment](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [obey, obedient, obedience](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [firstfruits](#)
- [grain](#)
- [wine, wineskin, new wine](#)
- [oil](#)
- [honey, honeycomb](#)
- [harvest](#)
- [tenth, tithe](#)

translationNotes:

- **a tithe of everything** - “a tenth of all their crops”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 31:6-8

UDB:

⁶ The men of Israel and Judah who were living in various cities in Judah also brought a tenth of their cattle and sheep and goats, and a tenth of other things that they had set them apart for the honor of Yahweh their God, and they piled up all those things in heaps. ⁷ They started to do that in the third month and finished doing it in the seventh month. ⁸ When Hezekiah and his officials saw the heaps, they praised Yahweh and requested God to bless the people.

ULB:

⁶ The people of Israel and Judah who lived in the cities of Judah also brought in the tithe of cattle and sheep, and the tithe of the holy things that were set apart to Yahweh their God, and they piled them up in heaps. ⁷ It was in the third month when they began piling up their contribution in heaps, and they finished in the seventh month. ⁸ When Hezekiah and the leaders came and saw the heaps, they blessed Yahweh and his people Israel.

translationWords:

- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- tenth, tithe
- ox, oxen
- sheep, ram, ewe
- God
- bless, blessed, blessing
- people of God, my people

translationNotes:

- **third month** - This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the harvest season and the beginning of the dry season. It is during the last part of May and the first part of June on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **seventh month** - This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the early rain season, which would soften the land for sowing. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31 General Notes](#)

- **2 Chronicles 31 Translation Questions**

2 Chronicles 31:9-10

UDB:

⁹ But Hezekiah asked the priests and other descendants of Levi, “What are these heaps of things?”

¹⁰ Then Azariah the high priest, a descendant of Zadok, replied, “Since the time that the people started to bring their offerings to the temple, we have had even more food than we need. This has happened because Yahweh has greatly blessed our fellow Israelites, with the result that all this is left over after we priests and other descendants of Levi took all that we need!”

ULB:

⁹ Then Hezekiah questioned the priests and the Levites about the heaps. ¹⁰ Azariah, the chief priest, of the house of Zadok, answered him and said, “Since the people began to bring the offerings into the house of Yahweh, we have eaten and had enough, and have plenty left over, for Yahweh has blessed his people. What was left over is this large amount here.”

translationWords:

- [Azariah](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [house](#)
- [Zadok](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh’s house](#)

translationNotes:

- **What was left over is this large amount here** - The chief priest would have been pointing to a large pile.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 31:11-13

UDB:

¹¹ Then Hezekiah ordered that they should prepare storerooms at the temple to hold these supplies.

¹² Then they brought into the storerooms all the tithes and offerings and things and the things dedicated to Yahweh which the people had brought. One of the descendants of Levi whose name was Conaniah was in charge of those things, and his younger brother Shimei was his assistant.

¹³ Those two men supervised Jehiel, Azaziah, Nahath, Asahel, Jerimoth, Jozabad, Eliel, Ismakiah, Mahath and Benaiah while they did the work. They were appointed by King Hezekiah; Azariah was in charge of everything that was done in the temple.

ULB:

¹¹ Then Hezekiah commanded storerooms to be prepared in the house of Yahweh, and they prepared them. ¹² Then they faithfully brought in the offerings, tithes and the things that belong to Yahweh. Conaniah, the Levite, was the manager in charge of them, and Shimei, his brother, was second to him. ¹³ Jehiel, Azaziah, Nahath, Asahel, Jerimoth, Jozabad, Eliel, Ismachiah, Mahath, and Benaiah were managers under the hand of Conaniah and Shimei his brother, by appointment of Hezekiah, the king, and Azariah, the official over the house of God.

translationWords:

- [command, to command, commandment](#)
- [faithful, faithfulness](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [storehouse](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [king](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)

translationNotes:

- **Conaniah, the Levite, was the manager in charge of them, and Shimei, his brother, was second to him. Jehiel, Azaziah, Nahath, Asahel, Jerimoth, Jozabad, Eliel, Ismachiah, Mahath, and Benaiah** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31 General Notes](#)

- 2 Chronicles 31 Translation Questions

2 Chronicles 31:14-15

UDB:

¹⁴ Kore son of Imnah, another descendant of Levi, who guarded the east gate of the temple, was in charge of the offerings to God that were made voluntarily. He distributed to the priests and other descendants of Levi the offerings and other things that were dedicated to Yahweh. ¹⁵ Eden, Miniamin, Jeshua, Shemaiah, Amariah and Shecaniah faithfully assisted him in the towns where the priests lived. They distributed those things to the groups of their fellow priests; they distributed them to everyone, including those who were young and those who were old.

ULB:

¹⁴ Kore son of Imnah the Levite, the porter at the east gate, was over the free will offerings of God, in charge of distributing the offerings to Yahweh and the most holy offerings. ¹⁵ Under him were Eden, Miniamin, Jeshua, Shemaiah, Amariah, and Shecaniah, in the cities of the priests. They filled offices of trust, in order to give these offerings to their brothers division by division, to both the important and the unimportant.

translationWords:

- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [freewill offering](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness](#)

translationNotes:

- **Kore son of Imnah ... Eden, Miniamin, Jeshua, Shemaiah, Amariah, and Shecaniah** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Under him** - “under his authority” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **both the important and the unimportant** - “everyone” (See: [Merism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 31:16

UDB:

¹⁶ They also distributed things to the males who were at least three years old, those whose names were on the scrolls where lists of family names were written. They were males who were allowed to enter the temple to perform their tasks each day, the tasks that each group had been assigned to do.

ULB:

¹⁶ They also gave to those males three years old and up, who were listed in the records of their ancestors who entered the house of Yahweh, as required by the daily schedule, to do the work in their offices and their divisions.[1]Instead of *males three years old and up* , some modern versions have *males thirty years old and up* .

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)

translationNotes:

- **three years old and up** - AT: “three years old and older”
- **as required by the daily schedule** - AT: “as is required every day”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 31:17-19

UDB:

¹⁷ The names of the priests were on the scrolls where their families' names were written. They also distributed things to groups of descendants of Levi, those who were at least twenty years old. ¹⁸ They included all their little children and wives and other sons and daughters whose names were on the scrolls where the family names were written, because they also faithfully had set themselves apart for the honor of Yahweh and his requirements for holiness.

¹⁹ Hezekiah also appointed other men to distribute portions of those offerings to the priests and other descendants of Levi who were living in the pasturelands around the towns of Judah. But they gave things only to those who were descendants of Aaron the first high priest, whose names were on the scrolls containing the names of their families.

ULB:

¹⁷ They distributed to the priests according to the records of their ancestors, and the same to the Levites twenty years old and more, according to their offices and their divisions. ¹⁸ They included all their little ones, their wives, their sons, and their daughters, through the whole community, for they were faithful in keeping themselves holy. ¹⁹ For the priests, the descendants of Aaron, who were in the fields of the villages belonging to their cities, or in every city, there were men assigned by name to give portions to all the males among the priests, and to all who were listed in the records of their ancestors as being among the Levites.

translationWords:

- [house](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)
- [descendant, descended from](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [name](#)

translationNotes:

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 31:20-21

UDB:

²⁰ That is what Hezekiah did throughout Judah. He always faithfully did things that Yahweh his God says are right and good. ²¹ In everything that he did for the worship in the temple, and as he obeyed God's laws and commands, he tried to find out what his God wanted, and he worked energetically. So he was successful.

ULB:

²⁰ Hezekiah did this throughout all Judah. He accomplished what was good, right, and faithful before Yahweh, his God. ²¹ In every project that he began in the service of the house of God, the law, and the commandments, to seek his God, he performed it with all his heart, and he succeeded.

translationWords:

- [Hezekiah](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [good, goodness](#)
- [faithful, faithfulness](#)
- [serve, service](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)
- [law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh](#)
- [command, to command, commandment](#)
- [heart](#)

translationNotes:

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 32 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of King Hezekiah is completed in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Trust in Yahweh

Because Hezekiah trusted God, God rescued Jerusalem from the attacked of the Assyrian army and healed Hezekiah when he was very sick. (See: [trust](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 32:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 32:1

UDB:

¹ After King Hezekiah had obeyed Yahweh's instructions and had done all those things, King Sennacherib of Assyria came with his army and invaded Judah. He commanded his soldiers to surround the cities that had walls around them, thinking that they would break through those walls and conquer those cities.

ULB:

32 ¹ After these things and these acts of faithfulness, Sennacherib, king of Assyria, came and entered Judah. He camped to attack the fortified cities, which he intended to capture for himself.

translationWords:

- [faithful, faithfulness](#)
- [Sennacherib](#)
- [king](#)
- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)

translationNotes:

- **these acts of faithfulness** - These acts were done by Hezekiah.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 32:2-4

UDB:

² When Hezekiah saw that Sennacherib had come with his army and that they intended to attack Jerusalem, **3-4** he consulted with his officials and army leaders. They said to themselves, “Why should allow the king of Assyria and his army to come and find plenty of water to drink?” So they decided to stop the water from flowing outside the city. A large group of men gathered together and blocked all the springs and the stream that flowed through that area.

ULB:

² When Hezekiah saw that Sennacherib had come and that he intended to fight against Jerusalem, ³ he consulted with his leaders and his powerful men to stop up the waters of the springs that were outside the city; they helped him do so. ⁴ So many people gathered together and stopped up all the springs and the stream that was flowing through the middle of the land. They said, “Why should the kings of Assyria come and find a lot of water?”

translationWords:

- [power, powers](#)
- [water, waters](#)

translationNotes:

- **to stop up the waters of the springs that were outside the city** - They closed the springs that were outside the city so that people did not have access to water.
- **Why should the kings of Assyria come and find a lot of water?** - The kings of Assyria should not come and find a lot of water. Translators may want to translate “the king of Assyria,” but they should translate “the kings of Assyria,” because there is no support for a textual reading of “the king.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 32:5

UDB:

⁵ Then they worked hard to repair all the sections of the city wall that had been broken, and they built watchtowers on the walls higher. They strengthened the Millo, a massive supporting wall on the east side of the city of David. They also made a large number of weapons and shields.

ULB:

⁵ Hezekiah took courage and built up all the wall that was broken down. He built the towers higher, and also the other wall outside. He also strengthened the Millo in the city of David, and he made large amounts of weapons and shields.[1]Instead of *He built the towers higher*, some ancient and modern versions have, *he built towers on it*, that is, on the wall.

translationWords:

- [city of David](#)

translationNotes:

- **took courage** - See how you translated this in [15:8](#)
- **Hezekiah took courage and built up** - AT: - “Hezekiah encouraged himself and the people to build up” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **the Millo** - This is a part of the wall that gives it strength.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 32:6-8

UDB:

⁶ Hezekiah appointed army commanders, and he gathered them in front of him in the square at one of the city gates, and he encouraged them by saying this to them: ⁷ "Be strong and courageous. Do not be afraid or discouraged because of the king of Assyria and the huge army that is with him, because Yahweh is with us, and his power is greater than their power. ⁸ They have to rely on the power of humans, but we have Yahweh our God to help us and to fight battles for us." So the people became more confident because of what Hezekiah, the king of Judah, said.

ULB:

⁶ He placed military commanders over the people. He gathered them together to him in the broad place at the city gate and spoke encouragingly to them. He said, ⁷ "Be strong and of good courage. Do not be afraid or discouraged because of the king of Assyria and all the army that is with him, for someone is with us who is greater than those with him. ⁸ With him is only an arm of flesh, but with us is Yahweh, our God, to help us, and to fight our battles." Then the people comforted themselves with the words of Hezekiah, king of Judah.

translationWords:

- commander, command
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- flesh
- Yahweh
- word

translationNotes:

- **for someone is with us who is greater than those with him** - AT: "for our God is with us and is more powerful than them" (See: [Euphemism](#))
- **an arm of flesh** - AT: "human power" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 32:9-10

UDB:

⁹ Later, when Sennacherib and all his soldiers were surrounding the city of Lachish, he sent some officers to Jerusalem to give this message to King Hezekiah and to all the people of Judah who were there:

¹⁰ "I am Sennacherib, the great king of Assyria, and this is what I say: While you are staying in Jerusalem, my soldiers are surrounding the city. So what are you depending on to keep you safe?"

ULB:

⁹ After this, Sennacherib, king of Assyria, sent his servants to Jerusalem (now he was in front of Lachish, and all his army was with him), to Hezekiah, king of Judah, and to all of Judah who were in Jerusalem. He said, ¹⁰ "This is what Sennacherib, king of Assyria, says: What are you relying on in order to endure a siege in Jerusalem?"

translationWords:

- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [siege, besiege](#)

translationNotes:

- **Lachish** - This was a city in Judah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **What are you relying on in order to endure a siege in Jerusalem** - AT: "You are not able to endure a siege in Jerusalem." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 32:11-12

UDB:

¹¹ Hezekiah says to you, ‘Yahweh our God will save us from being defeated by the army of you.’ He wants you to die from having no food or water. ¹² Hezekiah is the one who told his men to get rid of that god’s high places on the hills, and his altars in the countryside, saying to you people of Jerusalem and other places in Judah, ‘You must worship at only one altar and burn sacrifices on only that altar.’

ULB:

¹¹ Is not Hezekiah misleading you, that he may give you over to die by famine and by thirst, when he tells you, ‘Yahweh our God will rescue us from the hand of the king of Assyria?’ ¹² Has not this same Hezekiah taken away his high places and his altars and commanded Judah and Jerusalem, ‘On one altar you must worship, and on it you must burn your sacrifices’?

translationWords:

- death, die, dead
- famine
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- altar
- command, to command, commandment
- worship
- sacrifice, offering

translationNotes:

- **Is not Hezekiah misleading you ... when he tells you, ‘Yahweh ... Assyria?’** - AT: “Hezekiah is misleading you ... when he tells you, ‘Yahweh ... Assyria.’” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Has not this same Hezekiah taken away** - AT: “This same Hezekiah has taken away”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 32:13-15

UDB:

13-14 Do you people not know what I and my ancestors have done to all the people groups in other countries? We destroyed them all, and their gods could not save them from me. ¹⁵ So do not allow Hezekiah to deceive you like this. Do not believe what he says, because no god of any nation or kingdom has ever been able to rescue his people from being conquered by my army and the armies of my ancestors. So certainly your god will not be able to rescue you from my power.”

ULB:

¹³ Do you not know what I and my ancestors have done to all the people groups of other lands? Were the gods of the people groups of the lands able in any way to rescue their land from my power? ¹⁴ Among all the gods of those nations that my ancestors completely destroyed, was there any god who could rescue his people out of my hand? Why should your God be able to rescue you from my power? ¹⁵ Now do not let Hezekiah deceive you or persuade you in this way. Do not believe him, for no god of any nation or kingdom has been able to rescue his people out of my hand, or out of the hand of my ancestors. How much less will your God rescue you from my hand?”

translationWords:

- **people group, peoples, the people, a people**
- **false god, foreign god, god, goddess**
- **power, powers**
- **deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive**
- **believe, believe in, belief**
- **nation**
- **kingdom**

translationNotes:

- **Do you not know what ... lands?** - “You know very well what ... lands!” (See **Rhetorical Question**)
- **Were the gods of the people groups of the lands able ... power?** - “The gods of the people groups of the lands were not able ... power!” (See **Rhetorical Question**)
- **Among all the gods ... was there any god who ... hand?** - “There was no god among all the gods ... who ... hand!” (See **Rhetorical Question**)
- **Why should your God be able ... power?** - “There is no reason you God should be able ... power!” (See **Rhetorical Question**)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 32:16-17**UDB:**

¹⁶ Sennacherib's officers said more things to insult Yahweh their God and Hezekiah, who served God well. ¹⁷ King Sennacherib wrote more letters insulting Yahweh, the God whom the Israelites belonged to. He wrote, "No god of any of these nations I have conquered could save his people from me. Similarly, the god of Hezekiah will not save his people from my power."

ULB:

¹⁶ Sennacherib's servants spoke even more against Yahweh God and against his servant Hezekiah. ¹⁷ Sennacherib also wrote letters in order to mock Yahweh, the God of Israel, and to speak against him. He said, "As the gods of the nations of the lands have not rescued their people out of my hand, so the God of Hezekiah will not rescue his people out of my hand."

translationWords:

- [Sennacherib](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [Hezekiah](#)
- [mock, ridicule, scoff at](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)

translationNotes:**Links:**

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 32:18-19

UDB:

¹⁸ Then the officers shouted in the Hebrew language to the people who were on the wall, in order to cause them to be very terrified, thinking that as a result the army of Assyria could capture the city without a battle. ¹⁹ They belittled the God worshiped by the people of Jerusalem like they belittled the gods of the other people groups of the world, gods which indeed were only idols fashioned by craftsmen.

ULB:

¹⁸ They cried out in the language of the Jews to the people of Jerusalem who were on the wall, to frighten them and trouble them, in order that they might capture the city. ¹⁹ They spoke of the God of Jerusalem as they had spoken of the gods of the other peoples of the earth, which are merely the work of men's hands.

translationWords:

- Jew, Jewish, Jews
- Jerusalem
- trouble, troubles, troubled
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- earth, earthly
- works, deeds, work, acts

translationNotes:

- **to frighten them and trouble them** - These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize the intensity of fear. AT: "to make them very afraid." (See: [Doublet](#))
- **They spoke of the God of Jerusalem as they had spoken of the gods of the other peoples of the earth** - AT: "They mocked the God of Jerusalem as they had mocked the gods of the other peoples of the earth" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 32:20-21

UDB:

²⁰ Then King Hezekiah and the prophet Isaiah cried out to God, praying very earnestly about this. ²¹ And that night Yahweh sent an angel who killed all the soldiers of Assyria and their leaders and their officers in the place where the king of Assyria and his army had set up their tents. So the king of Assyria left, and returned to his own country, very disgraced. And one day when he went into the temple of his god, some of his sons struck him with their swords and killed him.

ULB:

²⁰ Hezekiah, the king, and Isaiah son of Amoz, the prophet, prayed because of this matter and he cried out to heaven. ²¹ Yahweh sent an angel, who killed the fighting men, the commanders, and the officers of the king in the camp. So Sennacherib returned shame-faced to his own land. When he had gone into the house of his god, some of his own children killed him there with the sword.

translationWords:

- [Isaiah](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Amoz](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [angel, archangel](#)
- [sword](#)

translationNotes:

- **cried out to heaven** - AT: “pleaded to God”
- **shame-faced** - AT: “embarrassed” or “shamed”
- **the house of his god** - AT: “the temple of his god”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 32:22-23

UDB:

²² That is how Yahweh guided and rescued Hezekiah and the people of Jerusalem from the power of Sennacherib, the king of Assyria, and from the power of all their other enemies. That is how he gave them peace with all the countries near them. ²³ Many people brought offerings for Yahweh to Jerusalem, and also brought valuable gifts for King Hezekiah. And from that time, Hezekiah was highly respected by the people of all the other nations.

ULB:

²² In this way, Yahweh saved Hezekiah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem from the hand of Sennacherib, the king of Assyria, and from the hand of all others, and gave them rest on every side.[1]Instead of *gave them rest on every side*, some ancient and modern versions have *guided them on every side*. The original reading is uncertain. ²³ Many were bringing offerings to Yahweh in Jerusalem, and precious gifts to Hezekiah king of Judah, so that he was lifted up in the eyes of all nations from that time forward.

translationWords:

- [save, safe](#)
- [king](#)
- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire](#)
- [gift](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Hezekiah](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [nation](#)

translationNotes:

- **gave them rest on every side** - Here “rest” means “peace.” AT: “gave them peace with all the neighboring countries” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **in the eyes of all nations** - AT: “so that all the surrounding people-groups knew” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 32:24-26

UDB:

²⁴ About that time, Hezekiah became very ill. He thought that he was about to die. But he prayed to Yahweh, and Yahweh answered him. He performed a miracle and healed Hezekiah. ²⁵ But Hezekiah was very proud, and he did not thank Yahweh for acting kindly toward him. Therefore Yahweh was angry with him and punished him and the people of Jerusalem and other places in Judah. ²⁶ Then Hezekiah said that he was sorry about being proud, and the people of Jerusalem also said that they were sorry for their sins. So Yahweh did not punish them during the remaining years that Hezekiah was their king.

ULB:

²⁴ In those days Hezekiah was sick to the point of dying. He prayed to Yahweh, who spoke to him and gave him a sign that he would be healed. ²⁵ But Hezekiah did not pay back Yahweh for the help given to him, for his heart was lifted up. So anger came on him, and on Judah and Jerusalem. ²⁶ Nevertheless, Hezekiah later humbled himself for the pride of his heart, both he and the inhabitants of Jerusalem, so that Yahweh's anger did not come on them during Hezekiah's days.

translationWords:

- [miracle, wonder, sign](#)
- [heal, cure](#)
- [humble, humility](#)
- [proud, pride, prideful](#)
- [heart](#)

translationNotes:

- **his heart was lifted up** - AT: "he became proud" (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 32:27-29

UDB:

²⁷ Hezekiah became very rich and was greatly honored. His workers made storerooms for his silver and gold, for his very valuable stones, and for spices and shields and other valuable things. ²⁸ His workers also built buildings to store the grain and wine and olive oil that people produced and brought to him. They also made stalls for various kinds of cattle, and pens for his flocks of sheep and goats. ²⁹ They built cities and acquired for the king great many flocks of sheep and goats and herds of cattle, because God had enabled him to become very rich.

ULB:

²⁷ Hezekiah had very many riches and much honor. He provided himself with storerooms for silver, gold, precious stones, and for spices, as well as for shields and for all kinds of valuable objects. ²⁸ He also had storehouses for the harvest of grain, new wine, and oil, and stalls for all kinds of animals. He also had flocks in their pens. ²⁹ In addition, he provided himself with cities and possessions of flocks and herds in abundance, for God had given him very much wealth.[1]Instead of *cities* , some modern versions have *donkeys* , and some other modern versions leave out the word entirely.

translationWords:

- honor, to honor
- silver
- gold
- storehouse
- harvest
- grain
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- oil
- flock, herd
- possess, possession

translationNotes:

- **stalls** - See how you translated this in [9:25](#)
- **pens** - A storage place for small animals.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)

- 2 Chronicles 32 General Notes
- 2 Chronicles 32 Translation Questions

2 Chronicles 32:30-31

UDB:

³⁰ Hezekiah was the one who told his workers to block the place where the water flows out of the spring of Gihon, and to build a tunnel through which the water flowed to the west side of the area called the city of David. He was able to do everything that he wanted to do. ³¹ But when messengers who were sent by the rulers of Babylon came and asked about the miracle that God had performed for him, God allowed Hezekiah to say what he himself wanted to say, in order to test whether or not Hezekiah would admit that God had performed a miracle.

ULB:

³⁰ It was this same Hezekiah who also stopped up the upper spring of the waters of Gihon, and who brought them straight down on the west side of the city of David. Hezekiah succeeded in all his projects. ³¹ However, in the matter of the ambassadors of the princes of Babylon, who sent to him to ask questions of those who knew, about the miraculous sign that had been done in the land, God left him to himself, in order to test him, and to know all that was in his heart.

translationWords:

- water, waters
- city of David
- ambassador, representative
- prince, princess
- Babylon, Babylonian
- sign, proof, reminder
- test
- heart

translationNotes:

- waters of Gihon - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 32:32-33

UDB:

³² A record of the other things that happened while Hezekiah was ruling, and the things that he did to please God, is on the scroll in which is written in the Vision of Isaiah the Prophet. It is also written in the Book of the Kings of Judah and Israel. ³³ When Hezekiah died, he was buried in the tombs where the most respected kings of Judah were buried. Everyone in Jerusalem and other places in Judah honored him. Then his son Manasseh became the king.

ULB:

³² As for the other matters concerning Hezekiah, including his actions of covenant loyalty, you can see that they are written in The Vision of the Prophet Isaiah Son of Amoz, and in The Book of the Kings of Judah and Israel. ³³ Hezekiah slept with his ancestors, and they buried him on the hill of the tombs of the descendants of David. All Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem honored him at his death. Manasseh his son became king in his place.

translationWords:

- [covenant](#)
- [written](#)
- [vision](#)
- [Isaiah](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [bury, buried, burial](#)
- [tomb, grave, burial place](#)
- [descendant, descended from](#)
- [Manasseh](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)

translationNotes:

- **The Vision of the Prophet Isaiah Son of Amoz ... The Book of the Kings of Judah and Israel** - These books no longer exist.
- **slept with his ancestors** - See how you translated this in [9:31](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 33 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

King Manasseh

Manasseh angered God more than any other king of Judah. He worshiped the sun, stars and many foreign gods and even sacrificed his sons to the sun. (See: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 33:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 33:1-3

UDB:

¹ Manasseh was twelve years old when he became the king of Judah, and he ruled from Jerusalem for fifty-five years. ² He did many things that Yahweh said were evil. He imitated the disgusting things that were formerly done by the people groups that Yahweh had expelled from Israel as his people advanced into the land. ³ He commanded his workers to rebuild the high places upon the hills for worshipping idols, the same ones that his father Hezekiah had destroyed. He told them to set up poles to honor the god Baal, and to make poles to honor the goddess Asherah. He also bowed down to worship all the stars.

ULB:

33¹ Manasseh was twelve years old when he began to reign; he reigned fifty-five years in Jerusalem. ² He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh, like the disgusting things of the nations whom Yahweh had driven out before the people of Israel. ³ For he rebuilt the high places that his father Hezekiah had torn down, and he built altars for the Baals, he made Asherah poles, and he bowed down to all the stars of heaven and worshiped them.

translationWords:

- Manasseh
- reign
- Jerusalem
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- Yahweh
- nation
- Hezekiah
- altar
- Baal
- Asherah, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth
- bow, bow down
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- worship

translationNotes:

- **He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh** - See how you translated this in [14:2](#)
- **like the disgusting things of the nations whom Yahweh had driven out before the people of Israel** - AT: "as did the other people groups whom Yahweh caused to be defeated by the people of Israel." (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 33:4-6

UDB:

⁴ He directed his workers to build altars for foreign gods in the temple itself, about which Yahweh had said, “It is here in Jerusalem that I want people to worship me, forever.” ⁵ He directed that altars for worshipping all the stars be built in both of the courtyards outside the temple ⁶ He even sacrificed some of his own sons by burning them in a fire in the Valley of Ben Hinnom. He performed rituals to practice sorcery. He asked fortune tellers for advice. He performed witchcraft. He talked to people who consulted the spirits of people who had died to find out what would happen in the future. He did many things that Yahweh says are very evil, things that caused Yahweh to become very angry.

ULB:

⁴ Manasseh built pagan altars in the house of Yahweh, although Yahweh had commanded, “It is in Jerusalem that my name will be placed forever.” ⁵ He built altars for all the stars of heaven in the two courtyards of the house of Yahweh. ⁶ In the Valley of Ben Hinnom he put his sons into the fire. He performed soothsaying and sorcery; he read omens; and he consulted with those who talked with the dead and with those who talked with spirits. He practiced much evil in the sight of Yahweh and he provoked God to anger.

translationWords:

- pagan
- altar
- house of God, Yahweh’s house
- name
- command, to command, commandment
- forever
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- courtyard, court
- sorcery, sorcerer, witchcraft
- spirit, spiritual
- angry, anger

translationNotes:

- **my name will be placed** - AT: “I will make myself known to people” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **he put his sons into the fire** - This refers to the practice of burning children alive as sacrifices to idols. (See: [Idiom](#))
- **Valley of Ben Hinnom** - A place near Jerusalem also known as Gehenna.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 33:7-9

UDB:

⁷ Manasseh took the carved idol that his workers had made and put it in the temple. That is the temple concerning which God had said to David and to his son Solomon, "My temple will be here in Jerusalem, the city that I have chosen where I want people to worship me, forever. ⁸ If they will obey all the laws and decrees and regulations that I told Moses to give to them, I will not again force the Israelite people to leave this land that I gave to their ancestors." ⁹ But Manasseh led the people of Jerusalem and other places in Judah to do things that are wrong, with the result that they did more evil than had been done by the people in the people groups that Yahweh had driven out as the Israelite people advanced through the land.

ULB:

⁷ The carved figure of Asherah that he had made, he placed it in the house of God. It was about this house that God had spoken to David and Solomon his son; he had said, "It is in this house and in Jerusalem, which I have chosen from all the tribes of Israel, that I will put my name forever. ⁸ I will not move the people of Israel any more out of the land that I assigned to their ancestors, if they will only be careful to keep all that I have commanded them, following all the law, statutes, and decrees which I gave them through Moses." ⁹ Manasseh led Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem to do evil even more than the nations that Yahweh had destroyed before the people of Israel.

translationWords:

- image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure
- house of God, Yahweh's house
- David
- Solomon
- Jerusalem
- chosen one, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, the elect
- tribe
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- forever
- command, to command, commandment
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- statute, statutes
- decree
- Moses

translationNotes:

- **Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem** - AT: “the people of Judah and Jerusalem” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 33:10-11

UDB:

¹⁰ Yahweh spoke to Manasseh and the people of Judah, but they paid no attention. ¹¹ So Yahweh caused the army commanders of Assyria and their soldiers to come to Jerusalem, and they captured Manasseh. They put a hook in his nose, put bronze chains on his feet, and took him to Babylon.

ULB:

¹⁰ Yahweh spoke to Manasseh, and to his people, but they paid no attention. ¹¹ So Yahweh brought on them the commanders of the army of the king of Assyria, who took Manasseh in chains, bound him with fetters, and took him off to Babylon.

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [commander, command](#)
- [king](#)
- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonian](#)

translationNotes:

- **brought on them** - AT: “brought about an attack on them by” (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **took Manasseh in chains, bound him with fetters, and took him off to Babylon.** - AT: “siezed Manasseh and took him as a prisoner to Babylon.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 33:12-13

UDB:

¹² There, while he was suffering, he humbled himself greatly in the presence of Yahweh, the God whom his ancestors worshiped, and pleaded with Yahweh to help him. ¹³ When he prayed, Yahweh heard him and pitied him. So he allowed him to return to Jerusalem and to rule his kingdom again. Then Manasseh realized that Yahweh is God, who can do anything.

ULB:

¹² When Manasseh was in distress, he implored Yahweh, his God, and humbled himself greatly before the God of his ancestors. ¹³ He prayed to him; and God was begged by him, and God heard his begging and brought him back to Jerusalem, into his kingship. Then Manasseh knew that Yahweh was God.

translationWords:

- [Manasseh](#)
- [humble, humility](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [beg, beggar](#)

translationNotes:

- **He prayed to him; and God was begged by him** - The second phrase intensifies the first phrase and emphasizes the earnestness of Manasseh's prayer. AT: "He prayed to God and begged God." (See: [Doublet](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **into his kingship** - This means "to rule again over the nation."

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 33:14-15

UDB:

¹⁴ Later, Manasseh's workers rebuilt the eastern section of the outer wall around Jerusalem, and they made it higher. That section extended from spring of Gihon north to the Fish Gate, and around the part of the city that they called Ophel Hill. Manasseh also appointed army officers to guard each of the cities in Judah that had walls around them. ¹⁵ Manasseh's workers removed from the temple the idols and the figures of gods of other nations. He also told them to remove the altars that they had previously built on Mount Zion and in other places in Jerusalem. He had all those things thrown out of the city.

ULB:

¹⁴ After this, Manasseh built an outer wall to the city of David, on the west side of Gihon, in the valley, to the entrance at the Fish Gate. He surrounded the hill of Ophel with it and raised the wall up to a very great height. He put courageous commanders in all the fortified cities of Judah. ¹⁵ He took away the foreign gods, the idol out of the house of Yahweh, and all the altars that he had built on the mount of the house of Yahweh and in Jerusalem, and threw them out of the city.

translationWords:

- [city of David](#)
- [idol, idolatrous](#)
- [altar](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **the foreign gods** - AT: "the false gods from other countries"

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 33:16-17

UDB:

¹⁶ Then he told them to repair the altar of Yahweh, and he offered sacrifices to restore fellowship with Yahweh and to thank him. And he told the people of Judah that they must worship only Yahweh. ¹⁷ The people continued to offer sacrifices at the high places on the hills, but only to Yahweh their God.

ULB:

¹⁶ He rebuilt the altar of Yahweh and offered on it sacrifices of fellowship offerings and thank offerings; he commanded Judah to serve Yahweh, the God of Israel. ¹⁷ However, the people still sacrificed at the high places, but only to Yahweh, their God.

translationWords:

- altar
- fellowship offering
- serve, service

translationNotes:

- **he commanded Judah** - AT: "he commanded the people of Judah" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 33:18-20

UDB:

¹⁸ The other things that happened while Manasseh was ruling, including his prayer to God and the messages from Yahweh that the prophets spoke to him, are written in the Book of the Kings of Israel. ¹⁹ What Manasseh prayed and how God pitied him because of what he pleaded to God for—also his sins and ways in which he disobeyed God—also the list of places where he built the houses on the hills for idol worship and set up poles to honor the goddess Asherah and other idols before he humbled himself—these are all written in what the prophets wrote. ²⁰ Manasseh died and was buried in his palace. Then his son Amon became the king of Judah.

ULB:

¹⁸ As to the other matters concerning Manasseh, his prayer to his God, and the words of the seers who spoke to him in the name of Yahweh, the God of Israel, behold, they are written among the deeds of the kings of Israel. ¹⁹ In that account there is history of his prayer, and how God was moved by it. There is also an account of all his sin and his trespasses, and the places where he had built high places and set up the Asherah poles and the carved figures, before he humbled himself—they are written about in the Chronicles of the Seers.[1]Some modern versions have *the Chronicles of Hozai* , which is the reading of the original text. But many modern versions correct it to read *the Chronicles of the Seers* . Also, a few modern versions have *the Chronicles of his seers* . ²⁰ So Manasseh slept with his ancestors, and they buried him in his own house. Amon, his son, became king in his place.

translationWords:

- pray, prayer
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- king
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- trespass
- humble, humility
- chronicles

translationNotes:

- **written among the deeds of the kings of Israel** - This in account of the history of Israel that no longer exists.
- **the Chronicles of the Seers** - This is a book that no longer exists.
- **So Manasseh slept with his ancestors, and they buried him** - AT: “So Manasseh died, and his family buried him” (See: [Euphemism](#))
- **Amon** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 33:21-23

UDB:

²¹ Amon was twenty-two years old when he became king, and he ruled in Jerusalem for two years. ²² He did many things that Yahweh said were evil, as his father Manasseh had done. Amon worshiped all the idols that Manasseh's workers had made. ²³ But he did not humble himself and turn to Yahweh like his father did. So he became more sinful than his father had been.

ULB:

²¹ Amon was twenty-two years old when he began to reign; he reigned two years in Jerusalem. ²² He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh, as Manasseh, his father, had done. Amon sacrificed to all the carved figures that Manasseh his father had made, and he worshiped them. ²³ He did not humble himself before Yahweh, as Manasseh his father had done. Instead, this same Amon trespassed more and more.

translationWords:

- [reign](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure](#)

translationNotes:

- **He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh** - See how you translated this in [14:2](#)
- **this same Amon trespassed more and more** - AT: "Amon sinned more"

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 33:24-25

UDB:

²⁴ Then Amon's officials made plans to kill him. They assassinated him in his palace. ²⁵ But then the people of Judah killed all those who had assassinated Amon, and they appointed his son Josiah to be their king.

ULB:

²⁴ His servants conspired against him and put him to death in his own house. ²⁵ But the people of the land killed all those who had conspired against King Amon, and they made Josiah, his son, king in his place.

translationWords:

- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [Josiah](#)

translationNotes:

- **conspired** - AT: "planned in secret"

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 34 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter is the beginning of the story of King Josiah. (2 Chronicles 34-35)

Special concepts in this chapter

Returning the people to Yahweh

Josiah worshiped Yahweh and cleaned out the idols and shrines from Judah. The people returned to worship Yahweh again. (See: [clean](#), [cleanse](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 34:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 34:1-3

UDB:

¹ Josiah was eight years old when he became the king of Judah. He ruled from Jerusalem for thirty-one years. ² He did things that were pleasing to Yahweh, and conducted his life like his ancestor King David had done. He fully obeyed all the laws of God.

³ When he had been ruling for almost eight years, while he was still a boy, he began to worship God as his ancestor King David had done. Four years later, he began to get rid of all the houses that were built on the hills for idol worship, and they were all around Jerusalem and in other places in Judah. They also took down the poles that were to give honor the goddess Asherah and the carved idols and metal statues of gods.

ULB:

34 ¹ Josiah was eight years old when he began to reign; he reigned thirty-one years in Jerusalem. ² He did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh, and walked in the ways of David his ancestor, and did not turn away either to the right or to the left. ³ For in the eighth year of his reign, while he was still young, he began to seek after the God of David, his ancestor. In the twelfth year, he began to cleanse Judah and Jerusalem from the high places, the Asherah poles, and the carved figures and the cast metal figures.

translationWords:

- Josiah
- Yahweh
- walk
- David
- seek, sought
- God
- clean, cleanse
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- Jerusalem
- Asherah, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth
- image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure

translationNotes:

- **He did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh** - See how you translated this in [14:2](#)
- **did not turn away either to the right or to the left** - AT: “did not hesitate to obey God in any way whatsoever,” or “he obeyed all of God’s commands” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Litotes](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 34:4-5

UDB:

⁴ While he directed them, his workers tore down the altars where people worshiped Baal. They smashed the altars that were near those altars, where people burned incense. They smashed the poles to honor the goddess Asherah and the idols carved from wood or stone and metal statues. They smashed them to bits and scattered the bits over the graves of those who had offered sacrifices to them. ⁵ They burned the bones of the priests who had offered sacrifices; they burned them on their own altars. In that way Josiah caused Jerusalem and other places in Judah to be acceptable places to worship Yahweh again.

ULB:

⁴ The people broke down the altars of the Baals in his presence; he cut apart the incense altars that were above them. He broke the Asherah poles and the carved figures, and the cast metal figures in pieces until they were dust. He scattered the dust on the graves of those who had sacrificed to them. ⁵ He burned the bones of their priests on their altars. In this way, he cleansed Judah and Jerusalem.

translationWords:

- altar
- Baal
- incense
- tomb, grave, burial place
- sacrifice, offering
- priest, priesthood

translationNotes:

- **until they were dust** - AT: "until they were very small pieces that could be carried away by the wind"

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 34:6-7

UDB:

⁶ In the towns in the tribes of Manasseh, Ephraim, and Simeon, and as far north as the tribe of Naphtali and in the ruins around all those towns, ⁷ Josiah's workers tore down the pagan altars and the poles to honor the goddess Asherah, and crushed the idols to powder, idols that craftsmen had carved. They also smashed to pieces all the altars for burning incense throughout Israel. Then Josiah returned to Jerusalem.

ULB:

⁶ He did the same in the cities of Manasseh, Ephraim, and Simeon, all the way to Naphtali, and in the ruins that surrounded them. ⁷ He broke down the altars, beat the Asherah poles and the carved images into powder, and cut apart all the incense altars throughout all the land of Israel; then he returned to Jerusalem.

translationWords:

- [Manasseh](#)
- [Ephraim](#)
- [Simeon](#)
- [Naphtali](#)
- [ruin, ruins](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)

translationNotes:

- **into powder** - AT: "were completely destroyed" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 34:8-9

UDB:

⁸ When Josiah had been ruling for almost eighteen years, he decided to do something else to cause the land and the temple to be acceptable places to worship Yahweh. So he sent Shaphan son of Azaliah and Maaseiah the governor of the city and Joah son of Joahaz, the secretary, to repair the temple of Yahweh.

⁹ They went to Hilkiyah the high priest and gave him the money that had been brought to the temple. That was the money that the descendants of Levi who guarded the doors of the temple had collected from the people of the tribes of Manasseh and Ephraim and other places in Israel, and also from all the people in Jerusalem and other places in the tribes of Judah and Benjamin—all the people of the land who survived.

ULB:

⁸ Now in the eighteenth year of his reign, after Josiah had cleansed the land and the temple, he sent Shaphan son of Azaliah, Maaseiah, the governor of the city, and Joah son of Joahaz the secretary, to repair the house of Yahweh his God. ⁹ They went to Hilkiyah, the high priest, and entrusted to him the money that had been brought into the house of God, that the Levites, the guards of the doors, had gathered from Manasseh and Ephraim, from all the remnant of Israel, from all Judah and Benjamin, and from the inhabitants of Jerusalem.

translationWords:

- Josiah
- temple
- high priest
- house of God, Yahweh's house
- Levite, Levi
- remnant
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- Benjamin

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **entrusted to him** - “gave to him the responsibility of using the money”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 34:10-11

UDB:

¹⁰ Then Hilkiah gave some of the money to the men who had been appointed to supervise the work of repairing the temple. The supervisors paid the men who did the repair work. ¹¹ They also gave some of the money to the carpenters and builders to buy the cut stones and the timber for the joists and the beams for the buildings that the kings of Judah had allowed to decay.

ULB:

¹⁰ They entrusted the money to the men who supervised the work on the temple of Yahweh. These men paid the workers who repaired and restored the temple. ¹¹ They paid it to the carpenters and builders to buy cut stone and timber for braces, and to make beams for the structures that some kings of Judah had let fall apart.

translationWords:

- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [temple](#)

translationNotes:

- **had let fall apart** - AT: “allowed to rot”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 34:12-13

UDB:

¹² The workers did their work faithfully. Their supervisors were Jahath and Obadiah, who were descendants of Levi's son Merari, and Zechariah and Meshullam, who were descendants of Levi's son Kohath. All the descendants of Levi, who played musical instruments well, ¹³ supervised all the workers as they did their various jobs. Some of the descendants of Levi were secretaries; some kept records, and some guarded the temple gates.

ULB:

¹² The men did the work faithfully. Their supervisors Jahath and Obadiah, the Levites, of the sons of Merari; and Zechariah and Meshullam, from the sons of the Kohathites. Other Levites, all of whom were very good musicians, closely directed the workmen. ¹³ These Levites were in charge of those who carried building material and all other men who worked in any way. There were also Levites who were secretaries, administrators, and gate guards.

translationWords:

- [faithful, faithfulness](#)
- [son, son of](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **These Levites were in charge of those who carried building material and all other men who worked in any way** - AT: "These Levites were in charge of all of the men who did any kind of building work."

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 34:14-16

UDB:

¹⁴ While they were giving to the supervisors the money that had been taken to the temple, Hilkiah the high priest found a scroll on which was written the laws that Yahweh had given to Moses to give to the people. ¹⁵ So Hilkiah said to Shaphan, "I have found in the temple a scroll on which is written the laws that God gave to Moses!" Then Hilkiah gave the scroll to Shaphan.

¹⁶ Shaphan took the scroll to the king and said to him, "Your officials are doing everything that you told them to do.

ULB:

¹⁴ When they brought out the money that was brought into the house of Yahweh, Hilkiah the priest found The Book of the Law of Yahweh that had been given through Moses. ¹⁵ Hilkiah said to Shaphan the scribe, "I have found The Book of the Law in the house of Yahweh." Hilkiah brought the book to Shaphan. ¹⁶ Shaphan took the book to the king, and also reported to him, saying, "Your servants are doing everything that has been entrusted to them.

translationWords:

- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- Moses
- scribe, expert in the Jewish law
- king
- report
- servant, slave, slavery

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **When they brought out the money that was brought into the house of Yahweh** - AT: "When the supervisors were receiving the money in the temple,"
- **everything that has been entrusted to them** - AT: "everything that you gave them the responsibility to do."

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 34:17-19

UDB:

¹⁷ They have taken the money that was in the temple, and they have given it to the men who will supervise the men who will repair the temple.” ¹⁸ Then Shaphan said to the king, “I have also brought to you a scroll that Hilkiyah gave to me.” And Shaphan started to read it to the king.

¹⁹ When the king heard the laws that were written in the scroll, he tore his clothes because he was very upset.

ULB:

¹⁷ They have emptied out the money that was found in the house of Yahweh, and they gave it into the hand of the supervisors and to the workmen.” ¹⁸ Shaphan the scribe told the king, “Hilkiyah the priest has given me a book.” Then Shaphan read in it to the king. ¹⁹ It came about that when the king had heard the words of the law, he tore his clothes.

translationWords:

- [scribe, expert in the Jewish law](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)

translationNotes:

- **They have emptied out** - AT: “They have gathered”
- **It came about that when** - this phrase is a marker; it indicates that what follows is an especially important event in this story. AT: “Now, notice what happens next:”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 34:20-21

UDB:

²⁰ Then he gave these instructions to Hilkiyah, to Shaphan's son Ahikam, to Micah's son Abdon, to Shaphan, and to Asaiah, the king's special advisor: ²¹ "Go and ask Yahweh for me, and for all his people who are still alive in Judah and Israel, about what is written in this scroll that has been found. Because it is clear that Yahweh is very angry with us because our ancestors disobeyed what Yahweh said; they did not obey the laws that are written on this scroll."

ULB:

²⁰ The king commanded Hilkiyah, Ahikam son of Shaphan, Abdon son of Micah, Shaphan the scribe, and Asaiah, his own servant, saying, ²¹ "Go and ask Yahweh's will for me, and for those who are left in Israel and in Judah, because of the words of the book that has been found. For it is great, the anger of Yahweh that has been poured out on us. It is great, because our ancestors have not listened to the words of this book so as to obey all that was written in it." [1] Instead of *that has been poured out on us*, some versions have, *that has been kindled against us*.

translationWords:

- [kingdom of Israel](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [angry, anger](#)
- [obey, obedient, obedience](#)
- [written](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **ask Yahweh's will for me** - AT: "Ask Yahweh what he wants me to do"
- **because of the words of the book** - AT: "according to what is written in the book"
- **For it is great, the anger of Yahweh that has been poured out on us. It is great** - Emotions such as anger are often spoken of in Scripture as if they were liquids. AT: "For Yahweh's anger towards us is great, like water that could totally wash us away." (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 34:22

UDB:

²² So Hilkiah and the others went to consult a woman whose name was Huldah, who was a prophetess who lived in the Second District of Jerusalem. Her husband Shallum son of Tikvah, took care of the robes that were worn in the temple.

ULB:

²² So Hilkiah, and those whom the king had commanded, went to Huldah the prophetess, the wife of Shallum son of Tokhath son of Hasrah, keeper of the wardrobe (she lived in Jerusalem in the Second District), and they spoke with her in this way.

translationWords:

- [command, to command, commandment](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **keeper of the wardrobe** - AT: “who took care of the priestly robes” (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **they spoke with her in this way** - AT: “they had the following conversation with her”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 34:23-25

UDB:

²³ When they told her what the king had said, she said to them, "This is what Yahweh, the God whom we Israelites say we worship, says: 'Go back and tell the king who sent you ²⁴ that this is what Yahweh says: "Listen to this carefully. I am going to bring a disaster on Jerusalem and all the people who live here. I will send on them the curses that were written in the scroll that was read to the king of Judah. ²⁵ I will do that because they have abandoned me, and they burn incense to honor other gods. They have caused me to become very angry because of all the idols that they have made.'"

ULB:

²³ She said to them, "This is what Yahweh, the God of Israel, says: Tell the man who sent you to me, ²⁴ 'This is what Yahweh says: See, I am about to bring disaster on this place and on its inhabitants, all the curses that have been written in the book that they have read before the king of Judah. ²⁵ Because they have forsaken me and have burned incense to other gods, so that they might provoke me to anger with all the deeds they have committed—therefore my anger will be poured out on this place, and it will not be extinguished.'[1] Instead of *will be poured out on this place*, some versions have, *will be kindled against this place*.

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- God
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- curse, cursed
- forsake, forsaken, forsook
- incense
- false god, foreign god, god, goddess

translationNotes:

- **so that they might provoke me to anger with all the deeds they have committed** - "the result is that they have made me extremely angry because of what they have done"
- **provoke me to anger** - "make me angry"
- **therefore my anger will be poured out on this place, and it will not be extinguished** - Emotions such as anger are often spoken of in Scripture as if they were liquids. AT: "therefore it will be like a fire that I pour out on them, and nothing will stop this fire" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 34:26-28

UDB:

²⁶ The king of Judah sent you to inquire what I, Yahweh, want. Go and tell him that this is what I, Yahweh, the God whom you Israelites worship, say about what you read: ²⁷ 'Because you heeded what was written in the scroll, and you humbled yourself when you heard what I said to warn about what would happen to this city and the people who live here, and because you tore your robes and wept in my presence, I have listened to you. ²⁸ So I will allow you to die in peace, without seeing me punish this place and the people living in it.'"

So they took her reply back to the king.

ULB:

²⁶ But to the king of Judah, who sent you to ask Yahweh what he should do, this is what you will say to him, 'Yahweh, the God of Israel says this: About the words that you heard, ²⁷ because your heart was tender, and you humbled yourself before God when you heard his words against this place and its inhabitants, and because you have humbled yourself before me and have torn your clothes and wept before me, I also have listened to you—this is the declaration of Yahweh— ²⁸ see, I will gather you to your ancestors. You will be gathered to your grave in peace, and your eyes will not see any of the disaster I will bring on this place and its inhabitants.'" The men took this message back to the king.

translationWords:

- word
- heart
- humble, humility
- declare, declaration
- peace, peaceful

translationNotes:

- **Yahweh, the God of Israel says this: About the words that you heard, because your heart was tender** - AT: "Yahweh, the God of Israel says this about the words that you have heard, because your heart was soft - willing to change" (See: **Metaphor**)
- **have torn your clothes** - This was a sign of sorrow and repentance.
- **I will gather you to your ancestors. You will be gathered to your grave** - AT: "you will die" (See: **Euphemism**)
- **your eyes will not see** - AT: "you will not experience" (See: **Metonymy**)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 34:29-30

UDB:

²⁹ Then the king summoned all the elders of Jerusalem and other places in Judea. ³⁰ They went up together to the temple with the leaders of Judah and many other people of Jerusalem and the priests and other descendants of Levi, from the least important to the most important ones. And while they listened, the king read to them everything that was in the scroll containing God's laws that had been found in the temple.

ULB:

²⁹ Then the king sent messengers and gathered together all the elders of Judah and Jerusalem. ³⁰ Then the king went up to the house of Yahweh, and all the men of Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem, and the priests, Levites, and all the people, from great to small. He then read in their hearing all the words of the Book of the Covenant that had been found in the house of Yahweh.

translationWords:

- messenger
- elder
- priest, priesthood
- Levite, Levi
- covenant
- house of God, Yahweh's house

translationNotes:

- **all the people, from great to small** - AT: "everyone" (See: [Merism](#))
- **read in their hearing** - AT: "read to them"

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 34:31-32

UDB:

³¹ Then the king stood next to the pillar at the entrance to the temple, where kings stood when they announced something important, and while Yahweh was listening, he repeated his promise to sincerely obey, with his entire inner being, Yahweh and all his commands and regulations and decrees that were written on the scroll.

³² Then the king said that everyone who lived in Jerusalem and from the tribe of Benjamin should promise that they also would obey those laws. And they did that, agreeing that they would obey the agreement that God, whom their ancestors had worshiped, had made with them.

ULB:

³¹ The king stood in his place and made a covenant before Yahweh, to walk after Yahweh, and to keep his commandments, his regulations, and his statutes, with all his heart and all his soul, to obey the words of the covenant that were written in this book. ³² He caused all who were found in Jerusalem and Benjamin to stand by the covenant. The inhabitants of Jerusalem acted in obedience to the covenant of God, the God of their ancestors.

translationWords:

- walk
- command, to command, commandment
- decree
- statute, statutes
- Benjamin
- obey, obedient, obedience

translationNotes:

- **stood in his place** - AT: “stood where he was supposed to stand at the entrance to the temple”
- **with all his heart and all his soul** - Together, these two phrases form an idiomatic expression that refers to a person’s entire being. AT: “with all his being” or “wholeheartedly.” (See: [Doublet](#) and [Idiom](#))
- **all who were found in Jerusalem and Benjamin** - AT: “all who lived in Jerusalem and Benjamin” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **to stand by the covenant** - AT: “to obey the covenant” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)

- 2 Chronicles 34 General Notes
- 2 Chronicles 34 Translation Questions

2 Chronicles 34:33

UDB:

³³ Josiah instructed his workers to remove all the disgusting idols from all the land of the Israelite people, and he commanded that all those from Israel who were there should worship only Yahweh their God. As long as Josiah was alive, the people did what was pleasing to Yahweh, the God whom their ancestors worshiped.

ULB:

³³ Josiah took away all the disgusting things from the lands that belonged to the people of Israel. He made everyone in Israel worship Yahweh, their God. For all of his days, they did not turn away from following Yahweh, the God of their ancestors.

translationWords:

- [Josiah](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)
- [worship](#)
- [turn, turn away, turn back](#)

translationNotes:

- **the disgusting things** - These are the idols that were repulsive to God. (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 35 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This is the end of the story of King Josiah.

Special concepts in this chapter

Passover

Josiah organized a large Passover celebration and people shared their animals with those without animals to sacrifice. The celebration of Passover was a sign of proper worship by the people. (See: [Passover](#) and [sign, proof, reminder](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 35:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 35:1-2

UDB:

¹ Josiah commanded that the people should celebrate the Passover Festival in Jerusalem. So they slaughtered the lambs for the Passover on the 14th day of the first month. ² Josiah assigned to the priests to the tasks that they should perform at the temple, and encouraged them do their work well.

ULB:

35 ¹ Josiah kept a Passover to Yahweh in Jerusalem, and they killed the Passover lambs on the fourteenth day of the first month. ² He placed the priests in their positions and encouraged them in the service of the house of Yahweh.

translationWords:

- [Josiah](#)
- [Passover](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [biblical time: day](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [serve, service](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)

translationNotes:

- **the fourteenth day of the first month** - This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. The fourteenth day is near the beginning of April on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **He placed the priests in their positions** - AT: "He told the priests which jobs to do" (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 35:3-4

UDB:

³ The descendants of Levi were the ones who taught all the Israelite people; they had been set apart for Yahweh. Josiah said to them, "Put the sacred chest in the temple that the workers of David's son King Solomon of Israel built. But carry it on poles; do not carry it on your shoulders. And do well your work for Yahweh your God and for his Israelite people. ⁴ Divide yourselves into your traditional clans, obeying the instructions that King David and his son Solomon wrote.

ULB:

³ He said to the Levites who taught all Israel and who were set apart to Yahweh, "Put the holy ark in the house that Solomon son of David, king of Israel built. Do not carry it around on your shoulders any longer. Now worship Yahweh your God, and serve his people Israel. ⁴ Organize yourselves by the name of your ancestral houses and your divisions, following the written instructions of David, king of Israel, and those of Solomon, his son.

translationWords:

- [Levite, Levi](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [set apart](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)
- [ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of Yahweh](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [David](#)
- [worship](#)
- [people of God, my people](#)
- [name](#)
- [house](#)
- [written](#)

translationNotes:

- **that Solomon son of David, king of Israel built** - AT: "the people built under the leadership of King Solomon" (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **your ancestral houses and your divisions** - AT: "your tribes and families"

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)

- 2 Chronicles 35 General Notes
- 2 Chronicles 35 Translation Questions

2 Chronicles 35:5-6

UDB:

⁵ Then stand in the temple area, with each of you in your own Levite clan, ready to help your fellow Israelites when they bring their offerings to the temple. ⁶ Slaughter the lambs for the Passover. Do this for your fellow Israelites. Perform the rituals to set yourselves apart for God's honor and to serve Yahweh and do his work. Prepare the sacrifices, doing what Yahweh told Moses to tell you that you should do."

ULB:

⁵ Stand in the holy place, taking your position with your divisions within the ancestral houses of your brothers, the descendants of the people, and taking your places with your divisions within the ancestral houses of the Levites. ⁶ Kill the Passover lambs, consecrate yourselves, prepare the lambs for your brothers, to do according to the word of Yahweh that was given by the hand of Moses."

translationWords:

- [holy place, most holy place](#)
- [brother](#)
- [descendant, descended from](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture](#)
- [Moses](#)

translationNotes:

- **Stand in the holy place** - Here "holy place" seems to refer to the general temple area. AT: "take your positions in the temple area."
- **your divisions** - This refers to the assigned work group for each Levite.
- **the ancestral houses** - This refers to the various clans among the Levites. It seems that Levites were assigned to different work groups on the basis of the kind of work assigned to each clan or ancestral house.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 35:7-9

UDB:

⁷ Josiah provided from his own flocks and herds thirty thousand young sheep and goats for the Passover sacrifices. He also provided three thousand bulls from his own herds.

⁸ His officials also voluntarily contributed animals for the people and the priests and the other descendants of Levi. Hilkiyah, Zechariah, and Jehiel, the officials who were in charge of the temple, gave to the priests 2,600 lambs and three hundred cattle to be sacrifices for the Passover. ⁹ Also, Conaniah, along with his younger brothers Shemaiah and Nethanel, and Hashabiah, Jeiel, and Jozabad, the leaders of the descendants of Levi, provided five thousand lambs and five hundred cattle for the other descendants of Levi, to be sacrifices for the Passover.

ULB:

⁷ Josiah gave to all the people thirty thousand lambs and kids from flocks for the Passover offerings to all who were present. He also gave three thousand bulls; these were from the king's possessions.

⁸ His leaders gave a free will offering to the people, priests, and Levites. Hilkiyah, Zechariah, and Jehiel, the officials in charge of the house of God, gave to the priests for the Passover offerings 2,600 small cattle and three hundred oxen. ⁹ Also Conaniah, and Shemaiah and Nethanel, his brothers, and Hashabiah, Jeiel, and Jozabad, the chiefs of the Levites, gave to the Levites for the Passover offerings five thousand small cattle and five hundred oxen.

translationWords:

- **people group, peoples, the people, a people**
- **flock, herd**
- **sacrifice, offering**
- **cow, calf, bull, cattle**
- **possess, possession**
- **freewill offering**
- **house of God, Yahweh's house**
- **ox, oxen**
- **chief**

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [Numbers](#) and [How to Translate Names](#)
- **kids** - This is a baby goat.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 35:10-12

UDB:

¹⁰ Everything for the Passover was arranged: The priests and the other descendants of Levi stood in their places in their groups, as the king had commanded. ¹¹ Then they slaughtered the Passover lambs. The priests sprinkled the blood from the bowls that were handed to them, while the other descendants of Levi removed the skins from the animals. ¹² They set aside the animals to be completely burned on the altar, in order to give them to the various family groups to offer to Yahweh, obeying the instructions that were written in the laws God gave Moses. They did the same thing with the cattle.

ULB:

¹⁰ So the service was prepared, and the priests stood in their places, with the Levites by their divisions, in response to the king's command. ¹¹ They killed the Passover lambs, and the priests sprinkled the blood that they received from the Levites' hand, and the Levites skinned the lambs. ¹² They removed the burnt offerings, in order to distribute them to the divisions of the ancestral houses of the people, to offer them to Yahweh, as it is written in The Book of Moses. They did the same with the bulls.

translationWords:

- serve, service
- priest, priesthood
- king
- command, to command, commandment
- Passover
- lamb, Lamb of God
- blood
- receive
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- Yahweh
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh

translationNotes:

- **the service was prepared** - "they prepared everything to perform the Passover."
- **the blood that they received from the Levites' hand** - "the blood that the Levites gave them"

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 35:13-14

UDB:

¹³ Obeying those regulations, they roasted over the fire the lambs for the Passover. And they boiled the meat of the sacred offerings in pots and kettles and pans, and served the meat immediately to all the people who were there. ¹⁴ After that, they prepared meat for themselves and for the priests, because the priests were busy until nighttime, sacrificing the offerings to be completely burned and burning the fat parts of the offerings. So the descendants of Levi prepared meat for themselves and for the priests, who were descendants of Aaron, the first high priest.

ULB:

¹³ They roasted the Passover lambs with fire following the instructions. As for the consecrated offerings, they boiled them in pots, cauldrons, and pans, and they quickly carried them to all the people. ¹⁴ They later prepared offerings for themselves and for the priests, because the priests, the descendants of Aaron, were occupied in offering the burnt offerings and the fat until nightfall, so the Levites prepared the offerings for themselves and for the priests, the descendants of Aaron.

translationWords:

- [consecrate](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)

translationNotes:

- **They roasted** - AT: "they cooked"
- **they boiled them in pots, cauldrons, and pans** - AT: "they cooked them in water in many different pots"
- **for themselves** - (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 35:15

UDB:

¹⁵ The musicians, who were descendants of Asaph, stood in their places, as had been commanded by King David, Asaph, Heman, and Jeduthun the king's prophet. The men who guarded the gates of the temple did not need to leave their places, because their fellow descendants of Levi prepared food for them to eat.

ULB:

¹⁵ The singers, the descendants of Asaph, were in their place, as directed by David, Asaph, Heman, and Jeduthun the king's seer, and the guards were at every gate. They did not have to leave their post, because their brothers the Levites made preparations for them.

translationWords:

- [Asaph](#)
- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [brother](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **in their place** - See how you translated this in [30:16](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 35:16-17

UDB:

¹⁶ So on that day everything that needed to be done for worshiping Yahweh was done. They celebrated the Passover Festival, and they presented offerings to be completely burned on the altar, which was what Josiah had commanded. ¹⁷ The Israelites who were there celebrated the Passover on that day, and for seven days they celebrated the Festival of Unleavened Bread.

ULB:

¹⁶ So, at that time the entire service of Yahweh was carried out for the celebration of the Passover and to offer burnt offerings on the altar of Yahweh, as King Josiah commanded. ¹⁷ The people of Israel who were present kept the Passover at that time, and then the Festival of Unleavened Bread for seven days.

translationWords:

- altar
- Josiah
- command, to command, commandment
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- festival
- unleavened bread, Festival of Unleavened Bread

translationNotes:

- **the entire service** - Everything associated with the preparation, sacrifice and worship of Yahweh during the passover can be referred to as a worship “service”.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 35:18-19

UDB:

¹⁸ The Passover Festival had not been celebrated like that in Israel since the time that the prophet Samuel lived. And none of the kings of Israel had ever celebrated the Passover like Josiah did, along with the priests, the other descendants of Levi, and all the other people of Judah and Israel who were there with the people who lived in Jerusalem. ¹⁹ They celebrated this Passover Festival when Josiah had been ruling for almost eighteen years.

ULB:

¹⁸ Such a Passover celebration had never been held in Israel from the days of the prophet Samuel, nor had any of the other kings of Israel ever celebrated such a Passover as Josiah did, along with the priests, Levites, and all the people of Judah and Israel who were present, and the inhabitants of Jerusalem. ¹⁹ This Passover was kept in the eighteenth year of the reign of Josiah.

translationWords:

- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Samuel](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)

translationNotes:

- **Israel** - The first use of Israel reference the nation of Israel as a whole, but the second use of Israel refers specifically to the northern tribes of the kingdom of Israel

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 35:20-21

UDB:

²⁰ After Josiah had done all those things to restore the worship at the temple, King Neco of Egypt went with his army to attack the city of Carchemish alongside the Euphrates River, and Josiah marched with his army to fight against them. ²¹ Neco sent some messengers to Josiah, to tell him, “You are the king of Judah, and there is certainly no reason for you to fight me; we are attacking the army of Babylonia. God has told me to hurry. So stop opposing God, who is for me. If you do not stop, God will get rid of you.”

ULB:

²⁰ After all this, after Josiah had set the temple in order, Neco, king of Egypt, went up to fight against Carchemish at the Euphrates River, and Josiah went to fight against him. ²¹ But Neco sent ambassadors to him, saying, “What have I to do with you, king of Judah? I am not coming against you today, but against the house with which I am making war. God has commanded me to hurry, so refrain from interfering with God, who is with me, or he might destroy you.”

translationWords:

- temple
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Euphrates River
- ambassador, representative
- house
- God

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **set the temple in order** - AT: “restored proper worship to the temple”
- **What have I to do with you, king of Judah?** - AT: “You have no reason to attack me, King of Judah.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **I am not coming against you** - AT: “I am not fighting your kingdom.” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **against the house with which I am making war** - AT: “against Babylon, against whom I am making war”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)

- 2 Chronicles 35 General Notes
- 2 Chronicles 35 Translation Questions

2 Chronicles 35:22

UDB:

²² But Josiah would not listen to him. Instead, he disguised himself in order to be able to attack the army of Egypt without anyone recognizing him. He did not pay any attention to what God had told Neco to say. Instead, he and his army went to fight Neco's army at the plain of Megiddo.

ULB:

²² However, Josiah refused to turn away from him. He disguised himself in order to fight with him. He did not listen to the words of Neco that had come from the mouth of God; so he went to fight in the Valley of Megiddo.

translationWords:

- [turn, turn away, turn back](#)
- [word](#)

translationNotes:

- **fight with him** - "fight with the army of Babylon" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **that had come from the mouth of God** - "from God" or "that God had said to him"

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 35:23-24

UDB:

²³ Some archers shot King Josiah. He told his officers, “Take me away from here because I am badly wounded.” ²⁴ So they took him out of his chariot and put him in another chariot that he had brought with him, and they took him to Jerusalem, where he died. He was buried in the tombs where his ancestors had been buried, and all the people of Jerusalem and other places in Judah mourned for him.

ULB:

²³ Archers shot King Josiah, and the king said to his servants, “Take me away, for I am badly wounded.” ²⁴ So his servants took him out of the chariot, and put him in his extra chariot. They took him to Jerusalem, where he died. He was buried in the tombs of his ancestors. All Judah and Jerusalem mourned for Josiah.

translationWords:

- [archer](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [chariot](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [bury, buried, burial](#)
- [tomb, grave, burial place](#)
- [mourn, mourning](#)

translationNotes:

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 35:25

UDB:

²⁵ The prophet Jeremiah composed a song to lament for Josiah, and all the men and women singers in Israel still mourn for Josiah by singing that song. That became a custom in Israel; the words of that song are written in a scroll of funeral songs.

ULB:

²⁵ Jeremiah lamented for Josiah; all the male and female singers lament about Josiah to this day. These songs became customary in Israel; behold, they are written in the songs of lament.

translationWords:

- [Jeremiah](#)
- [lament, lamentation](#)

translationNotes:

- **to this day** - See how you translated this in [5:9](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 35:26-27

UDB:

26-27 A record of the other things that happened while Josiah ruled, from the time he started to rule until he died, including how he faithfully was devoted to honoring God by obeying all that was written in the laws of Yahweh, is written in the Book of the Kings of Israel and Judah.

ULB:

²⁶ As for the other matters concerning Josiah, and his good deeds done in obedience to what is written in the law of Yahweh—²⁷ and his deeds, from beginning to end, are written in The Book of the Kings of Judah and Israel.

translationWords:

- good, goodness
- works, deeds, work, acts
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- kingdom of Israel

translationNotes:

- **from beginning to end** - AT: "all of them" (See: [Merism](#))
- **The Book of the Kings of Judah and Israel** - This is a book that no longer exists.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 36 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This is the end of the story of Judah as an independent country.

Special concepts in this chapter

Punishment

God warned the people through the prophets, that he would punish them if they did not worship Yahweh. The people refused to listen to the prophets or to stop their evil deeds. God finally punished them by letting the Babylonians conquered them. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#) and [works](#), [deeds](#), [work](#), [acts](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 36:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 36:1-2

UDB:

¹ Then the people of Judah chose Josiah's son Jehoahaz and appointed him to be the king in Jerusalem.

² Jehoahaz was twenty-three years old when he became the king, but he ruled from Jerusalem for only three months.

ULB:

¹ Then the people of the land took Jehoahaz son of Josiah, and made him king in his father's place in Jerusalem. ² Jehoahaz was twenty-three years old when he began to reign, and he reigned three months in Jerusalem.

translationWords:

- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [king](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [reign](#)

translationNotes:

- **Jehoahaz** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 36:3-4

UDB:

³ The king of Egypt captured him and prevented him from ruling any longer. He also forced the people of Judah to pay to him a tax of four metric tons of silver and thirty-four kilograms of gold.

⁴ The king of Egypt appointed Jehoahaz's younger brother Eliakim to be the king of Judah. He changed Eliakim's name to Jehoiakim. But Neco seized Jehoahaz and took him to Egypt.

ULB:

³ The king of Egypt removed him at Jerusalem, and fined the land one hundred talents of silver and one talent of gold. ⁴ The king of Egypt made Eliakim, his brother, king over Judah and Jerusalem, and changed his name to Jehoiakim. Then he took Eliakim's brother Joahaz and brought him to Egypt.

translationWords:

- [king](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [silver](#)
- [gold](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [Jehoiakim](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **talents** - (See: [Biblical Money](#))
- **brought him to Egypt** - AT: "took him to Egypt as a prisoner"

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 36:5-7

UDB:

⁵ Jehoiakim was twenty-five years old when he became the king of Judah, and he ruled from Jerusalem for eleven years. He did many things that Yahweh said were evil. ⁶ Then the army of King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon attacked Jehoiakim's army. They captured Jehoiakim, fastened him with bronze chains, and took him to Babylon. ⁷ Nebuchadnezzar's soldiers also took valuable things from the temple. They took them to Babylon and put them in King Nebuchadnezzar's palace there.

ULB:

⁵ Jehoiakim was twenty-five years old when he began to reign, and he reigned eleven years in Jerusalem. He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh his God. ⁶ Then Nebuchadnezzar, king of Babylon, attacked him and bound him in chains to lead him away to Babylon. ⁷ Nebuchadnezzar also carried some of the objects in the house of Yahweh to Babylon, and put them in his palace at Babylon.

translationWords:

- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [God](#)
- [Nebuchadnezzar](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonian](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)

translationNotes:

- **He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh** - See how you translated this in [21:6](#)
- **attacked him** - AT: "attacked Jerusalem" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Nebuchadnezzar also carried** - Nebuchadnezzar's servants carried.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 36:8

UDB:

⁸ A record of the other things that happened while Jehoiakim was ruling, the disgusting things that he did and the evil things that people said that he did, is written in the Book of the Kings of Judah and Israel. After he was taken to Babylon, his son Jehoiachin became the king of Judah.

ULB:

⁸ As for the other matters concerning Jehoiakim, the disgusting things that he did, and what was found against him, behold, they are written in The Book of the Kings of Judah and Israel. Then Jehoiachin, his son, became king in his place.

translationWords:

- [kingdom of Israel](#)
- [Jehoiachin](#)

translationNotes:

- **the disgusting things that he did** - This usually refers to worshiping false gods, which Yahweh hated.
- **what was found against him** - This may be a reference to his character. (See: [Idiom](#))
- **Book of the Kings of Judah and Israel** - See how you translated this in [35:27](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 36:9-10

UDB:

⁹ Jehoiachin was eighteen years old when he became the king of Judah, and he ruled from Jerusalem for only three months and ten days. He did many things that Yahweh said were evil. ¹⁰ During the spring of the next year, King Nebuchadnezzar sent soldiers to bring him to Babylon. They also took to Babylon many valuable things from the temple of Yahweh. Then Nebuchadnezzar appointed Jehoiachin's uncle, Zedekiah, to be the king of Judah.

ULB:

⁹ Jehoiachin was eight years old when he began to reign; he reigned three months and ten days in Jerusalem. He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh. ¹⁰ In the spring, King Nebuchadnezzar sent men and brought him to Babylon, with the valuable things from the house of Yahweh, and made Zedekiah, his relative, king over Judah and Jerusalem.

translationWords:

- [reign](#)
- [Zedekiah](#)

translationNotes:

- **He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh** - See how you translated this in [14:1](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 36:11-12

UDB:

¹¹ Zedekiah was twenty-one years old when he became the king, and he ruled in Jerusalem for eleven years. ¹² He did many things that Yahweh said were evil. He did not humble himself when the prophet Jeremiah spoke to him a message from Yahweh to warn him.

ULB:

¹¹ Zedekiah was twenty-one years old when he began to reign; he reigned eleven years in Jerusalem. ¹² He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh his God. He did not humble himself before Jeremiah the prophet, who spoke from the mouth of Yahweh.

translationWords:

- [humble, humility](#)
- [Jeremiah](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)

translationNotes:

- **He did not humble himself before Jeremiah the prophet** - AT: “He did not humble himself and obey God by listening to Jeremiah the prophet”
- **from the mouth of Yahweh** - “from the words God had given him” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 36:13-14

UDB:

¹³ He would not return to Yahweh, the God that the people of Israel said that they worshiped. Zedekiah also rebelled against King Nebuchadnezzar, who had forced him to solemnly promise using God's name to be loyal to him. Zedekiah became very stubborn. ¹⁴ Furthermore, all the leaders of the priests and also the people of Judah became more wicked again, doing all the disgusting things that the people of the other nations did, and causing the temple in Jerusalem that Yahweh had caused to be holy to become an unacceptable place to worship him.

ULB:

¹³ Zedekiah also rebelled against King Nebuchadnezzar, who had made him swear loyalty to him by God. But Zedekiah stiffened his neck and hardened his heart against turning to Yahweh, the God of Israel. ¹⁴ Moreover, all the leaders of the priests and the people were horribly unfaithful, and they followed the disgusting practices of the nations. They polluted the house of Yahweh which he had consecrated in Jerusalem.

translationWords:

- rebel, rebellious, rebellion
- Nebuchadnezzar
- oath, swear, swear by
- God
- heart
- turn, turn away, turn back
- priest, priesthood
- trespass
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- consecrate

translationNotes:

- **stiffened his neck and hardened his heart** - These two phrases are idiomatic ways to refer to a person's stubbornness. Together they emphasize Zedekiah's rebellion against God. (See: **Doublet** and **Idiom**)
- **disgusting practices** - See how you translated a similar phrase in **15:8**
- **polluted the house of Yahweh** - AT: "they made unholy that which was to be holy"

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 36:15-16

UDB:

¹⁵ Yahweh, the God whom the ancestors of the people of Judah worshiped, gave messages to his prophets many times, and the prophets gave those messages to the people of Judah. Yahweh did that because he pitied his people and did not want his temple to be destroyed. ¹⁶ But the people continually made fun of God's messengers. They despised God's messages. They ridiculed his prophets, until finally God became extremely angry with his people, with the result that nothing could stop him from destroying Judah.

ULB:

¹⁵ Yahweh, the God of their ancestors, sent word to them by his messengers again and again, because he had compassion on his people and on the place where he lives. ¹⁶ But they mocked God's messengers, despised his words, and scoffed at his prophets, until the wrath of Yahweh arose against his people, until there was no help for it.

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [word](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [people of God, my people](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [mock, ridicule, scoff at](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [wrath, fury](#)
- [raise, rise, risen, arise, arose](#)

translationNotes:

- **again and again** - AT: "many times"
- **there was no help for it** - AT: "there was no way to avoid it"

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 36:17

UDB:

¹⁷ He incited the king of Babylonia to attack Judah with his army. They killed the young men with their swords, even in the temple. They did not spare anyone, either young men or young women or old people. God enabled the army of Nebuchadnezzar to defeat all of them.

ULB:

¹⁷ So God brought on them the king of the Chaldeans, who killed their young men with the sword in the sanctuary, and had no compassion on young men or virgins, old men or the gray-haired. God gave them all into his hand.

translationWords:

- [Chaldea, Chaldean](#)
- [sword](#)
- [sanctuary](#)
- [virgin](#)

translationNotes:

- **God gave them all into his hand** - AT: "God allowed the Chaldean army to defeat them."
(See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 36:18-19

UDB:

¹⁸ His soldiers took to Babylon all the things that were used in God's temple, big things and little things, all the valuable things, and the valuable things that belonged to the king and his officials. ¹⁹ They burned the temple, and they broke down the wall surrounding Jerusalem. They burned all the palaces in Jerusalem and destroyed all the remaining valuable things there.

ULB:

¹⁸ All the furnishings of the house of God, great and small, the treasures of the house of Yahweh, and the treasures of the king and his officials—all these he took to Babylon. ¹⁹ They burned down the house of God, broke down the wall of Jerusalem, burned all its palaces, and destroyed all the beautiful things in it.

translationWords:

- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonian](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [palace](#)

translationNotes:

- **he took** - his soldiers took (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **They burned down** - "They" refers to the Babylonian soldiers.

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 36:20-21

UDB:

²⁰ Nebuchadnezzar's soldiers took to Babylon the remaining people who had not been killed with their swords. Those people became the king's slaves and his son's slaves, until the army of Persia conquered Babylonia. ²¹ Moses had said that every seventh year the people must not plant their fields; they must allow the soil to rest. But the people had not done that. So after the army of Babylonia destroyed Judah, the soil was allowed to rest. That continued for seventy years, fulfilling what Yahweh had told Jeremiah would happen.

ULB:

²⁰ The king carried away to Babylon those who had escaped the sword. They became servants for him and his sons until the rule of the kingdom of Persia. ²¹ This happened to fulfill the word of Yahweh by the mouth of Jeremiah, until the land should have enjoyed its Sabbath rests. It observed its Sabbath for as long as it lay abandoned, in order to pass seventy years in this way.

translationWords:

- [king](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [Persia, Persians](#)
- [fulfill](#)
- [word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture](#)
- [Jeremiah](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [rest](#)

translationNotes:

- **The king carried** - "His soldiers took." (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36 Translation Questions](#)

2 Chronicles 36:22-23

UDB:

²² During the first year that Cyrus was the king of Persia, in order that what Yahweh told Jeremiah would happen would occur, Yahweh motivated Cyrus to write this and proclaim it throughout his kingdom:

²³ “I, Cyrus, the king of Persia, declare that Yahweh, the God who rules in heaven, has enabled me to become the ruler of all the kingdoms of this world. And he has appointed me to command that my workers build a temple for him in Jerusalem, which is in Judah. I am allowing any of his people among you to go to Jerusalem. And I will pray that Yahweh will be with them.”

ULB:

²² Now in the first year of Cyrus, king of Persia, so that the word of Yahweh by the mouth of Jeremiah might be carried out, Yahweh motivated the spirit of Cyrus, king of Persia, so that he made a proclamation throughout all his kingdom, and put it also in writing. He said, ²³ “This is what Cyrus, king of Persia, says: Yahweh, the God of heaven, has given me all the kingdoms of the earth. He has commanded me to build a house for him in Jerusalem, which is in Judah. Whoever is among you from all his people, may Yahweh your God, be with you. Let him go up to the land.”

translationWords:

- [Cyrus](#)
- [spirit, spiritual](#)
- [proclaim, proclamation](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [earth, earthly](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [command, to command, commandment](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh’s house](#)
- [Judah](#)

translationNotes:

- **in the first year** - (See: [Numbers](#))
- **He has commanded me to build a house** - AT: “He has appointed me to command that my workers build a temple for him in Jerusalem” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)

- 2 Chronicles 36 General Notes
- 2 Chronicles 36 Translation Questions

translationQuestions

2 Chronicles 1

Q? Why was Solomon, the son of David, strengthened in his rule?

A. Solomon was strengthened in his rule because Yahweh was with him and made him very powerful. [1:1]

Q? What items were present for worship as Solomon went to the shrine that was at Gibeon?

A. There was the tent of meeting or tabernacle which Moses made in the wilderness, and the bronze altar that Bezalel had made, but the ark of God had been taken from Kiriath Jearim to a tent in Jerusalem. [1:2-5]

Q? What did Solomon do before Yahweh approached him with the question, “What should I give you”?

A. Solomon worshipped Yahweh at the bronze altar by offering one thousand burnt offerings. [1:6-7]

Q? Why did Solomon ask Yahweh to give him wisdom and knowledge?

A. Solomon asked Yahweh to give him wisdom and knowledge so that he could lead the people of Israel who were many in number. [1:8-10]

Q? Why did God give Solomon wisdom and knowledge?

A. God gave Solomon wisdom and knowledge because he did not ask for riches, wealth, honor, the death of those who hated him nor long life for himself, but for God’s help in ruling over his people. [1:11]

Q? What did God give to Solomon along with wisdom and knowledge?

A. God gave Solomon what he did not ask for: riches, wealth, and honor above any of the kings before him. [1:12]

Q? In what ways was the wealth of Solomon seen by all?

A. Solomon had 1,400 chariots and twelve thousand horsemen, silver and gold were as common as stone, and cedar wood was as common as the sycamore trees in the lowlands. [1:14-15]

2 Chronicles 2

Q? Why did Solomon ask Hiram to send him cedar logs as he did for his father David?

A. Solomon asked Hiram to send him cedar logs so he could build a house for Yahweh's name and a palace for his kingdom. [2:1-3]

Q? Why did Solomon plan to build a house for the name of Yahweh that would be very large?

A. Solomon planned to build a large house for the name of Yahweh because his God was greater than all other gods. [2:4-5]

Q? Who did Solomon need if he was to build a house for the name of Yahweh which reflected Yahweh's greatness?

A. Solomon needed a man who was skilled at work in gold, silver, bronze, iron, and in purple, crimson, blue wool and who could make all kinds of engraved wood. [2:7]

Q? Why did Solomon want Hiram to send him cedar, fir, and algum trees from Lebanon?

A. Solomon wanted Hiram to send these trees to him so that the house which he would build for the name of Yahweh would be great and marvelous. [2:8-9]

Q? According to Hiram, why did Yahweh make Solomon the king over the people of Israel?

A. According to Hiram, Yahweh made Solomon the king because Yahweh loved his people and Solomon was gifted with prudence and understanding. [2:11-12]

Q? Why did Hiram send Huramabi to Solomon?

A. Hiram sent Huramabi because he was skilled at work in gold, silver, bronze, iron, stone, and in timber, and in purple, blue, crimson wool, and fine linen as well as in making any kind of engravings. [2:13-14]

Q? How was it possible for the wood from Lebanon to be taken to Israel?

A. The wood from Lebanon was taken to Israel as rafts by sea to Joppa and then carried up to Jerusalem. [2:16]

2 Chronicles 3

Q? Why did Solomon begin to build the house of Yahweh at the threshing floor of Ornan the Jebusite on Mount Moriah?

A. Solomon began to build the house of Yahweh there because that was where Yahweh had appeared to David his father. [3:1-2]

Q? What were the dimensions of the foundation which Solomon laid for the house of God?

A. The dimensions of the foundation for the house of God was sixty cubits long and twenty cubits wide, using the old style cubit. [3:3]

Q? How high was the portico at the front of the house?

A. The portico was twenty cubits. [3:4]

Q? What was used to overlay the most holy place?

A. The most holy place was overlaid with fine gold. [3:8-9]

Q? What did Solomon put on the two pillars in front of the house of God?

A. Solomon joined one hundred pomegranates to the chains which he placed on top of the pillars. [3:15-17]

2 Chronicles 4

Q? What were the dimensions for the altar of bronze?

A. The altar of bronze was twenty cubits long, twenty cubits wide, and ten cubits high. [4:1]

Q? How big was the round sea of cast metal?

A. The round sea was ten cubits from brim to brim. It was five cubits high and thirty cubits in circumference. [4:2]

Q? What was the purpose of the sea which Solomon built for the temple?

A. The sea was for the priests to wash in. [4:6]

Q? How did Solomon know how to make the ten lampstands of gold?

A. Solomon made the ten lampstands of gold from the instructions for their design. [4:7]

Q? What was the work which Hiram finished for King Solomon in the house of God?

A. Hiram finished the work on the two pillars, the bowls, the decorative latticework, and the four hundred pomegranates. [4:12-13]

Q? What did Hiramabi make of polished bronze for King Solomon for the house of Yahweh?

A. Hiramabi made the stands and the basins, one sea and the twelve bulls under it, and many implements. [4:14-16]

Q? What was the weight of the bronze for all of the vessels Solomon made?

A. The weight of the bronze all the vessels Solomon made could not be known. [4:18]

Q? What were the lampstands with their lamps that were designed to burn before the inner room made of?

A. The lampstand with their lamps were made of pure gold. [4:20]

2 Chronicles 5

Q? Where did Solomon put the things which David had dedicated to God?

A. Solomon put all the things including the silver, gold, and all the furnishings, into the storerooms of the house of God. [5:1]

Q? What did Solomon decide to do next?

A. Solomon assembled the leaders of Israel to bring up the ark of the covenant of Yahweh from the city of David. [5:2-3]

Q? What did King Solomon and all the assembly of Israel do when the Levites brought up the ark of the covenant?

A. King Solomon and all the assembly of Israel came together sacrificing many sheep and oxen. [5:4-6]

Q? Where did the priests place the ark of the covenant of Yahweh?

A. The priests placed the ark of the covenant of Yahweh in the most holy place under the wings of the cherubim. [5:7-8]

Q? What items were in the ark of the covenant?

A. There was nothing in the ark of the covenant except the two tablets that Moses had put there at Horeb. [5:9-10]

Q? What did all the Levites do after the priests came out of the holy place?

A. The Levites, who were clothed in fine linen, stood at the east end of the altar playing cymbals, harps, and lyres. [5:11-12]

Q? How did the trumpeters and singers praise Yahweh?

A. The trumpeters and singers made music together, singing, “For he is good, for his covenant loyalty endures forever.” [5:13]

Q? Why were the priests unable to stand in order to serve?

A. The priests could not stand because the cloud, which was the glory of Yahweh, filled Yahweh’s house. [5:14]

2 Chronicles 6

Q? How had Solomon improved the place where Yahweh would live?

A. Yahweh had said he would live in thick darkness, but Solomon built him a lofty residence in which he would live forever. [6:1-2]

Q? Where did Yahweh finally decide to live and whom did he chose to rule over Israel?

A. Yahweh had chosen no city in which to build his house nor any man to be prince over Israel, but he then chose Jerusalem as the city and David to be over Israel. [6:4-6]

Q? What did Yahweh say to David to keep him from fulfilling the desire of his heart?

A. Yahweh had told David, "It was in your heart to build a house for my name, but your son will build it instead." [6:7-9]

Q? How did Yahweh carry out the word that he had spoken?

A. Yahweh carried out the word he had spoken by having Solomon sit on David's throne, build the house for the name of Yahweh, and place the ark within it. [6:10-11]

Q? How did Solomon stand before the altar of Yahweh?

A. Solomon stood on a bronze platform, knelt down before all the assembly of Israel, and spread out his hands toward the heavens. [6:12-13]

Q? What does Yahweh do for the servants who walk before him with all their heart?

A. Yahweh keeps covenant and covenant faithfulness with his servants who walk before him with all their heart. [6:14-15]

Q? What is the promise which Yahweh made to his servant David?

A. Yahweh told David that he would not fail to have a man from his tribe sit on the throne of Israel if his descendants were careful to walk in Yahweh's law. [6:16-17]

Q? What was the basic request which Solomon made of Yahweh?

A. Solomon requested that Yahweh listen to his cry and prayer so that his eyes would be open on the temple day and night. [6:19-20]

Q? What did Solomon want Yahweh, the God of Israel, to do after Yahweh listened to the requests of Solomon and the people of Israel?

A. Solomon wanted Yahweh to forgive. [6:21]

Q? How could a righteous man be declared innocent if he was charged with sinning against his neighbor?

A. A righteous man could be declared innocent by swearing an oath before the altar in Yahweh's house. [6:22-23]

Q? What did the people of Israel need to do when they had been defeated by an enemy because they had sinned against Yahweh?

A. The people of Israel needed to turn back to Yahweh by confessing his name, praying, and requesting forgiveness before him in the temple. [6:24-25]

Q? How should the people of Israel respond when the skies are shut up and there is no rain because they have sinned against Yahweh?

A. The people of Israel should pray toward the temple, confess Yahweh's name, and turn from their sin so that rain would fall on their land. [6:26-27]

Q? What were some of the conditions where people in Israel needed Yahweh to listen to their prayers and forgive them for their sins?

A. The people in Israel needed Yahweh to listen to their prayers when there was famine, disease, blight or mildew, locusts or caterpillars, when enemies attacked the city gates, or if there was any plague or sickness. [6:28-31]

Q? Why should Yahweh do what the foreigner asks of him when he came and prayed toward Yahweh's house?

A. Yahweh should do what the foreigner asked of him so that all the people groups on earth might know Yahweh's name, fear him, and know the house which is called by his name. [6:32-33]

Q? What request did Solomon make of Yahweh?

A. Solomon requested that Yahweh would listen to the confession of the people of Israel and forgive them of their sins after they had sinned, been taken captive to the land of their enemy, and repented of their sins. [6:36-39]

Q? What did Solomon want Yahweh to do?

A. Solomon wanted Yahweh to be attentive to the prayers of the people, clothe his priests with salvation, and let his saints rejoice in his goodness. [6:40-42]

2 Chronicles 7

Q? What happened when Solomon finished his prayer to Yahweh?

A. When Solomon finished his prayer, fire came down from heaven to consume the burnt offerings and sacrifices, and the glory of Yahweh filled the house. [7:1]

Q? What was the response of the people of Israel when the fire came down and the glory of Yahweh filled the house?

A. The people of Israel bowed with their faces to the ground, worshiped, and gave thanks to Yahweh. [7:3]

Q? Why did King Solomon and all the people offer sacrifices to Yahweh?

A. King Solomon and the people offered sacrifices to Yahweh to dedicate the house of God [7:4-5]

Q? Why did Solomon offer burnt offerings and the fat of the fellowship offerings in the middle of the courtyard?

A. The burnt offerings and the fat of the fellowship offerings were offered by Solomon in the middle of the courtyard because the bronze altar he made was not able to hold the burnt offerings, the grain offerings, and the fat. [7:7]

Q? Why was Solomon able to send the people of Israel away to their homes with glad and joyful hearts after the festival?

A. The people were sent away by Solomon with glad and joyful hearts because of the goodness that Yahweh had shown to David, Solomon, and his people Israel. [7:8-10]

Q? What was carried out by Solomon in the house of Yahweh and in Solomon's own house?

A. Everything was carried out that came into Solomon's heart to do in the house of Yahweh and in his own house. [7:11]

Q? What did the people of Israel need to do in order for Yahweh to hear their prayer, forgive their sin, and heal their land?

A. The people who were called by Yahweh's name needed to humble themselves, pray, seek Yahweh's face and turn from their wicked ways. [7:14]

Q? Why did Yahweh choose and consecrate his house?

A. Yahweh chose and consecrated his house so that his name might be there forever. [7:16]

Q? What conditions did Yahweh set forth for the people of Israel to meet in order for a descendant of David to always be on the throne of his kingdom?

A. Yahweh said that the people of Israel must obey all that he had commanded them and keep his statutes and decrees. [7:17-18]

Q? What would happen if the people of Israel would disobey Yahweh's statutes and commandments and worship other gods?

A. If the people of Israel would disobey Yahweh's statutes and commandments and worship other gods, then he would uproot them from the ground he had given them and the house he had consecrated and make them a joke among all the peoples. [7:19-20]

Q? What response would be given to the people who passed by the temple and were shocked at what Yahweh had done to the land and his house?

A. The response would be that Yahweh had brought all this disaster upon the land and his house because his people disobeyed him and laid hold of other gods, bowing down to worship them. [7:21-22]

2 Chronicles 8

Q? What did Solomon do while he was building the house of Yahweh and his own house?

A. During the time Solomon built the house of Yahweh and his own house, he was also rebuilding the towns which Hiram had given to him and he made the people of Israel live there. [8:1-2]

Q? In general where and for what purpose did Solomon build?

A. Solomon built for his own pleasure in Jerusalem, Lebanon, and in all the lands under his rule. [8:6]

Q? What happened to the people of the land who did not belong to Israel?

A. Solomon made the people who did not belong to Israel forced laborers. [8:7-8]

Q? What jobs did Solomon give the people of Israel?

A. Solomon made the people of Israel his soldiers, his commanders, his officers, and the commanders of his chariot forces and horsemen. [8:9-10]

Q? Why did Solomon bring the daughter of Pharaoh out of the city of David to a house he had built for her?

A. Solomon brought the daughter of Pharaoh out of the city of David to a house, because the ark of Yahweh was in the city and so it was a holy place. [8:11]

Q? How did Solomon offer burnt offerings to Yahweh on the altar he built in front of the portico?

A. Solomon offered burnt offerings to Yahweh just as the daily schedule required, following the directions found in the commandment of Moses. [8:12-13]

Q? What were the responsibilities of the priests and the Levites?

A. The priests and the Levites were appointed by Solomon to their positions in order to praise God and to serve before the priests as the daily schedule required. [8:14]

Q? How faithful were the gatekeepers in carrying out their responsibilities?

A. The gatekeepers obeyed the commands of the king to the priests and Levites concerning any matter. [8:14-15]

Q? What was the sign that all of Solomon's work on the house of Yahweh had been accomplished?

A. The house of Yahweh was completely finished and put into use. [8:16]

2 Chronicles 9

Q? Why did the queen of Sheba come to Jerusalem?

A. The queen of Sheba came to Jerusalem because she heard of Solomon's fame and wanted to test him with hard questions. [9:1]

Q? How did Solomon respond when the queen of Sheba asked him all the questions that were on her heart?

A. Solomon answered all the questions that the queen of Sheba asked of him. [9:1-2]

Q? What was the response from the queen of Sheba when she saw Solomon's wisdom and all the buildings, food, clothing, and servants he had in his possession?

A. When the queen of Sheba saw all the possessions which Solomon had, there was no more spirit in her. [9:3-4]

Q? What was the queen of Sheba's assessment of king Solomon?

A. The queen of Sheba told King Solomon that his wisdom and wealth exceeded what she had heard about him. [9:6]

Q? What did the queen of Sheba say to remind Solomon how he had come to be on the throne of Israel as their king?

A. The queen of Sheba reminded Solomon that Yahweh had made him king over Israel and had placed him on the throne because Yahweh loved Israel and wanted to establish it forever. [9:8]

Q? What was the outcome of the queen of Sheba's trip to see King Solomon?

A. King Solomon gave to the queen of Sheba everything she asked for in addition to what she had brought to the king, and then she left and went back to her own land. [9:12]

Q? How much gold came to Solomon in one year?

A. The weight of gold that came to Solomon in one year was 666 talents. [9:13]

Q? Who brought gold to Solomon?

A. The traders, the merchants, all the kings of Arabia and the governors in the country brought gold to Solomon. [9:14]

Q? How many gold shields did Solomon make?

A. King Solomon made five hundred shields of beaten gold. [9:16]

Q? What was King Solomon's throne made of?

A. King Solomon's throne was made of ivory overlaid with the finest gold. [9:17]

Q? Why were none of King Solomon's drinking cups made of silver?

A. None of King Solomon's drinking cups were made of silver because silver was not considered valuable in Solomon's day. [9:20]

Q? Why did all the earth seek the presence of Solomon?

A. All the earth sought the presence of Solomon because of his riches, and in order to hear his wisdom which God had put in his heart. [9:22-23]

Q? What kings did Solomon rule over?

A. King Solomon ruled over all the kings from the Euphrates River to the land of the Philistines, and to the border of Egypt. [9:26]

Q? How long did Solomon reign as king in Jerusalem over all Israel?

A. Solomon reigned in Jerusalem over all Israel for forty years. [9:29-30]

2 Chronicles 10

Q? Why was all of Israel coming to Shechem?

A. All of Israel was coming to Shechem to make Rehoboam their king. [10:1]

Q? What stood in the way of Rehoboam becoming the king of all Israel?

A. Jeroboam's return from exile in Egypt stood in the way of Rehoboam becoming king of all Israel. [10:2]

Q? What request did Jeroboam and all Israel make of Rehoboam?

A. Jeroboam and all Israel asked Rehoboam to lighten the heavy yoke that King Solomon had put on them. [10:3-4]

Q? What did the old men, who had stood before Solomon when he was alive, advise King Rehoboam to do?

A. The old men advised King Rehoboam to be good to the people and please them with good words, and then they would always be his servants. [10:6-7]

Q? What did Rehoboam do after he ignored the advice the old men gave him?

A. Rehoboam consulted with the young men who had grown up with him, by asking them how he should respond to the request to lighten the load of the people. [10:8-9]

Q? What advice did the young men who had grown up with Rehoboam give him concerning the request of the people to lighten their load?

A. The young men advised Rehoboam to tell the people that although my father burdened you with a heavy yoke, I will add to your yoke. [10:10-11]

Q? What happened when Jeroboam and all the people of Israel came to Rehoboam on the third day?

A. King Rehoboam ignored the advice of the old men and answered them roughly by following the advice of the young men. [10:12-14]

Q? Why did King Rehoboam not listen to the people of Israel?

A. The king's decision not to listen to the people of Israel was a turn of events brought about by Yahweh to carry out the word he had spoken by Ahijah to Jeroboam. [10:15]

Q? What was Israel's response to King Rehoboam's statement that he would make their yoke heavier?

A. When Israel heard from King Rehoboam, the people of Israel said they did not have any share in David, told the people of Israel to go back to their tents, and told Rehoboam to see to his own house. [10:16]

Q? How did the people of Israel respond when King Rehoboam sent Adoniram, who was over the forced laborers, to them?

A. The people of Israel stoned Adoniram to death and King Rehoboam fled in his chariot to Jerusalem. [10:18]

2 Chronicles 11

Q? Why did Rehoboam assemble the house of Judah and Benjamin to fight against Israel when he arrived in Jerusalem?

A. Rehoboam assembled the house of Judah and Benjamin in order to restore the kingdom to himself. [11:1]

Q? What message from Yahweh did Shemaiah deliver to Rehoboam and all of Israel?

A. The message from Yahweh was that they must not attack or fight against their brothers. [11:2-4]

Q? Why did Rehoboam build cities in Judah?

A. Rehoboam built cities in Judah for defense. [11:5-10]

Q? What were some of the accomplishments of Rehoboam?

A. Rehoboam fortified the fortresses, put commanders in them, and put shields and spears in every city. [11:11-12]

Q? Why did the Levites leave their pasture lands and property in order to come to Judah and Jerusalem?

A. The Levites left their pastureland and property because Jeroboam and his sons had driven them away, so that they could no longer perform priestly duties for Yahweh. [11:13-14]

Q? How did Jeroboam replace the priests and Levites who moved to Judah?

A. Jeroboam appointed for himself priests for the shrines and the idols of calves and goats that he had made. [11:14-15]

Q? What did people from the tribes of Israel do to strengthen Rehoboam and the kingdom of Judah?

A. People, who set their hearts to seek Yahweh, came from all the tribes of Israel to Jerusalem to sacrifice to Yahweh. [11:16-17]

Q? What was one way in which Rehoboam ruled wisely?

A. Rehoboam ruled wisely by scattering all his sons throughout all the land of Judah and Benjamin to every fortified city. [11:22-23]

2 Chronicles 12

Q? What wrong thing did Rehoboam do when his reign was established?

A. Rehoboam and all Israel abandoned the law of Yahweh. [12:1]

Q? Why did Shishak, king of Egypt, come up against Jerusalem?

A. Shishak came up against Jerusalem because the people had been unfaithful to Yahweh. [12:2]

Q? What was the response of Rehoboam and the leaders of Judah when Shemaiah the prophet told them they had been given over into Shishak's hand because they had forsaken Yahweh?

A. Rehoboam and the leaders of Judah humbled themselves and proclaimed that Yahweh was righteous. [12:5-6]

Q? How did Yahweh respond when he saw that Rehoboam and the leaders of Judah had humbled themselves?

A. Yahweh rescued them to some extent, but still allowed them to become servants under Shishak. [12:7]

Q? Why did Yahweh allow the leaders of Judah to become the servants of Shishak?

A. Yahweh allowed them to become servants of Shishak so they could understand what it was to serve him as well as to serve the rulers of other countries. [12:8]

Q? What did Shishak take away from Jerusalem?

A. Shishak took away the treasures in the house of Yahweh and the king's house, as well as the shields of gold that Solomon made. [12:9]

Q? Why was Yahweh's anger turned away from Rehoboam?

A. Yahweh's anger was turned away because Rehoboam humbled himself and there was still some good to be found in Judah. [12:12]

Q? Why was it said that "King Rehoboam did what was evil"?

A. It was said that Rehoboam did what was evil because he did not fix his heart to seek Yahweh. [12:13-14]

Q? What happened after Rehoboam died and was buried in Jerusalem?

A. Abijah his son became king in his place. [12:16]

2 Chronicles 13

Q? Against whom did Abijah fight?

A. Abijah fought against Jeroboam. [13:2]

Q? Where is Mount Zemaraim?

A. Mount Zemaraim is in the hill country of Ephraim. [13:4]

Q? Who gathered to Jeroboam?

A. Worthless men, base fellows, gathered to Jeroboam. [13:7]

Q? According to Abijah, who said he could resist the ruling might of Yahweh?

A. According to Abijah, Jeroboam said he could resist the ruling might of Yahweh. [13:8]

Q? Who had not forsaken Yahweh?

A. Abijah's nation, Judah, had not forsaken him. [13:10]

Q? Who would not succeed if they fought against Yahweh?

A. The people of Israel would not succeed if they fought against Yahweh. [13:12]

Q? What was Jeroboam's plan for the battle?

A. Jeroboam prepared an ambush behind them; his army was in front of Judah, and the ambush was behind them. [13:13]

Q? Why did the people of Judah win?

A. The people of Judah won because they relied on Yahweh. [13:18]

Q? How did Jeroboam die?

A. Yahweh struck him, and he died. [13:20]

2 Chronicles 14

Q? What actions of Asa were proof that he did what was good and right in the eyes of Yahweh?

A. Asa took away the foreign altars and the shrines, broke down the sacred stone pillars, and cut down the Asherah poles. [14:2-3]

Q? Why was the land quiet and there were no wars during the reign of Asa?

A. The land was quiet and there were no wars during the reign of Asa because Yahweh had given him peace. [14:5-6]

Q? Why did Asa make plans to build walled cities?

A. Asa made plans to build walled cities because Yahweh had given them the land along with peace on every side. [14:7]

Q? What was Asa's response when the vast army of Zerah the Ethiopian came against the people of Israel?

A. Asa cried out to Yahweh for his help by acknowledging that he and his army were coming in Yahweh's name against the vast army of Zerah. [14:9-11]

Q? Who struck the Ethiopians before Asa and Judah?

A. Yahweh struck the Ethiopians before Asa and Judah. [14:12]

Q? What did the army do to the villages around Gerar?

A. The army destroyed and plundered the villages around Gerar. [14:14]

2 Chronicles 15

Q? What message from God did Azariah deliver to King Asa?

A. The message was that Yahweh was with Asa, while Asa was with Yahweh, but if Asa left Yahweh, Yahweh would leave Asa. [15:1-2]

Q? What was Israel without for a long time?

A. Israel was without the true God, a teaching priest, and the law for a long time. [15:3]

Q? In those times, what were on all the inhabitants of the lands?

A. In those times, great troubles were on all the inhabitants of the lands. [15:5]

Q? How did God trouble the inhabitants of the lands?

A. God troubled the inhabitants of the lands with all kinds of suffering. [15:6]

Q? What did Asa rebuild when he heard the prophet's message?

A. Asa rebuilt the altar of Yahweh when he heard the prophet's message. [15:8]

Q? Why did great numbers of people come to King Asa from Ephraim, Manasseh, and Simeon?

A. They came because they saw that Yahweh was with King Asa. [15:9]

Q? What did the people make a covenant to do?

A. The people made a covenant to seek Yahweh with all their heart and with all their soul. [15:12]

Q? What would happen to anyone who refused to seek Yahweh?

A. Anyone who refused to seek Yahweh would be put to death. [15:13]

Q? What did Yahweh give the people after they swore to him with all their heart?

A. Yahweh gave the people peace all around them. [15:15]

Q? What was the condition of King Asa's heart?

A. King Asa's heart was completely devoted to Yahweh all his days. [15:17]

Q? What did not occur until Asa's thirty-fifth year of reigning?

A. There was no war until Asa's thirty-fifth year of reigning. [15:19]

2 Chronicles 16

Q? Why did Baasha, king of Israel, act aggressively against Judah by building up Ramah?

A. Baasha acted aggressively so he might not allow anyone to leave or enter into the land of Asa. [16:1]

Q? Why did Asa bring the silver and gold out of the storerooms and send it to Benhadad, king of Aram?

A. Asa sent the silver and gold to Ben Hadad to encourage him to break his treaty with Baasha and establish a treaty with Asa. [16:2-3]

Q? Why did Asa want Ben Hadad to break his treaty with Baasha?

A. Asa wanted Ben Hadad to break the treaty so that Baasha would leave Asa alone. [16:3]

Q? What happened when Baasha stopped building up Ramah due to the attacks from Ben Hadad?

A. Asa and all Judah carried away the stones and timbers which Baasha was using to build up Ramah and used them to build up Geba and Mizpah. [16:4-6]

Q? Why did Hanani the seer rebuke Asa?

A. Hanani rebuked Asa because he relied on a treaty with the king of Aram instead of relying on Yahweh as he did against the Ethiopians. [16:7-8]

Q? Why do the eyes of Yahweh run everywhere throughout the whole earth?

A. The eyes of Yahweh run everywhere to show himself strong on behalf of those whose hearts are perfect toward him. [16:9]

Q? What was Asa's reaction to the rebuke of Hanani?

A. Asa was angry with Hanani and put him into prison. [16:10]

Q? How did Asa react to the severe disease of his feet?

A. Asa did not seek help from Yahweh, but only from physicians. [16:12]

Q? How was Asa honored after his death?

A. The people laid Asa on a bier filled with various spices and made a very great fire in his honor. [16:14]

2 Chronicles 17

Q? Where did Jehoshaphat place forces?

A. Jehoshaphat placed forces in all the fortified cities of Judah. [17:2]

Q? Why was Yahweh with Jehoshaphat?

A. Yahweh was with Jehoshaphat because he walked in the first ways of his father David. [17:3]

Q? Whose behavior did Jehoshaphat not walk after, because he walked in God's commandments?

A. He walked in God's commandments, not after the behavior of Israel. [17:4]

Q? On what was Jehoshaphat's heart fixed?

A. Jehoshaphat's heart was fixed on Yahweh's ways. [17:6]

Q? What book did the officials and Levites and priests have when they taught in Judah?

A. They taught in Judah, having the book of the law of Yahweh with them. [17:9]

Q? What did the monarchies around Judah not do because the terror of Yahweh fell on them?

A. The terror of Yahweh fell on them that were around Judah, so that they made no war against Jehoshaphat. [17:10]

Q? What two things did Jehoshaphat build in Judah?

A. Jehoshaphat built fortresses and store cities in Judah. [17:12]

Q? What did Amasiah, the son of Zichri, willingly offer?

A. Amasiah willingly offered to serve Yahweh. [17:16]

Q? What kind of man was Eliada from Benjamin?

A. Eliada was a powerful man of courage. [17:17]

2 Chronicles 18

Q? How did Jehoshaphat ally himself with Ahab?

A. Jehoshaphat allied himself with Ahab by having one of his family marry his daughter. [18:1]

Q? What did Jehoshaphat tell the king of Israel to do to find his answer?

A. Jehoshaphat said to the king of Israel, "Please first seek the word of Yahweh for your answer." [18:4]

Q? Why did the king of Israel hate Micaiah the son of Imlah?

A. The king of Israel hated Micaiah because he never prophesied anything good about the king, but only hardships. [18:7]

Q? Who did the prophets say had given Ramoth Gilead into the hand of the king?

A. They all prophesied saying that Yahweh had given Ramoth Gilead into the hand of the king. [18:11]

Q? What did the messenger tell Micaiah the words of the prophets declared to the king?

A. The messenger told Micaiah that the words of the prophets declared good things to the king with one mouth. [18:12]

Q? To what did Micaiah compare Israel when he saw them scattered on the mountains?

A. Micaiah said that he saw all Israel scattered on the mountains, like sheep who have no shepherd. [18:16]

Q? When Micaiah saw Yahweh on his throne where were the hosts of heaven?

A. Micaiah saw Yahweh sitting on his throne, and all the host of heaven were standing on his right hand and on his left. [18:18]

Q? What was Yahweh asking to happen when Ahab went up to Ramoth Gilead?

A. Yahweh was asking for one to entice Ahab, king of Israel, so that he would go up and fall at Ramoth Gilead. [18:19]

Q? To whom was the spirit going to become a lying spirit?

A. The spirit said that he would go out and become a lying spirit in the mouth of all Ahab's prophets. [18:21]

Q? What did Micaiah say Yahweh had decreed for the king of Israel?

A. Micaiah said that Yahweh had decreed disaster for him. [18:22]

Q? Where was Micaiah to be until the king of Israel returned safely?

A. The king said to put Micaiah in prison until he returned safely. [18:26]

Q? If the king returned safely, what did that mean about Micaiah's words?

A. Micaiah said that if the king returned safely, then Yahweh had not spoken by him. [18:27]

Q? Who had the king of Aram told the captains to attack?

A. The king of Aram told the captains of his chariots not to attack the soldiers, but instead, to attack only the king of Israel. [18:30]

Q? What did the commanders do when they realized Jehoshaphat was not the king of Israel?

A. When the commanders saw that he was not the king of Israel, they turned back from pursuing him. [18:32]

Q? What time of day was it when Ahab died?

A. About the time that the sun was going down, Ahab died. [18:34]

2 Chronicles 19

Q? What good was found in Jehoshaphat's heart?

A. Some good was found in Jehoshaphat, that he had fixed his heart to seek God. [19:3]

Q? Where did Jehoshaphat place judges?

A. Jehoshaphat placed judges in the land throughout all the fortified cities of Judah. [19:5]

Q? Where did Jehoshaphat say Yahweh was when the judges passed judgement?

A. He told the judges that Yahweh was with them in the act of judging. [19:6]

Q? What kind of heart did Jehoshaphat say the judges in Jerusalem should have in reverence for Yahweh?

A. Jehoshaphat instructed them that in reverence for Yahweh, judge faithfully, and with a perfect heart. [19:9]

Q? What would not come down on them if the people did not sin against Yahweh?

A. The people were told not to sin against Yahweh, so that anger would not come down on them. [19:10]

Q? With whom did Jehoshaphat pray that Yahweh abides?

A. Jehoshaphat prayed for Yahweh to be with those who were good. [19:11]

2 Chronicles 20

Q? For what reason did the people of Moab, Ammon, and the Meunites come against Jehoshaphat?

A. They came against Jehoshaphat to do battle. [20:1]

Q? Where did the people of Judah come from to seek Yahweh?

A. The people came to seek Yahweh from all the cities of Judah. [20:4]

Q? Where did Jehoshaphat stand in the assembly of the people?

A. Jehoshaphat stood at the house of Yahweh, in front of the new courtyard. [20:5]

Q? What promise of Yahweh did Jehoshaphat repeat when the people cried to him in their affliction?

A. Jehoshaphat said that when the people cry to Yahweh in their affliction, he would hear them and save them. [20:9]

Q? What did Yahweh not let Israel do to Ammon, Moab and Mount Seir when they came out of Egypt?

A. Yahweh would not let Israel invade them when they came out of the land of Egypt. [20:10]

Q? What part of the people of Judah stood before Yahweh?

A. All Judah stood before Yahweh, with their little ones, wives, and children. [20:13]

Q? Why did Yahweh say not to fear or be discouraged by the great army against them?

A. Yahweh told them not to fear or be discouraged because of this great army, for the battle did not belong to them, but to God. [20:15]

Q? What did Yahweh say the people would see when they stood still in their positions?

A. Yahweh told them to stand still, and see the rescue of Yahweh with them. [20:17]

Q? What did Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem do in worship before Yahweh?

A. All Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem fell down before Yahweh, worshiping him. [20:18]

Q? As the army went out, why did Jehoshaphat say to give thanks to Yahweh?

A. As they went out preceding the army, Jehoshaphat told them to say, "Give thanks to Yahweh; for his covenant faithfulness endures forever." [20:21]

Q? What did Yahweh do when the people of Judah began to sing and praise?

A. When they began to sing and praise, Yahweh set men in ambush against their enemies. [20:22]

Q? What did the people of Judah see when they looked out on the enemy's army?

A. When they looked out on the army, they were dead, fallen to the ground. [20:24]

Q? How long did it take the people to carry off the plunder from the army?

A. It took the people three days to carry off the plunder, because there was so much of it. [20:25]

Q? Why did Jehoshaphat and his people return to Jerusalem with joy?

A. They returned to Jerusalem with joy for Yahweh had made them rejoice over their enemies. [20:27]

Q? What did God give Jehoshaphat that made his kingdom quiet?

A. Jehoshaphat's kingdom was quiet, for his God gave him peace all around him. [20:30]

Q? What had Jehoshaphat done in the eyes of Yahweh?

A. Jehoshaphat did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh. [20:32]

Q? What was prophesied against Jehoshaphat, because he allied himself with Ahaziah?

A. Because Jehoshaphat had allied himself with Ahaziah, Yahweh destroyed his projects. [20:37]

2 Chronicles 21

Q? Why did Jehoshaphat give the throne to Jehoram?

A. Jehoshaphat gave the throne to Jehoram because Jehoram was his firstborn. [21:3]

Q? What did Jehoram do to his brothers after he was established as king?

A. When Jehoram had firmly established himself as king, he killed all his brothers with the sword. [21:4]

Q? Why did Yahweh not wish to destroy the house of David?

A. Yahweh did not wish to destroy the house of David because of the covenant he had made with David. [21:7]

Q? Why did Libnah revolt from the power of Judah?

A. They revolted from Judah's power, because Jehoram had forsaken Yahweh. [21:10]

Q? What did Jehoram build in the mountains of Judah?

A. Jehoram also built shrines in the mountains of Judah. [21:11]

Q? What did Elijah say would happen to Jehoram's intestines in his sickness?

A. Jehoram would have much sickness until his intestines fell out because of the sickness. [21:15]

Q? What did the Philistines and Arabians carry away from the king's house?

A. They carried away all the wealth that was found in the king's house. [21:17]

Q? What did his people not do for Jehoram that they had done for his ancestors?

A. His people made no fire in his honor as they had done for his ancestors. [21:19]

2 Chronicles 22

Q? In whose ways did Ahaziah walk because of the advice of his mother?

A. Ahaziah walked in the ways of the house of Ahab, for his mother was his adviser in doing wicked things. [22:3]

Q? How did Ahaziah act in Yahweh's sight, as the house of Ahab was doing?

A. Ahaziah did what was evil in Yahweh's sight, as the house of Ahab was doing. [22:4]

Q? Why did Ahaziah go to visit Joram, the son of Ahab?

A. Ahaziah went down to Jezreel to see him because Joram had been wounded. [22:6]

Q? What did God bring about through Ahaziah's visit to Joram?

A. The destruction of Ahaziah was brought about by God through his visit to Joram. [22:7]

Q? What did Jehu recall of Ahaziah's father?

A. Jehu said that Ahaziah was a son of Jehoshaphat, who sought Yahweh with all his heart. [22:9]

Q? What did Ahaziah's mother do when she saw that he was dead?

A. When she saw that her son was dead, she arose and killed all the royal children in the house of Judah. [22:10]

Q? How long was Joash hidden in the house of God while Athaliah reigned?

A. Joash was hidden in the house of God for six years while Athaliah reigned over the land. [22:12]

2 Chronicles 23

Q? What made Jehoiada bold to speak to the leaders that the king's son would reign?

A. Jehoiada said the king's son would reign, as Yahweh had said concerning the descendants of David. [23:3]

Q? What work was assigned to the priests and Levites serving on the Sabbath?

A. Those who come to serve on the Sabbath would be guards at the doors. [23:4]

Q? When were the Levites told to stay with the king?

A. They were told to stay with the king when he came in and when he went out. [23:7]

Q? How completely did the Levites and all Judah follow Jehoiada's command?

A. They served in every way in the manner in which Jehoiada the priest commanded. [23:8]

Q? What did they give to the king's son when they put the crown on him?

A. They brought out the king's son, put the crown on him, and gave him the covenant decrees. [23:11]

Q? What noise made Athaliah come to the people in the house of Yahweh?

A. When she heard the noise of the people running and praising the king, she came to the people in the house of Yahweh. [23:12]

Q? What did Athaliah do while shouting out "Treason!"?

A. She tore her clothes and shouted, "Treason!" [23:13]

Q? What did Jehoiada command to be done to anyone who followed Athaliah?

A. Jehoiada said to let anyone who followed her be killed with the sword. [23:14]

Q? What covenant did Jehoiada make between himself, the people, and the king?

A. Jehoiada made a covenant between himself, all the people, and the king, that they should be Yahweh's people. [23:16]

Q? Whom did Jehoiada keep from entering the house of Yahweh by setting guards at the gates?

A. Jehoiada set guards at the gates of the house of Yahweh, so that no one that was unclean in any way should enter. [23:19]

Q? Where did Jehoiada and the people set the king after coming through the Upper Gate?

A. The people came through the Upper Gate to the king's house and sat the king on the throne of the kingdom. [23:20]

2 Chronicles 24

Q? How long did Joash do what was right in the eyes of Yahweh?

A. Joash did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh all the days of Jehoiada, the priest. [24:2]

Q? For what work did Joash send the priests and Levites out to gather money from all Israel?

A. Joash sent them to gather from all Israel money to repair the house of their God. [24:5]

Q? What had the sons of Athaliah taken from the house of Yahweh and given to the Baals?

A. They had given all the dedicated furnishings of the house of Yahweh to the Baals. [24:7]

Q? Where was the chest the king had commanded to be made placed?

A. The king commanded, and they made a chest and placed it outside at the entrance to the house of Yahweh. [24:8]

Q? What part of the people rejoiced and brought money to put into the chest?

A. All the leaders and all the people rejoiced and brought money in and put it into the chest. [24:10]

Q? As the officials emptied the chest day after day what did they gather?

A. They emptied the chest day after day, gathering large amounts of money. [24:11]

Q? How did the workmen set up the house of God as they repaired it?

A. The workmen set up the house of God in its original design and strengthened it. [24:13]

Q? Why was Jehoiada buried among the kings in the city of David?

A. They buried him in the city of David among the kings, because he had done good in Israel, toward God, and to God's house. [24:16]

Q? What did the people do when Yahweh sent prophets to testify against them?

A. Yahweh sent prophets who testified against the people, but they refused to listen. [24:19]

Q? Why did Zechariah tell the people Yahweh had forsaken them?

A. Zechariah told the people that since they had forsaken Yahweh, Yahweh had also forsaken them. [24:20]

Q? How did King Joash ignore the kindness that Zechariah's father had done to him?

A. In this manner, Joash, the king, ignored the kindness that Jehoiada, Zechariah's father, had done to him. Instead, he killed Jehoiada's son. [24:22]

Q? What did Yahweh give the small army of the Arameans because Judah had forsaken him?

A. The Arameans had come with a small army, but Yahweh gave them victory over a very great army, because Judah had forsaken Yahweh. [24:24]

Q? Why did the servants of Joash plot against him?

A. Joash's own servants plotted against him because of the murder of the sons of Jehoiada, the priest. [24:25]

2 Chronicles 25

Q? How old was Amaziah when he began to reign and how long did he reign?

A. Amaziah was twenty-five years old when he began to reign and he reigned for twenty-nine years.

[25:1]

Q? What was the condition of Amaziah's heart?

A. Amaziah's heart was not perfectly devoted to Yahweh. [25:2]

Q? Why did Amaziah not kill the children of the servants who had murdered his father, the king?

A. Amaziah did not kill the children of the servants who had murdered his father because the laws in the book of Moses said that the children must not die for the fathers, but that every person must die for his own sin. [25:3-4]

Q? How did Amaziah add to the 300,000 chosen men from Judah and Benjamin that were registered by their ancestor's houses?

A. Amaziah hired 100,000 fighting men from Israel to add to the 300,00 chosen men from Judah.

[25:5-6]

Q? Why did the man of God tell the king he should not let the army of Israel go with him?

A. The man of God told the king the army of Israel should not go with him because Yahweh was not with Israel. [25:7]

Q? What did the man of God say would happen even if Amaziah was courageous and strong in battle?

A. The man of God said that God would throw him down before the enemy. [25:8]

Q? How did the man of God answer Amaziah's question about what to do about the one hundred talents that he had given to the army of Israel?

A. The man of God told Amaziah that Yahweh was able to give him much more than that. [25:9]

Q? Why was the anger of the army from Ephraim kindled against Judah?

A. Their anger was kindled against Judah because Amaziah separated the army and sent them home. [25:10]

Q? What happened to the ten thousand men of Seir when Amaziah led his people out to the Valley of Salt?

A. Amaziah led his people out to the Valley of Salt and he defeated ten thousand men of Seir. [25:11]

Q? What did the army of Judah do to the additional ten thousand men of Seir who they carried away alive?

A. The army of Judah threw the men of Seir down from the top of the cliff. [25:12]

Q? What did the army of Israel do to the cities of Judah from Samaria to Bethhoron?

A. The army of Israel attacked the cities, struck down three thousand of the people and took much plunder. [25:13]

Q? What did Amaziah do with the gods that he brought back from the people of Seir?

A. Amaziah set the gods up to be his own gods, bowed down before them, and burned incense to them. [25:14]

Q? What did the prophet sent by Yahweh ask Amaziah about the gods of the people of Seir?

A. The prophet asked Amaziah why he sought after the gods of a people whose gods did not even save their own people from the hand of Amaziah. [25:15]

Q? What did the prophet say was God's reason for his decision to destroy Amaziah?

A. The reason God decided to destroy Amaziah was that Amaziah had done this deed and had not listened to the advice of the prophet. [25:16]

Q? What was the message that Amaziah sent to Jehoash, king of Israel?

A. Amaziah sent a message asking Jehoash to come and meet with Amaziah face to face in battle. [25:17]

Q? Why did the messengers of Jehoash tell Amaziah that he should stay at home?

A. The messengers of Jehoash told Amaziah to stay at home because both Amaziah and Judah would fall. [25:18-19]

Q? Why would God hand over the people of Judah into the hand of their enemies?

A. God would hand them over to their enemies because they had sought advice from the gods of Edom. [25:20]

Q? What was the result when Jehoash, king of Israel, and Amaziah, king of Judah, met each other face to face at Beth Shemesh?

A. The result was that Judah was struck down before Israel and every man fled home. [25:21-22]

Q? To what place did Jehoash return after he tore down the wall of Jerusalem and took many valuable objects from the temple and palace, along with hostages?

A. Jehoash returned to Samaria after he tore down the wall of Jerusalem and took all the valuables and hostages. [25:23-24]

Q? For how many years did Amaziah, king of Judah, live after the death of Jehoash, king of Israel?

A. Amaziah lived fifteen years after the death of Jehoash. [25:25]

Q? Where are other matters written concerning Amaziah?

A. Other matters concerning Amaziah are written in The Book of the Kings of Judah and Israel. [25:26]

Q? What was begun against Amaziah after he turned away from following Yahweh?

A. After Amaziah turned away from following Yahweh, a conspiracy was begun against him. [25:27]

Q? Where was Amaziah buried after he was killed in Lachish?

A. Amaziah was buried with his ancestors in the City of Judah. [25:27-28]

2 Chronicles 26

Q? Who made Uzziah king after the death of his father Amaziah?

A. The people of Judah took Uzziah and made him king in place of his father Amaziah. [26:1]

Q? What did Uzziah do to the town of Eloth after he became king?

A. Uzziah rebuilt Eloth and restored it to Judah. [26:2]

Q? How did Uzziah follow the example of his father in his relationship to Yahweh?

A. Uzziah did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh and set himself to seek God. [26:4-5]

Q? What happened to Uzziah as long as he sought Yahweh?

A. As long as Uzziah sought Yahweh, God made him prosper. [26:5]

Q? What was the result of God helping Uzziah as he fought against his enemies?

A. God helped Uzziah fight against his enemies, and his fame spread to other lands, and he became very powerful. [26:6-8]

Q? What did Uzziah build at the gates in Jerusalem and in the wilderness?

A. Uzziah built towers at the corner gates of Jerusalem and at the turning wall. He also built watch towers in the wilderness. [26:9-10]

Q? Why did Uzziah build watch towers, and why did he dig cisterns in the wilderness?

A. Uzziah built watch towers and dug cisterns in the wilderness because he had cattle and people who farmed and he loved farming. [26:10]

Q? How did Uzziah's army make war?

A. Uzziah's army made war with mighty power to help the king against the enemy. [26:11, 13]

Q? What was invented by skillful men in Jerusalem as Uzziah equipped his army?

A. In Jerusalem, Uzziah built engines that were invented by skillful men. [26:14-15]

Q? How far did Uzziah's fame spread when he was greatly helped by Yahweh, until he became very powerful?

A. Uzziah's fame spread to distant lands. [26:15]

Q? How did Uzziah trespass against Yahweh, his God, when he became powerful?

A. Uzziah trespassed against Yahweh when he went into the house of Yahweh to burn incense on the altar of incense. [26:16]

Q? Why did Azariah and the eighty priests go in after Uzziah, and why did Azariah say that Uzziah had trespassed when he burned incense in the sanctuary?

A. The priests told Uzziah that it is only the priests, the sons of Aaron, who are consecrated to burn incense in the sanctuary, so Uzziah had trespassed when he burned incense to Yahweh. [26:17-18]

Q? What happened to Uzziah as he was holding a censer in his hand to burn incense, and when he was angry with the priests?

A. While Uzziah was holding a censer, and when he became angry with the priests, leprosy broke out on his forehead. [26:19]

Q? Why did leprosy break out on Uzziah's forehead?

A. Leprosy broke out on Uzziah's forehead because Yahweh had struck him. [26:20]

Q? Why did Uzziah have to live in a separate house until the day of his death?

A. Uzziah had to live in a separate house because he was a leper and he was cut off from the house of Yahweh. [26:21]

Q? Who became king after Uzziah died and was buried with his ancestors?

A. Jotham, Uzziah's son, became king in his place. [26:23]

2 Chronicles 27

Q? How old was Jotham when he became king of Judah and how long did he reign?

A. Jotham was twenty-five years old when he became king and he reigned for sixteen years in Jerusalem. [27:1]

Q? How did the people of Judah behave even though Jotham did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh?

A. The people of Judah still behaved in evil ways, even though Jotham did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh. [27:2]

Q? What did Jotham build in Jerusalem?

A. Jotham built the upper gate of the house of Yahweh, and he built much on the hill of Ophel. [27:3]

Q? What did Jotham build in the hill country and forests of Judah?

A. Jotham built cities in the hill country, and castles and towers in the forests of Judah. [27:4]

Q? Why did the people of Ammon give Jotham silver, wheat, and barley?

A. The people of Ammon gave Jotham silver, wheat, and barley because he fought with them and defeated them. [27:5]

Q? Why did Jotham become powerful?

A. Jotham became powerful because he walked firmly before Yahweh his God. [27:6]

Q? Where was Jotham buried when he died?

A. Jotham was buried in the city of David. [27:9]

Q? Who became king of Judah after the death of Jotham?

A. Ahaz, Jotham's son, became king in his place. [27:9]

2 Chronicles 28

Q? What did Ahaz not do as David his ancestor had done?

A. Ahaz did not do what was right in the eyes of Yahweh, as David his ancestor had done. [28:1]

Q? What did Ahaz make as he walked in the ways of the kings of Israel?

A. Ahaz made cast metal figures for the Baals. [28:2]

Q? What did Ahaz do to his children in addition to making figures of Baal, offering incense, and following after the wickedness of the people groups which Yahweh had driven out before the people of Israel?

A. Ahaz put his children in fire as burnt offerings. [28:3]

Q? What was the cause of the defeats of Ahaz at the hand of the Arameans and also at the hand of the king of Israel?

A. Ahaz was defeated by the Arameans and the king of Israel because he and his people had forsaken Yahweh, the God of their ancestors. [28:5-6]

Q? What did the army of Israel take back to Samaria?

A. The army of Israel took captives from their kinsmen, and they also took much plunder which they carried back to Samaria. [28:8]

Q? Who went out to meet the army coming into Samaria?

A. Obed, a prophet of Yahweh, came out to meet the army. [28:9]

Q? What was the accusation that Obed brought against the army?

A. Obed accused the army of slaughtering the people of Judah in a rage that reached up to heaven. [28:9]

Q? What did Obed tell the army of Israel to do with the prisoners they had taken as slaves from Jerusalem?

A. Obed told the army to send the prisoners back, because Yahweh's fierce wrath was on them. [28:10-11]

Q? What did the leaders of the people of Ephraim say was the reason they should not bring the prisoners to Samaria?

A. The leaders said it would add to their sins against Yahweh and bring his fierce wrath against Israel. [28:13]

Q? What did the leaders do with the prisoners when the armed men left the prisoners before them?

A. The leaders clothed them, gave them sandals, gave them food to eat and drink, treated their wounds, put the weak on donkeys, and took them back to their families in Jericho. [28:14-15]

Q? What made it necessary for King Ahaz to send messengers to the kings of Assyria asking for help?

A. It was necessary for Ahaz to ask the kings of Assyria for help because the Edomites had attacked Judah and the Philistines had invaded the cities of the lowlands and of the Negev of Judah. [28:16-18]

Q? What did Ahaz do which caused Yahweh to bring Judah low?

A. Judah was brought low because Ahaz had acted wickedly and had sinned against Yahweh very heavily. [28:19]

Q? Why did Ahaz plunder the house of Yahweh and the houses of the king and the leaders?

A. Ahaz plundered the house of Yahweh and the houses of the king and the leaders in order to give the valuable things to the kings of Assyria. [28:21]

Q? What brought on the ruin Ahaz and all of Israel?

A. Ahaz sinned against Yahweh and sacrificed to the gods of Damascus. [28:22-23]

Q? What did Ahaz do to the furnishings of the house of God?

A. Ahaz cut the furnishings to pieces and shut the doors of the house of Yahweh. [28:24]

Q? What was the result of Ahaz making altars for himself in every corner of Jerusalem, and making shrines to burn sacrifices to other gods in every city of Judah?

A. The result of Ahaz's actions was that he provoked to anger Yahweh, the God of his ancestors. [28:24-25]

Q? Where are the rest of Ahaz's deeds recorded?

A. The rest of Ahaz's deeds are recorded in The Book of the Kings of Judah and Israel. [28:26]

Q? Who became king after Ahaz died and was buried in Jerusalem?

A. Hezekiah, Ahaz's son, became king in his place. [28:27]

2 Chronicles 29

Q? What example did Hezekiah follow when he began to reign at the age of twenty-five?

A. Hezekiah followed the example of his ancestor David and did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh. [29:1-2]

Q? What did Hezekiah tell the Levites to do after he had opened the doors of the house of Yahweh and had repaired them?

A. Hezekiah told the Levites to consecrate themselves, consecrate the house of Yahweh, and carry away the filthiness from the holy place. [29:3-5]

Q? What did Hezekiah say that their ancestors did in the sight of Yahweh?

A. Hezekiah said that their ancestors trespassed and did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh their God. [29:6]

Q? What did their ancestors not do in the place where Yahweh lived?

A. Their ancestors did not burn incense or offer burnt offerings in the holy place to the God of Israel. [29:6-7]

Q? What was the result of Yahweh's wrath falling on Judah and Jerusalem?

A. Yahweh made Judah and Jerusalem to be an object of terror, horror, and scorn. [29:8]

Q? What happened to their fathers, sons, daughters, and wives because of the wrath of Yahweh?

A. Their fathers fell by the sword and their sons, daughters, and wives were brought into captivity because of the wrath of Yahweh. [29:9]

Q? What did Hezekiah propose to do so that Yahweh's fierce anger might turn away from them?

A. Hezekiah proposed that they make a covenant with Yahweh, the God of Israel. [29:10]

Q? What did the Levites do after they gathered their brothers?

A. The Levites and their brothers, dedicated themselves to Yahweh, and went in to cleanse the house of Yahweh. [29:15]

Q? What did the priests do with all the filth that they found in the temple of Yahweh as they cleansed it?

A. The priests took all the filth and carried it out to the brook Kidron. [29:16]

Q? How long did it take the priests to sanctify the house of Yahweh?

A. The priests began on the first day of the first month and on the sixteenth day of the first month they finished. [29:17]

Q? What did the priests tell Hezekiah they had prepared and sanctified in addition to cleansing all the house of Yahweh?

A. In addition to cleansing all the house of Yahweh, the priests prepared and sanctified all the implements that King Ahaz threw away when he trespassed during his reign. [29:18-19]

Q? What did Hezekiah command the priests to do with the animals they brought as a sin offering for Judah?

A. Hezekiah told the priests to offer the animals on the altar of Yahweh. [29:20-21]

Q? Why did the priests kill the animals and splash their blood on the altar?

A. The priests killed the animals and splashed their blood on the altar to make atonement for all Israel. A burnt offering and a sin offering had to be made for all Israel. [29:22-24]

Q? From whom did the command come for arranging the Levites and their instruments in the house of Yahweh?

A. The command came from Yahweh by means of his prophets. [29:25]

Q? How long did the singing and playing of music continue as all the assembly worshiped and the burnt offering began?

A. The singing and music continued until the burnt offering was finished. [29:27-28]

Q? What was the attitude of the Levites as they sang praises to Yahweh using the words of David and Asaph?

A. The Levites sang praises with gladness and they bowed down and worshiped. [29:30]

Q? What did the assembly bring into the house of Yahweh?

A. The assembly brought in sacrifices and thank offerings, and all who had a willing heart brought burnt offerings. [29:31]

Q? What kinds of animals did the assembly bring to be used as burnt offerings?

A. The assembly brought bulls, rams, lambs, oxen, and sheep to be used as burnt offerings. [29:32-33]

Q? Why did the priests have to ask the Levites to help skin the burnt offerings?

A. The priests had to ask the Levites to help them skin the burnt offerings because the priests were too few to do the work themselves. [29:34]

Q? What did Hezekiah and all the people do when the service of the house of Yahweh was set in order?

A. Hezekiah and all the people rejoiced. [29:35-36]

2 Chronicles 30

Q? To where did Hezekiah send messengers and to whom did he write letters?

A. Hezekiah sent messengers to all of Israel and Judah, and wrote letters to Ephraim and Manasseh. [30:1]

Q? What did Hezekiah's message tell them?

A. The message told them they should come to Jerusalem to the house of Yahweh to celebrate the Passover. [30:1]

Q? Who were they that consulted together, to celebrate the Passover in the second month?

A. They were the king, his leaders, and all the assembly in Jerusalem. [30:2]

Q? Why could they not celebrate the Passover right away?

A. They could not celebrate the Passover right away, because there were not sufficient numbers of consecrated priests, nor had the people gathered in Jerusalem. [30:3]

Q? How did this plan appear to the king and all the assembly?

A. The plan appeared to be right in their eyes. [30:4]

Q? What did the king and all the assembly establish and make?

A. They established a decree and made a proclamation. [30:5]

Q? To where did the proclamation go?

A. The proclamation went throughout all Israel, from Beersheba to Dan. [30:5]

Q? What did the proclamation say?

A. The proclamation said the people should come to celebrate the Passover of Yahweh in Jerusalem. [30:5]

Q? By what means did the proclamation go?

A. The proclamation went with couriers by letters from the king and his leaders to all of Israel and Judah. [30:6]

Q? What did the proclamation say would happen if the people turned back to Yahweh?

A. The brothers and children would find compassion before those who had taken them as prisoners, and would come back into Israel. [30:9]

Q? Where did the couriers go and how did the people respond?

A. The couriers went from city to city throughout Ephraim and Manasseh all the way to Zebulun, but the people responded to them with laughing and mocking. [30:10]

Q? Who humbled themselves and what did they do?

A. Certain men of Asher, Manasseh, and Zebulun humbled themselves and came to Jerusalem. [30:11]

Q? What did the hand of God do and what happened?

A. The hand of God came on Judah and they had one heart to carry out the command. [30:12]

Q? How many gathered in Jerusalem to celebrate the Festival of Unleavened Bread in the second month?

A. Many people, a very great assembly, gathered in Jerusalem. [30:13]

Q? What did those gathered in Jerusalem do?

A. They took away the altars, all the altars for incense, and threw them into the Kidron. Then they killed the Passover lambs on the fourteenth day of the second month. [30:14-15]

Q? What did the priests and Levites who were ashamed do?

A. They consecrated themselves and brought burnt offerings into the house of Yahweh. [30:15]

Q? How did they stand and what did the priests do?

A. They stood in their divisions following the law of Moses, and the priests sprinkled blood. [30:16]

Q? Why did the priests sprinkle the blood they received from the Levites?

A. Because many had not consecrated themselves, the Levites were in charge of slaughtering the Passover lambs, and the priests received it from them to sprinkle. [30:17]

Q? Why did Hezekiah pray for the people of Ephraim, Manasseh, Issachar, and Zebulun, and for what did he pray?

A. Many of the people had not purified themselves and ate the Passover meal against the written instructions. So Hezekiah prayed for Yahweh to pardon those who set their hearts to seek God, although they were not purified by the standards of the sanctuary. [30:18-19]

Q? What did Yahweh do in response to the prayer?

A. Yahweh listened to Hezekiah and healed the people. [30:20]

Q? What did the people of Israel, the Levites, and the priests do?

A. The people kept the Festival for seven days with great joy. The Levites and priests praised Yahweh singing with loud instruments. [30:21]

Q? How did Hezekiah speak to the Levites who understood the service of Yahweh, and what did they do?

A. Hezekiah encouraged them and they ate throughout the festival for seven days, offering fellowship sacrifices, and making confession to Yahweh. [30:22]

Q? What did the whole assembly decide to do when Hezekiah gave the assembly one thousand bulls and seven thousand sheep, and the leaders gave one thousand bulls and ten thousand sheep and goats?

A. The whole assembly decided to celebrate for another seven days, and they did with joy. [30:23-24]

Q? Who were all those that rejoiced in the celebration?

A. All the assembly of Judah, the priests, the Levites, and all the people who came together from Israel, the foreigners who came from Israel and those who lived in Judah rejoiced. [30:25]

Q? How was the celebration described?

A. There was great joy in Jerusalem, and since the time of Solomon, there had not been anything like it in Jerusalem. [30:26]

Q? What did the priests and Levites do next in the celebration?

A. They blessed the people and their voice was heard and their prayer went up to heaven. [30:27]

2 Chronicles 31

Q? What did the Israelites do after celebrating the Festival of the Unleavened Bread?

A. The people of Israel went out to the cities of Judah, broke the sacred stone pillars, cut down the Asherah poles, broke down the shrines and altars in Judah, Benjamin, Ephraim and Manasseh, until they had destroyed them all. [31:1]

Q? Where did the people of Israel go after they did this?

A. They returned to their own land and city. [31:1]

Q? What did Hezekiah assign the priests and the Levites to do after he organized them by their divisions?

A. Hezekiah assigned them to make burnt offerings, fellowship offerings, to serve, to give thanks, and to praise at the gates of Yahweh's temple. [31:2]

Q? What portion did Hezekiah assign and when was it to be offered?

A. The portion was to be a king's portion from his own possessions, and the burnt offerings were for the morning, evening, Sabbath days, the new moons, and the fixed festivals. [31:3]

Q? What did Hezekiah command the people of Jerusalem to do so the priests and Levites might concentrate on obeying the law of Yahweh?

A. The people were to give a portion for the priests and Levites. [31:4]

Q? What happened when the command went out to the people?

A. The people of Israel gave the first fruits of grain, new wine, oil, honey, and from the harvest of the field to all in abundance. They also gave the tithe of all things. [31:5]

Q? What did the people in the cities of Judah do about the command?

A. The people in the cities of Judah brought the tithe of oxen, sheep, and a tithe of things that were consecrated to Yahweh, laying them in heaps. [31:6]

Q? What were the months when the people laid the heaps?

A. The people laid the heaps beginning in the third month and finishing the heaps in the seventh month. [31:7]

Q? Who blessed Yahweh and the people when they saw the heaps?

A. Hezekiah and the leaders blessed Yahweh and the people. [31:8]

Q? How did Azariah, the chief priest, answer Hezekiah when he asked the priests and the Levites about the heaps?

A. Azariah answered that the people brought the tithes and put them in these large heaps. He told Hezekiah that they had eaten enough, and these heaps were left over because Yahweh had blessed the people. [31:9-10]

Q? What did Hezekiah command to be prepared and what did the people do?

A. Hezekiah commanded storerooms be prepared in the house of Yahweh. Then the people prepared them and brought in the offerings, tithes, and consecrated things. [31:11-12]

Q? Who did Hezekiah and Azariah appoint to be managers in charge of the storerooms?

A. Hezekiah and Azariah appointed Conaniah manager in charge with Conaniah's brother, Shimei, as manager second in charge. [31:12]

Q? To whom did Kore and those with him distribute the offerings?

A. They distributed to those males three years old and up, division by division, who were counted in the genealogies that entered the house of Yahweh that did the work in their positions. [31:16]

Q? Who was counted next to receive the offerings?

A. They gave to the Levites twenty years old and up that were filling their positions division by division. [31:17]

Q? What had the people done before receiving the offerings from Kore and those with him?

A. The people had consecrated themselves before the distribution to all their little ones, their wives, and their sons and daughters, who were counted in their genealogies. [31:18]

Q? What was done for the priests who were counted in the genealogies as being among the Levites?

A. There were men assigned to give portions to all the males who were in the fields of the villages that belonged to the cities or in every city. [31:19]

Q? Where did Hezekiah accomplish this and how was it done?

A. Hezekiah accomplished this throughout all Judah and it was done good, right, and faithful before Yahweh. [31:20]

Q? In what way did Hezekiah perform each project, and what was the result?

A. Hezekiah performed all these projects with all his heart, and he succeeded. [31:21]

2 Chronicles 32

Q? What did Sennacherib, king of Assyria, do to Judah?

A. He entered Judah and attacked the cities. [32:1]

Q? With what did Hezekiah ask his leaders to help?

A. He asked them to stop up all the springs and streams so the king of Assyria would not find water. [32:2-4]

Q? What did Hezekiah do to guard against the enemy's attack?

A. He built up the walls and made a large amounts of weapons. [32:5]

Q? What encouraging words did Hezekiah give to his people?

A. He told them to be strong, of good courage, and not be afraid because Yahweh, who is greater than their enemy, will help them fight. [32:6-8]

Q? Why did Sennacherib send his servants to Jerusalem?

A. He wanted to know what Hezekiah was relying on for a victory. [32:9-10]

Q? How did Sennacherib try to persuade the people that Hezekiah was misleading them?

A. He said they might die of famine and thirst and questioned whether Yahweh would rescue them. [32:11]

Q? What did Sennacherib and his ancestors do to other people and their lands?

A. Because their gods could not help them, they were completely destroyed. [32:13-14]

Q? Why did Sennacherib say the Israelites should not believe Hezekiah?

A. Sennacherib wanted to mislead the people into believing that God would not rescue them from his powerful hand. [32:14-15]

Q? What did Sennacherib do to mock Yahweh?

A. He wrote letters to speak against Yahweh, to remind the people of Jerusalem of the past, and that Hezekiah's God will not rescue them. [32:16-17]

Q? Why did Sennacherib's servants cry in the Jews' language to the people of Jerusalem?

A. The servants wanted to frighten the people so they might capture the city. [32:18]

Q? How did Yahweh respond when Hezekiah and Isaiah prayed and cried out to heaven?

A. He sent an angel, who killed the fighting men and the officers. [32:20-21]

Q? What happened to Sennacherib after the angel killed his army?

A. Sennacherib returned embarrassed to his own land, where his children killed him. [32:21]

Q? How was Hezekiah exalted?

A. Yahweh saved Hezekiah from Sennacherib and others. Precious gifts were brought to Yahweh and Hezekiah by many. [32:22-23]

Q? What happened to Hezekiah when he didn't give thanks to Yahweh when he was deathly sick?

A. God's anger came on him, and Judah and Jerusalem. After he and the people of Jerusalem humbled themselves, Yahweh's anger did not come on them for the rest of Hezekiah's life. [32:24-26]

Q? After Hezekiah humbled himself what did God give him?

A. God abundantly blessed him with precious stones, much harvest, many animals, and cities. [32:27-29]

Q? Why did God leave Hezekiah to himself after Hezekiah succeeded in all his projects?

A. God wanted to test him and know what was in his heart. [32:30-31]

Q? Where are Hezekiah's good deeds written?

A. They are written in The Vision of Isaiah the Prophet and in The Book of the Kings of Judah and Israel. [32:32]

2 Chronicles 33

Q? What kind of a king was Manasseh for fifty-five years?

A. He did evil things in the sight of Yahweh, rebuilt idols that Hezekiah had torn down, and worshiped the stars of heaven. [33:1-3]

Q? What did he do to provoke God to anger?

A. Manasseh offered his children as burnt offerings, performed sorcery, and consulted with those that talked with the dead. [33:6]

Q? What did Manasseh do to lead the people of Judah and Jerusalem to do evil?

A. He broke the commandments by placing the carved figure in the house of God. [33:7]

Q? What happened to Manasseh when Yahweh spoke to him and the people?

A. Because they paid no attention, Yahweh had the army of the king of Assyria put Manasseh in chains and take him to Babylon. [33:10-11]

Q? What did Manasseh do so that God would bring him back to Jerusalem?

A. He humbled himself, prayed, and begged God. [33:12-13]

Q? After Manasseh prayed, what action did he take to show his remorse?

A. He built a high wall around Judah and took away foreign gods, the idol that he had placed in God's house, and all the altars he had built. [33:14-15]

Q? To whom did the people offer sacrifices at the shrines?

A. They offered sacrifices only to Yahweh at the shrines. [33:17]

Q? How were Manasseh's prayers and important matters preserved?

A. Manasseh's important matters, prayers, and words of the seers are recorded with the deeds of the kings of Israel. [33:18]

Q? What kind of king was Amon during his two-year reign?

A. He was more evil than his father, he worshiped carved figures, and he did not humble himself before Yahweh. [33:21-23]

Q? After King Amon's servants killed him, what did the people of the land do to those who killed him?

A. The people of the land killed all the servants who put Amon to death. [33:24]

2 Chronicles 34

Q? Although King Josiah was only eight years old when he became king, what did he do during his reign that pleased Yahweh?

A. He sought after God, he began to cleanse Judah and Jerusalem from the shrines, idols, and carved figures. [34:1-3]

Q? How did Josiah cleanse Judah and Jerusalem?

A. He destroyed the altars, broke the Asherah poles, carved figures, and cast metal figures and the dust he scattered on the graves. The bones of the priests he burned on their altars. [34:4-5]

Q? What did Josiah do in the land of Israel before he returned to Jerusalem?

A. He repeated the cleansing that he did in Judah and Jerusalem. [34:6-7]

Q? Where did the money come from that would be used to repair the house of Yahweh?

A. The money had been collected from the people of Jerusalem and entrusted to the high priest. [34:8-9]

Q? To whom was the money distributed and for what was it used?

A. Carpenters and builders bought stone and timber to repair the temple. [34:10-11]

Q? What roles did the Levites play in the repair of the temple?

A. Some were supervisors, secretaries, administrators, and gate guards; others were good musicians and directed the faithful workmen. [34:12-13]

Q? What did the priest find when he brought out the money that had been brought into the house of Yahweh?

A. The high priest found the book of the law of Yahweh that had been given through Moses. [34:14]

Q? What did the king do after hearing the words of the law?

A. King Josiah tore his clothes. [34:19]

Q? Why will God's anger be poured out on the people and not cease?

A. They have forsaken him by worshiping other gods as their ancestors had done. [34:25]

Q? Because Josiah's heart was tender, what happened when he humbled himself after hearing God's words?

A. God said he would give him peace, and he would not see any of the disasters that God would bring on the people and land. [34:26-28]

Q? Why did Josiah have all the people, great and small, gather together?

A. Josiah read to them from the book of the covenant. [34:29-30]

Q? What covenant did Josiah make with Yahweh?

A. He made a covenant before Yahweh to keep his commandments. [34:31-32]

Q? What did the people of Israel do to obey Josiah?

A. They worshiped Yahweh and did not turn away from him. [34:33]

2 Chronicles 35

Q? How did Josiah keep the Passover in Jerusalem?

A. He had the Passover lambs killed and placed the priests in their positions in the house of Yahweh. [35:1-2]

Q? Where did Josiah tell the people to put the holy ark instead of carrying it on their shoulders?

A. They were told to put the holy ark in the house that Solomon built. [35:3]

Q? How were the people to get ready for the Passover?

A. The people were to kill the Passover lambs and consecrate themselves in obedience to God's word. [35:6]

Q? How did the people of Israel offer their sacrifices to Yahweh?

A. They killed the Passover lamb, splashed the blood, skinned the lambs, and offered the burnt offerings to Yahweh, as was written in the book of Moses. [35:11-12]

Q? What did the people of Israel do after the Passover celebration?

A. They celebrated the Festival of Unleavened Bread for seven days. [35:16-17]

Q? Why was this celebration of the Passover so special?

A. It was special because this is the first time it had been held in Israel since the days of the prophet Samuel. [35:18]

Q? What was the message that the king of Egypt brought to Josiah?

A. He said God had commanded him to fight against Carchemish and that Josiah should not interfere. [35:20-21]

Q? What was Josiah's reaction to the message from the king of Egypt?

A. He did not listen to the king's words, but instead, Josiah disguised himself so he could fight. [35:22]

Q? What happened to Josiah on the battle field?

A. He was shot by archers and his servants took him to Jerusalem, where he later died. [35:23-24]

Q? What are the songs of lament that have become customary in Israel?

A. They are songs that have been sung to lament for Josiah and are still sung. [35:25]

Q? Where are the matters of Josiah and his good deeds recorded?

A. They are contained in The Book of the Kings of Judah and Israel. [35:26-27]

2 Chronicles 36

Q? After Josiah died, who became king of Jerusalem?

A. The people of the land made Josiah's son, Jehoahaz, king and he reigned for three months. [36:1-2]

Q? How did Eliakim become king of Judah and Jerusalem?

A. His brother, the king of Egypt, removed Jehoahaz after three months and made Eliakim king, changing his name to Jehoiakim. [36:3-4]

Q? What kind of ruler was Jehoiakim in his reign of eleven years?

A. Jehoiakim was evil in the sight of Yahweh. [36:5]

Q? What did King Nebuchadnezzar, of Babylon, do to the king of Judah?

A. He attacked him, bound him in chains, and took him to Babylon. [36:6]

Q? What did Nebuchadnezzar do to the house of Yahweh?

A. He carried some of the objects in the house of Yahweh to Babylon, and put them in his palace. [36:7]

Q? Who became king after Jehoiakim?

A. His son, Jehoiachin, became king after him. [36:8]

Q? What kind of king was Jehoiachin?

A. In his short reign, he did evil in the sight of Yahweh. [36:9]

Q? How did King Nebuchadnezzar treat this Jehoiachin?

A. He brought Jehoiachin to Babylon along with more valuable things from the house of Yahweh. [36:10]

Q? How did Zedekiah respond to Yahweh?

A. He did evil in the sight of Yahweh, and he did not humble himself before the prophet Jeremiah, who spoke from the mouth of Yahweh. [36:12]

Q? How did Zedekiah rebel against King Nebuchadnezzar?

A. He hardened his heart against Yahweh and turned away from King Nebuchadnezzar. [36:13]

Q? How did the people respond to the compassion that Yahweh continued to show them?

A. They mocked God's messengers, despised his words, and scoffed at his prophets. [36:15-16]

Q? How did God deal with the mockers?

A. He had the young men killed by the king of the Chaldeans, and all the others were given over to the king. [36:17]

Q? What did the king of the Babylonians do to Jerusalem and what did he take to Babylon?

A. He destroyed the house of God, the wall of Jerusalem, all its palaces, and the beautiful things in it. Then he took all the furnishings and treasures to Babylon. [36:18-19]

Q? What happened to those that escaped the killing?

A. They became servants for the king and his sons, which fulfilled Yahweh's words to Jeremiah. [36:20-21]

Q? What did Cyrus, king of Persia, proclaim and put in writing?

A. He said Yahweh had commanded him to build a house of God in Jerusalem and that God would be with them when they go up to the land. [36:22-23]

translationWords

Aaron

Facts:

Aaron was Moses' older brother. God chose Aaron to be the first high priest for the people of Israel.

- Aaron helped Moses speak to Pharaoh about letting the Israelites go free.
- While the Israelites were traveling through the desert, Aaron sinned by making an idol for the people to worship.
- God also appointed Aaron and his descendants to be the **priest, priesthood** priests for the people of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [priest, priesthood, Moses, Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-15]** God warned Moses and **Aaron** that Pharaoh would be stubborn.
- **[10-05]** Pharaoh called Moses and **Aaron** and told them that if they stopped the plague, the Israelites could leave Egypt.
- **[13-09]** God chose Moses' brother, **Aaron**, and Aaron's descendants to be his priests.
- **[13-11]** So they (the Israelites) brought gold to **Aaron** and asked him to form it into an idol for them!
- **[14-07]** They (the Israelites) became angry with Moses and **Aaron** and said, "Oh, why did you bring us to this horrible place?"

Abijah

Facts:

Abijah was the name of a king of Judah who reigned from 915-913 BC. He was the son of King Rehoboam. There were also several other men named Abijah in the Old Testament.

- Samuel's sons Abijah and Joel were leaders over the people of Israel at Beersheba. Because Abijah and his brother were dishonest and greedy, the people asked Samuel to appoint a king to rule them instead.
- Another Abijah was one of the temple priests during the time of King David.
- Abijah was the name of one of King Jeroboam's sons.
- Abijah was also the name of a chief priest who returned with Zerubbabel to Jerusalem from the Babylonian captivity.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Abraham, Abram

Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to “Abraham.”

- The name “Abram” means “exalted father”
- “Abraham” means, “father of many.”
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- While living in the land of Canaan, when they were very old, Abraham and his wife Sarah had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [chaldea](#), [Sarah](#), [Sarai](#), [Isaac](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-06]** When **Abram** arrived in Canaan, God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance.”
- **[05-04]** Then God changed **Abram’s** name to **Abraham**, which means “father of many.”
- **[05-05]** About a year later, when **Abraham** was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s son.
- **[05-06]** When Isaac was a young man, God tested **Abraham’s** faith by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **[06-01]** When **Abraham** was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, **Abraham** sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **[06-04]** After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- **[21-02]** God promised **Abraham** that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

Absalom

Facts:

Absalom was the third son of King David. He was known for his handsome appearance and fiery temperament.

- When Absalom's sister Tamar was raped by their half-brother, Amnon, Absalom made a plan to have Amnon killed.
- After the murder of Amnon, Absalom fled to the region of Geshur (where his mother Maacah was from) and stayed there three years. Then King David sent for him to come back to Jerusalem, but did not allow Absalom to come into his presence for two years.
- Absalom turned some of the people against King David and led a revolt against him.
- David's army fought against Absalom and killed him. David was very grieved when this happened.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Geshur](#), [Amnon](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

adversary, enemy

Definition:

An “adversary” is a person or group who is opposed to someone or something. The term “enemy” has a similar meaning.

- An adversary can be a person who tries to oppose you or harm you.
- A nation can be called an “adversary” when it fights against another nation.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an “adversary” and an “enemy.”
- Adversary may be translated as “opponent” or “enemy,” but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See: [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

afflict, affliction

Definition:

The term “afflict” means to cause someone distress or suffering. An “affliction” is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships in order to cause them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To “be afflicted with” means to be suffering some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.

Translation Suggestions:

- To afflict someone could be translated as “cause someone to experience troubles” or “cause someone to suffer” or “cause suffering to come.”
- In certain contexts “afflict” could be translated as “happen to” or “come to” or “bring suffering.”
- A phrase like, “afflict someone with leprosy” could be translated as, “cause someone to be sick with leprosy.”
- When a disease or disaster is sent to “afflict” people or animals, this could be translated as “cause suffering to.”
- Depending on the context, the term “affliction” could be translated as “calamity” or “sickness” or “suffering” or “great distress.” physical
- The phrase “afflicted with” could also be translated as, “suffering from” or “sick with.”

(See: [leprosy](#), [leper](#), [leprous](#), [plague](#), [suffer](#), [suffering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Ahab

Facts:

Ahab was a very evil king who reigned over the northern kingdom of Israel from 875 to 854 BC.

- King Ahab influenced the people of Israel to worship false gods.
- The prophet Elijah confronted Ahab and told him there would be a severe drought for three and a half years as punishment for the sins that Ahab caused Israel to commit.
- Ahab and his wife Jezebel did many other evil things, including using their power to kill innocent people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Baal](#), [Elijah](#), [Jezebel](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[19-02]** Elijah was a prophet when **Ahab** was king over the kingdom of Israel. **Ahab** was an evil man who encouraged people to worship a false god named Baal.
- **[19-03]** **Ahab** and his army looked for Elijah, but they could not find him.
- **[19-05]** After three and a half years, God told Elijah to return to the kingdom of Israel and speak with **Ahab** because he was going to send rain again.

Ahaz

Definition:

Ahaz was a wicked king who ruled over the kingdom of Judah from 732 BC to 716 BC. This was about 140 years before the time when many people in Israel and Judah were taken as captives to Babylonia.

- While he was ruling Judah, Ahaz had an altar built for worshipping the false gods of the Assyrians, which caused the people to turn away from the one true God, Yahweh.
- King Ahaz was 20 years old when he started to rule over Judah, and he ruled for 16 years.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Ahaziah

Facts:

Ahaziah was the name of two kings: one ruled over the kingdom of Israel, the other ruled over the kingdom of Judah.

- Judah's King Ahaziah was the son of King Jehoram. He reigned for one year (841 BC) and then was killed by Jehu. Ahaziah's young son Joash eventually took his place as king.
- Israel's King Ahaziah was the son of King Ahab. He reigned for two years (850-49 BC). He died from injuries suffered in a fall at his palace and his brother Joram became king.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jehu](#), [Ahab](#), [Jeroboam](#), [Joash](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Ahijah

Facts:

Ahijah is the name of several different men in the Old Testament. The following are some of these men:

- Ahijah was the name of a priest in the time of Saul.
- A man named Ahijah was a secretary during the reign of King Solomon.
- Ahijah was the name of a prophet from Shiloh who predicted that the nation of Israel would be divided into two kingdoms.
- The father of King Baasha of Israel was also named Ahijah.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Baasha](#), [Shiloh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

altar

Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living nearby the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: [altar of incense](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [grain offering](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-14]** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **[05-08]** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **[13-09]** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **[16-06]** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

marvel, wonder, amazed, astonished

Definition:

All these terms refer to being very surprised because of something extraordinary that happened.

- Some of these words are translations of Greek expressions that mean “struck with amazement” or “standing outside of (oneself).” These expressions express how very surprised or shocked the person was feeling. Other languages might also have expressions to express this.
- Usually the event that caused the wonder and amazement was a miracle, something only God could do.
- The meaning of these terms can also include feelings of confusion because what happened was totally unexpected.
- Other ways to translate these words could be, “extremely surprised” or “very shocked.”
- Related words include: “marvelous” (amazing, wonderful), “amazement,” and “astonishment.”
- In general, these terms are positive and express that the people were happy about what had happened.

(See also: [miracle](#), [sign](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Amaziah

Facts:

Amaziah became king over the kingdom of Judah when his father, King Joash, was murdered.

- King Amaziah reigned over Judah for twenty-nine years, from 796 BC to 767 BC.
- He was a good king, but he did not destroy the high places where idols were worshiped.
- Amaziah eventually put to death all the men who were responsible for the murder of his father.
- He defeated the rebellious Edomites and brought them back under the control of the Kingdom of Judah.
- He challenged King Jehoash of Israel to a battle, but lost. Part of the walls of Jerusalem were broken down and the silver and gold vessels of the temple were stolen.
- Years later King Amaziah turned away from Yahweh and certain men in Jerusalem plotted together and killed him.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Joash](#), [Edom](#), [Edomite](#), [Idumea](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

ambassador, representative

Definition:

An ambassador is a person who is chosen to officially represent his country in relating to foreign nations. It is also used in a figurative sense and is sometimes translated more generally as “representative.”

- An ambassador or representative gives people messages from the person or government that sent him.
- The more general term “representative” refers to someone who has been given the authority to act and speak on behalf of the person he he is representing.
- The apostle Paul taught that Christians are Christ’s “ambassadors” or “representatives” since they represent Christ in this world and teach others his message.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as, “official representative” or “appointed messenger” or “chosen representative” or “God’s appointed representative.”
- A “delegation of ambassadors” could be translated as “some official messengers” or “group of appointed representatives” or “official party of people to speak for all people.”

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See: [messenger](#) other)

Bible References:

Waiting

Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonitess

Facts:

The “people of Ammon” or the “Ammonites” were a people group in Canaan. They were descended from Ben-ammi, who was the son of Lot by his younger daughter.

- The term “Ammonitess” refers specifically to a female Ammonite. This could also be translated as, “Ammonite woman.”
- The Ammonites lived east of the Jordan River and were enemies of the Israelites.
- At one point, the Ammonites hired a prophet named Balaam to curse Israel, but God did not allow it.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Balaam](#), [curse](#), [cursed](#), [Jordan River](#), [Lot](#) other)

Bible References:

Waiting

Amorite

Facts:

The Amorites were a powerful group of people who were descended from Noah's grandson Canaan.

- Their name means "high one" which may refer to the mountainous regions where they lived or to the fact that they were known to be very tall in height.
- The Amorites lived in regions on both sides of the Jordan River. The city of Ai was inhabited by Amorites.
- God refers to the "sin of the Amorites" which included their worship of false gods and the sinful practices that were included in that.
- Joshua led the Israelites in destroying the Amorites, as God had commanded them to do.

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [15-07] Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the **Amorites**, heard that the Gibeonites had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked Gibeon.
- [15-08] In the early morning they surprised the **Amorite** armies and attacked them.
- [15-09] God fought for Israel that day. He caused the **Amorites** to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the **Amorites**.
- [15-10] God also caused the sun to stay in one place in the sky so that Israel would have enough time to completely defeat the **Amorites**.

Amoz

Facts:

Amoz was the father of the prophet Isaiah.

- The only times he is mentioned in the Bible is for identifying Isaiah as the “son of Amoz.”
- This name is different from the name of the prophet Amos and should be spelled differently.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See: [Amos](#), [Isaiah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

angel, archangel

Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term “archangel” refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word “angel” literally means “messenger.”
- The term “archangel” literally means “chief messenger.” The only angel referred to in the Bible as an “archangel” is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God’s authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God is by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, “angel of Yahweh” has more than one possible meaning: 1) It may mean “angel who represents Yahweh” or “messenger who serves Yahweh.” 2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel’s use of “I” as if Yahweh himself was talking.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “angel” could include, “messenger from God” or “God’s heavenly servant” or “God’s spirit messenger.”
- The term “archangel” could be translated as “chief angel” or “head ruling angel” or “leader of the angels.”
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase “angel of Yahweh” should be translated using the words for “angel” and “Yahweh.” This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include, “angel from Yahweh” or “angel sent by Yahweh” or “Yahweh who looked like an angel.”

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [chief](#), [head](#), [messenger](#), [Michael](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [02-12] God placed large, powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.
- [22-03] The **angel** responded to Zechariah, “I was sent by God to bring you this good news.”
- [23-06] Suddenly, a shining **angel** appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The **angel** said, “Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you.”
- [23-07] Suddenly, the skies were filled with **angels** praising God...
- [25-08] Then **angels** came and took care of Jesus.
- [38-12] Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an **angel** to strengthen him.
- [38-15] “I could ask the Father for an army of **angels** to defend me.”

angry, anger

Definition:

To “be angry” or to “have anger” means to be very displeased, irritated and upset about something or against someone.

- When people get angry, it often is sinful and selfish, but sometimes it is righteous anger against injustice or oppression.
- God’s anger (also called “wrath”) expresses his strong displeasure regarding sin.
- The phrase, “provoke to anger” means “cause to be angry.”

(See also: [wrath](#), [fury](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

anoint, anointed

Definition:

The term “anoint” means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. The term is also used figuratively to refer to the Holy Spirit choosing and empowering someone.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle, were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
- After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
- The titles “Messiah” (Hebrew) and “Christ” (Greek) mean “the Anointed (One).”
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “anoint” could be translated as “pour oil on” or “put oil on” or “consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on.”
- To “be anointed” could be translated as “be consecrated with oil.” or “be appointed” or “be consecrated.”
- In some contexts the term “anoint” could be translated as “appoint.”
- A phrase like “the anointed priest,” could be translated as “the priest who was consecrated with oil” or “the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [consecrate](#), [high priest](#), [King of the Jews](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

appoint, appointed

Definition:

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in, “appointed to eternal life.” This means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include, “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as, “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as, “be chosen.”

Bible References:

Waiting

Arabia, Arabian

Facts:

Arabia is the largest peninsula in the world, covering nearly 3,000,000 square kilometers. It is located southeast of Israel, and is bordered by the Red Sea, the Arabian Sea, and the Persian Gulf.

- The term “Arabian” is used to refer to someone who lives in Arabia or to something that is connected with Arabia.
- The earliest people to live in Arabia were grandchildren of Shem. Other early inhabitants of Arabia included Abraham’s son Ishmael and his descendants, as well as descendants of Esau.
- The desert region where the Israelites wandered for 40 years was located in Arabia.
- After becoming a believer in Jesus, the apostle Paul spent a few years in the desert of Arabia.
- In his letter to the Christians in Galatia, Paul mentioned that Mt Sinai was located in Arabia.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See: [Esau](#), [Galatia](#), [Ishmael](#), [Shem](#), [Sinai](#), [Mount Sinai](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Aram, Aramean, Aramaic

Definition:

“Aram” is the name of two men in the Old Testament. It was also the name of a region northeast of Canaan, where modern-day Syria is located.

- The people living in Aram became known as “Arameans” and spoke “Aramaic.” Jesus and other Jews of his time also spoke Aramaic.
- One of Shem’s sons was named Aram. Another man named Aram was a cousin of Rebekah. It is probable that the region of Aram was named after one of these two men.
- Aram later became known by the Greek name, “Syria.”
- The term “Paddan Aram” means “plain of Aram” and was located in the northern part of Aram.
- Some of Abraham’s relatives lived in the city of Haran, which was located in “Paddan Aram.”
- In the Old Testament, sometimes the terms “Aram” and “Paddan Aram” refer to the same region.
- The term “Aram Naharaim” may mean “Aram of Two Rivers.” This region was located in the northern part of Mesopotamia and was to the east of “Paddan Aram.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Mesopotamia](#), [Aram Naharaim](#), [Paddan Aram](#), [Rebekah](#), [Shem](#), [Syria](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

archer

Definition:

The term “archer” refers to a man who is skilled at using a bow and arrow as a weapon.

- In the Bible, an archer is usually a soldier who uses a bow and arrow to fight in an army.
- Archers were an important part of the Assyrian military force.
- Some languages might have a term for this such as, “bow-man.”

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of Yahweh

Definition:

These terms refer to a special wooden chest, overlaid with gold, that contained the two stone tablets on which the Ten Commandments were written. It also contained Aaron's staff and a jar of manna.

- The term "ark" here could be translated as "box" or "chest" or "container."
- The objects in this chest reminded the Israelites of God's covenant with them.
- The ark of the covenant was located in the "most holy place."
- God's presence was above the ark of the covenant in the most holy place of the tabernacle, where he spoke to Moses on behalf of the Israelites.
- During the time that the ark of the covenant was in the most holy place of the temple, the high priest was the only one who could approach the ark, once a year on the Day of Atonement.
- Many English versions translate the term "covenant decrees" literally as "testimony." This refers to the fact that the Ten Commandments were a testimony or witness to God's covenant with his people. It is also translated as "covenant law."

(See also: [ark](#), [covenant](#), [atonement](#), [atone](#), [holy place](#), [most holy place](#), [testimony](#), [testify](#), [witness](#), [eyewitness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

armor

Definition:

The term “armor” refers to the equipment a soldier uses to fight in a battle and protect himself from enemy attacks. It is also used in a figurative way to refer to spiritual armor.

- Parts of a soldier’s armor include a helmet, a shield, a breastplate, leg coverings, and a sword.
- Using the term figuratively, the apostle Paul compares physical armor to spiritual armor that God gives the believer to help him fight spiritual battles.
- The spiritual armor God gives his people to fight against sin and Satan includes truth, righteousness, the gospel of peace, faith, salvation, and the Holy Spirit.
- This could be translated with a term that means, “soldier gear” or “protective battle clothing” or “protective covering” or “weapons.”

(See also: [faith](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [peace](#), [peaceful](#), [salvation](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Asa

Facts:

Asa was a king who ruled over the kingdom of Judah for forty years, from 913-873 BC.

- King Asa was a good king who removed many idols of false gods and caused the Israelites to start worshiping Yahweh again.
- Yahweh gave King Asa success in his warfare against other nations.
- Later in his reign, however, King Asa stopped trusting Yahweh and became sick with a disease which eventually killed him.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Asaph

Facts:

Asaph was a Levite priest and gifted musician who composed the music for the psalms of King David. He also wrote his own psalms.

- Asaph was appointed by King David to be one of three musicians who were responsible for providing songs for worship in the temple. Some of these songs were also prophecies.
- Asaph trained his sons and they carried on this responsibility, playing musical instruments and prophesying in the temple.
- Some of the musical instruments included the lute, harp, trumpet, and cymbals.
- Psalms 50 and 73-83 are said to be from Asaph. It may be that some of these psalms were written by his family members.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [harp](#), [lute](#), [lyre](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [psalm](#), [trumpet](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Ashdod, Azotus

Facts:

Ashdod was one of the five most important cities of the Philistines. It was located in southwestern Canaan near the Mediterranean Sea, halfway between the cities of Gaza and Joppa.

- The temple of the Philistine's false god Dagon was located in Ashdod.
- God severely punished the people of Ashdod when the Philistines stole the ark of the covenant and put it in the pagan temple at Ashdod.
- The Greek name for this city was Azotus. It was one of the cities where the evangelist, Philip preached the gospel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [Ekron](#), [Gath](#), [Gaza](#), [Joppa](#), [Philip, the evangelist](#), [Philistines](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

{{tag>publish ktlink}}

Asher

Facts:

Asher was the eighth son of Jacob. His descendants formed one of the twelve tribes of Israel which was also called “Asher.”

- Asher’s mother was Zilpah, the servant of Leah.
- His name means “happy” or, “blessed.”
- Asher was also the name of the territory assigned to the tribe of Asher when the Israelites entered the promised land.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [israel](#), [twelvetribeisrael](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Asherah, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth

Definition:

Asherah was the name of a goddess that was worshiped by Canaanite people groups during Old Testament times. “Ashtoreth” may be another name for “Asherah,” or it could be the name of a different goddess that was very similar.

- The term “Asherah poles” refers to carved wooden images or carved trees that were made to represent this goddess.
- Asherah poles were often set up near altars of the false god Baal, who was thought of as Asherah’s husband. Some people groups worshiped Baal as the sun god and Asherah or Ashtoreth as the moon goddess.
- God commanded the Israelites to destroy all the carved images of Asherah.
- Some Israelite leaders such as Gideon, King Asa, and King Josiah obeyed God and led the people in destroying these idols.
- But other Israelite leaders such as King Solomon, King Manasseh, and King Ahab did not get rid of the Asherah poles and influenced the people to worship these idols.

(See also: [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [Baal](#), [Gideon](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

assembly, assemble

Definition:

The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together to discuss problems, give advice, and make decisions.

- An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.
- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” where the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers is sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”
- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
- When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
- The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

(See also: [council](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire

Facts:

Assyria was a powerful nation during the time the Israelites were living in the land of Canaan. The Assyrian Empire was a group of nations ruled by an Assyrian king.

- The nation of Assyria was located in a region that is now the northern part of Iraq.
- The Assyrians fought against Israel at different times in their history.
- In the year 722 BC, the Assyrians completely conquered the kingdom of Israel and forced many of the Israelites to move to Assyria.
- The remaining Israelites intermarried with foreigners that the Assyrians had brought into Israel from Samaria. The descendants of those people who intermarried were later called the Samaritans.

(See also: [Samaria](#), [Samaritan](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[20-02]** So God punished both kingdoms by allowing their enemies to destroy them. The kingdom of Israel was destroyed by the **Assyrian Empire**, a powerful, cruel nation. The **Assyrians** killed many people in the kingdom of Israel, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country.
- **[20-03]** The **Assyrians** gathered all the leaders, the rich people, and the people with skills and took them to **Assyria**.
- **[20-04]** Then the **Assyrians** brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been.

Athaliah

Facts:

Athaliah was the evil wife of Jehoram king of Judah. She was the granddaughter of the evil King Omri of Israel.

- Athaliah's son Ahaziah became king after Jehoram died.
- When her son Ahaziah died, Athaliah made a plan to kill all the rest of the king's family.
- But Athaliah's young grandson Joash was hidden by his aunt and saved from being killed. He later became king of Judah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahaziah](#), [Jehoram](#), [Joram](#), [Joash](#), [Omri](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

atonement, atone**Definition:**

The terms “atone” and “atonement” refer to how God provided a sacrifice to pay for people’s sins and to appease his wrath for sin.

- In Old Testament times, God allowed temporary atonement to be made for the sins of the Israelites by the offering of a blood sacrifice, which involved killing an animal.
- As recorded in the New Testament, Christ’s death on the cross is the only true and permanent atonement for sin.
- When Jesus died, he took the punishment that people deserved because of their sin. He paid the atonement price with his sacrificial death.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “atone” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “pay for” or “provide payment for” or “cause someone’s sins to be forgiven” or “make amends for a crime.”
- Ways to translate “atonement” could include, “payment” or “sacrifice to pay for sin” or “providing the means of forgiveness.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to payment of money.

(See also: [atonement lid](#), [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#), [propitiation](#), [reconcile](#), [reconciliation](#), [redeem](#), [redemption](#), [redeemer](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

authority

Definition:

The term “authority” refers to the power of influence and control that someone has over someone else.

- Kings and other governing rulers have authority over the people they are ruling.
- The word “authorities” refers to people, governments, or organizations that have authority over others.
- Masters have authority over their servants or slaves. Parents have authority over their children.
- Governments have the authority or right to make laws that govern their citizens.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “authority” can also be translated as “control” or “right” or “qualifications.”
- Sometimes “authority” is used with the meaning of “power.”
- When “authorities” is used to refer to people or organizations who rule people, it could also be translated as “leaders” or “rulers” or “powers.”
- The phrase “by his own authority” could also be translated as, “with his own right to lead” or “based on his own qualifications.”
- The expression, “under authority” could be translated as, “responsible to obey” or “having to obey others’ commands.”

(See also: [citizen](#), [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Azariah

Facts:

Azariah was the name of several men in the Old Testament.

- One Azariah is best known by his Babylonian name, Abednego. He was one of many Israelites from Judah who were captured by Nebuchadnezzar's army and taken to live in Babylon. Azariah and his fellow Israelites Hananiah and Mishael refused to worship the Babylonian king, so he had them thrown into a blazing furnace as punishment. But God protected them and they were not harmed at all.
- Uzziah king of Judah was also known as "Azariah."
- Another Azariah was an Old Testament high priest.
- In the time of the prophet Jeremiah, a man named Azariah wrongly urged the Israelites to disobey God by leaving their homeland.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Daniel](#), [Hananiah](#), [Mishael](#), [Jeremiah](#), [Uzziah](#), [Azariah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Baal

Facts:

“Baal” means “lord” or “master” and was the name of the primary false god that was worshiped by the Canaanites.

- There were also local false gods that had “Baal” as part of their names, such as “Baal of Peor.” Sometimes all these gods together are referred to as “the Baals.”
- Some people had names that included the word “Baal” in them.
- The worship of Baal included evil practices such as sacrificing children and using prostitutes.
- At different time periods throughout their history, the Israelites also became deeply involved in Baal worship, following the example of the pagan nations around them.
- During the reign of King Ahab, God’s prophet Elijah set up a test to prove to the people that Baal does not exist and that Yahweh is the only true God. As a result, the prophets of Baal were destroyed and the people started worshiping Yahweh again.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [asherah](#), [Elijah](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [prostitute](#), [harlot](#), [whore](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [19-02] Ahab was an evil man who encouraged people to worship a false god named **Baal**.
- [19-06] All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 prophets of **Baal**, came to Mount Carmel. Elijah said to the people, “How long will you keep changing your mind? If Yahweh is God, serve him! If **Baal** is God, serve him!”
- [19-07] Then Elijah said to the prophets of **Baal**, “Kill a bull and prepare it as a sacrifice, but do not light the fire.
- [19-08] Then the prophets of **Baal** prayed to **Baal**, “Hear us, O **Baal**!”
- [19-12] So the people captured the prophets of **Baal**. Then Elijah took them away from there and killed them.

Baasha

Facts:

Baasha was one of Israel's evil kings, who influenced the Israelites to worship idols.

- Baasha was the third king of Israel and reigned for twenty-four years, during the time when Asa was king of Judah.
- He was a military commander who became king by killing the previous king, Nadab.
- During Baasha's reign there were many wars between the kingdoms of Israel and Judah, especially with King Asa of Judah.
- Baasha's many sins caused God to eventually remove him from office by his death.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Asa](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Babylon, Babylonian

Facts:

The city of Babylon was the capital of the ancient region of Babylonia, which was also part of the Babylonian Empire.

- Babylon was located along the Euphrates River, in the same region where the Tower of Babel had been built hundreds of years before.
- Sometimes the word “Babylon” refers to the entire Babylonian Empire. For example, the “king of Babylon” ruled the entire empire, not just the city.
- The Babylonians were a powerful people group who attacked the kingdom of Judah and kept the people in exile in Babylonia for 70 years.
- Part of this region was called “Chaldea” and the people living there were the “Chaldeans.” As a result, the term “Chaldea” was often used to refer to Babylonia. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- In the New Testament, the term “Babylon” is sometimes used as a metaphor to refer to places, people, and thinking patterns that are associated with idol-worship and other sinful behaviors.
- The phrase “Babylon the Great” or “great city of Babylon” refers metaphorically to a city or nation that was large, wealthy, and sinful, just as the ancient city of Babylon was. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [Babel](#), [Chaldea](#), [Chaldean](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[20-06]** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the **Babylonians**, to attack the kingdom of Judah. **Babylon** was a powerful empire.
- **[20-07]** But after a few years, the king of Judah rebelled against **Babylon**. So, the **Babylonians** came back and attacked the kingdom of Judah. They captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **[20-09]** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to **Babylon**, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.
- **[20-11]** About seventy years later, Cyrus, the king of the Persians, defeated **Babylon**.

barley

Definition:

The term “barley” refers to a kind of grain that is used to make bread.

- The barley plant has a long stalk with a head at the top where the seeds or grains grow.
- Barley does well in warmer weather so it is often harvested in spring or summer.
- When barley is threshed, the edible seeds are separated from the worthless chaff.
- Barley grain is ground up into flour, which is then mixed with water or oil to make bread.
- If barley is not known, this could be translated as “grain called barley” or “barley grain.”

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [grain](#), [thresh](#), [threshing](#), [wheat](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

beast

Facts:

In the Bible, the term “beast” is often just another way of saying “animal.”

- A wild beast is a type of animal that lives freely in the forest or fields and has not been trained by people.
- A domestic beast is an animal that lives with people and is kept for food or for performing work, such as plowing fields. Often the term “livestock” is used to refer to this kind of animal.
- The Old Testament book of Daniel and the New Testament book of Revelation describe visions which have beasts that represent evil powers and authorities that oppose God. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Some of these beasts are described as having strange features, such as several heads and many horns. They often have power and authority, indicating that they may represent countries, nations, or other political powers.
- Ways to translate this could include, “creature” or “created thing” or “animal” or “wild animal,” depending on the context.

(See also: [authority](#), [Daniel](#), [livestock](#), [nation](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [reveal](#), [revelation](#))

- [Prev chunk: publish-current](#)
- [Next chunk: review-publish](#) | [publish-current](#)

Bible References:

Waiting

Beersheba

Facts:

In Old Testament times, Beersheba was a city located about 45 miles southwest of Jerusalem in a desert area that is now called the Negev.

- The desert surrounding Beersheba was the wilderness area where Hagar and Ishmael wandered after Abraham sent them away from his tents.
- The name of this city means “well of the oath.” It was given this name when Abraham swore an oath to not punish King Abimelech’s men for seizing control of one of Abraham’s wells.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abimelech](#), [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [Hagar](#), [Ishmael](#), [Jerusalem](#), [oath](#), [swear](#), [swear by](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

beg, beggar

Definition:

The term “beg” means to urgently ask someone for something. It often refers to asking for money, but it is also commonly used to refer to pleading for something.

- Often people beg or plead when they strongly need something, but don’t know if the other person will give them what they ask for.
- A “beggar” is someone who regularly sits or stands in a public place to ask people for money.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as, “plead” or “urgently ask” or “demand money” or “regularly ask for money.”

(See also: [plead](#), [pleading](#), [plea](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[10-04]** God sent frogs all over Egypt. Pharaoh **begged** Moses to take away the frogs.
- **[29-08]** ”The king called the servant and said, ”You wicked servant! I forgave your debt because you **begged** me.”
- **[32-07]** The demons **begged** Jesus, “Please do not send us out of this region!” There was a herd of pigs feeding on a nearby hill. So, the demons **begged** Jesus, “Please send us into the pigs instead!”
- **[32-10]** The man who used to have the demons **begged** to go along with Jesus.
- **[35-11]** His father came out and **begged** him to come and celebrate with them, but he refused.”
- **[44-01]** One day, Peter and John were going to the Temple. As they approached the Temple gate, they saw a crippled man who was **begging** for money.

believe, believe in, belief

Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

2. believe in

- To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
- To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
- To “believe in” could be translated as, “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”

(See also: [faith](#), [believer](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [03-04] Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- [04-08] Abram **believed** God’s promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God’s promise.
- [11-02] God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- [11-06] But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- [37-05] Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?”

Benjamin

Facts:

Benjamin was the youngest son born to Jacob and his wife Rachel. His name means, “son of my right hand.”

- He and his older brother Joseph were the only children of Rachel, who died after Benjamin was born.
- The descendants of Benjamin became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- King Saul was from the Israelite tribe of Benjamin.
- The apostle Paul was also from the tribe of Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#), [Rachel](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Bethel

Facts:

Bethel was a city located just north of Jerusalem in the land of Canaan. It was formerly called “Luz.”

- After receiving God’s promises for the first time, Abram (Abraham) built an altar to God near Bethel. The actual name of the city was not yet Bethel at that time, but it was usually referred to as “Bethel” which was better known.
- When fleeing from his brother Esau, Jacob stayed overnight near this city and slept outdoors on the ground there. While he was sleeping, he had a dream showing angels going up and down a ladder to heaven.
- This city did not have the name “Bethel” until after Jacob named it that. To make this clear, some translations may translate it as “Luz (later called Bethel)” in the passages about Abraham, as well as when Jacob first arrives there (before he changed the name).
- Bethel is mentioned often in the Old Testament and was a place where many important events happened.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [altar Jacob](#), [Israel Jerusalem](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Bethlehem, Ephrathah

Facts:

Bethlehem was a small city in the land of Israel, near the city of Jerusalem. It was also known as “Ephrathah,” which was probably its original name.

- Bethlehem has been called the “city of David,” since King David was born there.
- The prophet Micah said that the Messiah would come from “Bethlehem Ephrathah.”
- Fulfilling that prophecy, Jesus was born in Bethlehem, many years later.
- The name “Bethlehem” means “house of bread” or “house of food.”

(See also: [Caleb](#), [David](#), [Micah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [17-02] David was a shepherd from the town of **Bethlehem**.
- [21-09] The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin. The prophet Micah said that he would be born in the town of **Bethlehem**.
- [23-04] Joseph and Mary had to make a long journey from where they lived in Nazareth to **Bethlehem** because their ancestor was David whose hometown was **Bethlehem**.
- [23-06] ”The Messiah, the Master, has been born in **Bethlehem!**”

Beth Shemesh

Facts:

Beth Shemesh was the name of a Canaanite city approximately 30 kilometers west of Jerusalem.

- The Israelites captured Beth Shemesh during the time of Joshua's leadership.
- Beth Shemesh was a city that was set aside as a place for the Levite priests to live.
- When the Philistines were taking the captured ark of the covenant back to Jerusalem, Beth Shemesh was the first city where they stopped with it.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Joshua](#), [Levite](#), [Levi](#), [Philistines](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

biblical time: day**Definition:**

The term “day” literally refers to a period of time lasting 24 hours beginning at sundown. It is also used figuratively.

- For the Israelites and the Jews, a day began at sunset of one day and ended at sunset of the next day.
- Sometimes the term “day” is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the “day of Yahweh” or “last days.”
- Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate “day” nonfiguratively.
- Other translations of “day” could include, “time” or “season” or “occasion” or “event,” depending on the context.

(See also: [day of the Lord](#), [day of Yahweh](#), [judgment day](#), [last day](#), [last days](#), [latter days](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

biblical time: year**Definition:**

When used literally, the term “year” in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

- A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into 12 months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
- In both calendar systems a year has 12 months. But an extra 13th month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is 11 days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
- In the Bible, the term “year” is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, “the year of Yahweh” or “in the year of drought” or “the favorable year of the Lord.” In these contexts, “year” could be translated as “time” or “season” or “time period.”

(See also: [biblical time: month](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

bless, blessed, blessing

Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people ‘bless’ God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

from comment below: It is important to not define, focus on, or be confined by applications of the root word of “bless” that suggest primarily the flourishing or abundance of material things or physical wellness. Consider the extensive teachings in Scripture on God’s love, mercy and grace that is not only ancient, but current. Consider care, protection, and presence of God’s Spirit. And for us to bless God, we can offer thankfulness, appreciation, and understanding as we learn of and follow (obey) him.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as, “to provide abundantly for” or “to be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as, “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like, “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as, “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as, “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: [praise](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-07]** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **[01-15]** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **[01-16]** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **[04-04]** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **[04-07]** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”
- **[07-03]** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- **[08-05]** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

blood

Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body.

- Blood symbolizes life and when it is shed or poured out, it symbolizes the loss of life, or death.
- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- Through his death on the cross, Jesus’ blood symbolically cleanses people from their sins and pays for the punishment they deserve for those sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See: [flesh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-03]** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **[10-03]** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **[11-05]** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb’s **blood**.
- **[13-09]** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight.
- **[38-05]** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.
- **[48-10]** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s punishment passes over him.

bloodshed

Definition:

The term “bloodshed” refers to the death of human beings due to murder, war, or some other violent act.

- This term literally means “shedding of blood,” which refers to when blood comes out of a person’s body from an open wound.
- The term “bloodshed” is often used to refer to widespread killing of people.
- It is also used as a general reference to the sin of murder.

Translation Suggestions:

- “the bloodshed” could be translated as, “the killing of people” or “the many people who were killed.”
- “through bloodshed” could also be translated as, “by killing people.”
- “innocent bloodshed” could be translated as “killing innocent people.”
- “bloodshed follows bloodshed” could be translated as, “they keep killing people” or “the killing of people goes on and on” or “they have killed many people and continue to do that” or “people keep killing other people.”
- Another figurative use, “bloodshed will pursue you” could be translated as, “your people will continue to experience bloodshed” or “your people will keep being killed” or “your people will continue to be at war with other nations and people will keep dying.”

(See also: [blood slaughter](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Boaz**Facts:**

Boaz was an Israelite man who was the husband of Ruth, the great grandfather of King David, and an ancestor of Jesus Christ.

- Boaz lived during the time when there were judges in Israel.
- He was a relative of an Israelite woman named Naomi who had returned to Israel after her husband and sons died in Moab.
- Boaz “redeemed” Naomi’s widowed daughter-in-law, Ruth by marrying her and giving her a future with a husband and children.
- He is seen as a picture of how Jesus rescued and redeemed us from sin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Moab](#), [Moabite](#), [Moabites](#), [redeem](#), [redemption](#), [redeemer](#), [Ruth](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

bow, bow down

Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “bend forward” or “bend the head” or “kneel.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: [humble](#), [humility](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

bow and arrow**Definition:**

This is a type of weapon that consists of shooting arrows from a stringed bow. In Bible times it was used for fighting against enemies and for killing animals for food.

- The bow is made out of wood, bone, metal, or other hard material, such as a deer's antler. It has a curved shape and is strung tightly with a string, cord, or vine.
- An arrow is a thin shaft with a sharp, pointed head on one end. In ancient times, the arrows could be made of a variety of materials such as wood, bone, stone, or metal.
- Bows and arrows are commonly used by hunters and warriors.
- The term "arrow" is also sometimes used figuratively in the Bible to refer to enemy attacks or divine judgment.

Bible References:

Waiting

bread

Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term “loaf” occurs by itself, it means, “loaf of bread.”
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast.
- Bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. In the Bible this is called “unleavened bread” and was used for the Jews’ passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- The term “bread of the presence” referred to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as “bread showing that God lived among them.”
- The figurative term, “bread from heaven” referred to the special white food called “manna” that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert.
- Jesus also called himself the “bread that came down from heaven” and the “bread of life.”
- When Jesus and his disciples were eating the Passover meal together before his death, he compared the unleavened Passover bread to his body which would be wounded and killed on a cross.
- Many times the term “bread” can be translated more generally as “food.”

(See also: [Passover](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), [unleavened bread](#), [Festival of Unleavened Bread](#), [yeast](#), [leaven](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

bribe**Definition:**

To “bribe” means to give someone something of value, such as money, to influence that person to do something dishonest.

- The soldiers who guarded Jesus’ empty tomb were bribed with money to lie about what happened.
- Sometimes a government official will be bribed to overlook a crime or to vote a certain way.
- The Bible forbids giving or taking bribes.
- The term, “bribe” could be translated as “dishonest payment” or “payment for lying” or “price for breaking the rules.”
- “To bribe” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “to pay to influence (someone)” or “to pay to have a dishonest favor done” or “to pay for a favor.”

Bible References:

Waiting

bronze**Definition:**

The term “bronze” refers to a kind of metal that is made from melting together the metals, copper and tin. It has a dark brown color, slightly red.

- Bronze resists water corrosion and is a good conductor of heat.
- In ancient times, bronze was used for making tools, weapons, artwork, altars, cooking pots, and soldiers’ armor, among other things.
- Many building materials for the tabernacle and temple were made of bronze.
- Idols of false gods were also often made of bronze metal.
- Bronze objects were made by first melting the bronze metal into a liquid and then pouring it into molds. This process was called “casting.”

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [armor](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

brother

Definition:

The term “brother” usually refers to a male person who shares at least one biological parent with another person.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives, such as members of the same tribe, clan, or people group.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often used “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women, since all believers in Christ are members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include, “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as, “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be, “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [the twelve](#), [the eleven](#), [God the Father](#), [Heavenly Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

burnt offering, offering by fire

Definition:

A “burnt offering” was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an “offering by fire.”

- Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
- Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
- God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: [altar](#), [atonement](#), [atone](#), [ox](#), [oxen](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

bury, buried, burial

Definition:

The term “bury” usually refers to putting a dead body into a hole or other burial place. The term “burial” is the act of burying something or can be used to describe a place used to bury something.

- Often people bury a dead body by placing it into a deep hole in the ground and then covering it with dirt.
- Sometimes the dead body is placed in a box-like structure, such as a coffin before burying it.
- In Bible times, dead people were often buried in a cave or similar place. After Jesus died, his body was wrapped in cloths and placed in a stone tomb that was sealed with a large boulder.
- The terms “burial place” or “burial room” or “burial chamber” or “burial cave” are all ways to refer to a place where a dead body is buried.
- Other things can also be buried, such as when Achan buried silver and other things that he had stolen from Jericho.
- The phrase “buried his face” usually means, “covered his face with his hands.”
- Sometimes the word “hide” can mean “bury” as when Achan hid things in the ground that he had stolen from Jericho. This meant he buried them in the ground.

(See also: [Jericho](#), [tomb](#), [grave](#), [burial place](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

call, calling, called, call out

Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” literally means to say something loudly to someone who is not nearby. There are also several figurative meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout or speak loudly to someone far away. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- The term “called” is used in the Bible to mean that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of calling someone a name. For example, “He is called John,” means, “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God knows a person’s name personally and has specifically chosen him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as, “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as, “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as, “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as, “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as, “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as, “I know your name and have chosen you.”

(See: [pray, prayer](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

{{tag>publish ktlink}}

camel

Definition:

A camel is a large, four legged animal with one or two humps on its back. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

- In Bible times, the camel was the largest animal found in Israel and the surrounding regions.
- The camel was used mainly for carrying people and burdens.
- Some people groups also used camels for food, but not the Israelites because God had said that camels were unclean and were not to be eaten.
- Camels were valuable because they could move swiftly in the sand and could live without food and water for several weeks at a time.

(See also: [burden](#), [unclean](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

captive, captivity

Definition:

The terms “captive” and “captivity” refer to capturing people and forcing them to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression “to take captive” is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, “carry you away captive” could also be translated as, “force you to live as captives” or “take you away to another country as prisoners.”
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to “take captive” every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be “taken captive” by sin, which means he is “controlled by” sin.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be “held captive” could also be translated by, “not allowed to be free” or “kept in prison” or “forced to live in a foreign country.”
- The expression, “led captive” or “taken captive” could be translated as, “captured” or “imprisoned” or “forced to go to a foreign land.”
- The term “captives” could also be translated as, “people who were captured” or “enslaved people.”
- Depending on the context, “captivity” could also be translated as, “imprisonment” or “exile” or “forced stay in a foreign country.”

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [exile](#), [the Exile](#), [prison](#), [prisoner](#), [imprison](#), [seize](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

cedar

Definition:

The term “cedar” refers to a large fir tree which normally has reddish-brown wood. Like other firs, it has cones and needle-like leaves.

- The Old Testament often mentions cedar trees in connection with Lebanon, where they grew plentifully.
- Cedar wood was used in the construction of the Jerusalem temple.
- It was also used for sacrifices and purification offerings.

(See also: [fir](#), [pure](#), [purify](#), [purification](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Chaldea, Chaldean

Facts:

Chaldea was a region in the southern part of Mesopotamia or Babylonia. The people who lived in this region were called Chaldeans.

- The city of Ur, where Abraham was from, was located in Chaldea. It is often referred to as “Ur of the Chaldeans.”
- King Nebuchadnezzar was one of several Chaldeans who became kings over Babylonia.
- After many years, around 600 BC, the term “Chaldean” came to mean “Babylonian.”
- In the book of Daniel, the term “Chaldean” also refers to a special class of men who were highly educated and studied the stars.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Babylon](#), [Shinar](#), [Ur](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

chariot

Definition:

In ancient times, chariots were lightweight, two-wheeled carts that were pulled by horses.

- People would sit or stand in chariots, using them for war or travel.
- In war, an army that had chariots had a great advantage of speed and mobility over an army that did not have chariots.
- The ancient Egyptians and Romans were well-known for their use of horses and chariots.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[12-10]** So they followed the Israelites onto the path through the sea, but God caused the Egyptians to panic and caused their **chariots** to get stuck.
- Rome, Romaning in his **chariot**.

cherubim, cherub

Definition:

The term “cherub,” and its plural form “cherubim,” refer to a special type of heavenly being that God created. The Bible describes cherubim as having wings and flames.

- The cherubim display the glory and power of God and seem to be guardians of sacred things.
- After Adam and Eve sinned, God placed cherubim with flaming swords at the east side of the Garden of Eden so that people could no longer get to the tree of life.
- God commanded the Israelites to carve two cherubim facing each other, with their wings touching, over the atonement lid of the ark of the covenant.
- He also told them to weave pictures of the cherubim into the curtains of the tabernacle.
- In some passages, these creatures are also described as having four faces: of a man, a lion, an ox, and an eagle.
- Cherubim are sometimes thought of as being angels, but the Bible does not clearly state that.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “cherubim” could be translated as “creatures with wings” or “guardians with wings” or “winged spiritual guardians” or “holy, winged guardians.”
- A “cherub” should be translated as the singular of cherubim, as in, “creature with wings” or “winged spiritual guardian,” for example.
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of “angel.”
- Also consider how this term is translated or written in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [angel](#), other)

Bible References:

Waiting

chief**Definition:**

The term “chief” refers to the most powerful or most important leader of a particular group.

- Examples of this include, “chief musician,” “chief priest,” and “chief tax collector.” and “chief ruler.”
- It can also be used for the head of a specific family, as in Genesis 36 where certain men are named as “chiefs” of their family clans. In this context, the term “chief” could also be translated as “leader” or “head father.”
- When used to describe a noun, this term could be translated as “leading” or “ruling,” as in “leading musician” or “ruling priest.”

(See also: [chief priests](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [tax collector](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

chief priests

Definition:

The chief priests were important Jewish religious leaders during the time that Jesus lived on earth.

- The chief priests were responsible for everything needed for the worship services at the temple, They were also in charge of the money that was given to the temple.
- They were higher in rank and power than the ordinary priests. Only the high priest had more authority.
- The chief priests were some of Jesus' main enemies and they strongly influenced the Roman leaders to arrest and kill him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “chief priests” could also be translated as “head priests” or “leading priests” or “ruling priests.”
- Make sure this term is translated differently from the term “high priest.”

(See also: [chief](#), [high priest](#), [Jewish leaders](#), [Jewish authorities](#), [religious leaders](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

chronicles

Definition:

The term “chronicle” refers to a written record of events over a period of time.

- Two Old Testament books are called “First Book of the Chronicles” and “Second Book of the Chronicles.”
- The books called “Chronicles” record part of the history of the Israelite people, beginning with a list of people in every generation since Adam.
- The “First Book of the Chronicles” records the end of King Saul’s life and the events of King David’s reign.
- The “Second Book of the Chronicles” records the reigns of King Solomon and several other kings, including the building of the temple and the separation of the northern kingdom of Israel from the southern kingdom of Judah.
- The end of 2 Chronicles describes the beginning of the Babylonian exile.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [David](#), [exile](#), [the Exile](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

city of David

Facts:

The term “city of David” is another name for both Jerusalem and Bethlehem.

- Jerusalem is where David lived while he ruled Israel.
- Bethlehem is where David was born.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [David](#), [Bethlehem](#), [Ephrathah](#), [Jerusalem](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

clean, cleanse

Definition:

The term “clean” literally means to not have any dirt or stain. In the Bible, it is often used figuratively to mean, “pure,” “holy,” or “free from sin.”

- “Cleanse” is the process of making something “clean.” It could also be translated as “wash” or “purify.”
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term “clean” means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared “clean” again.
- Sometimes “clean” is used figuratively to refer to moral purity.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with the common word for “clean” or “pure” (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, “ritually clean” or “acceptable to God.”
- “Cleanse” could be translated by “wash” or “purify.”
- Make sure that the words used for “clean” and “cleanse” can also be understood in a figurative sense.

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unclean](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

clothe, clothed

Definition:

When used figuratively in the Bible, “clothed with” means to be endowed or equipped with something. To “clothe” oneself with something means to seek to have a certain character quality.

- In the same way that clothing is external to your body and is visible to all, when you are “clothed” with a certain character quality, others can readily see it. To “clothe yourself with kindness” means to let your actions be so characterized by kindness that it is easily seen by everyone.
- To be “clothed with power from on high” means to have power given to you.
- This term is also used to express negative experiences, such as “clothed with shame” or “clothed with terror”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the literal figure of speech, “clothe yourselves with.” Another way to translate this could be “put on” if this refers to putting on clothes.
- If that does not give the correct meaning, other ways to translate “clothed with” could be “showing” or “manifesting” or “filled with” or “having the quality of.”
- The term “clothe yourself with” could also be translated as “cover yourself with” or “behave in a way that shows.”

Bible References:

Waiting

command, to command, commandment

Definition:

The term “to command” means to order someone to do something. A “command” or “commandment” is what the person was ordered to do.

- Although these terms have basically the same meaning, “commandment” often refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the “Ten Commandments.”
- A command can be positive (“Honor your parents”) or negative (“Do not steal”).
- To “take command” means to “take control” or “take charge” of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, “law.” Also compare with the definitions of “decree” and “statute.”
- Some translators may prefer to translate “command” and “commandment” with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See [decree](#), [statute](#), [statutes](#), [law](#), [principle](#), [Ten Commandments](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

commander, command

Definition:

the term “commander” refers to a leader of an army who is responsible for leading and commanding a certain group of soldiers.

- To “command” an army means to lead and be in charge of the army.
- A commander could be in charge of a small group of soldiers or a large group, such as a thousand men.
- This term is also used to refer to Yahweh as the commander of angel armies.
- Other ways to translate “commander” could include, “leader” or “captain” or “officer.”
- The term “to command” an army could be translated as “to lead” or “to be in charge of.”

(See also: [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [centurion](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

compassion, compassionate

Definition:

The term “compassion” refers to a feeling of concern for people, especially for those who are suffering. A “compassionate” person cares about other people and helps them.

- The word “compassion” usually includes caring about people in need, as well as taking action to help them.
- The Bible says that God is compassionate, that is, he is full of love and mercy.
- In Paul’s letter to the Colossians, he tells them to “clothe themselves with compassion.” He is instructing them to care about people and to actively help others who are in need.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal meaning of “compassion” is “bowels of mercy.” This is an expression that means “mercy” or “pity.” Other languages may have their own expression that means this.
- Ways of translating “compassion” could include, “a deep caring for” or “helpful mercy.”
- The term “compassionate” could also be translated as, “caring and helpful” or “deeply loving and merciful.”

Bible References:

Waiting

concubine**Definition:**

A concubine is a woman who is a secondary wife for a man who already has a wife. Usually a concubine is not legally married to the man.

- In the Old Testament, concubines were often female slaves.
- A concubine could be acquired by purchase, through military conquest, or in payment of a debt.
- For a king, having many concubines was a sign of power.often
- The New Testament teaches that the practice of having a concubine is against God's will.

Bible References:

Waiting

confess, confession

Definition:

To confess means to admit or assert that something is true. A “confession” is a statement or admission that something is true.

- The term “confess” can refer to boldly stating the truth about God. It can also refer to admitting that we have sinned.
- The Bible says that if people confess their sins to God, he will forgive them.
- James the apostle wrote in his letter that when believers confess their sins to each other, this brings spiritual healing.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Philippians that someday everyone will confess or declare that Jesus is Lord.
- Paul also said that if people confess that Jesus is Lord and believe that God raised him from the dead, they will be saved.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confess” could include, “admit” or “testify” or “declare” or “acknowledge” or “affirm.”
- Different ways to translate “confession” could be, “declaration” or “testimony” or “statement about what we believe” or “admitting sin.”

(See also: [faith](#), [testimony](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

consecrate

Definition:

To consecrate means to dedicate something or someone to serve God. The person or object that is consecrated is considered holy and set apart for God.

- The meaning of this term is similar to “sanctify” or “to make holy,” but with the added meaning of formally setting apart someone for service to God.
- Things that were consecrated to God included animals to be sacrificed, the altar of burnt offering, and the tabernacle.
- People who were consecrated to God included the priests, the people of Israel, and the oldest male child.
- Sometimes the word “consecrate” has a meaning that is similar to “purify,” especially when it pertains to preparing people or things for God’s service so that they will be cleansed and acceptable to him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “consecrate” could include, “set apart for God’s service” or “purify for service to God.”
- Also consider how the terms “holy” and “sanctify” are translated.

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [pure](#), [purify](#), [purification](#), [sanctify](#), [sanctification](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

consume

Definition:

The term “consume” literally means to use up something. It has several figurative meanings.

- In the Bible, the word “consume” often refers to destroying things or people.
- A fire is said to consume things, which means it destroys them by burning them up.
- God is described as a “consuming fire,” which is a description of his anger against sin. His anger results in terrible punishment for sinners who do not repent.
- To consume food means to eat or drink something.
- The phrase, “consume the land” could be translated as “destroy the land.”

Translation Suggestions

- In the context of consuming the land or people, this term could be translated as “destroy.”
- When fire is referred to, “consume” could be translated as “burn up.”
- The burning bush that Moses saw “was not consumed” which could be translated as, “did not get burned up” or “did not burn up.”
- When referring to eating, “consume” could be translated as “eat” or “devour.”
- If someone’s strength is “consumed,” it means his strength is “used up” or “gone.”
- The expression, “God is a consuming fire” could be translated as, “God is like a fire that burns things up” or “God is angry against sin and will destroy sinners like a fire.”

(See: [devour](#), [wrath](#), [fury](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

courtyard, court

Definition:

The terms “courtyard” and “court” refer to an enclosed area that is open to the sky and surrounded by walls. The term “court” also refers to a place where judges decide legal and criminal matters.

- The tabernacle was surrounded by one courtyard which was enclosed by walls made of thick, cloth curtains.
- The temple complex had three inner courtyards: one for the priests, one for Jewish men, and one for Jewish women.
- These inner courtyards were surrounded by a low stone wall that separated them from an outer courtyard where Gentiles were permitted to worship.
- The courtyard of a house was an open area in the middle of the house.
- The phrase “king’s court” can refer to his palace or to a place in his palace where he makes judgments.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” is a figurative way of referring to Yahweh’s dwelling place or to the place where people go to worship Yahweh.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “courtyard” could be translated as “enclosed space” or “walled-in land” or “temple grounds” or “temple enclosure.”
- Sometimes the term “temple” may need to be translated as “temple courtyards” or “temple complex” so that it is clear that the courtyards are being referred to, not the temple building.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” could be translated as, “place where Yahweh lives” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped.”
- The term used for a king’s court could also be used to refer to Yahweh’s court.

(See also: [Gentile](#), [judge](#), [king](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

covenant

Definition:

A covenant is a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example when God established his covenant with mankind, promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “binding agreement” or “formal commitment” or “pledge” or “contract.”
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as “promise” or “pledge.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.

(See also: , [New Covenant](#), [promise](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-09]** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **[05-04]** “I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac.”
- **[06-04]** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.

- [07-10] The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob.”
- [13-02] God said to Moses and the people of Israel, ”If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation.”
- [13-04] Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods.”
- [15-13] Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.

covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love

Definition:

This term is used to describe God's commitment to fulfill the promises that he made to his people.

- God made promises to the Israelites in formal agreements called "covenants."
- The "covenant faithfulness" or "covenant loyalty" of Yahweh refers to the fact that he keeps his promises to his people.
- God faithfulness to keep his covenant promises is an expression of his grace toward his people.
- The term "loyalty" is another word that refers to being committed and dependable to do and say what has been promised and what will benefit someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- The way this term is translated will also depend on how the terms "covenant" and "faithfulness" are translated.
- Other ways to translate this term could include, "faithful love" or "loyal, committed love" or "loving dependability."

(See also: [covenant](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [grace](#), [gracious](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [people of God](#), [my people](#), [promise](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

cow, calf, bull, cattle**Definition:**

The term , “cattle” refers to a kind of large, four-legged farm animal that eats grass and is primarily raised for its meat and milk.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow”, the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- Sometimes the term “cow” is used in a general way to refer to all kinds of cattle.
- In some cultures, cattle are traded in exchange for goods. Sometimes they are used as gifts given to the parents of a young woman a man desires to marry.
- In the Bible, the Jewish people used cattle for sacrifices, especially a certain type called the red heifer.
- A “heifer” is a cow that has not yet had a baby.
- An “ox” is a special type of bull that is used for agricultural work, like pulling a plow.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [heifer](#), [ox](#), [oxen](#), [yoke](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

crown, to crown**Definition:**

A crown is a decorative, circular headpiece worn on the head of rulers such as kings and queens. The term “to crown” means to put a crown on someone’s head; figuratively it means, “to honor.”

- Crowns are usually made of gold or silver, and are embedded with precious gems such as emeralds and rubies.
- A crown was intended to be a symbol of a king’s power and wealth.
- By contrast, the crown made of thorn branches that the Roman soldiers placed on Jesus’ head was meant to mock him and hurt him.
- In ancient times, winners of athletic contests would be awarded a crown made out of olive branches. The apostle Paul mentions this crown in his second letter to Timothy.
- Used figuratively, “to crown” means to honor someone. We honor God by obeying him and praising him to others. This is like putting a crown on him and acknowledging that he is King.
- Pauls calls fellow believers his “joy and crown.” In this expression, “crown” is used figuratively to mean that Paul has been greatly blessed and honored by how these believers have remained faithful in serving God.
- When used figuratively, “crown” could be translated as “prize” or “honor” or “reward.”
- The figurative use of “to crown” could be translated as “to honor” or “to decorate.”
- If a person is “crowned” this could be translated as “a crown was put on his head.”
- The expression, “he was crowned with glory and honor” could be translated as, “glory and honor were bestowed on him” or “he was given glory and honor” or “he was endowed with glory and honor.”

(See also: [glory](#), [glorious](#), [king](#), [olive](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

curse, cursed

Definition:

The term “curse” means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “cause bad things to happen to” or “declare that something bad will happen to” or “swear to cause evil things to happen to.”
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as, “punish by allowing bad things to happen.”
- The term “cursed” when used to describe people could be translated as, “(this person) will experience much trouble.”
- The phrase “cursed be” could be translated as, “May (this person) experience great difficulties.”
- The phrase, “Cursed is the ground” could be translated as, “The soil will not be very fertile.”
- “Cursed be the day I was born” could also be translated as, “I am so miserable it would have been better not to be born.”
- However, if the target language has the phrase “cursed be” and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [02-09] God said to the snake, “You are **cursed!**”
- [02-11] “Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food.”
- [04-04] “I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you.”
- [39-07] Then Peter vowed, saying, “May God **curse** me if I know this man!”
- [50-16] Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

cut off**Definition:**

The expression “be cut off” is an expression that means to be excluded, banished or isolated from the main group. It can also refer to being killed as an act of divine judgment for sin.

- In the Old Testament, disobeying God’s commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God’s people and from his presence.
- God also said he would “cut off” or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.
- The expression “cut off” is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “be cut off” could be translated as “be banished” or “be sent away” or “be separated from” or “be killed” or “be destroyed.”
- Depending on the context, “to cut off” could be translated as, “to destroy” or “to send away” or “to separate from” or “to destroy.”
- In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as “were stopped” or “were caused to stop flowing” or “were divided.”
- The literal meaning of cutting something with a knife should be distinguished from the figurative uses of this term.

Bible References:

Waiting

Cyrus

Facts:

Cyrus was a Persian king who founded the Persian empire in about 550 BC, through military conquest. In history he was also known as Cyrus the Great.

- King Cyrus conquered the city of Babylon, which led to the release of the Israelites who had been kept in exile there.
- Cyrus was known for his tolerant attitude toward the people of the nations he conquered. His kindness toward the Jews led to the rebuilding of the Jerusalem temple after the exile.
- Cyrus was reigning during the time when Daniel, Ezra, and Nehemiah were living.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Daniel](#), [Darius](#), [Ezra](#), [Nehemiah](#), [Persia](#), [Persians](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Damascus

Facts:

Damascus is the capital city of the country of Syria. It is still in the same location as it was in Bible times.

- Damascus is one of the oldest, continuously inhabited cities in the world.
- During the time of Abraham, Damascus was the capital of the Aram kingdom (located in what is now Syria).
- Throughout the Old Testament, there are many references to the interactions between the inhabitants of Damascus and the people of Israel.
- Several biblical prophecies predict the destruction of Damascus. These prophecies may have been fulfilled when Assyria destroyed the city during Old Testament times, or there may be also be a future. more complete destruction of this city.
- In the New Testament, the Pharisee Saul (later known as Paul) was on his way to arrest Christians in the city of Damascus when Jesus confronted him and caused him to become a believer.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Aram](#), [Aramean](#), [Aramaic](#), [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [believer](#), [Syria](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Dan

Facts:

Dan was the fifth son of Jacob and was one of the twelve tribes of Israel. The region settled by the tribe of Dan in the northern part of Canaan also was given this name.

- During the time of Abram, there was a city named Dan located west of Jerusalem.
- Years later, during the time the nation of Israel entered the promised land, a different city named Dan was located about 60 miles north of Jerusalem.
- The term, “Danites” refers to the descendants of Dan, who were also members of his clan.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Jerusalem](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

darkness

Definition:

The term “darkness” literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of this term:

- As a metaphor, “darkness” means “impurity” or “evil” or “spiritual blindness.”
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression, “dominion of darkness” refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term “darkness” can also be used as a metaphor for death. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- People who do not know God are said to be “living in darkness,” which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as “outer darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, “darkness of night” (as opposed to “light of day”) or “not seeing anything, like at night” or “evil, like a dark place”.

(See also: [corrupt](#), [corruption](#), [dominion](#), [kingdom](#), [light](#), [redeem](#), [redemption](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

David

Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well-known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Goliath](#), [Philistines](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[17-02]** God chose a young Israelite named **David** to be king after Saul. **David** was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. ... **David** was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **[17-03]** **David** was also a great soldier and leader. When **David** was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath.
- **[17-04]** Saul became jealous of the people's love for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so **David** hid from Saul.
- **[17-05]** God blessed **David** and made him successful. **David** fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.
- **[17-06]** **David** wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **[17-09]** **David** ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **[17-13]** God was very angry about what **David** had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell **David** how evil his sin was. **David** repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, **David** followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

death, die, dead

Definition:

This term is used to refer to both physical and spiritual death. Physically, it refers to when the physical body of a person stops living. Spiritually, it refers to sinners being separated from a holy God because of their sin.

1. Physical death

- To “die” means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- A person’s spirit leaves his body when he dies.
- When Adam and Eve sinned, physical death came into the world.
- The expression “put to death” refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Spiritual death

- Spiritual death is the separation of a person from God.
- Adam died spiritually when he disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- Every descendant of Adam is a sinner, and is spiritually dead. God makes us spiritually alive again when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression that refers to death in the target language.
- In some languages, “to die” may be expressed as “to not live.” The term “dead” may be translated as “not alive” or “not having any life” or “not living.”
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as “to pass away” in English. However in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, physical life and death are often compared to spiritual life and death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and spiritual death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say “spiritual death” when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say “physical death” in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression, “the dead” is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as, “dead people” or “people who have died.” (See: nominal adjective)
- The expression, “put to death” could also be translated as, “kill” or “murder” or “execute.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faith](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-11]** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **[02-11]** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **[07-10]** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **[37-05]** "Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **[40-08]** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **[43-07]** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **[48-02]** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **[50-17]** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.
-

deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive

Definition:

The term “deceive” means to cause someone to believe something that is not true. The act of deceiving someone is called “deceit.”

- Another term, “deception” also refers to the act of causing someone to believe something that is not true.
- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a “deceiver.” For example, Satan is called a “deceiver.” The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as “deceptive.”
- The terms “deceit” and “deception” have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms, “deceitful” and “deceptive” have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “deceive” could include “lie to” or “cause to have a false belief” or “cause someone to think something that is not true.”
- The term “deceived” could also be translated as, “caused to think something false” or “lied to” or “tricked” or “fooled” or “misled.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as, “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated by “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See: [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

{{tag>publish review}}

declare, declaration

Definition:

The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something.

- A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by, “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “declare” could also be translated as “proclaim” or “publicly state” or “strongly say” or “emphatically state.”
- The term “declaration” could also be translated as, “statement” or “proclamation.”
- The phrase, “this is Yahweh’s declaration” could be translated as, “this is what Yahweh declares” or “this is what Yahweh says.”

(See also: [proclaim](#), [proclamation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

decree

Definition:

A decree is a proclamation or law that is publicly declared to all the people.

- God's laws are also called decrees, statutes, or commandments.
- Like laws and commands, decrees must be obeyed.
- An example of a decree by a human ruler was the proclamation by Caesar Augustus that everyone living in the Roman Empire must go back to their hometown in order to be counted in a census.
- To decree something means to give an order that must be obeyed. This could be translated as, "to order" or "to command" or "to formally require" or "to publicly make a law."
- Something that is "decreed" to happen means that this "will definitely happen" or "has been decided upon and will not be changed" or "declared absolutely that this will happen."

(See also: [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [declare](#), [declaration](#), [law](#), [principle](#), [proclaim](#), [proclamation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

dedicate, dedication

Definition:

To dedicate is to set apart or commit something for a special purpose or function.

- David dedicated his gold and silver to the Lord.
- Often the word “dedication” refers to a formal event or ceremony to set apart something for a special purpose.
- The dedication of the altar included offering a sacrifice to God.
- Nehemiah led the Israelites in a dedication of Jerusalem’s repaired walls with a renewed promise to serve only Yahweh and to take care of his city. This event included giving thanks to God with musical instruments and singing.
- The term “dedicate” could also be translated as “specially assign a special purpose” or “commit something to be used for a specific use” or “commit someone to do a special task.”

(See also: [commit](#), [committed](#), [commitment](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

descendant, descended from

Definition:

A “descendant” is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person’s descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob’s descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase “descended from” is another way of saying “a descendant of” as in, “Abraham was descended from Noah.” This could also be translated as, “from the family line of.”

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Noah](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [02-09] ”The woman’s **descendant** will crush your head, and you will wound his heel.”
- [04-09] ”I give the land of Canaan to your **descendants**.”
- [05-10] ”Your **descendants** will be more than the stars in the sky.”
- [17-07] ”Someone from your family will always rule as king over Israel, and the Messiah will be one of your **descendants!**”
- [18-13] The kings of Judah were **descendants** of David.
- [21-04] God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David’s own **descendants**.
- [48-13] God promised David that the Messiah would be one of his **descendants**. Jesus, the Messiah, was that special **descendant** of David.

desert, wilderness

Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as “wilderness.”
- “Wilderness” conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as “deserted place” or “remote place” or “uninhabited place.”

Bible References:

Waiting

devour**Definition:**

The term “devour” means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term “devour” is often used with a meaning of “completely destroy” as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as “completely consume” or “totally destroy.”

(See also: other)

Bible References:

Waiting

donkey, mule

Definition:

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

- A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
- Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
- Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
- In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
- Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

drink offering

Definition:

A drink offering was a sacrifice to God that involved pouring wine on an altar. It was often offered together with a burnt offering and a grain offering.

- Paul refers to his life as being poured out like a drink offering. This means that he was totally dedicated to serving God and telling people about Jesus, even though he knew he would suffer and probably be killed because of that.
- Jesus' death on the cross was the ultimate drink offering, as his blood was poured out on the cross for our sins.

Translation Suggestions:

- Another way to translate this term could be, "offering of grape wine."
- When Paul says he is being "poured out like an offering" this could also be translated as, "I am completely committed to teaching God's message to people, just like an offering of wine is poured out completely on the altar."

(See also: [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#), [grain offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

earth, earthly

Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- “Earth” can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- The expressions, “let the earth be glad” and “He will judge the earth” are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term “earthly” usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as, “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as, “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include, “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [world](#), [worldly](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Edom, Edomite, Idumea

Facts:

Edom was another name for Esau. The region where he lived also became known as “Edom” and later, “Idumea.” The “Edomites” were his descendants.

- The region of Edom changed locations over time. It was mostly located to the south of Israel and eventually extended into southern Judah.
- During New Testament times, Edom covered the southern half of the province of Judea. The Greeks called it “Idumea.”
- The name “Edom” means “red,” which may refer to the fact that Esau was covered with red hair when he was born. Or it may refer to the red lentil stew that Esau traded his birthright for.
- In the Old Testament, the country of Edom is often mentioned as an enemy of Israel.
- The entire book of Obadiah is about the destruction of Edom. Other Old Testament prophets also spoke negative prophecies against Edom.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [adversary](#), [enemy](#), [birthright](#), [Esau](#), [Obadiah](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Egypt, Egyptian

Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as “Egypt” and “Pathros” in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel’s patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Herod the Great](#), [Joseph \(NT\)](#), [Nile River](#), [River of Egypt](#), [patriarchs](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-04]** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **[08-08]** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **[08-11]** So Jacob sent his older sons to **Egypt** to buy food.
- **[08-14]** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **[09-01]** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

elder

Definition:

Elders are spiritually mature men who have responsibilities of spiritual and practical leadership among God's people.

- The term "elder" came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of social justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish elders continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian elders gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers.
- Elders in these churches included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as "older men" or "spiritually mature men leading the church."

Bible References:

Waiting

chosen one, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, the elect

Definition:

The term, “the elect” literally means “chosen ones” or “chosen people” and refers to those whom God has appointed or selected to be his people. “Chosen One” or “Chosen One of God” is a title that refers to Jesus, who is the chosen Messiah.

- The term “choose” means to select something or someone or to decide something. It is often used to refer to God appointing people to belong to him and to serve him.
- To be “chosen” means to be “selected” or “appointed” to be or do something.
- God chose people to be holy, to be set apart by him for the purpose of bearing good spiritual fruit. That is why they are called “the chosen (ones) or ”the elect.”
- The term “chosen one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to certain people such as Moses and King David whom God had appointed as leaders over his people. It is also used to refer to the nation of Israel as God’s chosen people.
- The phrase “the elect” is an older term that literally means “the chosen ones” or “the chosen people.” This phrase in the original language is plural when referring to believers in Christ.
- In older English Bible versions, the term “elect” is used in both the Old and New Testaments to translate the word for “chosen one(s).” More modern versions use “elect” only in the New Testament, to refer to people who have been saved by God through faith in Jesus. Elsewhere in the Bible text, they translate this word more literally as “chosen ones.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “elect” with a word or phrase that means “chosen ones” or “chosen people.” These could also be translated as “people whom God chose” or “the ones God appointed to be his people.”
- The phrase, “who were chosen” could also be translated as “who were appointed” or “who were selected” or “whom God chose.”
- “I chose you” could be translated as, “I appointed you” or “I selected you.”
- In reference to Jesus, “Chosen One” could also be translated as, “God’s chosen One” or “God’s specially appointed Messiah” or “the One God appointed (to save people).”

(See: [appoint](#), [appointed](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Elijah

Facts:

Elijah was one of the most important prophets of Yahweh. Elijah prophesied during the reigns of several kings of Israel or Judah, including King Ahab.

- God did many miracles through Elijah, including raising a dead boy back to life.
- Elijah rebuked King Ahab for worshiping the false god Baal.
- He challenged the prophets of Baal to a test that proved that Yahweh is the only true God.
- At the end of Elijah's life, God miraculously took him up to heaven while he was still alive.
- Hundreds of years later, Elijah, along with Moses, appeared with Jesus on a mountain and they talked together about Jesus' coming suffering and death in Jerusalem.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Baal](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[19-02] Elijah** was a prophet when Ahab was king over the kingdom of Israel.
- **[19-02] Elijah** said to Ahab, "There will be no rain or dew in the kingdom of Israel until I say so."
- **[19-03]** God told **Elijah** to go to a stream in the wilderness to hide from Ahab who wanted to kill him. Every morning and every evening, birds would bring him bread and meat.
- **[19-04]** But they took care of **Elijah**, and God provided for them so that their flour jar and their bottle of oil never became empty.
- **[19-05]** After three and a half years, God told **Elijah** to return to the kingdom of Israel and speak with Ahab because he was going to send rain again.
- **[19-07]** Then **Elijah** said to the prophets of Baal, "Kill a bull and prepare it as a sacrifice, but do not light the fire."
- **[19-12]** Then **Elijah** said, "Do not let any of the prophets of Baal escape!"
- **[36-03]** Then Moses and the prophet **Elijah** appeared. These men had lived hundreds of years before this. They talked with Jesus about his death that would soon happen in Jerusalem.

En Gedi

Definition:

En Gedi is the name of a city in the wilderness of Judah southeast of Jerusalem.

- EnGedi was located on the western bank of the Salt Sea.
- Part of its name means “fountain,” referring to a spring of water that flows down from the city into the sea.
- En Gedi was known for having beautiful vineyards and other fertile land, probably due to the continual watering by the fountain of water.
- There were strongholds in En Gedi which David fled to when he was being chased by King Saul.

(See also: [David](#), [desert](#), [wilderness](#), [fountain](#), [spring](#), [Judah](#), [rest](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#), [stronghold](#), [fortress](#), [fortified](#), [vineyard](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Ephraim

Facts:

Ephraim was the second son of Joseph. His descendants, the Ephraimites, formed one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- The tribe of Ephraim was one of the ten tribes that were located in the northern part of Israel.
- Sometimes the name Ephraim is used in the Bible to refer to the whole northern kingdom of Israel. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- Ephraim was apparently a very mountainous or hilly area, based on references to “the hill country of Ephraim” or “the mountains of Ephraim.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Ethiopia, Ethiopian

Facts:

Ethiopia is a country in Africa located just south of Egypt, bordered by the Nile River to the west and by the Red Sea to the east. A person from Ethiopia is an “Ethiopian.”

- Ancient Ethiopia was located south of Egypt and included land that is now part of several modern-day African countries, such as Sudan, modern Ethiopia, Somalia, Kenya, Uganda, Central African Republic, and Chad.
- In the Bible, Ethiopia is sometimes called “Cush” or “Nubia.”
- The countries of Ethiopia (‘Cush’) and Egypt are often mentioned together in the Bible, perhaps because they were located next to each other and their people may have had some of the same ancestors.
- God sent Philip the evangelist to a desert where he shared the good news about Jesus with an Ethiopian eunuch.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Cush](#), [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [eunuch](#), [Philip, the evangelist](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Euphrates River

Facts:

The Euphrates is the name of one of the four rivers that flowed through the Garden of Eden. It is the river that is most often mentioned in the Bible.

- The modern day river named Euphrates is located in the Middle East and is the longest and most important river in Asia.
- Together with the Tigris River, the Euphrates borders a region of land known as Mesopotamia.
- The ancient city of Ur where Abraham came from was at the mouth of the Euphrates River.
- This river was one of the boundaries of the land that God promised to give to Abraham (Genesis 15:18).
- Sometimes the Euphrates is simply called “the River.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

evil, wicked, wickedness

Definition:

The terms “evil” and “wicked” both refer to anything that is opposed to God’s holy character and will.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering or being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral”
- Other ways to translate these could include, “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [good](#), [goodness](#), [righteous](#), demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-04]** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **[03-01]** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **[03-02]** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **[04-02]** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **[08-12]** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **[14-02]** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **[17-01]** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **[18-11]** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.

- [29-08] The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- [45-02] They said, "We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!"
- [50-17] He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

exile, the Exile

Definition:

The term “exile” refers to people being forced to live somewhere away from their home country.

- People are usually sent into exile for punishment or for political reasons.
- A conquered people may be taken into exile to the country of the conquering army, in order to work for them.
- The “Babylonian Exile” (or “the Exile”) is a period in Bible history when many Jewish citizens of the region of Judah were taken from their homes and forced to live in Babylon. It lasted 70 years.
- The phrase “the exiles” refers to people who are living in exile, away from their home country.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “to exile” could also be translated as, “to send away” or “to force out” or “to banish.”
- The term “the Exile” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “the sent away time” or “the time of banishment” or “the time of forced absence” or “banishment.”
- Ways to translate “the exiles” could include, “the exiled people” or “the people who were banished” or “the people exiled to Babylon.”

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

face

Definition:

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression “your face” is often a figurative way of saying “you.” Similarly, the expression “my face” often means, “I” or “me.”
- In a physical sense, “to face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide: to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine that affected many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression, “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term “to face” could be translated as “to turn toward” or “to look at directly” or “to look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as, “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression, “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression, “hide his face from” could be translated as, “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as, “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression, “say it to their face” could be translated as, “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression, “on the face of the land” could also be translated as, “throughout the land” or “over the whole earth” or “living throughout the earth.”

Bible References:

Waiting

faithful, faithfulness

Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means, “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include, “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”

(See also: [faith](#), [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [08-05] Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- [14-12] Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- [15-13] The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- [17-09] David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- [18-04] God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s **unfaithfulness**, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon’s death.
- [35-12]”The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!’
- [49-17] But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- [50-04] If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you.”

false god, foreign god, god, goddess

Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term “goddess” refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God’s people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for “god” or “false god” in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term “idol” could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case “g” is used to refer to false gods, and upper case “G” is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: [God](#), [Asherah](#), [Asherah poles](#), [Ashtoreth](#), [Baal](#), [Molech](#), [Moloch](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[10-02]** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt’s **gods**.
- **[13-04]** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**.”
- **[14-02]** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **[16-01]** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **[18-13]** But most of Judah’s kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

family

Definition:

The term “family” refers to a group of people who are related by blood and usually includes a father, mother, and their children. It often also includes other relatives such as grandparents, grandchildren, uncles and aunts.

- The Hebrew family was a religious community passing on traditions through worship and instruction.
- Usually the father was the major authority of the family.
- Family could also include servants, concubines, and even foreigners.
- Some languages may have a broader word such as “clan” or “household” that would fit better in contexts where more than just parents and children are being referred to.
- The term “family” is also used to refer to people who are related spiritually, such as people who are part of God’s family because they believe in Jesus.

(See also: [clan](#), [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#), [house](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

famine**Definition:**

The term “famine” refers to an extreme lack of food throughout a country or region, usually due to not enough rain.

- Food crops can fail from natural causes such as lack of rain, crop disease, or insects.
- Food shortages can also be caused by people, such as enemies destroying crops.
- In the Bible, God often caused famine as a way to punish nations when they sinned against him.
- In Amos 8:11 the term “famine” is used figuratively to refer to a time when God punished his people by not speaking to them. This could be translated with the word for “famine” in your language, or with a phrase such as, “extreme lack” or “severe deprivation.”

Bible References:

Waiting

fast

Definition:

The term “to fast” means to stop eating food for a period of time, such as for a day or more. Sometimes it also includes not drinking.

- Fasting can help people to focus on God and pray without being distracted by preparing food and eating.
- Jesus condemned the Jewish religious leaders for fasting for the wrong reasons. They fasted so that others would think they were righteous.
- Sometimes people fast because they are very sad or grieved about something.
- The verb “to fast” can also be translated as “to refrain from eating” or “to not eat.”
- The noun “fast” could be translated as “time of not eating” or “time of abstaining from food.”

(See also: [Jewish leaders](#), [Jewish authorities](#), [religious leaders](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[25-01]** Immediately after Jesus was baptized, the Holy Spirit led him out into the wilderness, where he **fasted** for forty days and forty nights.
- **[34-08]**”For example, I **fast** two times every week and I give you ten percent of all the money and goods that I receive.”
- **[46-10]** One day, while the Christians at Antioch were **fasting** and praying, the Holy Spirit said to them, “Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul to do the work I have called them to do.”

ancestor, father, forefather

Definition:

When used literally, the term “father” refers to a person’s male parent. There are also several figurative uses of this term.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to the ancestors of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated as, “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4, “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader.”
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as, “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: [God the Father](#), [heavenly Father](#), [Father](#), [son](#), [son of](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

favor, favorable, favoritism

Definition:

The term “favor” refers to doing something to benefit someone who is regarded positively. Something that is “favorable” is positive, approving, or beneficial.

- The term “favoritism” means to act favorably toward some people but not others. Often favoritism is The term “favoritism” means acting favorably toward some people, but not others. shown toward people who are rich or are considered
- Jesus grew up “in favor with” God and men. This means they approved of his character and behavior.
- The expression “find favor” means that someone is approved of by someone else.
- When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person’s request and grants it.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate the term “favor” could include, “blessing” or “benefit.”
- The “favorable year of Yahweh” could be translated as, “the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing.”
- The term “favoritism” could be translated as, “partiality” or “being prejudiced” or “unjust treatment.” This word is related to the word “favorite” which means “the one who is preferred or loved best.”

“find favor” “increased in favor” “won the favor of”

Bible References:

Waiting

fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh

Definition:

The terms “fear” and “afraid” refer to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to himself or others.

- The term “fear” can also refer to a deep respect and awe for a person in authority.
- The phrase “fear of Yahweh,” and related terms “fear of God” and “fear of the Lord,” refer to deeply respecting God and showing that respect by obeying him. This fear is motivated by knowing that God is holy and hates sin.
- The Bible teaches that a person who fears Yahweh will become wise.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “to fear” can be translated as “to be afraid” or “to deeply respect” or “to revere” or “to be in awe of.”
- The term “afraid” could be translated as “terrified” or “scared” or “fearful.”
- The sentence, “The fear of God fell on all of them” could be translated as, “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God” or “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply” or “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”
- The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as, “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”
- Note that the phrase “fear of Yahweh” does not occur in the New Testament. The phrase “fear of the Lord” or “fear of the Lord God” would be used instead.

(See also: [marvel](#), [wonder](#), [amazed](#), [astonished](#), [awe](#), [awesome](#), [Lord](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

feast

Definition:

The term “feast” refers to an event where a group of people eat a very large meal together, often for the purpose of celebrating something. The action “to feast” means to eat a large amount of food or to participate in eating a feast together.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called “feasts.”
- In Bible times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- A feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.
- The term “to feast” could also be translated as “to eat lavishly” or “to celebrate by eating lots of food” or “to eat a special, large meal.”
- Depending on the context, “feast” could be translated as, “celebrating together with a large meal” or “a meal with a lot of food” or “a celebration meal.”

(See also: [festival](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

fellowship offering

Facts:

In the Old Testament, the “fellowship offering” was a kind of sacrifice that was offered for different reasons, such as to give thanks to God or to fulfill a vow.

- This offering required the sacrifice of an animal, which could be male or female. This was different from the burnt offering which required a male animal.
- After giving a portion of the sacrifice to God, the person who brought the fellowship offering shared the meat with the priests and other Israelites.
- There was a meal associated with this offering which included unleavened bread.
- This is sometimes called the “peace offering.”

(See also: [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#), [fulfill](#), [grain offering](#), [guilt offering](#), [peace offering](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [unleavened bread](#), [Festival of Unleavened Bread](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

festival

Definition:

In general, a festival is a celebration held by a community of people.

- The word for “festival” in the Old Testament literally means “appointed time.”
- The festivals celebrated by the Israelites were specially appointed times or seasons that God had commanded them to observe.
- In some English translations, the word “feast” is used instead of festival because the celebrations included having a large meal together.
- There were several main festivals that the Israelites celebrated every year:
 - Passover
 - Festival of Unleavened Bread
 - Firstfruits
 - Festival of Weeks (Pentecost)
 - Festival of Trumpets
 - Day of Atonement
 - Festival of Shelters
- The purpose of these festivals was to thank God and to remember the amazing things he had done to rescue, protect, and provide for his people.

(See also: [feast](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

fire

Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- The term “fire” is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase “baptize with fire” could also be translated as, “cause you to experience suffering in order to purify you.”

(See also: [pure](#), [purify](#), [purification](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

firstfruits

Definition:

The term “first fruits” refers to a portion of the first crop of fruits and vegetables that was reaped during each harvest season.

- The Israelites offered these first fruits to God as a sacrificial offering.
- This term is also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to a firstborn son as being the first fruits of the family. That is, because he was the first son to be born into that family, he was the one who carried on the family name and honor.
- Because Jesus rose from the dead, he is called the “first fruits” of all believers in him who have died but who will some day come back to life.
- Believers in Jesus are also called the “first fruits” of all creation, indicating the special privilege and position of those whom Jesus redeemed and called to be his people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal use of this term could be translated as “first portion (of crops)” or “first part of the harvest.”
- If possible, the figurative uses should be translated literally, to allow for different meanings in different contexts. This will also show the correlation between the literal meaning and the figurative uses.

(See also: [firstborn](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

flesh

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression, “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression, “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression, “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kin-folk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression, “become one flesh” could be translated as, “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: [Euphemism](#)). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that the man and woman literally become one person.

Bible References:

Waiting

flock, herd**Definition:**

In the Bible, “flock” refers to a group of sheep or goats and “herd” refers to a group of cattle, oxen, or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.
- For example, in English the term “herd” can also be used for sheep or goats, but in the Bible text it is not used this way.
- The term “flock” in English is also used for a group of birds, but it can not be used for pigs, oxen, or cattle.
- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals.
- For verses that refer to “flocks and herds” it may be better to add “of sheep” or “of cattle” for example, if the language does not have different words to refer to different kinds of animal groups.

(See also: [goat](#), [kid](#), [ox](#), [oxen](#), [pig](#), [swine](#), [pork](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

fool, foolish, folly**Definition:**

The term “fool” refers to a person who often makes wrong choices, especially choosing to disobey. The term “foolish” describes a person or behavior that is not wise.

- In the Bible, the term “fool” usually refers to a person who does not believe or obey God. This is often contrasted to the wise person, who trusts in God and obeys God.
- In the Psalms, David describes a fool as a person who does not believe in God, who ignores all the evidence of God in his creation.
- The Old Testament book of Proverbs also gives many descriptions of what a fool, or foolish person, is like.
- The term “folly” refers to an action that is not wise because it is against God’s will. Often “folly” also includes the meaning of something that is ridiculous or dangerous.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “fool” could be translated as, “foolish person” or “unwise person” or “senseless person” or “ungodly person.”
- Ways to translate “foolish” could include, “lacking understanding” or “unwise” or “senseless.”

(See also: [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

foreigner, foreign, alien

Definition:

The term “foreigner” refers to a person living in a country that is not his own. Another name for a foreigner is an “alien.”

- In the Old Testament, this term especially refers to anyone who came from a different people group than the people he was living among.
- A foreigner is also a person whose language and culture is different from your own.
- For example, when Naomi and her family moved to Moab, they were foreigners there. When Naomi and her daughter-in-law Ruth later moved to Israel, Ruth was called a “foreigner” there because she was not originally from Israel.
- The apostle Paul told the Ephesians that before they knew Christ, they were “foreigners” to God’s covenant.
- Sometimes “foreigner” is translated as “stranger,” but it should not only refer to someone who is unfamiliar or unknown.

Bible References:

Waiting

forever

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “forever” refers to never-ending time. Sometimes it is used figuratively to mean, “a very long time.”

- The term “forever and ever” emphasizes that something will always exist.
- The phrase “forever and ever” is a way of expressing what eternity or eternal life is. It also has the idea of time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referring to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase, “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase, “forever and ever” could also be translated as, “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as, “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of mine will always be reigning.”

(See also: [David](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#), [reign](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

forgive, forgiveness

Definition:

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against a person who did something hurtful. “Forgiveness” is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean, “cancel” as in the expression, “forgive a debt.”
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus’ sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “forgive” could be translated as, “pardon” or “cancel” or “release” or “not hold against” (someone).
- The term “forgiveness” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “practice of not resenting” or “declaring (someone) as not guilty” or “the act of pardoning.”

(See: [guilt](#), [guilty](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [07-10] But Esau had already **forgiven** Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.
- [13-15] Then Moses climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would **forgive** the people. God listened to Moses and **forgave** them.
- [17-13] David repented of his sin and God **forgave** him.
- [21-05] In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people’s hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would **forgive** their sins.
- [29-01] One day Peter asked Jesus, “Master, how many times should I **forgive** my brother when he sins against me?”
- [29-08] I **forgave** your debt because you begged me.
- [38-05] Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the **forgiveness** of sins.

forsake, forsaken, forsook**Definition:**

The term “forsake” means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been “forsaken” has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

- When people “forsake” God, it means they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
- When God “forsakes” people, it means he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
- This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following God’s teachings.
- The term “forsaken” can be used as past tense as in “he has forsaken you” or to refer to someone who has “been forsaken.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include, “abandon” or “neglect” or “give up” or “go away from” or “leave behind,” depending on the context.
- To “forsake” God’s law could be translated “disobey God’s law.” This could also be translated as “abandon” or “give up on” or “stop obeying” his teachings or his laws.
- The phrase “be forsaken” can be translated as “be abandoned” or “be deserted.”
- The project language may find it more clear to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text is talking about forsaking a thing or a person.

Bible References:

Waiting

foundation, founded

Definition:

The verb “founded” means to be built on or based on something. A foundation is the base on which something is built.

- The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
- The term “foundation” can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
- A “foundation stone” was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “before the foundation of the world” could be translated as “before the creation of the world” or “before the time when the world first existed” or “before everything was first created.”
- The term “founded on” could be translated as “securely built on” or “firmly based on.”
- Depending on the context, “foundation” could be translated as “strong base” or “solid support” or “beginning” or “creation.”

(See also: [cornerstone](#), [create](#), [creation](#), [Creator](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

freewill offering

Definition:

A freewill offering was a type of sacrifice to God that was not required by the Law of Moses. It was a person's own choice to give this offering.

- If the freewill offering was an animal to be sacrificed, the animal was permitted to have slight defects since it was a voluntary offering.
- The Israelites ate the sacrificed animal as part of a celebration feast.
- When a freewill offering could be given, this was a cause of rejoicing for Israel since it showed that the harvest had been good so that the people had plenty of food.
- The book of Ezra describes a different type of freewill offering that was brought for rebuilding the temple. This offering consisted of gold and silver money, as well as bowls and other objects made of gold and silver.

(See also: [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#), [Ezra](#), [feast](#), [grain offering](#), [guilt offering](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God's law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [sin offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

fruit, fruitful

Definition:

The term “fruit” literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses “fruit” to refer to a person’s actions and thoughts. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person’s words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term “fruitful” always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term “fruitful” is also used figuratively to mean “prosperous.” This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the “fruit of wisdom” refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression “fruit of the Spirit” refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression, “fruit of the womb” refers to “what the womb produces,” that is, children.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for “fruit” that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural
- , “fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much spiritual fruit” or “having many children” or “prosperous.”
- The expression, “fruit of the land” could also be translated as, “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to “be fruitful and multiply,” which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as, “have many offspring” or “have many children and descendants” or “have many children so that you will have many descendants.”
- The expression, “fruit of the womb” could be translated as “what the womb produces” or “children a women gives birth to” or just “children.” When Elisabeth says to Mary, “blessed is the fruit of your womb” she means, “blessed is the child you will give birth to.” The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression, “fruit of the vine” could be translated as “vine fruit” or “grapes.”

- Depending on the context, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as, “will produce more fruit” or “will have more children” or “will be prosperous.”
- The apostle Paul’s expression, “fruitful labor” could be translated as, “work that brings very good results” or “efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus.”
- The “fruit of the Spirit” could also be translated as “works that the Holy Spirit produces” or “words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in you.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [grain](#), [grape](#)[Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [vine](#), [womb](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

fulfill

Definition:

The term “fulfill” means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “fulfill” could be translated as “accomplish” or “complete” or “cause to happen” or “obey” or “perform.”
- The phrase “has been fulfilled” could also be translated as, “has come true” or “has happened” or “has taken place.”
- Ways to translate “fulfill” as in “fulfill your ministry” could include, “complete” or “perform” or “practice” or “serve other people as God has called you to do.”

(See also: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [minister](#), [ministry](#), [call](#), [calling](#), [called](#), [call out](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[24-04]** John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, “See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”
- **[40-03]** The soldiers gambled for Jesus’ clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”
- **[42-07]** Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in God’s word must be **fulfilled**.”
- **[43-05]** “This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- **[43-07]** “This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
- **[44-05]** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die.”

Gad

Facts:

Gad is the name of one of the sons of Jacob, that is, Israel.

- Gad's family became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- Another man in the Bible named Gad was a prophet who confronted King David for his sin of taking a census of the Israelite people.
- The cities, Baalgad and Migdalgad are each two words in the original text and are sometimes written, "Baal Gad" and "Migdal Gad."

(Translation suggestions:[How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [census](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

gate, gate bar**Definition:**

A “gate” is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city. The “gate bar” refers to a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place to lock the gate.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made, because city walls were thick enough to have gateways that produced cool shade from the hot sun. Citizens found it pleasant to sit in the shade to conduct their business and even to judge legal cases.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be, “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
- The phrase, “bars of the gate” could be translated as, “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

Bible References:

Waiting

Gath

Facts:

Gath was one of the five major cities of the Philistines. It was located north of Ekron and east of Ashdod and Ashkelon.

- The Philistine warrior Goliath was from the city of Gath.
- During the time of Samuel, the Philistines stole the ark of the covenant from Israel and took it to their pagan temple at Ashdod. It was then moved to Gath and later to Ekron. But God punished the people of those cities with disease, so they sent it back to Israel again.
- When David was escaping from King Saul, he fled to Gath and lived there for awhile with his two wives and six hundred men who were his loyal followers.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ashdod](#), [Azotus](#), [Ashkelon](#), [Ekron](#), [Gaza](#), [Goliath](#), [Philistines](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Gerar

Facts:

Gerar is a city and region in the land of Canaan, located southwest of Hebron and northwest of Beersheba.

- King Abimelech was the ruler of Gerar when Abraham and Sarah settled there.
- The Philistines dominated the region of Gerar during the time that the Israelites were living in Canaan.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abimelech](#), [Beersheba](#), [Hebron](#), [Philistines](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Gibeon, Gibeonite

Facts:

Gibeon was a city that was located about 13 kilometers northwest of Jerusalem. The people living in Gibeon were the Gibeonites.

- When the Gibeonites heard about how the Israelites had destroyed the cities of Jericho and Ai, they were afraid.
- So the Gibeonites came to the leaders of Israel at Gilgal and pretended to be people from a far-away country.
- The Israelite leaders were deceived and made an agreement with the Gibeonites that they would protect them and not destroy them.

(See also: [Gilgal](#), [Jericho](#), [Jerusalem](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[15-06]** But one of the Canaanite people groups, called the **Gibeonites**, lied to Joshua and said they were from a place far from Canaan.
- **[15-07]** Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the Amorites, heard that the **Gibeonites** had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked **Gibeon**.
- **[15-08]** So Joshua gathered the Israelite army and they marched all night to reach the **Gibeonites**.

gift

Definition:

The term “gift” refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return

- Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called “gifts.”
- In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift
- The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
- In the New Testament, the term “gifts” is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “gift” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “something that is given.”
- In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term “gift from the Spirit” could be translated as, “spiritual ability” or “special ability from the Holy Spirit” or “special spiritual skill that God gave.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Gilead

Definition:

Gilead is the name of a mountainous region east of the Jordan river, where the Israelite tribes of Gad, Reuben, and Manasseh lived.

- This region is also referred to as the “hill country of Gilead” or “Mount Gilead.”
- “Gilead” was also the name of several men in the Old Testament. One of these men was the grandson of Manasseh. Another Gilead was the father of Jephthah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Gad](#), [Jephthah](#), [Manasseh](#), [Reuben](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

glory, glorious

Definition:

In general, the term “glory” means honor, splendor, and extreme greatness. Anything that has glory is said to be “glorious.”

- Sometimes “glory” refers to something of great value and importance. In other contexts it communicates splendor, brightness, or judgment.
- For example, the expression “glory of the shepherds” refers to the lush pastures where their sheep had plenty of grass to eat.
- Glory is especially used to describe God, who is more glorious than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything in his character reveals his glory and his splendor.
- The expression “to glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include, “splendor” or “brightness” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression, “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as, “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”

(See also: [glorify](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [23-07] Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- [25-06] Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- [37-01] When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God.”
- [37-08] Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glory** if you believe in me?”

goat, kid

Definition:

A goat is a medium-sized, four-legged animal which is similar to a sheep and is raised primarily for its milk and meat. A baby goat is called a “kid.”

- Like sheep, goats were important animals of sacrifice, especially at Passover.
- Although goats and sheep can be very similar, these are some ways that they are different:
 - Goats have coarse hair; sheep have wool.
 - The tail of a goat stands up; the tail of a sheep hangs down.
 - A sheep usually like to stay with their herd, but goats are more independent and tend to wander away from the herd.
- In Bible times, goats were often the main source of milk in Israel.
- Goat skins were used for tent coverings and to make bags for holding wine.
- In both the Old and New Testaments, the goat was used as a symbol for unrighteous people, perhaps because of their tendency to wander away from the one taking care of them.
- The Israelites also used goats as symbolic sin bearers. When one goat was sacrificed, the priest would lay his hands on a second live goat and send it into the desert as a symbol of the animal bearing the people’s sins.

(See also: [flock](#), [herd](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#), [unrighteous](#), [unrighteousness](#), [wine](#), [wineskin](#), [new wine](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

God

Facts:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh” which means, “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include, “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being.”
- Other ways to translate “God” could be, “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god.
- Another way to make this distinction would be to use two different terms for “God” and “god.”
- The phrase, “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as, “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [create](#), [creation](#), [Creator](#), [false god](#), [god](#), [God the Father](#), [Heavenly Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [idol](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Yahweh](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [01-01] **God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- [01-15] **God** made man and woman in his own image.
- [05-03] "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- [09-14] **God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- [10-02] Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- [16-01] The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- [22-07] You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- [24-09] There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- [25-07] "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- [28-01] "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- [49-09] But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- [50-16] But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

gold

Definition:

Gold is a yellow-colored high-quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included ear rings and other jewelry, idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: [altar](#), [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [silver](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

good, goodness

Definition:

The word “good” has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God’s character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is “good” could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is “good” could be called “fertile” or “productive.”
- A “good” crop could be a “plentiful” crop.
- A person can be “good” at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, “a good farmer.”
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”
- The term “goodness” usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include, “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as, “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone.
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include, “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [profit](#), [profitable](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [01-04] God saw that what he had created was **good**.

- [01-11] God planted...the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.”
- [01-12] Then God said, ”It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- [02-04]”God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- [08-12]”You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good!**”
- [14-15] Joshua was a **good** leader because he tTable of Contentsrusted and obeyed God.
- [18-13] Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- [28-01]”**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, ”Why do you call me ‘**good?**’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

governor, govern, proconsul, government

Definition:

A “governor” is a person who rules over a state, region, or territory. The word “govern” means to guide, lead, or manage people.

- The term “proconsul” was a more specific title for a governor who ruled over a Roman province.
- In Bible times, governors were appointed by a king or emperor and were under his authority.
- A “government” is made up of all the rulers who govern a certain country or empire. These rulers make laws that guide the behavior of their citizens so that there is peace, safety, and prosperity for all the people of that nation.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “governor” can also be translated as “ruler” or “overseer” or “regional leader” or “one who rules over a small territory.”
- Depending on the context, the term “govern” could also be translated as, “rule over” or “lead” or “manage” or supervise.”
- The term “governor” should be translated differently than the terms for king or emperor, since a governor was a less powerful ruler who was under their authority.
- The term “proconsul” could also be translated as, “Roman governor” or “Roman provincial ruler.”

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [province](#), [provincial](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

grace, gracious**Definition:**

The word “grace” refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term “gracious” describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God’s grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression “to find grace” is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that “grace” could be translated include, “divine kindness” or “God’s favor” or “God’s kindness and forgiveness for sinners” or “merciful kindness.”
- The term “gracious” could be translated as “full of grace” or “kind” or “merciful” or “mercifully kind.”
- The expression, “he found grace in the eyes of God” could be translated as, “he received mercy from God” or “God mercifully helped him” or “God showed his favor to him” or “God was pleased with him and helped him.”

Bible References:

Waiting

grain

Definition:

The term “grain” usually refers to the seed of a food plant such as wheat, barley, corn, millet, or rice. It can also refer to the whole plant.

- In the Bible, the main grains that are referred to are wheat and barley.
- The heads of grain are the part of the plant that holds the grain.
- Note that some older Bible versions use the word “corn” to refer to grain in general. In modern English however, “corn” only refers to one type of grain.

(See also: [head](#), [wheat](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

grain offering

Definition:

A grain offering was a gift of wheat or barley flour offered to God, often after a burnt offering.

- The grain used for the grain offering had to be finely ground up. Sometimes it was cooked before being offered, but other times it was left uncooked.
- Oil and salt were added to the grain flour, but no yeast or honey was permitted.
- Part of the grain offering was burned up and part of it was eaten by the priests.

(See also: [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#), [guilt offering](#) , [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [sin offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

guilt, guilty

Definition:

The term “guilt” refers to the fact of having sinned or committed a crime.

- To “be guilty” means to have done something morally wrong, that is, to have disobeyed God.
- The opposite of “guilty” is “innocent.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages might translate “guilt” as “the weight of sin” or “the counting of sins.”
- Ways to translate “to be guilty” could include a word or phrase that means, “to be at fault” or “having done something morally wrong” or “having committed a sin.”

ULB exs: take away the guilt of your sin, take away your guilt, guilt offering, punish your guilt, no guilt for murder will attach to him, carry his own guilt, wash away his guilt, be in great guilt, our guilt grows to the heavens

(See also: [innocent](#), [iniquity](#)[punish](#), [punishment](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#).)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[39-02]** They brought many witnesses who lied about him (Jesus). However, their statements did not agree with each other, so the Jewish leaders could not prove he was **guilty** of anything.
- **[39-11]** After speaking with Jesus, Pilate went out to the crowd and said, “I find no **guilt** in this man.” But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, “Crucify him!” Pilate replied, “He is not **guilty**.” But they shouted even louder. Then Pilate said a third time, “He is not **guilty!**”
- **[40-04]** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Don’t you fear God? We are **guilty**, but this man is innocent.
- **[49-10]** Because of your sin, you are **guilty** and deserve to die.

hand, right hand, to hand over

Definition:

There are several figurative ways that “hand” is used in the Bible:

- To “hand” something to someone means to put something into that person’s hands.
- The term “hand” is often used in reference to God’s power and action, such as when God says, “Has not my hand made all these things?” (See: **Metonymy**)
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- Placing hands on someone is often done while speaking a blessing over that person.
- The term “laying on of hands” refers to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service or to pray for healing.
- Some other figurative uses of “hand” include:
 - To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.”
 - To “save from the hand of” means to stop someone from harming someone else.
 - To be “close at hand” means to be “nearby.”
 - The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
 - The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, “by the hand of the Lord” means that the Lord is the one who caused something to happen.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that this part of the letter was physically written down by him, rather than spoken to someone else to write down.

Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression, “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- When “hand” refers to the person, such as in “the hand of God did this,” it could be translated as “God did this.”
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as, “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as, “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression

with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [enemy](#), [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#), [captive](#), [captivity](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#), [power](#), [powers](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

harp

Definition:

A harp is a stringed musical instrument, usually having a large open frame with vertical strings.

- In Bible times, fir wood was used to make harps and other musical instruments.
- Harps were often held in the hands and played while walking.
- In many places in the Bible, harps are mentioned as instruments that were used to praise and worship God.
- David wrote several psalms which were set to harp music.
- He also played a harp for King Saul to soothe the king's troubled spirit.

(See also: [David](#), [fir](#), [psalm](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

harvest

Definition:

The term “harvest” refers to the gathering in of ripe fruits or vegetables from the plants on which they were growing.

- The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
- The Israelites held a “Festival of Harvest” or “Festival of Ingathering” to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
- In a figurative sense, the word “harvest” can refer to people coming to believe in Jesus or can describe a person’s spiritual growth.
- The idea of a harvest of spiritual crops fits with the figurative image of fruits being a picture of godly character qualities.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
- The event of harvesting could be translated as, “time of gathering in” or “crop gathering time” or “fruit picking time.”
- The verb “to harvest” could be translated as, “to gather in” or “to pick up” or “to collect.”

(See: [firstfruits](#), [festival](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

head

Definition:

In the Bible, the word “head” is used with several figurative meanings.

- Often this term is used to refer to being in authority over people, as in, “you have made me the head over nations.” This could be translated as, “You have made me the ruler...” or “You have given me authority over...”
- Jesus is called the “head of the church.” Just as a person’s head guides and directs the members of its body, so Jesus guides and directs the members of his “body,” the Church.
- The New Testament teaches that a husband is the “head” or authority of his wife. He is given the responsibility of leading and guiding his wife and family.
- The expression, “no razor will ever touch his head” means “ he will never cut or shave his hair.”
- The term “head” can also refer to the beginning or source of something as in the “head of the street.”
- The expression “heads of grain” refers to the top part of a wheat or barley plant that contains the seeds.
- Another figurative use for “head” is when it is used to represent the whole person as in, “this gray head” referring to an elderly person or “the head of Joseph” referring to Joseph. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- The expression “let their blood be on his own head” means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “head” could be translated as, “authority” or “the one who leads and directs” or “the one who is responsible for.”
- The expression “head of” can refer to the whole person and so this expression could be translated using just the person’s name. For example, “the head of Joseph” could simply be translated as “Joseph.”
- The expression “will be on his own head” could be translated as “will be on him” or “he will be punished for” or “he will be held responsible for” or “he will be considered guilty for.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include, “beginning” or “source” or “ruler” or “leader” or “top.”

(See: [grain](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

- [Prev chunk: publish-current](#)

- This chunk : review-publish | publish-current
- Next chunk: publish-current

heal, cure

Definition:

The terms “heal” and “cure” both mean to cause a sick, wounded, or disabled person to be healthy again.

- A person who is “healed” or “cured” has been “made well” or “made healthy.”
- Healing can happen naturally since God gave our bodies the ability to recover from many kinds of wounds and diseases. This kind of healing usually happens slowly.
- However, certain conditions such as being blind or paralyzed, and certain serious diseases such as leprosy do not heal on their own. When people are healed of these things, it is a miracle that usually happens suddenly.
- For example, Jesus healed many people who were blind or lame or diseased and they became well right away.
- The apostles also healed people miraculously, such as when Peter caused a crippled man to immediately be able to walk.

(See also: [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[19-14]** One of the miracles happened to Naaman, an enemy commander, who had a horrible skin disease. He had heard of Elisha so he went and asked Elisha to **heal** him.
- **[21-10]** He (Isaiah) also predicted that the Messiah would **heal** sick people and those who could not hear, see, speak, or walk.
- **[26-06]** Jesus continued saying, “And during the time of the prophet Elisha, there were many people in Israel with skin diseases. But Elisha did not **heal** any of them. He only **healed** the skin disease of Naaman, a commander of Israel’s enemies.”
- **[26-08]** They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and Jesus **healed** them.
- **[32-14]** She had heard that Jesus had **healed** many sick people and thought, “I’m sure that if I can just touch Jesus’ clothes, then I will be **healed**, too!”
- **[44-03]** Immediately, God **healed** the lame man, and he began to walk and jump around, and to praise God.
- **[44-08]** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you **healed** by the power of Jesus the Messiah.”
- **[49-02]**] Jesus did many miracles that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, **healed** many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

heart

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with no holding back, with complete commitment and willingness.
- The expression, “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. They have been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this nonfiguratively with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as, “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as, “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include, “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: [hard](#), [hardness](#), [harden](#) other)

Bible References:

Waiting

heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.
- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it is a way of referring to God. For example, when Matthew writes about the “kingdom of heaven” he is referring to the kingdom of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it could be translated as “God.”
- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as, “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See: [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [04-02] They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- [14-11] He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- [23-07] Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- [29-09] Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- [37-09] Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- [42-11] Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

Hebron

Facts:

Hebron was a city located in the high, rocky hills about 20 miles south of Jerusalem.

- The city was built around 2,000 B.C. during the time of Abram. It was mentioned many times in the historical accounts given in the Old Testament.
- Hebron had a very important role in King David's life. Several of his sons, including Absalom, were born there.
- The city was destroyed around 70 A.D. by the Romans.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Absalom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Hezekiah

Definition:

Hezekiah was the 13th king over the kingdom of Judah. He was a king who trusted and obeyed God.

- Unlike his father Ahaz who had been an evil king, King Hezekiah was a good king who destroyed all the places of idol worship in Judah.
- One time when Hezekiah got very sick and almost died, he earnestly prayed that God would spare his life. God healed him and allowed him to live 15 more years.
- As a sign to Hezekiah that this would happen, God did a miracle and caused time to move backwards.
- God also answered Hezekiah's prayer to save his people from King Sennacherib of Assyria, who was attacking them.

(See also: [Ahaz](#), [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [Judah](#), [Sennacherib](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

high places

Definition:

The term “high places” refers to the altars and shrines that were used for worshiping idols. They were usually built on higher ground, such as on a hill or mountainside.

- Many of the kings of Israel sinned against God by building altars to false gods on these high places. This led the people to become deeply involved in worshiping idols.
- When a God-fearing king started ruling in Israel or Judah, often he would remove the high places or altars in order to stop the worship of these idols.
- However, some of these good kings were careless and did not remove the high places, which resulted in the entire nation of Israel continuing to worship idols.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include, “elevated places for idol worship” or “hilltop idol shrines” or “idol altar mounds.”
- Make sure it is clear that this term refers to the idol altars, not just to the high place where those altars are located.

(See also: [altar](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

high priest

Definition:

The term “high priest” refers to a special priest who was appointed to serve for one year as the leader of all the other Israelite priests.

- The high priest had special responsibilities. He was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy part of the temple to offer a special sacrifice once a year.
- The Israelites had many priests, but only one high priest at a time.
- When Jesus was being arrested, Caiaphas was the official high priest. Caiaphas’ father-in-law Annas is also mentioned sometimes because he was a former high priest who probably still had power and authority over the people.

Translation Suggestions:

- “High priest” could be translated as “supreme priest” or “highest ranking priest.”
- Make sure this term is translated differently from the term “chief priest.”

(See also: [Annas](#), [Caiaphas](#), [chief priests](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-08]** No one could enter the room behind the curtain except the **high priest**, because God lived there.
- **[21-07]** The Messiah who would come would be the perfect **high priest** who would offer himself as a perfect sacrifice to God.
- **[38-03]** The Jewish leaders, led by the **high priest**, paid Judas thirty silver coins to betray Jesus.
- **[39-01]** The soldiers led Jesus to the house of the **high priest** in order for the **high priest** to question him.
- **[39-03]** Finally, the **high priest** looked directly at Jesus and said, “Tell us, are you the Messiah, the Son of the living God?”
- **[44-07]** The next day, the Jewish leaders brought Peter and John to the **high priest** and the other religious leaders.
- **[45-02]** So the religious leaders arrested Stephen and brought him to the **high priest** and the other leaders of the Jews, where more false witnesses lied about Stephen.
- **[46-01]** The **high priest** gave Saul permission to go to the city of Damascus to arrest Christians there and bring them back to Jerusalem.

- **[48-06]** Jesus is the Great **High Priest**. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only sacrifice that could take away the sin of all the people in the world. Jesus was the perfect **high priest** because he took the punishment for every sin that anyone has ever committed.

Hittite

Definition:

The Hittites were descendants of Ham through his son Canaan. They became a large empire located in what is now Turkey and northern Palestine.

- Abraham bought a piece of property from Ephron the Hittite so that he could bury his deceased wife Sarah in a cave there. Eventually Abraham and several of his descendants were also buried in that cave.
- Esau's parents were grieved when he married two Hittite women.
- One of David's mighty men was named Uriah the Hittite.
- Some of the foreign women that Solomon married were Hittites. These foreign women turned Solomon's heart away from God because of the false gods they worshiped.
- The Hittites were often a threat to the Israelites, both physically and spiritually.

(See also: [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [Esau](#), [foreigner](#), [foreign](#), [alien](#), [Ham](#), [mighty](#), [might](#), [Solomon](#), [Uriah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Hivite

Facts:

The Hivites were one of seven major people groups living in the land of Canaan.

- Like all these groups, the Hivites were descended from Canaan, who was Noah's grandson.
- Shechem the Hivite raped Jacob's daughter Dinah, and her brothers killed many Hivites in revenge.
- When Joshua led the Israelites to take over the land of Canaan, the Israelites were tricked into making a treaty with the Hivites instead of conquering them.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Hamor](#), [Noah](#), [Shechem](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

holy, holiness

Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- Since God is holy, people cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because they are mere human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include, “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [consecratesanctify](#), [sanctification](#), [set apart](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-16]** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **[09-12]** “You are standing on **holy** ground.”
- **[13-02]** “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation.”
- **[13-05]** “Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**.”
- **[22-05]** “So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God.”
- **[50-02]** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

holy place, most holy place

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “the holy place” and “the most holy place” refer to the two parts of the tabernacle or temple building.

- The “holy place” was the first room and it contained the altar of incense and the table with the special “bread of the presence” on it.
- The “most holy place” was the second, innermost room and it contained the ark of the covenant.
- A thick, heavy curtain separated the outer room from the inner room.
- The high priest was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy place.
- Sometimes “holy place” refers to the both the building and courtyard areas of either the temple or tabernacle. It can also refer generally to any place that is set apart for God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “holy place” could also be translated as, “room set apart for God” or “special room for meeting God” or “place reserved for God.”
- The term, “most holy place” could be translated as, “room that is the most set apart for God” or “most special room for meeting God.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the general expression “a holy place” could include, “a consecrated place” or “a place that God has set apart” or “a place in the temple complex, which is holy” or “a courtyard of God’s holy temple.”

(See also: [altar of incense](#), [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [bread](#), [consecrate](#), [courtyard](#), [court](#), [curtain](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [set apart](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord

Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as, “the Spirit” and “Spirit of Yahweh” and “Spirit of truth.”
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God’s Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God’s will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate “holy” and “spirit.”
- Ways to translate this term could also include, “Pure Spirit” or “Spirit who is Holy” or “God the Spirit.”

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [God](#), [Lord](#), [God the Father](#), [heavenly Father](#), [Father](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#), [gift](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-01]** But **God’s Spirit** was there over the water.
- **[24-08]** When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of God** appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- **[26-01]** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **[26-03]** Jesus read, “God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed.”
- **[42-10]** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **[43-03]** They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- **[43-08]** “And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are now seeing and hearing.”

- **[43-11]** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit.**"
- **[45-01]** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.

honey, honeycomb

Definition:

Honey is the sweet, sticky, edible substance that honeybees make out of flower nectar. Honeycomb is the waxy frame where the bees store honey.

- Depending on the kind, honey can be yellowish or brownish in color.
- Honey can be found in the wild, such as in the hollow of a tree, or wherever the bees make a nest. People also raise bees in hives in order to produce honey to eat or sell, but probably the honey mentioned in the Bible was wild honey.
- Three people that the Bible specifically mentions as eating wild honey were Jonathan, Samson, and John the Baptist.
- This term is often used figuratively to describe something that is sweet or very pleasurable. For example, God's words and decrees are said to be "sweeter than honey." (See also: [Simile](#), [Metaphor](#))
- Sometimes a person's words are described as seeming sweet like honey, but instead result in deceiving and harming others.

(See also: [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [Jonathan](#), [Philistines](#), [Samson](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

honor, to honor

Definition:

The terms “honor” and “to honor” refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God also instructs Christians to honor others, but not to try to get honor for themselves.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents, which includes respect and obedience.
- the terms “honor” and “glory” are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Honor for God includes thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “honor” could include, “respect” or “esteem” or “high regard.”
- The term “to honor” could be translated as “to show special respect to” or “to cause to be praised” or “to show high regard for” or “to highly value.”

(See also: [dishonor](#), [dishonorable](#), [glory](#), [glorious](#), [glorify](#), [praise](#) other)

Bible References:

Waiting

Horeb

Definition:

Mount Horeb is another name for Mount Sinai, where God gave Moses the stone tablets with the ten commandments.

- Mount Horeb is called the “mountain of God.”
- Horeb was the place where Moses saw the burning bush when he was tending sheep.
- Mount Horeb was the place where God revealed his covenant to the Israelites by giving them the stone tablets with his commandments written on them.
- It was also the place where God later told Moses to strike a rock to provide water for the Israelites as they were wandering in the desert.
- The exact location of this mountain is not known, but it may have been in the southern part of what is now the Sinai Peninsula.
- It is possible that “Horeb” was the actual name of the mountain and that “Mount Sinai” simply means “mountain of Sinai,” referring to the fact that Mount Horeb was located in the desert of Sinai.

(See also: [covenant](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Moses](#), [Sinai](#), [Mount Sinai](#), [Ten Commandments](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

horse

Definition:

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for doing farm work and for transporting people.

- Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
- Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.
- In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon's great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
- Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.

(See also: [chariot](#), , [donkey](#), [mule](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

horsemen

Definition:

In Bible times, the term “horsemen” referred to men who rode horses into battle.

- Warriors who rode in horse-pulled chariots may also have been called “horsemen,” though this term usually refers to men who are actually riding on the horses.
- The Israelites believed that using horses in battle placed too much emphasis on their own strength rather than on Yahweh, so they did not use a lot of horsemen.
- This term could also be translated as, “horse riders” or “men on horses.”

(See also: [chariot](#), [horse](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

house

Definition:

The term “house” is often used figuratively in the Bible.

- Sometimes it means “household,” referring to the people who live together in one house.
- Often “house” refers to a person’s descendants or other relatives. For example, the phrase “house of David” refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms “house of God” and “house of Yahweh” refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to where God is or dwells.
- In Hebrews 3, “God’s house” is used as a metaphor to refer to God’s people or more generally, to everything pertaining to God.
- The phrase “house of Israel” can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “house” could be translated as, “household” or “people” or “family” or “descendants” or “temple” or “dwelling place.”
- The phrase “house of David” could be translated as, “clan of David” or “family of David” or “descendants of David.” Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate “house of Israel” could include, “people of Israel” or “Israel’s descendants” or “Israelites.”
- The phrase “house of Yahweh” could be translated as “Yahweh’s temple” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped” or “place where Yahweh meets with his people” or “where Yahweh dwells.”
- “House of God” could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: [David](#), [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [house of God](#), [Yahweh’s house](#), [household](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

house of David

Facts:

The expression “house of David” refers to the family or descendants of King David.

- This could also be translated as, “descendants of David” or “family of David” or “King David’s clan.”
- Because Jesus was descended from David, he was part of the “house of David.”
- Sometimes “house of David” or “household of David” refers to the people in David’s family who were still living.
- Other times this term is more general and refers to all his descendants, including those who had already died.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [David](#), [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [house](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [king](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

house of God, Yahweh's house

Definition:

In the Bible, the phrases “house of God” (God’s house) and “house of Yahweh (Yahweh’s house) refer to a place where God is worshiped.

- This term is also used more specifically to refer to the tabernacle or the temple.
- Sometimes “God’s house” is used to refer to the people of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a place of worship, this term could be translated as, “a house for worshipping God” or “a place for worshipping God.”
- If it is referring to the temple or tabernacle, this could be translated as, “the temple (or tabernacle) where God is worshiped (or “where God is present” or “where God meets with his people.”)
- The word “house” may be important to use in the translation in order to communicate that God “dwells” there, that is, his spirit is in that place to meet with his people and to be worshiped by them.

(See also: [people of God](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

humble, humility

Definition:

The term “humble” describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand our weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- If a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one’s own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one’s gifts and abilities.
- The phrase “be humble” could be translated as “don’t be prideful.”
- “Humble yourself before God” could be translated as, “Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness.”

(See also: [proud](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [17-02] David was a **humble** and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- [34-10] ”God will **humble** everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever **humbles** himself.”

idol, idolatrous

Definition:

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#), [kingdom](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-05]** ”Do not make **idols** or worship them, because I, Yahweh, am a jealous God.”
- **[13-12]** Aaron made a golden **idol** in the shape of a calf. The people began to wildly worship the **idol** and make sacrifices to it!
- **[14-03]** ”You must completely destroy all of their **idols**. If you do not obey me, you will worship their **idols** instead of me.”
- **[18-12]** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel worshiped **idols**. This kind of worship often included sexual immorality and sometimes even child sacrifice.
- **[19-16]** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshipping **idols** and to start showing justice and mercy to others.

image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure

Definition:

These terms are all used to refer to idols that have been made for worshiping a false god. In the context of worshiping idols, the term “image” is a shortened form of “carved image.”

- A “carved image” or “carved figure” is a wooden object that has been made to look like an animal, person, or thing.
- A “cast metal figure” is an object or statue created by melting metal and pouring it into a mold that is in the shape of an object, animal, or person.
- These wooden and metal objects were used in the worship of false gods.
- The term “image” when referring to an idol could either refer to a wooden or metal idol.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to an idol, the term “image” could also be translated as “statue” or “engraved idol” or “carved religious object.”
- It may be more clear in some languages to always use a descriptive word with this term, such as “carved image” or “cast metal figure,” even in places where only the term “image” or “figure” is in the original text.
- Make sure it is clear that this term is different than the term used to refer to being in the image of God.

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [God](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [image of God](#), [image](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

incense

Definition:

The term “incense” refers to a mixture of fragrant spices that are burned to produce smoke that has a pleasant smell.

- God told the Israelites to burn incense as an offering to him.
- The incense had to be made from mixing equal amounts of five specific spices exactly as God directed. This was a sacred incense, so they were not allowed to use it for any other purpose.
- The “altar of incense” was a special altar that was only used for burning incense.
- The incense was offered at least four times a day, at each hour of prayer. It was also offered every time a burnt offering was made.
- The burning of incense represents prayer and worship rising up to God from his people.
- Other ways to translate “incense” could include, “fragrant spices” or “good-smelling plants.”

(See also: [altar of incense](#), [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#), [frankincense](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

Definition:

The terms “inherit” and “inheritance” refer to receiving something valuable from a parent or other person because of a special relationship with that person. The “heir” is the person who receives the inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- A spiritual inheritance is everything that God gives people who trust in Jesus, including blessings in the present life as well as eternal life with him.
- The Bible also calls God’s people his inheritance, which means that they belong to him; they are his valued possession.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.
- There is also a figurative or spiritual sense in which people who belong to God are said to “inherit the land.” This means that they will prosper and be blessed by God in both physical and spiritual ways.
- In the New Testament, God promises that those who trust in Jesus will “inherit salvation” and “inherit eternal life.” It is also expressed as, “inherit the kingdom of God.” This is a spiritual inheritance that lasts forever.
- There are other figurative meanings for these terms:
 - The Bible says that wise people will “inherit glory” and righteous people will “inherit good things.”
 - To “inherit the promises” means to receive the good things that God has promised to give his people.
 - This term is also used in a negative sense to refer to foolish or disobedient people who “inherit the wind” or “inherit folly.” This means they receive the consequences of their sinful actions, including punishment and worthless living.

Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include, “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
- Ways to translate “inheritance” could include, “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
- When God’s people are referred to as his inheritance this could be translated as, “valued ones belonging to him.”
- The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “privileged child who receives the father’s possessions” or “person chosen to receive (God’s) spiritual possessions or blessings.”
- The term “heritage” could be translated as, “blessings from God” or “inherited blessings.”

(See also: [heir](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Promised Land](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-06]** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**."
- **[27-01]** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?"
- **[35-03]** "There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, 'Father, I want my **inheritance** now!' So the father divided his property between the two sons."

iniquity

Definition:

The term “iniquity” is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term “sin,” but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word “iniquity” literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include “perversity” and “depravity,” which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “iniquity” could be translated as “wickedness” or “perverse actions” or “harmful acts.”
- Often, “iniquity” occurs in the same text as the word “sin” and “transgression” so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [transgress](#), [transgression](#), [trespass](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

innocent

Definition:

The term “innocent” means to not be guilty of a crime or other wrongdoing. It can also refer more generally to people who are not involved in evil things.

- A person accused of doing something wrong is innocent if he has not committed that wrong.
- Sometimes the term “innocent” is used to refer to people who have done nothing wrong to deserve the bad treatment they are receiving, as in an enemy army attacking “innocent people.”

Translation Suggestions:

- In most contexts, the term “innocent” can be translated as “not guilty” or “not responsible” or “not to blame” for something.
- When referring in general to innocent people, this term could be translated as, “who have done nothing wrong” or “who are not involved in evil.”
- The frequently occurring expression, “innocent blood” could be translated as, “people who did nothing wrong to deserve being killed.”
- The expression “shed innocent blood” could be translated as, “kill innocent people” or “kill people who did nothing wrong to deserve it.”
- In the context of someone being killed, “innocent of the blood of” could be translated as, “not guilty for the death of.”
- When talking about people not accepting the good news about Jesus but not accepting it, “innocent of the blood of” could be translated as “not responsible for whether they remain spiritually dead or not” or “not responsible for whether they accept this message.”
- When Judas said, “I have betrayed innocent blood” he was saying, “I have betrayed a man who did nothing wrong” or “I have caused the death of a man who was sinless.”
- When Pilate said about Jesus, “I am innocent of the blood of this innocent man,” this could be translated as, “I am not responsible for the killing of this man who has done nothing wrong to deserve it.”

(See also: [guilt](#), [guilty](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [08-06] After two years, Joseph was still in prison, even though he was **innocent**.

- **[40-04]** One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, "Do you have no fear of God? We are guilty, but this man is **innocent**."
- **[40-08]** When the soldier guarding Jesus saw everything that happened, he said, "Certainly, this man was **innocent**. He was the Son of God."
-

Isaac

Facts:

Isaac was the only son of Abraham and Sarah. God had promised to give them a son even though they were very old.

- The name “Isaac” means “he laughs.” When God told Abraham that Sarah would give birth to a son, Abraham laughed because they were both very old. Some time later, Sarah also laughed when she heard this news.
- But God fulfilled his promise and Isaac was born to Abraham and Sarah in their old age.
- God told Abraham that the covenant he had made with Abraham would also be for Isaac and his descendants forever.
- When Isaac was a youth, God tested Abraham’s faith by commanding him to sacrifice Isaac.
- Isaac’s son Jacob had twelve sons whose descendants later became the twelve tribes of the nation of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [forever](#), [fulfill](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Sarah](#), [Sarai](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[05-04]** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of promise. Name him **Isaac**.”
- **[05-06]** When **Isaac** was a young man, God tested Abraham’s faith by saying, “Take **Isaac**, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **[05-09]** God had provided the ram to be the sacrifice instead of **Isaac**.
- **[06-01]** When Abraham was very old and his son, **Isaac**, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, **Isaac**.
- **[06-05]** **Isaac** prayed for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **[07-10]** Then **Isaac** died, and Jacob and Esau buried him. The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to **Isaac** now passed on to Jacob.

Isaiah

Facts:

Isaiah was a prophet of God who prophesied during the reigns of four kings of Judah: Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah.

- He lived in Jerusalem during the time when the Assyrians were attacking the city, during the reign of Hezekiah.
- The Old Testament book of Isaiah is one of the major books of the Bible.
- Isaiah wrote many prophecies that came true while he was still living.
- Isaiah is especially known for the prophecies he wrote about the Messiah that came true 700 years later when Jesus was living on earth.
- Jesus and his disciples quoted Isaiah's prophecies to teach people about the Messiah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahaz](#), [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [Hezekiah](#), [Jotham](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [Uzziah](#), [Azariah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[21-09]** The prophet **Isaiah** prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **[21-10]** The prophet **Isaiah** said the Messiah would live in Galilee, comfort broken-hearted people, and proclaim freedom to captives and release to prisoners.
- **[21-11]** The prophet **Isaiah** also prophesied that the Messiah would be hated without reason and rejected.
- **[21-12]** **Isaiah** prophesied that people would spit on, mock, and beat the Messiah.
- **[26-02]** They handed him (Jesus) the scroll of the prophet **Isaiah** so that he would read from it. Jesus opened up the scroll and read part of it to the people.
- **[45-08]** When Philip approached the chariot, he heard the Ethiopian reading from what the prophet **Isaiah** wrote.
- **[45-10]** Philip explained to the Ethiopian that **Isaiah** was writing about Jesus.

Ishmael

Facts:

Ishmael was the son of Abraham and the Egyptian slave Hagar. There are also several other men in the Old Testament named Ishmael.

- The name “Ishmael” means, “God hears.”
- God promised to bless Abraham’s son Ishmael, but he was not the son God had promised to establish his covenant with.
- God protected Hagar and Ishmael when they were sent into the desert.
- While Ishmael was living in the desert of Paran, he married an Egyptian woman.
- Ishmael son of Nethaniah was an army officer from Judah who led a group of men to kill a governor who had been appointed by the Babylonian king, Nebuchadnezzar.
- There are also four other men named Ishmael in the Old Testament.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [covenant](#), [desert](#), [wilderness](#), [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [Hagar](#), [Isaac](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#), [Paran](#), [Sarah](#), [Sarai](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[05-02]** So Abram married Hagar. Hagar had a baby boy, and Abram named him **Ishmael**.
- **[05-04]**”I will make **Ishmael** a great nation, too, but my covenant will be with Isaac.”

Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel

Facts:

The term “Israel” is the name that God gave to Jacob. It means, “he struggles with God.”

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the “people of Israel,” the “nation of Israel,” or the “Israelites.”
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel was made up of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called “Judah” and the northern kingdom, called “Israel.”
- Often the term “Israel” can be translated as, “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel,” depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [nation](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-15]** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **[09-03]** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **[09-05]** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **[10-01]** They said, “This is what the God of **Israel** says, ‘Let my people go!’”
- **[14-12]** But despite all this, the people of **Israel** complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **[15-09]** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **[15-12]** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave **Israel** peace along all its borders.
- **[16-16]** So God punished **Israel** again for worshiping idols.
- **[43-06]** “Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

Issachar

Facts:

Issachar was the fifth son of Jacob. His mother was Leah.

- The tribe of Issachar was one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- Issachar's land was bordered by Naphtali, Zebulun, Manasseh, and Gad.
- It was located just south of the Sea of Galilee.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Gad](#), [Manasseh](#), [Naphtali](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#), [Zebulun](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Jacob, Israel

Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac and Rebekah.

- Jacob's name means "he grabs the heel" which is an expression meaning, "he deceives." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which means, "he struggles with God."
- Jacob was clever and deceptive. He found ways to take the firstborn blessing and inheritance rights from his older brother, Esau.
- Esau was angry and planned to kill him, so Jacob left his homeland. But years later Jacob returned with his wives and children to the land of Canaan where Esau was living, and their families lived peacefully near each other.
- Jacob had twelve sons. Their descendants became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- A different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [deceive](#), [deceit](#), [deception](#), [deceptive](#), [Esau](#), [Isaac](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Rebekah](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[07-01]** As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- **[07-07]** **Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- **[07-08]** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- **[07-10]** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- **[08-01]** Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

Jebusites, Jebus

Facts:

The Jebusites were a people group living in the land of Canaan. They were descended from Ham's son Canaan.

- The Jebusites lived in the city of Jebus, whose name was later changed to Jerusalem when King David conquered it.
- Melchizedek, the king of Salem, was probably of Jebusite origin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Ham](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Melchizedek](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Jehoiachin

Facts:

Jehoiachin was a king who ruled over the kingdom of Judah.

- Jehoiachin became king when he was 18 years old. He only reigned three months and after that he was captured by the Babylonian army and taken to Babylon.
- During his short reign, Jehoiachin did evil things like his grandfather King Manasseh and his father King Jehoiakim had done.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Jehoiakim](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Manasseh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Jehoiakim

Facts:

Jehoiakim was an evil king who reigned over the kingdom of Judah, beginning around 608 B.C. He was King Josiah's son. His name was originally Eliakim.

- The Egyptian pharaoh Necho changed Eliakim's name to Jehoiakim and made him king of Judah.
- Necho forced Jehoiakim to pay high taxes to Egypt.
- When Judah was later invaded by King Nebuchadnezzar, Jehoiakim was among those who were captured and taken to Babylon.
- Jehoiakim was an evil king who led Judah away from Yahweh. Jeremiah the prophet prophesied against him.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Eliakim](#), [Jeremiah](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Jehoram, Joram

Facts:

Jehoram was the name of two different kings in the Old Testament. Both these kings were also known as “Joram.”

- One King Jehoram ruled over the kingdom of Judah for eight years. He was the son of King Jehoshaphat. This is the king that is most commonly known as Jehoram.
- The other King Jehoram ruled over the kingdom of Israel for twelve years. He was the son of King Ahab.
- King Jehoram of Judah reigned during the time that the prophets Jeremiah, Daniel, Obadiah, and Ezekiel were prophesying in the kingdom of Judah.
- Jehoram also reigned during some of the time that his father King Jehoshaphat was reigning over Judah.
- Some translations may choose to consistently use the name “Jehoram” when this king of Israel is mentioned and the name “Joram” for the king of Judah.
- Another way to clearly identify each one would be to include the name of his father.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Jehoshaphat](#), [Joram](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Obadiah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Jehoshaphat

Facts:

Jehoshaphat is the name of at least two men in the Old Testament.

- The most well-known man by this name was King Jehoshaphat who was the fourth king to rule over the kingdom of Judah.
- He restored peace between Judah and Israel, and destroyed the altars of false gods.
- Another Jehoshaphat was a “recorder” for David and Solomon. His job included writing documents for the king to sign and recording the history of the important events that happened in the kingdom.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [altar](#), [David](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Jehu

Facts:

Jehu was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- Jehu son of Hanani was a prophet during the reigns of King Ahab of Israel and King Jehoshaphat of Judah.
- Jehu son (or descendant) of Jehoshaphat was a general in the Israelite army who was anointed king by order of the prophet Elisha.
- Jehu killed two evil kings: King Joram of Israel and King Ahaziah of Judah.
- King Jehu also killed all the relatives of the former King Ahab, and had the evil queen Jezebel killed.
- Jehu destroyed all the places of Baal worship in Samaria and killed all the prophets of Baal.
- King Jehu served the only true God, Yahweh, and was king over Israel for twenty-eight years.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Ahaziah](#), [Baal](#), [Elisha](#), [Jehoshaphat](#), [Jehu](#) , [Jezebel](#), [Joram](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Samaria](#), [Samaritan](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Jeremiah

Facts:

Jeremiah was a prophet of God in the kingdom of Judah. The Old Testament book of Jeremiah contains his prophecies.

- Like most of the prophets, Jeremiah often had to warn the people of Israel that God was going to punish them for their sins.
- Jeremiah prophesied that the Babylonians would capture Jerusalem, which made some of the people of Judah angry. So they put him in a deep, dry well and left him there to die. But the king of Judah ordered his servants to rescue Jeremiah from the well.
- Jeremiah wrote that he wished his eyes could be a “fountain of tears,” to express his deep sadness over the rebellion and sufferings of his people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [rebel](#), [rebellious](#), [rebellion](#), [suffer](#), [suffering](#), [well](#), [cistern](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[19-17]** Once, the prophet **Jeremiah** was put into a dry well and left there to die. He sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had mercy on him and ordered his servants to pull **Jeremiah** out of the well before he died.
- **[21-05]** Through the prophet **Jeremiah**, God promised that he would make a New Covenant, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai.

Jericho

Facts:

Jericho was a powerful city in the land of Canaan. It was located just west of the Jordan River and just north of the Salt Sea.

- Like all the Canaanites, the people of Jericho worshiped false gods.
- Jericho was the first city in the land of Canaan that God told the Israelites to conquer.
- When Joshua led the Israelites against Jericho, God did a great miracle to help them defeat the city.

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Jordan River](#), [Joshua](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[15-01]** Joshua sent two spies to the Canaanite city of **Jericho**.
- **[15-03]** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of **Jericho**.
- **[15-05]** Then the walls around **Jericho** fell down! The Israelites destroyed everything in the city as God had commanded.

Jeroboam

Facts:

Jeroboam son of Nebat was the first king of the northern kingdom of Israel around 900-910 BC. Another Jeroboam, son of King Jehoash, ruled over Israel about 120 years later.

- Yahweh gave Jeroboam son of Nebat a prophecy that he would become king after Solomon and that he would rule ten tribes of Israel.
- When Solomon died, the ten northern tribes of Israel rebelled against Solomon's son Rehoboam and instead made Jeroboam their king, leaving Rehoboam as king of only the southern two tribes, Judah and Benjamin.
- Jeroboam became a wicked king who led the people away from worshiping Yahweh and instead set up idols for them to worship. All the other kings of Israel followed Jeroboam's example and were evil like he was.
- Almost 120 years later, another King Jeroboam began ruling the northern kingdom of Israel. This Jeroboam was the son of King Jehoash and was wicked like all the previous kings of Israel had been.
- In spite of this, God had mercy on Israel and helped this King Jeroboam to gain land and establish boundaries for their territory.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[18-08]** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named **Jeroboam** to be their king.
- **[18-09]** **Jeroboam** rebelled against God and caused the people to sin. He built two idols for his people to worship instead of worshiping God at the Temple in the kingdom of Judah.

Jerusalem

Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of present-day Israel.

- The name, “Jerusalem” is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include “Salem”, “city of Jebus,” and “Zion.” Both “Jerusalem” and “Salem” have the root meaning of “peace.”
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called “Zion” which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- David’s son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going “up” to Jerusalem since it was located in the mountains.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [David](#), [Jebusites](#), [Jebus](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [Solomon](#), [temple](#), [Zion](#), [Mount Zion](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [17-05] David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- [18-02] In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- [20-07] They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- [20-12] So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.
- [38-01] About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- [38-02] After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- [42-08] ”It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere.”

- **[42-11]** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

Jesse

Facts:

Jesse was the father of King David, and the grandson of Ruth and Boaz.

- Jesse was from the tribe of Judah.
- He was an “Ephrathite,” which means he was from the town of Ephrathah (Bethlehem).
- The prophet Isaiah prophesied about a “shoot” or “branch” that would come from the “root of Jesse” and bear fruit. This refers to Jesus who was a descendant of Jesse.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Bethlehem](#), [Ephrathah](#), [Boaz](#), [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [fruit](#), [fruitful](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [king](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [Ruth](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Jew, Jewish, Jews

Facts:

Jews are people who are descendants of Abraham's grandson, Jacob. The word "Jew" comes from the word "Judah."

- People began to call the Israelites "Jews" after they returned to Judah from their exile in Babylon.
- Jesus the Messiah was Jewish. However, the Jewish religious leaders rejected Jesus and demanded that he be killed.
- Often the phrase "the Jews" refers to the leaders of the Jews, not all the Jewish people. In those contexts, some translations add "leaders of" to make this clear.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Jewish leaders](#), [Jewish authorities](#), [religious leaders](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[20-11]** The Israelites were now called **Jews** and most of them had lived their whole lives in Babylon.
- **[20-12]** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of **Jews** returned to the city of Jerusalem in Judah.
- **[37-10]** Many of the **Jews** believed in Jesus because of this miracle.
- **[37-11]** But the religious leaders of the **Jews** were jealous, so they gathered together to plan how they could kill Jesus and Lazarus.
- **[40-02]** Pilate commanded that they write, "King of the **Jews**" on a sign and put it on the cross above Jesus' head.
- **[46-06]** Right away, Saul began preaching to the **Jews** in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"

Jezreel

Definition:

Jezreel was the name of an important Israelite city in the territory of the Issachar tribe, located southwest of the Salt Sea.

- The city of Jezreel is one of the western points in the Plain of Megiddo, which is also called the “Valley of Jezreel.”
- Several kings of Israel had their palaces in the city of Jezreel.
- Naboth’s vineyard was located near King Ahab’s palace in Jezreel. The prophet Elijah prophesied against Ahab there.
- Ahab’s evil wife Jezebel was killed in Jezreel.
- Many other significant events happened in this city, including several battles.

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Elijah](#), [Issachar](#), [Jezebel](#), [palace](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Joash

Facts:

Joash was the name of several men in the Old Testament.

- One Joash was the father of the Israelite deliverer, Gideon.
- Another man named Joash was a descendant of Jacob's youngest son, Benjamin.
- The most well-known Joash became king of Judah at the age of seven. He was the son of Ahaziah, king of Judah, who had been murdered.
- When Joash was a very young child, his aunt saved him from being killed by hiding him away until he was old enough to be crowned king.
- King Joash was a good king who at first obeyed God. But he did not remove the high places and the Israelites started worshiping idols again.
- King Joash ruled Judah during some of the years that King Jehoash was ruling Israel. They were two different kings.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahaziah](#), [altar](#), [Benjamin](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [Gideon](#), [high places](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Joppa

Facts:

In Bible times, the city of Joppa was an important commercial seaport located on the Mediterranean Sea, south of the Plain of Sharon.

- The ancient site of Joppa is the present-day city of Jaffa, which is now part of the city of Tel Aviv.
- In the Old Testament, Joppa was the city where Jonah got on a boat going to Tarshish.
- In the New Testament, a Christian woman named Tabitha died in Joppa and Peter brought her back to life.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [the sea](#), [the Great Sea](#), [the western sea](#), [Mediterranean Sea](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Sharon](#), [Plain of Sharon](#), [Tarshish](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Joram

Facts:

Joram son of Ahab was a king of Israel. He was also sometimes referred to as “Jehoram.”

- King Joram of Israel reigned at the same time as King Jehoram of Judah.
- Joram was an evil king who worshiped false gods and caused Israel to sin.
- King Joram of Israel also reigned during the time of the prophet Elijah and Obadiah.
- Another man named Joram was the son of King Tou of Hamath when David was king.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [David](#), [Elijah](#), [Hamath](#), [Lebo Hamath](#), [Hamathites](#), [Jehoram](#), [Joram](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Obadiah](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Jordan River

Facts:

The Jordan River is a river that flows from north to south, and forms the eastern boundary of the land that was called Canaan.

- Today, the Jordan River separates Israel on the west from Jordan on the east.
- The Jordan River flows through the Sea of Galilee and then empties into the Dead Sea.
- When Joshua led the Israelites into Canaan, they had to cross the Jordan River. Because it was too deep, God miraculously stopped the water from flowing so they could go across.

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#), [Sea of Galilee](#), [Sea of Chinnereth](#), [Lake of Genesaret](#), [Sea of Tiberias](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[15-02]** The Israelites had to cross the **Jordan River** to enter into the Promised Land.
- **[15-03]** After the people crossed the **Jordan River**, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.
- **[19-14]** Elisha told him (Naaman) to dip himself seven times in the **Jordan River**.

Josiah

Facts:

Josiah was a godly king who reigned over the kingdom of Judah for thirty-one years. He led the people of Judah to repent and worship Yahweh.

- After his father King Amon was killed, Josiah became king over Judah at eight years of age.
- In the eighteenth year of his reign, King Josiah ordered Hilkiah the high priest to rebuild the temple of the Lord. While this was being done, the books of the Law were found.
- When the books of the Law were read to Josiah, he was grieved at how his people were disobeying God. He ordered that all the places of idol worship be destroyed and that the priests of the false gods be killed.
- He also ordered the people to start celebrating the Passover feast again.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [Judah](#), [law](#), [principle](#), [Passover](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Jotham

Definition:

In the Old Testament, there are three men with the name Jotham.

- One man named Jotham was the youngest son of Gideon. Jotham helped defeat his older brother Abimelech, who had killed all the rest of their brothers.
- Another man named Jotham was a king over Judah for sixteen years following the death of his father Uzziah (Azariah).
- Like his father, King Jotham obeyed God and was a good king.
- However, he did not remove the places of idol worship and this caused the people of Judah to later turn away from God again.
- Jotham is also one of the ancestors listed in the genealogy of Jesus Christ in the book of Matthew.

(See also: [Abimelech](#), [Ahaz](#), [Gideon](#), [Uzziah](#), [Azariah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

joy, joyful

Definition:

Joy is a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction that comes from God. The related term, “joyful” describes a person who feels very glad and full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “joy” could also be translated as “gladness” or “delight” or “great happiness.”
- The phrase, “be joyful” could be translated as “rejoice” or “be very glad” or with a phrase that means, “be very happy in God’s goodness.”
- A person who is joyful could be described as “very happy” or “delighted” or “deeply glad.”
- A phrase such as “make a joyful shout” could be translated as “shout in a way that shows you are very happy.”
- A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” **Metonymy**)

(See also: **rejoice**)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[33-07]**”The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with **joy**.”
- **[34-04]**”The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field.”
- **[41-07]** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

Judah

Facts:

Judah was one of Jacob's older sons. His mother was Leah. His descendants were called the "tribe of Judah."

- It was Judah who told his brothers to sell their younger brother Joseph as a slave instead of leaving him to die in a deep pit.
- King David and all the kings after him were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- When Solomon's reign ended and the nation of Israel divided, the kingdom of Judah was the southern part of the nation.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Jesus is called the "Lion of Judah."
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Jew](#), [Jewish](#), [Jews](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Judea](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

judge, judgment

Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether something is morally right or wrong.

- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “to judge” could include, “to decide” or “to condemn” or “to punish” or “to decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as, “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: [decree](#), [judge](#), [judgment day](#), [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [law](#), [principle](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[19-16]** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **[21-08]** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.

- **[39-04]** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, "We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?"
- **[50-14]** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

judge

Definition:

A judge is a person who decides what is right or wrong when there are disputes between people, usually in matters that pertain to the law.

- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a judge because he is the one perfect judge who makes the final decisions about what is right or wrong.
- After the people of Israel entered the land of Canaan and before they had kings to rule them, God appointed leaders called “judges” to lead them in times of trouble. Often these judges were military leaders who rescued the Israelites by defeating their enemies.
- The term “judge” could also be called “decision-maker” or “leader” or “deliverer” or “governor,” depending on the context.

(See also: [governor](#), [govern](#), [proconsul](#), [government](#), [judge](#), [judgment](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

just, justice, justly

Definition:

These terms refer to treating people fairly according to God's laws. Human laws that reflect God's standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be "just" is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God's eyes.
- To act "justly" means to treat people in a way that is right, good and proper according to God's laws.
- To receive "justice" means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term "just" has the broader meaning of "righteous" or "following God's laws."

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "just" could include, "morally right" or "fair."
- The term "justice" could be translated as, "fair treatment" or "deserved consequences."
- To "act justly" could be translated as, "treat fairly" or "behave in a just way."
- In some contexts, "just" could be translated as, "righteous" or "upright."

(See also: [judge](#), [judgment](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [upright](#), [uprightness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [17-09] David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- [18-13] Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- [19-16] They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- [50-17] Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

kind, kinds

Definition:

The terms “kind” and “kinds” refer to groups or classifications of things that are connected by shared characteristics.

- In the Bible, this term is specifically used to refer to the distinctive kinds of plants and animals that God made when he created the world.
- Often there are many different variations or species within each “kind.” For example, horses, zebras, and donkeys are all members of the same “kind,” but they are different species.
- The main thing that distinguishes each “kind” as a separate group is that members of that group can reproduce more of their same “kind.” Members of different kinds cannot do that with each other.

Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate this term could include, “type” or “class” or “group” or “animal (plant) group” or “category.”
- The word “species” would *not* be an accurate translation of this term, since “kind” is a more general category, with several species within it.

Bible References:

Waiting

kingdom

Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as, “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be, “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase, “kingdom of light” could be translated as, “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-02]** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **[18-04]** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon’s death.

- [18-07] Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- [18-08] The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- [21-08] A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

kingdom of Israel

Facts:

The term “kingdom of Israel” refers to the northern part of the nation of Israel when the twelve tribes of Israel were divided into two kingdoms after Solomon died.

- The kingdom of Israel in the north had ten tribes and the kingdom of Judah in the south had two tribes.
- The capital city of the kingdom of Israel was Samaria. It was about 50 km from Jerusalem, the capital city of Judah.
- All the kings of the kingdom of Israel were evil. They influenced the people to to serve idols and false gods.
- God sent the Assyrians to attack the kingdom of Israel. Many of Isaelites were captured and taken away to live in Assyria.
- The Assyrians brought foreigners to live among the remaining people of the kingdom of Israel. These foreigners intermarried with the Israelites, and their descendants became the Samaritan people.

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Jerusalem](#), [kingdom](#), [Samaria](#), [Samaritan](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[18-08]** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their kingdom in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom of Israel**.
- **[18-10]** The **kingdoms of Judah and Israel** became enemies and often fought against each other.
- **[18-11]** In the new **kingdom of Israel**, all the kings were evil.
- **[20-01]** The **kingdoms of Israel** and Judah both sinned against God.
- **[20-02]** The **kingdom of Israel** was destroyed by the Assyrian Empire, a powerful, cruel nation. The Assyrians killed many people in the **kingdom of Israel**, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country.
- **[20-04]** Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land where the **kingdom of Israel** had been. The foreigners rebuilt the destroyed cities and married the Israelites who were left there. The descendants of the Israelites who married foreigners were called Samaritans.

Judah, kingdom of Judah

Facts:

The tribe of Judah was the largest of the twelve tribes of Israel. The kingdom of Judah was made up of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin.

- After King Solomon died, the nation of Israel was divided into two kingdoms: Israel and Judah. The kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom, located west of the Salt Sea.
- The capital city of the kingdom of Judah was Jerusalem.
- Eight kings of Judah obeyed Yahweh and led the people to worship him. The other kings of Judah were evil and led the people to worship idols.
- Over 120 years after Assyria defeated Israel (the northern kingdom), Judah was conquered by the nation of Babylon. The Babylonians destroyed the city and the temple, and took most of the people of Judah to Babylon as captives.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Judah, kingdom](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[18-07]** Only two tribes remained faithful to him (Rehoboam). These two tribes became the **kingdom of Judah**.
- **[18-10]** The **kingdoms of Judah** and Israel became enemies and often fought against each other.
- **[18-13]** The **kings of Judah** were descendants of David. Some of these kings were good men who ruled justly and worshiped God. But most of **Judah's** kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols.
- **[20-01]** The **kingdoms of Israel and Judah** both sinned against God.
- **[20-05]** The people in the **kingdom of Judah** saw how God had punished the people of the kingdom of Israel for not believing and obeying him. But they still worshiped idols, including the gods of the Canaanites.
- **[20-06]** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the Babylonians, to attack the **kingdom of Judah**.

- **[20-09]** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of **the kingdom of Judah** to Babylon, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.

king

Definition:

The term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a city, state, or country.

- A king is usually chosen to rule because of his family relation to previous kings.
- When a king dies, it is usually his oldest son who becomes the next king.
- In ancient times, the king had absolute authority over the people in his kingdom.
- Rarely the term “king” may be used to refer to someone who is not a true king, such as “King Herod” in the New Testament.
- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a king who rules over his people.
- The “kingdom of God” refers to God’s rule over his people.
- Jesus was called “king of the Jews,” “king of Israel,” and “king of kings.”
- When Jesus comes back, he will rule as king over the world.
- This term could also be translated as, “supreme chief” or “absolute leader” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” could be translated as, “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: [authority](#), [Herod Antipas](#), [kingdom](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-06]** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **[16-01]** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **[16-18]** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **[17-05]** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **[21-06]** God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **[48-14]** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

know, knowledge, make known

Definition:

To “know” means to understand something or to be aware of a fact. The expression “make known” is an expression that means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing things in both the physical and spiritual worlds.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God’s will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include, “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- Some languages have two different words for “know” depending on whether it refers to knowing facts or to knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as, “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as, “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [reveal](#), [revelation](#), [understand](#), [understanding](#), [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

labor, laborer

Definition:

The term “labor” refers to doing hard work of any kind.

- In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It often implies that the task is difficult.
- A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
- In English, the word “labor” is also used for part of the process of giving birth. Other languages may have a completely different word for this.
- Ways to translate “labor” could include, “work” or “hard work” or “difficult work” or “to work hard.”

(See also: [hard](#), [hardness](#), [harden](#), [labor pains](#), [in labor](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

lamb, Lamb of God

Definition:

The term “lamb” refers to the young of a sheep. Sheep are four-legged animals with thick, woolly hair, used for sacrifices to God. Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” because he was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins.

- These animals are easily led astray and need protecting. God compares human beings to sheep.
- God instructed his people to sacrifice physically perfect sheep and lambs to him.
- Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” who was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins. He was a perfect, unblemished sacrifice because he was completely without sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- If sheep are known in the language area, the name for their young should be used to translate the terms “lamb” and “Lamb of God.”
- “Lamb of God” could be translated as “God’s (sacrificial) Lamb,” or “Lamb sacrificed to God” or “(sacrificial) Lamb from God.”
- If sheep are not known, this term could be translated as “the young of a sheep” with a footnote that describes what sheep are like. The note could also compare sheep and lambs to an animal from that area that lives in herds, that is timid and defenseless, and that often wanders away.
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation of a nearby local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#), [shepherd](#), [to shepherd](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[05-07]** As Abraham and Isaac walked to the place of the sacrifice Isaac asked, “Father, we have wood for the sacrifice, but where is the **lamb**?”
- **[11-02]** God provided a way to save the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him. Each family had to choose a perfect **lamb** or goat and kill it.
- **[24-06]** The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by John. When John saw him, he said, “Look! There is the **Lamb of God** who will take away the sin of the world.”
- **[45-08]** He read, “They led him like a **lamb** to be killed, and as a **lamb** is silent, he did not say a word.

- **[48-08]** When God told Abraham to offer his son, Isaac, as a sacrifice, God provided a **lamb** for the sacrifice instead of his son, Isaac. We all deserve to die for our sins! But God provided Jesus, the **Lamb** of God, as a sacrifice to die in our place.
- **[48-09]** When God sent the last plague on Egypt, he told each Israelite family to kill a perfect **lamb** and spread its blood around the tops and sides of their door frames.

lament, lamentation**Definition:**

The terms “lament” and “lamentation” refer to a strong expression of mourning, sorrow, or grief.

- Sometimes this includes deep regret for sin, or compassion for people who have experienced disaster.
- A lamentation could include moaning, weeping, or wailing.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “to lament” could be translated as, “to deeply mourn” or “to wail in grief” or “to be sorrowful.”
- A “lamentation” (or a “lament”) could be translated as “loud wailing and weeping” or “deep sorrow” or “sorrowful sobbing” or “mournful moaning.”

Bible References:

Waiting

lamp

Definition:

The term “lamp” generally refers to something that produces light. The lamps used in Bible times were usually oil lamps.

The type of lamp that was used in Bible times is a small container with a fuel source, usually oil, that gives light when it burns.

- Ordinary oil lamps were usually made out of a common piece of pottery filled with olive oil, with a wick placed in the oil to burn.
- For some lamps, the pot or jar was oval-shaped, with one end pinched close together to hold the wick.
- An oil lamp could be carried or placed on a stand so that its light could fill a room or house.
- In scripture, lamps are used in several figurative ways as symbols of light and life.

(See also: [lampstand](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#), [light](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

lampstand

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lampstand” generally refers to a structure on which a lamp is placed in order to provide light to a room.

- A simple lampstand usually held one lamp and was made of clay, wood, or metal (such as bronze, silver, or gold.)
- In the Jerusalem temple was a special gold lampstand which had seven branches for holding seven lamps.

Translation Suggestions

- This term could be also translated as, “lamp pedestal” or “structure for holding a lamp” or “lamp holder.”
- For the temple lampstand, this could be translated as, “seven-lamp lampstand” or “gold pedestal with seven lamps.”
- It would also be helpful in a translation to include pictures of a simple lampstand and a seven-branch lampstand in the relevant Bible passages.

(See also: [bronze](#), [gold](#), [lamp](#), [light](#), [silver](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

law, principle

Definition:

A “law” is a legal rule that is usually written down and enforced by someone in authority. A “principle” is a guideline for decision-making and behavior.

- Both “law” and “principle” can refer to a general rule or belief that guides a person’s behavior.
- This meaning of “law” is different from its meaning in the term, “law of Moses” where it refers to commands and instructions that God gave the Israelites.
- When a general law is being referred to, “law” could be translated as “principle” or “general rule.”

(See also: [law, principle](#) , [law, law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh

Definition:

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms “law” and “God’s law” are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the “law” can refer to:
 - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites.
 - all the laws given to Moses
 - the first five books of the Old Testament.
 - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as “scriptures” in the New Testament).
 - all of God’s instructions and will.
- The phrase “the law and the prophets” is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or “Old Testament”).

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, “laws” since they refer to many instructions.
- The “law of Moses” could be translated as “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Depending on the context, “the law of Moses” could also be translated as, “the law that God told to Moses” or “God’s laws that Moses wrote down” or “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Ways to translate “the law” or “law of God” or “God’s laws” could include: “laws from God” or “God’s commands” or “laws that God gave” or “everything that God commands” or “all of God’s instructions”
- The phrase, “law of Yahweh” could also be translated as, “Yahweh’s laws” or “laws that Yahweh said to obey” or “laws from Yahweh” or “things Yahweh commanded.”

(See also: [instruct](#), [instruction](#), [Moses](#), [Ten Commandments](#), [lawful](#), [lawfully](#), [unlawful](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-07]** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.

- **[13-09]** Anyone who disobeyed **God's law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.
- **[15-13]** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.
- **[16-01]** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God's laws**.
- **[21-05]** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.
- **[27-01]** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"
- **[28-01]** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws**."

Lebanon

Facts:

Lebanon is a beautiful mountainous region located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, north of Israel. In Bible times this region was also thickly wooded with fir trees, such as cedar and cypress.

- King Solomon sent workers to Lebanon to harvest cedar trees for use in building God's temple.
- Ancient Lebanon was inhabited by Phoenician people who were skilled builders of ships that were used for a successful trading industry.
- The cities of Tyre and Sidon were located in Lebanon. It was in these cities that a valuable purple dye was first used.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [cedar](#), [cypress](#), [fir](#), [Phoenicia](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

leprosy, leper, leprous

Definition:

The term “leprosy” is used in the Bible to refer to several different skin diseases. A “leper” is a person who has leprosy. The term “leprous” describes a person or body part that is infected with leprosy.

- Certain kinds of leprosy cause the skin to become discolored with white patches, as when Miriam and Naaman had leprosy.
- In modern times, leprosy often causes hands, feet, and other body parts to become damaged and deformed.
- According to the instructions that God gave to the Israelites, when a person had leprosy, he was considered “unclean” and had to stay away from other people so that they would not become infected with the disease.
- A leper would often call out “unclean” so that others would be warned not to come near him.
- Jesus healed many lepers, along with other kinds of diseases.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “leprosy” in the Bible can be translated as “skin disease” or “dreaded skin disease.”
- Ways to translate “leprous” could include, “full of leprosy” or “infected with skin disease” or “covered with skin sores.”

(See also: [Miriam](#), [Naaman](#), [unclean](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

letter, epistle

Definition:

A letter is a written message sent to a person or group of persons who are usually a distance away from the writer. An epistle is a special type of letter, often written in a more formal style, for a special purpose, such as teaching.

- In New Testament times, epistles and other types of letters were written on parchment made from animal skins or on papyrus made from plant fibers.
- The New Testament epistles from Paul, John, James, Jude, and Peter are letters of instruction that they wrote to encourage, exhort, and teach the early Christians in various cities throughout the Roman Empire.
- Ways to translate this term could include, “written message” or “written down words” or “writing.”

(See also: [encourage](#), [encouragement](#), [exhort](#), [exhortation](#), [teach](#), [teaching](#), [teacher](#), [taught](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Levite, Levi

Definition:

Levi was one of the twelve sons of Jacob, or Israel. The term “Levite” refers to a person who is a member of the Israelite tribe whose ancestor was Levi.

- The Levites were responsible for taking care of the temple and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers.
- All Jewish priests were Levites, descended from Levi and part of the tribe of Levi. (Not all Levites were priests, however.)
- The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named “Levi” were ancestors of Jesus and their names are in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus’ disciple, Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: [Matthew](#), [Levi](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [temple](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

life, live, living, alive

Definition:

All these terms refer to being physically alive, not dead. They are also used figuratively to refer to being alive spiritually. The following discusses what is meant by “physical life” and “spiritual life.”

1. Physical life

- Physical life is the presence of the spirit in the body. God breathed life into Adam’s body, and he became a living being.
- A “life” can also refer to an individual person, as in, “a life was saved”.
- Sometimes the word “life” refers to the experience of living, as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
- It can also refer to a person’s lifespan as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
- The term “living” may refer to being physically alive as in, “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
- In the Bible, the concept of “life” is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

2. Spiritual life

- A person has spiritual life when he believes in Jesus and God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- This life is also called “eternal life” to indicate that it does not end.
- The opposite of spiritual life is spiritual death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “life” can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
- The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
- The expression “end of his life” could be translated as, “when he stopped living.”
- The expression “spared their lives’ could be translated as, “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
- The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as, “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
- When the Bible text talks about being alive spiritually, “life” could be translated as “spiritual life” or “eternal life,” depending on the context.
- The concept of “spiritual life” could also be translated as, “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God’s Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as, “cause to live” or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [01-10] So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- [03-01] After a long time, many people were **living** in the world.
- [08-13] When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- [17-09] However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- [27-01] One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- [37-05] Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- [44-05] "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

lion**Definition:**

A lion is a large, cat-like, wild animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

- Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown in color.
- Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
- Lions kill other animals to eat them and can also be dangerous to human beings.
- When King David was a boy, he killed lions who tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
- Samson also killed a lion with his bare hands.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [David](#), [leopard](#), [Samson](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

locust

Facts:

The term “locust” refers to a kind of large, flying grasshopper that sometimes flies in a swarm which is very destructive, eating all vegetation in its path.

- Locusts and other grasshoppers are large, straight-winged insects with long, jointed back legs that give them the ability to jump a long way.
- In the Old Testament, swarming locusts are referred to figuratively as a symbol or picture of the overwhelming devastation that would come as a result of Israel’s disobedience.
- God sent locusts as one of the ten plagues against the Egyptians.
- The New Testament says that locusts were a main source of food for John the Baptist while he was living in the desert.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [captive](#), [captivity](#), [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [plague](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

loins

Definition:

The term “loins” refers to the part of the body of an animal or person that is between the lower ribs and the hip bones, also known as the lower abdomen.

- The expression “gird up the loins” refers to preparing to work hard. It comes from the custom of tucking the bottom of one’s robe into a belt around the waist in order to move with ease.
- The term “loins” is often used in the Bible to refer to the lower back part of an animal that was sacrificed.
- In the Bible, the term “loins” often refers figuratively and euphemistically to a man’s reproductive organs as the source of his descendants. (See: [Euphemism](#))
- The expression “will come from your loins” could also be translated as, “will be your offspring” or “will be born from your seed” or “God will cause to come from you.” (See: [Euphemism](#))
- When referring to a part of the body, this could also be translated as “abdomen” or “hips” or “waist,” depending on the context.

(See also: [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [gird](#), [offspring](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

lord, master, sir

Definition:

The term “lord” refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated as “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It could also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, it could be translated as “master” if the context shows it means “religious teacher.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is written as “Lord” (capitalized).

(See also: [Lord](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [25-05] But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, “In God’s word, he commands his people, ‘Do not test the **Lord** your God.’”
- [25-07] Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.’”
- [26-03] This is the year of the **Lord’s** favor.
- [27-02] The law expert replied that God’s law says, “Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind.”
- [31-05] Then Peter said to Jesus, “**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water”
- [43-09] “But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!”
- [47-03] By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- [47-11] Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved.”
-

love

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for “love” which some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others, even when it doesn’t benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

- Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
- When people love others with this kind of love, it involves actions that show that someone is thinking of what will cause the other person to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
- In the ULB, the word “love” refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

2. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love or love for a friend or family member.

- This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
- It can also be used in such contexts as, “They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet.” This means that they “like very much” or “greatly desire” to do that.

3. The word “love” can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

4. In the figurative expression, “Jacob I have loved, but Esau I have hated,” the term “loved” refers to God’s choosing of Jacob to be in a covenant relationship with him. This could also be translated as “chosen.” Although Esau was also blessed by God, he wasn’t given the privilege of being in the covenant. The term “hated” is used figuratively here to mean “rejected” or “not chosen.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word “love” in the ULB refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, “devoted, faithful caring” or “care for unselfishly” or “love from God.” Make sure that the word used to translate God’s love can include giving up one’s own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word “love” describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, “like very much” or “care for” or “have strong affection for.”
- In contexts where the word “love” is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by “strongly prefer” or “like very much” or “greatly desire.”

- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express “love” as an action. So for example, they might translate “love is patient, love is kind” as, “when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [save](#), [safe](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [27-02] The law expert replied that God’s law says, “**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself.”
- [33-08] “The thorny ground is a person who hears God’s word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God.”
- [36-05] As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, “This is my Son whom I **love**.”
- [39-10] “Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me.”
- [47-01] She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- [48-01] When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- [49-03] He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- [49-04] He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- [49-07] Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- [49-09] But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- [49-13] God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

lute, lyre

Definition:

The lute and the lyre are small, stringed, musical instruments that were used by the Israelites to worship God.

- A lyre looks like a small harp, with an open frame that the strings are strung across.
- A lute is very similar to a modern day acoustic guitar, having a wooden sound box and an extended neck on which the strings are strung.
- To play a lute or a lyre, certain strings are held down with the fingers of one hand while other strings are plucked or strummed with the other hand.
- The lute, lyre, and harp are all played by strumming or plucking the strings.
- The number of strings varied, but the Old Testament specifically mentions instruments that had ten strings.

(See also: [harp](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Manasseh

Facts:

There were five men by the name of Manasseh in the Old Testament:

- Manasseh was the name of Joseph's firstborn son.
- Both Manasseh and his younger brother Ephraim were adopted by Joseph's father, Jacob which gave their descendants the privilege of being among the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The descendants of Manasseh formed one of the tribes of Israel.
- The tribe of Manasseh was often called the "half-tribe of Manasseh" because only part of the tribe settled in the land of Canaan, on the west side of the Jordan River. The other part of the tribe settled on the east side of the Jordan.
- One of the kings of Judah was also named Manasseh.
- King Manasseh was an evil king who sacrificed his own children as burnt offerings to false gods.
- God punished King Manasseh by allowing him to be captured by an enemy army. Manasseh turned back to God and destroyed the altars where idols were worshiped.
- Two men named Manasseh lived during the time of Ezra. These men were required to divorce their pagan wives, who had influenced them to worship false gods.
- One other Manasseh was the grandfather of some Danites who were priests for false gods.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [altar](#), [Dan](#), [Ephraim](#), [Ezra](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Judah](#), [pagan](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

mercy, merciful

Definition:

The terms “mercy” and “merciful” refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term “mercy” can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as “merciful” when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- Being merciful also means to forgive someone who has done something wrong against us.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “mercy” could be translated as, “kindness” or “compassion” or “pity.”
- The term “merciful” could be translated as, “showing pity” or “being kind to” or “forgiving.”
- To “show mercy to” or “have mercy on” could be translated as, “treat kindly” or “be compassionate toward.”

(See: [compassion](#), [compassionate](#), [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[19-16]** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing justice and **mercy** to others.
- **[19-17]** He (Jeremiah) sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had **mercy** on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
- **[20-12]** The Persian Empire was strong but **merciful** to the people it conquered.
- **[27-11]** Then Jesus asked the law expert, “What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?” He replied, “The one who was **merciful** to him.”
- **[32-11]** But Jesus said to him, “No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that God has done for you and how he has had **mercy** on you.”

- **[34-09]**”But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, ‘God, please be **merciful** to me because I am a sinner.’”

messenger

Facts:

The term, “messenger” refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate “angel” as “messenger.”
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah’s coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus’ apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [apostle](#), [apostleship](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

mighty, might

Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase, “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase, “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term, “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as, “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as, “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: [Almighty](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [strength](#), [strengthen](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

mind

Definition:

The term “mind” refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To “have the mind of Christ” means to be thinking and acting as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To “change his mind” means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “mind” could also be translated as “thoughts” or “reasoning” or “thinking” or “understanding.”
- The expression, “keep in mind” could be translated as, “remember” or “pay attention to this” or “be sure to know this.”
- The expression, “heart, soul, and mind” could also be translated as, “what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about.”
- The expression “call to mind” could be translated as, “remember” or “think about.”
- The expression, “changed his mind and went” could also be translated as, “decided differently and went” or “decided to go after all” or “changed his opinion and went.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [heart](#), [soul](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

miracle, wonder, sign

Definition:

A “miracle” is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called “wonders” because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term “wonder” can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God’s power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called “signs” because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God’s acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God’s acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah’s time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God’s miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God’s power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God’s power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of “miracles” or “wonders” could include, “impossible things that God does” or “powerful works of God” or “amazing acts of God.”
- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: [power](#), [powers](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [apostle](#), [apostleship](#), [sign](#), [proof](#), [reminder](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[16-08]** Gideon asked God for two **signs** so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- **[19-14]** God did many **miracles** through Elisha.
- **[37-10]** Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this **miracle**.
- **[43-06]** "Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty **signs** and **wonders** by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."
- **[49-02]** Jesus did many **miracles** that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Mizpah

Facts:

Mizpah is the name of several towns mentioned in the Old Testament. It means, “look-out point” or “watchtower.”

- When David was being pursued by Saul, he left his parents in Mizpah, under the protection of the king of Moab.
- One city called Mizpah was located on the border between the kingdoms of Judah and Israel. It was a major military center.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [David](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Moab](#), [Moabite](#), [Moabites](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Moab, Moabite, Moabites

Facts:

Moab was the son of Lot's elder daughter. It also became the name of the land where he and his family lived. The term "Moabite" refers to a person who is descended from Moab or who lives in the country of Moab.

- The country of Moab was located east of the Salt Sea.
- Moab was southeast from the town of Bethlehem where Naomi's family lived.
- The people in Bethlehem called Ruth a "Moabites" because she was a woman from the country of Moab. This term could also be translated as, "Moabite woman" or "woman from Moab."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Bethlehem](#), [Ephrathah](#), [Judea](#), [Lot](#), [Ruth](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

mock, ridicule, scoff at**Definition:**

The terms “mock,” “ridicule,” and “scoff at” all refer to making fun of someone, especially in a cruel way.

- Mocking often involves imitating people’s words or actions with the intent to embarrass them or show contempt for them.
- The Roman soldiers mocked or ridiculed Jesus when they put a robe on him and pretended to honor him as king.
- A group of young people ridiculed or scoffed at Elisha when they called him a name, making fun of his bald head.
- The term “scoff at” can also refer to ridiculing an idea that is not considered believable or important.

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [21-12] Isaiah prophesied that people would spit on, **mock**, and beat the Messiah.
- [39-05] The Jewish leaders all answered the high priest, “He deserves to die!” Then they blindfolded Jesus, spit on him, hit him, and **mocked** him.
- [39-12] The soldiers whipped Jesus, and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they **mocked** him by saying, “Look, the King of the Jews!”
- [40-04] Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them **mocked** Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God?”
- [40-05] The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd **mocked** Jesus. They said to him, “If you are the Son of God, come down from the cross and save yourself! Then we will believe you.”

Moses

Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [Miriam](#), [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#), [Promised Land](#), [Ten Commandments](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-12]** One day while **Moses** was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **[12-05]** **Moses** told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you."
- **[12-07]** God told **Moses** to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters.
- **[12-12]** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **[13-07]** Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to **Moses**.

mourn, mourning

Facts:

The terms “mourn” and “mourning” refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively, to talk about “mourning” because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: [sackcloth](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

name

Definition:

In the Bible, the word “name” is used in several figurative ways.

- In some contexts, “name” can refer to a person’s reputation, as in, “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” can also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” means speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone can refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like, “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as, “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression, “make a name for ourselves” could be translated, “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression, “call his name” could be translated as, “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression, “those who love your name” could be translated as, “those who love you.”
- The expression, “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See: [call](#), [calling](#), [called](#), [call out](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Naphtali

Facts:

Naphtali was the sixth son of Jacob. His descendants formed the tribe of Naphtali, which was one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- Sometimes the name Naphtali is used to refer to the land where the tribe lived. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- The land of Naphtali was located in the northern part of Israel, next to the tribes of Dan and Asher. It was also on the western border of the Sea of Chinnereth.
- This tribe is mentioned in both the Old and New Testaments of the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Asher](#), [Dan](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Sea of Galilee](#), [Sea of Chinnereth](#), [Lake of Gennesaret](#), [Sea of Tiberias](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Nathan

Facts:

Nathan was a faithful prophet of God who lived during the time when David was king over Israel.

- God sent Nathan to confront David after David sinned grievously against Uriah.
- Nathan rebuked David, in spite of the fact that David was the king.
- David repented of his sin after Nathan confronted him.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [David](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [Uriah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[17-07]** God sent the prophet **Nathan** to David with this message, “Because you are a man of war, you will not build this Temple for me.”
- **[17-13]** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the prophet **Nathan** to tell David how evil his sin was.

nation

Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- The term “nation” usually includes the idea of a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” can be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” is used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” is also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as, “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonJews.”

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Gentile](#), [Greek](#), [Grecian](#), [people group](#), [peoples](#), [the people](#), [a people](#), [Philistines](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Nebuchadnezzar

Facts:

Nebuchadnezzar was a king of the Babylonian Empire whose powerful army conquered many people groups and nations.

- Under Nebuchadnezzar's leadership, the Babylonian army attacked and conquered the kingdom of Judah, and took most of the people of Judah to Babylon as captives. This "Babylonian Exile" lasted 70 years.
- One of the exiles, Daniel, interpreted dreams that King Nebuchadnezzar had.
- Three other captured Israelites, Hananiah, Meshael, and Azariah, were thrown into a fiery furnace when they refused to bow down to a gigantic gold statue that Nebuchadnezzar had made.
- King Nebuchadnezzar was very arrogant and worshiped false gods. When he conquered Judah, he stole many gold and silver objects from the temple in Jerusalem.
- Because Nebuchadnezzar was proud and refused to turn away from worshiping false gods, Yahweh caused him to be destitute for seven years, living like an animal. After the seven years, God restored Nebuchadnezzar when he humbled himself and praised the one true God, Yahweh.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [arrogant](#), [Azariah](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Hananiah](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Mishael](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[20-06]** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent **Nebuchadnezzar**, king of the Babylonians, to attack the kingdom of Judah.
- **[20-06]** The king of Judah agreed to be **Nebuchadnezzar's** servant and pay him a lot of money every year.
- **[20-08]** To punish the king of Judah for rebelling, **Nebuchadnezzar's** soldiers killed the king's sons in front of him and then made him blind.
- **[20-09]** **Nebuchadnezzar** and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to Babylon, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.

Negev

Facts:

The Negev is a desert region in the southern part of Israel, southwest of the Salt Sea.

- The original word means “the South” and some English versions translate it this way.
- It could be that this southern region is not the same location as the present day Negev Desert.
- When Abraham lived in the city of Kadesh, he was in the Negev or southern region.
- Isaac was living in the Negev when Rebekah traveled to meet him and became his wife.
- The Jewish tribes of Judah and Simeon lived in this southern region.
- The largest city in the Negev region was Beersheba.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [Beersheba](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Kadesh](#), [Kadesh-Barnea](#), [Meribah Kadesh](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#), [Simeon](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

neighbor

Definition:

The term “neighbor” usually refers to a person who lives nearby. It can also refer more generally to someone who lives in the same community or people group.

- A “neighbor” is someone who would be protected and treated kindly because he is part of the same community.
- In the New Testament parable of the Good Samaritan, Jesus used the term “neighbor” figuratively, expanding its meaning to include all human beings, even someone who is considered an enemy.
- If possible, it is best to translate this term literally with a word or phrase that means “person who lives nearby.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [enemy](#), [parable](#), [people group](#), [peoples](#), [the people](#), [a people](#), [Samaria](#), [Samaritan](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

new moon**Definition:**

The term “new moon” in the Bible refers to the moon when it looks like a small, crescent-shaped sliver of light. This is the beginning phase of the moon as it moves in its orbit around the planet Earth.

- In ancient times, the new moon was used to mark the beginnings of certain time periods, such as months.
- The Israelites celebrated a new moon festival that was marked by the blowing of a ram’s horn.
- The Bible also refers to this period of time as the “beginning of the month.”

(See also: **biblical time: month, earth, earthly, festival, horn, horns, sheep, ram, ewe**)

Bible References:

Waiting

noble, nobleman

Definition:

The term “noble” refers to something that is excellent and of high quality. A “nobleman” is a person who belongs to a higher political or social class.

- A nobleman was often an officer of the state, a close servant to the king.
- The term “nobleman” could also be translated by, “king’s official” or “government officer” or “man of noble birth.”

Bible References:

Waiting

oath, swear, swear by

Definition:

In the Bible, an oath is a formal promise to do something. The person making the oath is required to fulfill that promise. An oath involves a commitment to being faithful and truthful.

- Often in a court of law, a witness gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In the Bible, the term “swear” means to speak an oath.
- The term “swear by” means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Sometimes these terms are used together as in, “swear an oath.”
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham’s relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.
- A modern-day use of the word “swear” means to use foul language. This is not its meaning in the Bible.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “an oath” could also be translated as “a pledge” or “a solemn promise.”
- “To swear” could be translated by “to formally promise” or “to pledge” or “to commit to do something.”
- Other ways to translate “swear by my name” could include, “make a promise using my name to confirm it.”
- To “swear by heaven and earth” could be translated as, “promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it.”
- Make sure the translation of “swear” or “oath” does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: [Abimelech](#), [covenant](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

obey, obedient, obedience

Definition:

The term “obey” means to do what is required or commanded. The term “obedient” describes the character of someone who obeys. Sometimes the command is about not doing something, as in, “do not steal.”

- Usually the term “obey” is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority.
- For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, slaves obey their masters, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, they obey by not doing that.
- Ways to translate this term could include a word or phrase that means, “do what is commanded” or “follow orders” or “do what God says to do.”
- The term “obedient” could be translated as, “doing what was commanded” or “following orders” or “doing what God commands.”

(See also: [citizen](#), [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [kingdom](#), [law](#), [principle](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-04]** Noah **obeyed** God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **[05-06]** Again Abraham **obeyed** God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- **[05-10]** “Because you (Abraham) have **obeyed** me, all the families of the world will be blessed through your family”
- **[11-06]** But the Egyptians did not believe God or **obey** his commands.
- **[13-07]** If the people **obeyed** these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them.

oil**Definition:**

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that is taken from certain plants or fruits. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: [olive](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Omri

Facts:

Omri was an army commander who became the sixth king of Israel.

- King Omri reigned for 12 years in the city of Tirzah.
- Like all the kings of Israel before him, Omri was a very evil king who led the people of Israel into more idol worship.
- Omri was also the father of King Ahab.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Jeroboam](#), [Tirzah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

oppress, oppression, oppressor

Definition:

The terms “oppress” and “oppression” refer to treating people harshly. An “oppressor” is a person who oppresses people.

- The term “oppression” especially refers to a situation where people of greater strength mistreat or enslave people who are under their power or rule.
- The term “oppressed” describes the people who are being harshly treated.
- Often enemy nations and their rulers were oppressors to the people of Israel.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “oppress” could be translated by, “severely mistreat” or “cause to be heavily burdened” or “put under miserable bondage” or “rule harshly.”
- Ways to translate “oppression” could include, “heavy suppression and bondage” or “burdensome control.”
- The phrase “the oppressed” could be translated as “oppressed people” or “people in terrible bondage” or “those who are treated harshly.”
- The term “oppressor” could be translated as “person who oppresses” or “nation who controls and rules harshly” or “persecutor.”

(See also: [bind](#), [bond](#), [bound](#), [enslave](#), [in bondage](#), [persecute](#), [persecution](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

ox, oxen**Definition:**

An “ox” refers to a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is “oxen.” Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen are depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Oxen working together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase “to be under a yoke” became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: [cow](#), [calf](#), [bull](#), [cattle](#), [yoke](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

pagan

Definition:

In Bible times, the term “pagan” was used to describe people who worshiped false gods instead of Yahweh.

- Anything associated with these people, such as the altars where they worshiped, the religious rituals they performed, and their beliefs, were also called “pagan.”
- Pagan belief systems often included the worship of false gods and the worship of nature.
- Some pagan religions included sexually immoral rituals or the killing of human beings as part of their worship.

(See also: [altar](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [worship](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

palace

Definition:

The term “palace” refers to the building or house where a king lived, along with his family members and servants.

- The high priest also lived in a palace complex, as mentioned in the New Testament.
- Palaces were very ornate, with beautiful architecture and furnishings.
- The buildings and furnishings of a palace were constructed of stone or wood, and often were overlaid with expensive wood, gold, or ivory.
- Many other people also lived and worked in the palace complex, which usually included several buildings and courtyards.

(See also: [courtyard](#), [court](#), [high priest](#), [king](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

palm

Definition:

The term “palm” refers to a type of tall tree with long, flexible, leafy branches extending from the top in a fan-like pattern.

- The palm tree in the Bible usually refers to a type of palm tree that produces a fruit called a “date.” The leaves have a feather-like pattern.
- Palm trees typically grow in places that have a hot, humid climate. Their leaves stay green all year long.
- As Jesus was entering Jerusalem riding on a donkey, the people laid palm branches on the ground in front of him.
- Palm branches signified peace and the celebration of a victory.

(See also: [donkey](#), [mule](#), [Jerusalem](#), [peace](#), [peaceful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

pardon

Definition:

The term “pardon” means to forgive and not punish someone for his sin.

- This word has the same meaning as “forgive” but may also include the meaning of a formal decision to not punish someone who is guilty.
- In a court of law, a judge can pardon a person found guilty of a crime.
- Even though we are guilty of sin, Jesus Christ pardoned us from being punished in hell, based on his sacrificial death on the cross.

Translation Suggestions

- If the language has a word for a formal decision to forgive, that word could be used to translate this term.
- This term could also be translated in the same way as “forgive” and “forgiveness.”

(See also: [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#), [guilt](#), [guilty](#), [judge](#), [judgment](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Passover

Facts:

The “Passover” is the name of a religious festival that the Jews celebrate every year, to remember how God rescued their ancestors, the Israelites, from slavery in Egypt.

- The name of this festival comes from the fact that God “passed over” the houses of the Israelites and did not kill their sons when he killed the firstborn sons of the Egyptians.
- The Passover celebration includes a special meal of a perfect lamb that they have killed and roasted, as well as bread made without yeast. These foods remind them of the meal that the Israelites ate the night before they escaped from Egypt.
- God told the Israelites to eat this meal every year in order to remember and celebrate how God “passed over” their houses and how he set them free from slavery in Egypt.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “Passover” could be translated by combining the words “pass” and “over” or another combination of words that has this meaning.
- It is helpful if the name of this festival has a clear connection to the words used to explain what the angel of the Lord did in passing by the houses of the Israelites and sparing their sons.

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [12-14] God commanded the Israelites to remember his victory over the Egyptians and their deliverance from slavery by celebrating the **Passover** every year.
- [38-01] Every year, the Jews celebrated the **Passover**. This was a celebration of how God had saved their ancestors from slavery in Egypt many centuries earlier.
- [38-04] Jesus celebrated the **Passover** with his disciples.
- [48-09] When God saw the blood, he passed over their houses and did not kill their firstborn sons. This event is called the **Passover**.
- [48-10] Jesus is our **Passover** Lamb. He was perfect and sinless and was killed at the time of the **Passover** celebration.

peace, peaceful

Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [15-06] God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- [15-12] Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- [16-03] Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- [21-13] He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- [48-14] David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- [50-17] Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Pentecost, Festival of Weeks

Facts:

The “Festival of Weeks” was a festival that took place fifty days after Passover and the Festival of Firstfruits. In New Testament times it was referred to as “Pentecost,” which was a Greek word that has “fifty” as part of its meaning.

- The name “Festival of Weeks” came from the fact that this festival marked the completion of seven weeks of harvest which began at the Feast of Firstfruits, around the time of the Passover and the Feast of Unleavened Bread.
- The Festival of Weeks was held to celebrate the end of the wheat grain harvest. It was also known as the “Festival of Harvest.”
- In the New Testament, the Day of Pentecost is especially important because it was on this day that God poured out the Holy Spirit on Jesus’ followers after Jesus had risen from the dead and gone back to heaven.
- In modern times, the Day of Pentecost and Festival of Weeks are also a time to celebrate God giving the Israelites the Ten Commandments on tablets of stone.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [feast](#), [festival](#), [firstfruits](#), [harvest](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [Passover](#), [raise](#), [rise](#), [risen](#), [arise](#), [arose](#), [Ten Commandments](#)))

Bible References:

Waiting

people group, peoples, the people, a people

Definition:

The term “peoples” or “people groups” refers to groups of people who share a common language and culture. The phrase “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- When God set apart “a people” for himself, it means that he chose certain people to belong to him and serve him.
- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, a phrase such as “your people” can mean “your people group” or “your family” or “your relatives.”
- The term “peoples” is often used to refer to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations the term “nations” is also used in this way.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase, “the people of” could be translated as, “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as, “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as, “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [nation](#), [tribe](#), [world](#), [worldly](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[14-02]** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there. what follows is
- **[21-02]** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.
- **[42-08]** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere."
- **[42-10]** "So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **[48-11]** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.
- **[50-03]** He (Jesus) said, "Go and make disciples of all **people groups!**" and, "The fields are ripe for harvest!"

people of God, my people

Definition:

The term, “people of God” refers to people whom God has called out from the world to have a special relationship with him.

- When God says, “my people” he is talking about the people whom he has chosen and who have a relationship with him.
- God’s people are chosen by him and are set apart from the world to live in a way that is pleasing to him. He also calls them his children.
- In the Old Testament, “people of God” refers to the nation of Israel which was chosen by God and set apart from among the other nations of the world to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, “people of God” especially refers to all those who believe in Jesus and are called the Church. This includes both Jews and Gentiles.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people of God” could be translated as “God’s people” or “the people who worship God” or “people who serve God” or “people who belong to God.”
- Other ways to translate “my people” when God says it, could include, “the people I have chosen” or “the people who worship me” or “the people who belong to me.”
- Similarly, “your people” could be translated as “the people who belong to you” or “the people you chose to belong to you.”
- Also “his people” could be translated as “the people who belong to him” or “the people God chose to belong to himself.”

(See also: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [people group](#), [peoples](#), [the people](#), [a people](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

perfect**Definition:**

In the Bible, the term “perfect” means to be mature in our Christian life. To perfect something means to work at it until it is excellent and without flaws.

- Being perfect and mature means that a Christian is obedient, not sinless.
- The term “perfect” also has the meaning of being “complete” or “whole.”
- The New Testament book of James states that persevering through trials will produce completeness and maturity in the believer.
- When Christians study the Bible and obey it, they will become more spiritually perfect and mature because they will be more like Christ in their character.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “without flaw” or “without error” or “flawless” or “without fault.” or “not having any faults.”

Bible References:

Waiting

Perizzite

Facts:

The Perizzites were one of several people groups in the land of Canaan. Little is known about this group as to who their ancestors were or what part of Canaan they lived in.

- The Perizzites are mentioned most frequently in the Old Testament book of Judges, where it is recorded that the Perizzites intermarried with the Israelites and influenced them to worship false gods.
- Note that the clan of Perez, called the “Perezites,” was a different people group from the Perizzites. It may be necessary to spell the names very differently to make this clear.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Persia, Persians

Definition:

Persia was a country that also became a powerful empire founded by Cyrus the Great in 550 BC. The country of Persia was located southeast of Babylonia and Assyria in a region that is now the modern-day country of Iran.

- The people of Persia were called “Persians.”
- Under King Cyrus’ decree, the Jews were freed from their captivity in Babylon and allowed to go home, and the temple in Jerusalem was rebuilt, with funds provided by the Persian Empire.
- King Artaxerxes was the ruler of the Persian Empire when Ezra and Nehemiah went back to Jerusalem to rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
- Esther became a queen of the Persian empire when she married King Ahasuerus.

(See also: [Ahasuerus](#), [Artaxerxes](#), [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Cyrus](#), [Esther](#), [Ezra](#), [Nehemiah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

perverse, perversely, pervert

Definition:

The term “perverse” is used to describe a person or action that is morally crooked or twisted. The term “perversely” means “in a perverse manner.” To “pervert” something means to twist it or turn it away from what is right or good.

- Someone or something that is perverse has deviated from what is good and right.
- In the Bible, the Israelites acted perversely when they disobeyed God. They often did this by worshiping false gods.
- Any action which is against God’s standards or behavior is considered perverse.
- Ways to translate “perverse” could include, “morally twisted” or “immoral” or “turning away from God’s straight path,” depending on the context.
- “perverse speech” could be translated as, “speaking in an evil way” or “deceitful talk” or “immoral way of talking.”
- “perverse people” could be described as “immoral people” or “people who are morally deviant” or “people who continually disobey God.”
- The phrase “acting perversely” could be translated as “behaving in an evil way” or “doing things against God’s commands” or “living in a way that rejects God’s teachings.”
- The term “pervert” could also be translated as “cause to be corrupt” or “turn into something evil.”

(See also: [corrupt](#), [corruption](#), [deceive](#), [deceit](#), [deception](#), [deceptive](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [turn](#), [turn away](#), [turn back](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Pharaoh, king of Egypt

Facts:

In ancient times, the kings who ruled over the country of Egypt were called pharaohs.

- Altogether, over 300 pharaohs ruled Egypt for more than 2,000 years.
- These Egyptians kings were very powerful and wealthy.
- Several of these pharaohs are mentioned in the Bible.
- Often this title is used as a name rather than as a title. In these cases, it is capitalized and written as, “Pharaoh.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [king](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-06]** One night, the **Pharaoh**, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **[08-08]****Pharaoh** was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of Egypt!
- **[09-02]** So the **Pharaoh** who was ruling over Egypt at that time made the Israelites slaves to the Egyptians.
- **[09-13]**”I will send you to **Pharaoh** so that you can bring the Israelites out of their slavery in Egypt.”
- **[10-02]** Through these plagues, God showed **Pharaoh** that he is more powerful than **Pharaoh** and all of Egypt’s gods.

Philistines

Facts:

The Philistines were a people group who occupied a region known as Philistia along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. Their name means “people of the sea.”

- There were five main Philistine cities: Ashdod, Ashkelon, Ekron, Gath, and Gaza.
- The city of Ashdod was in the northern part of Philistia, and the city of Gaza was in the southern part.
- The Philistines are probably best known for the many years they were at war against the Israelites.
- The judge Samson was a famous warrior against the Philistines, using supernatural strength from God.
- King David often led battles against the Philistines, including the time as a youth when he defeated the Philistine warrior, Goliath.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ashdod](#), [Azotus](#), [Ashkelon](#), [David](#), [Ekron](#), [Gath](#), [Gaza](#), [Goliath](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

pillar, column

Definition:

The term “pillar” usually refers to a large vertical structure that is used to hold up a roof or other part of a building. Another word for “pillar” is “column.”

- In Bible times, pillars used as support in buildings were normally carved from a single piece of stone.
- When Samson in the Old Testament was captured by the Philistines, he destroyed their pagan temple by pushing the supporting pillars and causing the temple to collapse.
- The word “pillar” sometimes refers to a large stone or boulder that is set up as a memorial to mark a grave or to mark the place where an important event happened.
- It can also refer to an idol that was made to worship a false god. It is another name for a “carved image” and could be translated as “statue.”
- The term “pillar” is used to refer to something that is shaped like a pillar, such as the “pillar of fire” that led the Israelites at night through the desert or the “pillar of salt” that Lot’s wife became after she looked back at the city.
- AS a structure supporting a building, the term “pillar” or “column” could be translated as “upright stone support beam” or “supporting stone structure.”
- Other uses of “pillar” could be translated as “statue” or “pile” or “mound” or “monument” or “tall mass,” depending on the context.

(See also: [foundation](#), [founded](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

plague

Definition:

Plagues are events which cause suffering or death to a large number of people. Often a plague is a disease that spreads quickly and causes many people to die before it can be stopped.

- Many plagues have natural causes, but some were sent by God to punish people for sin.
- In the time of Moses, God sent ten plagues against Egypt to force Pharaoh to let Israel leave Egypt. These plagues included water turning into blood, physical diseases, destruction of crops by insects and hail, three days of complete darkness, and death of the firstborn sons.
- This could also be translated as, “widespread disasters” or “widespread disease,” depending on the context.

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [hail](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Moses](#), [Pharaoh](#), [king of Egypt](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

pomegranate

Facts:

A pomegranate is a kind of fruit that has a thick, tough skin filled with many seeds that are covered with edible red pulp.

- The outer rind is reddish in color and the pulp surrounding the seeds is shiny and red.
- Pomegranates are very commonly grown in countries with a hot, dry climate, such as Egypt and Israel.
- Yahweh promised the Israelites that Canaan was a land with abundant water and fertile soil so that food was plentiful there, including pomegranates.
- The construction of Solomon's temple included bronze decorations in the shape of pomegranates.

(See also: [bronze](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [Solomon](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

[Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#)

possess, possession

Facts:

The terms “possess” and “possession” usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, this term is often used in the context of “possessing” or “taking possession of” an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to “possess” the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as “their possession.” This could also be translated as, “their rightful place to live.”
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh’s “special possession.” This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The terms “possess” could also be translated as, “own” or “have” or “have charge over.”
- The phrase, “take possession of” could be translated as “take control of” or “occupy” or “live on,” depending on the context.
- When referring to things that people own, “possessions” could be translated as, “belongings” or “property” or “owned things” or “things they owned.”
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites, “my special possession” this could also be translated as “my special people” or “people who belong to me” or “my people whom I love and rule.”
- The sentence, “they will become their possession” when referring to land, means “they will occupy the land” or “the land will belong to them.”
- The expression, “found in his possession” could be translated as, “that he was holding” or “that he had with him.”
- The phrase “as your possession” could also be translated as, “as something that belongs to you” or “as a place where your people will live.”
- The phrase, “in his possession” could be translated as “that he owned” or “which belonged to him.”

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

power, powers

Definition:

The term “power” refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. “Powers” refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The “power of God” refers to God’s ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “power” could also be translated as “ability” or “strength” or “energy” or “ability to do miracles” or “control.”
- Possible ways to translate the term “powers” could include, “powerful beings” or “controlling spirits” or “those who control others.”
- An expression like “save us from the power of our enemies” could be translated as, “save us from being oppressed by our enemies” or “rescue us from being controlled by our enemies.” In this case, “power” has the meaning of using one’s strength to control and oppress others.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[22-05]** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the **power** of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God.”
- **[26-01]** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the **power** of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **[32-15]** Immediately Jesus realized that **power** had gone out from him.
- **[42-11]** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, “Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you **power** when the Holy Spirit comes on you.”
- **[43-06]** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the **power** of God, as you have seen and already know.”
- **[44-08]** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the **power** of Jesus the Messiah.”

praise

Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term “to praise” could also be translated as, “to speak well of” or “to highly honor with words” or “to say good things about.”
- The noun “praise” could be translated as, “spoken honor” or “speech that honors” or “speaking good things about.”

(See also: [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[12-13]** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.
- **[17-08]** When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings.
- **[22-07]** Zechariah said, “**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people!
- **[43-13]** They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other.
- **[47-08]** They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of **praise** to God.

pray, prayer

Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. This term is also used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#), [praise](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [06-05] Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- [13-12] But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- [19-08] Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- [21-07] Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- [38-11] Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- [43-13] The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- [49-18] God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

priest, priesthood

Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him".
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like, "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: [Aaron](#), [chief priests](#), [high priest](#), [mediator](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [04-07] "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"
- [13-09] Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.
- [19-07] So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- [21-07] An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

prince, princess

Definition:

A “prince” is the son of a king. A “princess” is a daughter of a king.

- The term “prince” is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham’s wealth and importance, he was referred to as a “prince” by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term “prince” is used in the expressions “prince of Persia” and “prince of Greece,” which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a “prince” in the book of Daniel.
- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as “the prince of this world.”
- Jesus is called the “Prince of Peace” and the “Prince of Life.”
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as “Lord and Christ” and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as “Prince and Savior,” showing the parallel meaning of “Lord” and “Prince.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “prince” could include, “king’s son” or “ruler” or “leader” or “chieftain” or “captain.”
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as, “spirit ruler” or “leading angel.”
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as, “evil spirit ruler” or “powerful spirit leader” or “ruling spirit,” depending on the context.

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [authority](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#), [Savior](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

prison, prisoner, imprison

Definition:

The term “prison” refers to a place where criminals are kept as a punishment for their crimes. A “prisoner” is someone who has been put in the prison.

- A person may be kept in a prison while waiting to be judged in a trial.
- The term “imprisoned” means “kept in a prison” or “kept in captivity.”
- Many prophets and other servants of God were put in prison even though they had not done anything wrong.

Translation Suggestions:

- Another word for “prison” is “jail.”
- This term could also be translated as “dungeon” in contexts where the prison is probably underground or beneath the main part of a palace or other building.
- The term “prisoners” can also refer in general to people who have been captured by an enemy and kept somewhere against their will. Another way to translate this meaning would be “captives.”
- Other ways to translate “imprisoned” could be, “kept as a prisoner” or “kept in captivity” or “held captive.”

(See also: [captive](#), [captivity](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

proclaim, proclamation

Definition:

To proclaim is to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as, “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See: [preach](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

promise

Definition:

A promise is a pledge to do a certain thing. When someone promises something, it means he is committing to do something.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.
- A promise is often accompanied by an oath to confirm that it will be done.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “promise” could be translated as, “commitment” or “assurance” or “guarantee.”
- To “promise to do something” could be translated as, “assure someone that you will do something” or “commit to doing something.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [swear](#), [swear by](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-15]** God said, “I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children.”?
- **[03-16]** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **[04-08]** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God’s **promise**.
- **[05-04]** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of **promise**.”
- **[08-15]** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob’s twelve sons and their families.
- **[17-14]** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **[50-01]** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example, the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as, “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as, “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as, “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: [Baal](#), [divination](#), [diviner](#), [soothsaying](#), [soothsayer](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [false prophet](#), [fulfill](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [vision](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [12-12] When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- [17-13] God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- [19-01] Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God's messages.
- [19-06] All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- [19-17] Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- [21-09] The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- [43-05] "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- [43-07] "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- [48-12] Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.
-

prosper, prosperity, prosperous

Definition:

The term “prosper” generally refers to living well and can refer to prospering physically or spiritually. When people or a country are “prosperous,” it means they are wealthy and have all that they need to be successful. They are experiencing “prosperity.”

- The term “prosperous” often refers to success in owning money and property or in producing everything needed for people to live well.
- In the Bible, the term “prosperous” also includes good health and being blessed with children.
- A “prosperous” city or country is one that has many people, good production of food, and businesses that bring in plenty of money.
- The Bible teaches that a person will prosper spiritually when he obeys God’s teachings. He will also experience the blessings of joy and peace. God does not always give people a lot of material wealth, but he will always prosper them spiritually as they follow his ways.
- Depending on the context, the term “prosper” could also be translated as “succeed spiritually” or “be blessed by God” or “experience good things” or “live well.”
- The term “prosperous” could also be translated as “successful” or “wealthy” or “spiritually fruitful.”
- “Prosperity” could also be translated as, “well-being” or “wealth” or “success” or “abundant blessings.”

(See also: [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#), [fruit](#), [fruitful](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

prostitute, harlot, whore

Definition:

The terms “prostitute” and “harlot” both refer to a person who performs sexual acts for money or for religious rites. Prostitutes or harlots were usually female, but some were male.

- In the Bible, the word “prostitute” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a person who worships false gods or who practices witchcraft.
- The expression “play the harlot” means to act like a harlot by being sexually immoral. This expression is also used in the Bible to refer to a person who worships idols.
- To “prostitute oneself” to something means to be sexually immoral or when used figuratively, to be unfaithful to God by worshiping false gods.
- In ancient times, some pagan temples used male and female prostitutes as part of their rituals.
- This term could be translated by the word or phrase that is used in the project language to refer to a prostitute. Some languages may have a euphemistic term that is used for this. (See: [Euphemism](#))

(See: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [sexual immorality](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

proud, pride, prideful

Definition:

The terms “proud” and “prideful” refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms “proud” and “pride” can also be used in a positive sense, such as being “proud of” what someone else has achieved and being “proud of” your children. The expression, “take pride in your work” means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of “pride.”
- The term “prideful” is always negative, with the meaning of being “arrogant” or “conceited” or “self-important.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The noun “pride” could be translated as, “arrogance” or “conceit” or “self-importance.”
- In other contexts, “pride” could be translated as, “joy” or “satisfaction” or “pleasure.”
- To be “proud of” could also be translated as, “happy with” or “satisfied with” or “joyful about (the accomplishments of).”
- The phrase “take pride in your work” could be translated as, “find satisfaction in doing your work well.”
- The expression, “take pride in Yahweh” could also be translated as, “be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done” “be happy about how amazing Yahweh is.”

(See also: [arrogant](#), [humble](#), [humility](#), [joy](#), [joyful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-02]** They were very **proud**, and they did not care about what God said.
- **[34-10]** Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is **proud**, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

proverb

Definition:

A proverb is a short statement that expresses some wisdom or truth.

- Proverbs are powerful because they are easy to remember and repeat.
- Often a proverb will include practical examples from everyday life.
- Some proverbs are very clear and direct, while others are more difficult to understand.
- King Solomon was known for his wisdom and wrote over 1,000 proverbs.
- Jesus often used proverbs or parables when he taught people.
- Ways to translate “proverb” could include, “wise saying” or “true word.”

(See also: [Solomon](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#), [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

punish, punishment

Definition:

The term “punish” means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term “punishment” refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

- Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
- God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
- God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
- Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person’s punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
- The expressions “go unpunished” and “leave unpunished” mean to decide not to punish people for their wrongdoing. God often allows sin to go unpunished as he waits for people to repent.

(See also: [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [repent](#), [repentance](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

their

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-07]** God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would **punish** them.
- **[16-02]** Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he **punished** them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **[19-16]** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would **punish** them.
- **[48-06]** Jesus was the perfect high priest because he took the **punishment** for every sin that anyone has ever committed.
- **[48-10]** When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s **punishment** passes over him.
- **[49-09]** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be **punished** for his sins, but will live with God forever.

- [49-11] Jesus never sinned, but he chose to be **punished** and die as the perfect sacrifice to take away your sins and the sins of every person in the world.

pure, purify, purification

Definition:

To be “pure” means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, “purify” and “purification” refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God’s forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “purify” could be translated as “make pure” or “cleanse” or “cleanse from all contamination” or “get rid of all sin.”
- A phrase such as, “when the time for their purification was over” could be translated as, “when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days.”
- The phrase, “provided purification for sins” could be translated as, “provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin.”
- Other ways to translate “purification” could include, “cleansing” or “spiritual washing” or “becoming ritually clean.”

(See: [atonement](#), [atone](#), [clean](#), [cleanse](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

purple

Facts:

The term “purple” is the name of a color that is a mixture of blue and red.

- In ancient times, purple was a rare and highly valuable color of dye that was used to dye the clothing of kings and other high officials.
- Because it was costly and time-consuming to produce this dye, purple clothing was considered a sign of wealth, distinction, and royalty.
- Purple was also one of the colors used for the curtains in the tabernacle and temple, and for the ephod worn by the priests.
- Purple dye was extracted from a kind of sea snail by either crushing or boiling the snails or by causing them to release the dye while still alive. This was an expensive process.
- Roman soldiers put a purple royal robe on Jesus before his crucifixion, to mock him for his claim to be King of the Jews.
- Lydia from the town of Philippi was a woman who made her living by selling purple cloth.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ephod](#), [Philippi](#), [royal](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

queen

Definition:

A queen is either the female ruler of a country or the wife of a king.

- Esther became the queen of the Persian empire when she married King Ahasuerus.
- Queen Jezebel was the evil wife of King Ahab.
- The Queen of Sheba was a famous ruler who came to visit King Solomon.
- The term “queen mothAthaliaher” usually refers to the mother or grandmother of a ruling king or the widow of the previous king. A queen mother had much influence, as was seen in the case of Athaliah who influenced the people to worship idols.

(See also: [Ahasuerus](#), [Athaliah](#), [Esther](#), [king](#), [Persia](#), [Persians ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [Sheba](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

raise, rise, risen, arise, arose**Definition:****raise, raise up**

In general, the word “raise” means to “lift up” or “make higher.”

- The figurative phrase, “raise up” means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “restore” or “rebuild.”
- “Raise” has a specialized meaning in the phrase, “raise from the dead.” It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “exalt” someone or something.

rise, arise

To “rise” or “arise” means to “go up” or “get up.” The terms “risen,” “rose” and “arose” are used for expressing past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as, “he arose and went” or “he rose up and went.”
- If something “arises” it means it “happens” or “begins to happen.”
- Jesus predicted that he would “rise from the dead.” Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, “He has risen”!

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “raise” or “raise up” can be translated as “to lift up” or “to make higher.”
- To “raise up” could also be translated as, “to cause to appear” or “to appoint” or “to bring into existence.”
- To “raise up the strength of your enemies” could be translated as, “cause your enemies to be very strong.”
- The phrase “raise someone from the dead,” could be translated as “cause someone to return from death to life” or “cause someone to come back to life.”
- Depending on the context, “raise up” could also be translated as, “provide” or “appoint” or “cause to have” or “build up” or “rebuild” or “repair.”
- The phrase “arose and went” could be translated as “got up and went” or “went.”
- Depending on the context, the term “arose” could also be translated as “began” or “started up” or “got up” or “stood up.”

(See also: [resurrection](#), [appoint](#), [appointed](#), [exalt](#), [exaltation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [21-14] The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.
- [41-05] "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- [43-07] "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- [44-05] "You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead. "
- [44-08] Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- [48-04] This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- [49-02] He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- [49-12] You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

Ramah

Facts:

Ramah was an ancient Israelite city located about 8 km from Jerusalem. It was in the region where the tribe of Benjamin lived.

- Ramah was where Rachel died after giving birth to Benjamin.
- When the Israelites were taken captive to Babylon, they were first brought to Ramah before moving to Babylon.
- Ramah was the home of Samuel's mother and father.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Benjamin](#), [Rachel](#), [Samuel](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Ramoth

Facts:

Ramoth was an important city in the mountains of Gilead near the Jordan River. It was also called Ramoth Gilead.

- Ramoth belonged to the Israelite tribe of Gad and was designated as a city of refuge.
- King Ahab of Israel and King Jehoshaphat of Judah waged war against the king of Aram at Ramoth. Ahab was killed in that battle.
- Sometime later, King Ahaziah and King Joram tried to take the city of Ramoth from the king of Aram.
- Ramoth Gilead was where Jehu was anointed king over Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Ahaziah](#), [Aram](#), [Aramean](#), [Aramaic](#), [Gad](#), [Jehoshaphat](#), [Jehu](#), [Joram](#), [Jordan River](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [refuge](#), [shelter](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

rebel, rebellious, rebellion

Definition:

The term “rebel” means to refuse to submit to someone’s authority. A “rebellious” person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called “a rebel.”

- A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term “to rebel” could also be translated as “to disobey” or “to revolt,” depending on the context.
- “Rebellious” could also be translated as “continually disobedient” or “refusing to obey.”
- The term “rebellion” means “refusal to obey” or “disobedience” or “law-breaking.”
- The phrase “the rebellion” or “a rebellion” can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

:(See also: [authority](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [governor](#), [govern](#), [proconsul](#), [government](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [14-14] After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for forty years, all of them who had **rebelled** against God were dead.
- [18-07] Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel **rebelled** against Rehoboam.
- [18-09] Jeroboam **rebelled** against God and caused the people to sin.
- [18-13] Most of the people of Judah also **rebelled** against God and worshiped other gods.
- [20-07] But after a few years, the king of Judah **rebelled** against Babylon.
- [45-03] Then he (Stephen) said, “You stubborn and **rebellious** people always reject the Holy Spirit, just as your ancestors always rejected God and killed his prophets.

receive

Definition:

The term “receive” generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To “receive” can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in “he received punishment for what he did.”
- There is also a special sense in which we can “receive” a person. For example, to “receive” guests or visitors means to welcome them and to treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To “receive the gift of the Holy Spirit” means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To “receive Jesus” means to accept God’s offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person “receives his sight” means that God healed him and enabled him to see.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “receive” can be translated as “accept” or “welcome” or “experience” or “be given.”
- The expression, “you will receive power” could be translated as, “you will be given power” or “God will give you power” or “power will be given to you (by God)” or “God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you.”
- The phrase “received his sight” could also be translated as, “was able to see” or “became able to see again” or “God healed him so that he was able to see.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [save](#), [safe](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [21-13] The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to **receive** the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring peace between God and people.
- [45-05] As Stephen was dying, he cried out, “Jesus, **receive** my spirit.”
- [49-06] He (Jesus) taught that some people will receive him and be saved, but others will not.
- [49-10] When Jesus died on the cross, he **received** your punishment.
- [49-13] God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and **receives** him as their Master.

Rehoboam

Facts:

Rehoboam was one of the sons of King Solomon, and became the king of the nation of Israel after Solomon died.

- At the beginning of his reign, Rehoboam was severe with his people, so ten of the tribes of Israel rebelled against him and formed the “kingdom of Israel” in the north.
- Rehoboam continued as king of the southern kingdom of Judah which consisted of the two tribes, Judah and Benjamin.
- Rehoboam was a wicked king who did not obey Yahweh, but worshiped false gods.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[18-05]** After Solomon died, his son, **Rehoboam**, became king. **Rehoboam** was a foolish man.
- **[18-06]** **Rehoboam** answered foolishly and told them, “You thought my father Solomon made you work hard, but I will make you work harder than he did, and I will punish you more harshly than he did.”
- **[18-07]** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against **Rehoboam**. Only two tribes remained faithful to him.

reign

Definition:

The term “to reign” means to rule as a king over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term “reign” is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel when they rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as “absolute rule” or “rule as king” or “governing as king.”

(See also: [king](#), [kingdom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

rejoice

Definition:

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as, “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said, “my soul rejoices in God my Savior” she meant, “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

(See also: [joy](#), [joyful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

remnant**Definition:**

The term “remnant” literally refers to people or things that are “remaining” or “leftover” from a larger amount or group.

- Often a “remnant” refers to people who survive a life-threatening situation or who remain faithful to God while undergoing persecution.
- Isaiah referred to a group of Jews as being a remnant who survived attacks from outsiders and lived to return to the Promised Land in Canaan.
- Paul talks about there being a “remnant” of people who were chosen by God to receive his grace.
- The term “remnant” implies that there were other people who did not remain faithful or who did not survive or who were not chosen.

Translation Suggestions:

- A phrase such as, “the remnant of this people” could be translated as “the rest of these people” or “the people who remain faithful” or “the people who are left.”
- The “whole remnant of people” could be translated by “all the rest of the people” or “the remaining people.”

Bible References:

Waiting

repent, repentance

Definition:

The terms “repent” and “repentance” refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

- To “repent” literally means to “change one’s mind.”
- In the Bible, “repent” usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God’s way of thinking and acting.
- When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term, “repent” can be translated with a word or phrase that means, “turn back (to God)” or “turn away from sin and toward God” or “turn toward God, away from sin.”
- Often the term, “repentance” can be translated using the verb “repent.” For example, “God has given repentance to Israel” could be translated as, “God has enabled Israel to repent.”
- Other ways to translate “repentance” could include “to turn away from sin” or “turning to God and away from sin.”

(See also: [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [turn](#), [turn away](#), [turn back](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [16-02] After many years of disobeying God and being oppressed by their enemies, the Israelites **repented** and asked God to rescue them.
- [17-13] David **repented** of his sin and God forgave him.
- [19-18] They (prophets) warned people that God would destroy them if they did not **repent**.
- [24-02] Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, “**Repent**, for the kingdom of God is near!”
- [42-08] “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to **receive** forgiveness for their sins. ”
- [44-05] “So now, **repent** and turn to God so that your sins will be washed away.”

report**Definition:**

The term “to report” means to tell people about something that happened, often giving details about that event. A report can be spoken or written.

- “Report” could also be translated as “tell” or “explain” or “tell the details of.”
- The expression, “Report this to no one” could be translated as, “Don’t talk about this with anyone” or “Don’t tell anyone about this.”
- Ways to translate “a report” could include, “an explanation” or “a story” or “a detailed account,” depending on the context.

Bible References:

Waiting

shows the interruption of thought and

shows the interruption of thought and

rest

Definition:

The term “to rest” literally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. The phrase “the rest of” refers to the remainder of something.

- An object can be said to be “resting” somewhere, which means it is “standing” or “sitting” there.
- A boat that “comes to rest” somewhere has “stopped” or “landed” there.
- When a person or animal rests, it can mean that they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the “Sabbath” day.
- To rest an object on something means to “place” or “put” it there.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “to rest (oneself)” could also be translated as “to stop working” or “to refresh himself” or “to stop carrying burdens.”
- To “rest” an object on something could be translated as to “place” or “put” or “set” that object on something.
- When Jesus said, “I will give you rest,” this could also be translated as, “I will cause you to stop carrying your burden” or “I will help you be at peace” or “I will empower you to relax and trust in me.”
- When God says, “they will not enter my rest,” this could be translated as, “they will not experience my blessings of rest” or “they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me.”
- The term “the rest” could be translated as “those that remain” or “all the other people” or “everything that is left.”

(See also: [remnant](#), [Sabbath](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

restore, restoration**Definition:**

The terms “restore” and “restoration” refer to causing something to return to its original and better condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been “healed.”
- A broken relationship that is restored, has been “reconciled.” God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- If people are restored to their home country it means they have been “brought back” or “returned” to that country.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “restore” could include: “renew” or “repay” or “return” or “heal” or “bring back.”
- An expression for this term could be “make new” or “make like new again.”
- When property is “restored,” it means it has been “repaired” or “replaced” or “given back” to its owner.
- Depending on the context, “restoration,” could be translated as, “renewal” or “healing” or “reconciliation.”

Bible References:

Waiting

reward

Definition:

The term “reward” refers to what a person receives because of something he has done, either good or bad. “To reward” someone is to give someone something he deserves.

- A reward can be a good or positive thing that a person receives because of doing something well or because he has obeyed God.
- Sometimes a reward can refer to negative things that may result from bad behavior, such as the statement, “the reward of the wicked.” In this context, “reward” refers to punishment or negative consequences from sinful actions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “reward” could be translated as “payment” or “something that is deserved” or “punishment.”
- “To reward” someone could be translated by “to repay” or “to punish” or “to give what is deserved.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to wages. A reward is not specifically about earning money as part of a job.

(See also: [punish](#), [punishment](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

righteous, righteousness

Definition:

The terms “righteous” and “righteousness” refer to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people who the Bible calls “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous based on Jesus’ righteousness.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as, “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When referring to people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase, “the righteous” could also be translated as, “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means, “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good
- Sometimes “the righteous” is used figuratively and refers to “people who think they are good” or “people who seem to be righteous.”

(See also: [good](#), [goodness](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-02]** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **[04-08]** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God’s promise.
- **[17-02]** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **[23-01]** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **[50-10]** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.”

right hand

Definition:

The figurative expression “right hand” refers to the place of honor or strength on the right side of a ruler or other important individual.

- The right hand is also used as a symbol of power, authority, or strength.
- The Bible describes Jesus as sitting “at the right hand of” God the Father as the head of the body of believers (the Church) and in control as ruler of all creation.
- A person’s right hand was used to show special honor when placed on the head of someone being given a blessing (as when the patriarch Jacob blessed Joseph’s son Ephraim).
- To “serve at the right hand” of someone means to be the one whose service is especially helpful and important to that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- Sometimes the term “right hand” literally refers to a person’s right hand, as when Roman soldiers put a staff into Jesus’ right hand to mock him. This should be translated using the term that the language uses to refer to this hand.
- Regarding figurative uses, if an expression that includes the term “right hand” does not have the same meaning in the project language, then consider whether that language has a different expression with the same meaning.
- The expression “at the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of” or “in the place of honor beside” or “in the position of strength” or “ready to help.”
- Ways to translate “with his right hand” could include, “with authority” or “using power” or “with his amazing strength.”
- The figurative expression “his right hand and his mighty arm” uses two ways of emphasizing God’s power and great strength. One way to translate this expression could be, “his amazing strength and mighty power.” (See: [Parallelism](#))
- The expression “their right hand is falsehood” could be translated by, “even the most honorable thing about them is corrupted by lies” or “their place of honor is corrupted by deception” or “they use lies to make themselves powerful.”
- In Psalm 105:9, God calls for an accuser to be at the “right hand” of a wicked leader sent to punish his rebellious people. This could be translated as, “appoint an accuser to have the place of honor beside that wicked leader” or “appoint an accuser to help that wicked leader punish them.”

(See also: [accuse](#), [accusation](#), [accuser](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#), [mighty](#), [might](#), [punish](#), [punishment](#), [rebel](#), [rebellious](#), [rebellion](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

royal

Definition:

The term “royal” describes people and things which are associated with a king or queen.

- Examples of things that can be called “royal” include a king’s clothing, palace, throne, or crown.
- A king or queen usually lives in a royal palace.
- A king wears special clothing, sometimes called “royal robes.” Often a king’s robes were colored purple, which was a rare and expensive type of dye.
- In the New Testament, believers in Jesus are called a “royal priesthood.” Other ways to translate this could include, “priests who serve God the King” or “called to be priests for God the King.”
- The term “royal” could also be translated as “kingly” or “belonging to a king.”

(See also: [king](#), [palace](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [purple](#), [queen](#), [robe](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

ruin, ruins**Definition:**

To “ruin” something means to spoil, destroy, or cause to be useless. The term “ruin” or “ruins” refers to the rubble and spoiled remains of something that has been destroyed.

- The prophet Zephaniah spoke about the day of God’s wrath as a “day of ruin” when the world will be judged and punished.
- The book of Proverbs says that ruin and destruction await those who are ungodly.
- Depending on the context, “to ruin” could be translated as “to destroy” or “to spoil” or “to make useless” or “to break.”
- The term “ruin” or “ruins” could be translated as “rubble” or “broken-down buildings” or “destroyed city” or “devastation” or “brokenness” or “destruction,” depending on the context.

Bible References:

Waiting

ruler, rulers, rule

Definition:

The term “ruler” is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group.

- In the Old Testament, a king was also referred to with the general term “ruler,” as in the phrase, “appointed him ruler over Israel.”
- God is referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a “ruler.”
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a “governor.”
- Depending on the context, “ruler” could be translated as “leader” or “person who has authority over.”
- The action “to rule” means to “lead” to “have authority over.” It means the same thing as “reign” when referring a king ruling.

(See also: [authority](#), [governor](#), [govern](#), [proconsul](#), [government](#), [king](#), [synagogue](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Sabbath

Definition:

The term “Sabbath” refers to the seventh day of the week, which God commanded the Israelites to set apart as a day of rest and doing no work.

- After God finished creating the world in six days, he rested on the seventh day. In the same way, God commanded the Israelites to set aside the seventh day as a special day to rest and worship him.
- The command to “keep the Sabbath holy” is one of the ten commandments that God wrote on the stone tablets that he gave Moses for the Israelites.
- Following the Jewish system of counting days, the Sabbath begins on Friday at sundown and lasts until Saturday at sundown.
- Sometimes in the Bible the Sabbath is called “Sabbath day” rather than only the Sabbath.

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “resting day” or “day for resting” or “day of not working” or “God’s day of rest.”
- Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is a special day, as in “Sabbath Day” or “Resting Day.”
- Consider how this term is translated in a local or national language.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See: [rest](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-05]** “Always be sure to keep the **Sabbath day** holy. That is, do all your work in six days, for the seventh day is a day for you to rest and to honor me.”
- **[26-02]** Jesus went to the town of Nazareth where he had lived during his childhood. On the **Sabbath**, he went to the place of worship.
- **[41-03]** The day after Jesus was buried was a **Sabbath** day, and the Jews were not permitted to go to the tomb on that day.

sacred**Definition:**

Term “sacred” describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, often the term “sacred” is used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as “religious.”
- “Sacred songs” or “sacred music” refer to music that is sung or played for God’s glory. This could be translated as “music for worshiping Yahweh” or “songs that praise God.”
- The phrase “sacred duties” refers to the “religious duties” or “rituals” that a priest performs to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god.

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [consecrate](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sacrifice, offering

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.
- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin. Animal sacrifices could never do that.
- The figurative expression “offer yourselves as a living sacrifice” means, “live your life in complete obedience to God, giving up everything in order to serve him.”

Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action, “to sacrifice” could be translated as, “to give up something valuable” or “to kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be, “As you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal that is offered on an altar.”

(See also: [altar](#), [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#), [drink offering](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [fellowship offering](#), [freewill offering](#) [peace offering](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [sin offering](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-14]** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.

- [05-06] "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me." Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- [05-09] God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- [13-09] Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- [17-06] David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- [48-06] Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- [48-08] But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- [49-11] Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

saints

Definition:

The term “saints” literally means “holy ones” and refers to believers in Jesus.

- Later in church history, a person known for his good works was given the title “saint,” but that is not the way this term was used in the New Testament.
- Believers in Jesus are saints or holy ones, not because of what they have done, but rather through faith in the saving work of Jesus Christ. He is the one who makes them holy.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “saints” could include, “holy ones” or “holy people” or “holy believers in Jesus” or “set apart ones.”
- Be careful not to use a term that refers to people of only one Christian group.

(See: [holy](#), [holiness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Salt Sea, Dead Sea

Facts:

The Salt Sea (also called the Dead Sea) was located between southern Israel on the west and Moab on the east.

- The Jordan River flows south into the Salt Sea.
- Because it is smaller than most seas, this could be called “Salt Lake.”
- This sea has a high concentration of minerals (or “salts”) which means that nothing can live in its waters. That is where the name “Dead Sea” came from.
- In the Old Testament, this sea is also called the “Sea of Arabah” and the “Sea of Negev” because of its locations near the regions of Arabah and Negev.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ammon](#), [Ammonites](#), [Ammonites](#), [Arabah](#), , [Jordan River](#), [Moab](#), [Moabite](#), [Moabites](#), [Negev](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

salvation

Definition:

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated using the word “save” or “rescue” as in, “when God saves people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God will rescue his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as, “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as, “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: [save](#), [safe](#), [Savior](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Samaria, Samaritan

Facts:

Samaria was the name of a city and its surrounding region in the northern part of Israel. The region was located between the Plain of Sharon on the west and the Jordan River on the east.

- In the Old Testament, Samaria was the capital city of the northern kingdom of Israel. Later the region surrounding it was also called Samaria.
- When the Assyrians conquered the northern kingdom of Israel, they captured the city of Samaria and forced most of the northern Israelites to leave the region and moved them far away to different cities in Assyria.
- The Assyrians also brought many foreigners into the region of Samaria to replace the Israelites who had been moved.
- Some of the Israelites who remained in that region married the foreigners who had moved there, and their descendants were called Samaritans.
- The Jews despised the Samaritans because they were only partly Jewish and because their ancestors had worshiped pagan gods.
- In New Testament times, the region of Samaria was bordered by the region of Galilee on the north and the region of Judea on the south.

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [Galilee](#), [Galilean](#), [Judea](#), [Sharon](#), [Plain of Sharon](#), [kingdom of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[20-04]** Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been. The foreigners rebuilt the destroyed cities and married the Israelites who were left there. The descendants of the Israelites who married foreigners were called **Samaritans**.
- **[27-08]** "The next person to walk down that road was a **Samaritan**. (**Samaritans** were the descendants of Jews who had married people from other nations. **Samaritans** and Jews hated each other.)"
- **[27-09]** "The **Samaritan** then lifted the man onto his own donkey and took him to a roadside inn where he took care of him."
- **[45-07]** He (Philip) went to **Samaria** where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.

Samuel

Facts:

Samuel was a prophet and the last judge of Israel. He anointed both Saul and David as kings over Israel.

- Samuel was born to Elkanah and Hannah in the town of Ramah.
- Hannah was barren, so she prayed earnestly that God would give her a son. Samuel was the answer to that prayer.
- Hannah promised that if hborn as an answer to Hannah’s desperate prayer that God would give her a male child.er prayer was granted, she would dedicate her son to Yahweh.
- When Samuel was a young boy, Hannah sent him to help Eli the priest in the temple to fulfill her promise to God
- God raised up Samuel to be a great prophet for him.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Hannah](#), [judge](#), [judgment](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sanctuary

Definition:

The term “sanctuary” literally means “holy place” and refers to a place that God has made sacred and holy. It also can refer to a place that provides protection and safety.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sanctuary” is often used to refer to the tabernacle or temple building where the “holy place” and “most holy place” were located.
- God referred to the sanctuary as the place where he lived among his people, the Israelites.
- He also called himself a “sanctuary” or safe place for his people where they can find protection.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term has a basic meaning of “holy place” or “place that is set apart.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sanctuary” could be translated as “holy place” or “sacred building” or “God’s holy dwelling place” or “holy place of protection” or “sacred place of safety.”
- The phrase “shekel of the sanctuary” could be translated as, “kind of shekel given for the tabernacle” or “shekel used as a tax to take care of the temple.”
- Note: Be careful that the translation of this term does not refer to a worship room in a modern day church.

(See also: [Biblical Money](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [sacred](#), [set apart](#), [tabernacle](#), [tax](#), [taxes](#), [temple](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

sandal**Definition:**

A sandal is a simple flat-soled shoe held onto the foot with straps around the foot or ankle. Sandals are worn by both men and women.

- A sandal was sometimes used to confirm a legal transaction, such as the selling of property by one man taking off a sandal and giving it to the other.
- Removing one's shoes or sandals was also a sign of respect and reverence, especially in God's presence.
- John said that he was not worthy to even untie Jesus' sandals, which would have been the task of a lowly servant or slave.

Bible References:

Waiting

save, safe

Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” it means that through Jesus’ death on the cross, God has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include, “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression, “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”

(See also: [cross](#), [deliver](#), [deliverer](#), [deliverance](#), [punish](#), [punishment](#), [salvation](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-08]** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **[11-02]** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **[12-05]** Moses told the Israelites, “Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you.”
- **[12-13]** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **[16-17]** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **[44-08]** “You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!”
- **[47-11]** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, “What must I do to be **saved**?” Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**.”

- [49-12] Good works cannot **save** you.
- [49-13] God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

scribe, expert in the Jewish law

Definition:

Scribes were officials who were responsible to write or copy important government or religious documents by hand. Another name for a Jewish scribe was “expert in Jewish law.”

- Scribes were responsible for copying and preserving the books of the Old Testament.
- They also copied, preserved, and interpreted religious opinions and commentary on the law of God.
- At times, scribes were important government officials.
- Important biblical scribes include Baruch and Ezra.
- In the New Testament, the term “scribes” is also translated as “teachers of the Law.”
- In the New Testament, scribes were usually part of the religious group called the “Pharisees” and the two groups are frequently mentioned together.

(See also: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [Pharisee](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

seek, sought

Definition:

The term “seek” means to look for something or someone. The past tense is “sought.” It can also mean “try hard” or “make an effort” to do something.

- To “seek” or “look for” an opportunity means to “try to find a time” to do a particular thing
- To “seek Yahweh” means to “spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him.”
- To “seek protection” means to “try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger.”
- To “seek justice” means to “make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly.”
- to “seek the truth” means to “make an effort to find out what the truth is.”
- To “seek favor” means to “try to get favor” or “to do things to cause someone to help you.”

(See also: [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

send, send out, sent

Definition:

To “send” is to cause someone or something to go somewhere. To “send out” someone is to tell that person to go on an errand or a mission.

- Often a person who is “sent out” has been appointed to do a specific task.
- Phrases like “send rain” or “send disaster” mean “to cause...to come.” This type of expression is usually used in reference to God causing these things to happen.
- The term “send” is also used in expressions such as “send word” or “send a message” which means to give someone a message to tell someone else.
- To “send” someone “with” something can mean to “give” that thing “to” someone else, usually moving it some distance in order for the person to receive it.
- Jesus frequently uses the phrase “the one who sent me” to refer to God the Father who “sent” him to earth to redeem and save people. This could also be translated as, “commissioned me” or “caused me to come” or “appointed me to go.”

(See also: [appoint](#), [appointed](#), [redeem](#), [redemption](#), [redeemer](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Sennacherib

Facts:

Sennacherib was a powerful king of Assyria who caused Nineveh to become a rich, important city.

- King Sennacherib is known for his wars against Babylon and the kingdom of Judah.
- He was a very arrogant king and he ridiculed Yahweh.
- Sennacherib attacked Jerusalem during the time of King Hezekiah.
- Yahweh caused Sennacherib's army to be destroyed.
- The Old Testament books of Kings and Chronicles record some of the events of Sennacherib's reign.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Hezekiah](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [mock](#), [ridicule](#), [scoff at](#), [Nineveh](#), [Ninevite](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

servant, slave, slavery

Definition:

The word for “servant” can also mean “slave” and refers to a person who works for another person, either by choice or by force. The surrounding text usually makes it clear whether a servant or a slave is being referred to.

- In Bible times, there was less of a difference between a servant and a slave than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of their master’s household and many were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.
- A slave is a kind of servant who is the property of the person he works for. The person who buys a slave is called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treat their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treat their slaves very well, like a servant who is a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the Bible, the phrase “I am your servant” was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It does not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- In the Old Testament, God’s prophets and other people who worshiped God are often referred to as his “servants.”
- In the New Testament, people who obey God through faith in Christ are often called his “servants.”
- Christians are also called “slaves to righteousness,” which is a metaphor that compares the commitment to obey God to a slave’s commitment to obeying his master. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [commit](#), [committed](#), [commitment](#), [enslave](#), [in bondage](#), [household](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [serve](#), [service](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[06-01]** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **[08-04]** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **[09-13]** ”I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt.”

- [19-10] Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- [29-03] "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- [35-06] "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- [47-04] The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- [50-04] Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

serve, service

Definition:

The term “serve” means to do things to help other people. It can also mean to “worship.”

- In the context of a woman serving her guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.”
- When Jesus told the disciples to serve the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute to” or “hand out to” or “give to.”¹[comment_5adb7a6af206fdb7787dd58f4b215940](#)
- The term “service” refers to the act of serving. It can also be used to refer to a “meeting” of Christians as they worship God together.
- The term “serve” can also be translated as, “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- “To serve God” can be translated as “to worship and obey God” or “to do the work that God has commanded.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables.
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses.
- Now they “serve” the new covenant, that is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about this in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

set apart

Definition:

The term “set apart” means to be separated from something to fulfill a certain purpose.

- The Israelites were set apart for service to God.
- The Holy Spirit commanded the Christians at Antioch to set apart Paul and Barnabas for the work God wanted them to do.
- A believer who is “set apart” for service to God is “dedicated to” fulfilling God’s will.
- One meaning of the term “holy” is to be set apart as belonging to God and being separated from the sinful ways of the world.
- The term “sanctify” means to set apart a person for God’s service.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “to set apart” could include, “to specially select” or “to separate from among you” or “to take aside to do a special task.”
- To “be set apart” could be translated as “be separated (from)” or “be specially appointed (for).”

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [sanctify](#), [sanctification](#), [appoint](#), [appointed](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

shame, shameful, ashamed

Definition:

The term “shame” refers to a painful feeling of being disgraced a person has because of something dishonorable or improper that he or someone else has done.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something shameful.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their sin so that they feel ashamed of themselves.
- The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- God can bring shame to a person who does not repent, by exposing that person’s sin and causing him to be humiliated.

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [humble](#), [humility](#), [humiliate](#), [humiliation](#), [Isaiah](#), [repent](#), [repentance](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Sheba

Facts:

In ancient times, Sheba was an ancient civilization or region of land that was located somewhere in southern Arabia.

- The region or country of Sheba was probably located near what is now the present-day country of Yemen or Ethiopia.
- Its inhabitants were probably descendants of Ham.
- The Queen of Sheba came to visit King Solomon when she heard the fame of his riches and wisdom.
- There are also several men named “Sheba” listed in genealogies in the Old Testament. It is possible that the name of the region of Sheba came from one of these men.
- The city of Beersheba is shortened to Sheba one time in the Old Testament.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Arabia](#), [Arabian](#), [Beersheba](#), [Ethiopia](#), [Ethiopian](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Shechem

Facts:

Shechem is a town in Canaan located about 40 miles north of Jerusalem. Shechem is also the name of a man in the Old Testament.

- The town of Shechem is where Jacob settled after being reconciled to his brother Esau.
- Jacob bought land from the sons of Hamor the Hivite in Shechem, which later became his family burial ground and where Jacob's sons buried him.
- Hamor's son Shechem raped Jacob's daughter Dinah, which resulted in Jacob's sons killing all the men in the town of Shechem.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))[Hamor](#)

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Esau](#), [Hamor](#), [Hivite](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sheep, ram, ewe

Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. The male sheep is called a “ram.” The female sheep is called a “ewe.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially males and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [lamb](#), [Lamb of God](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [shepherd](#), [to shepherd](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-12]** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **[17-02]** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **[30-03]** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **[38-08]** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

shepherd, to shepherd

Definition:

A shepherd is a person who takes care of sheep. The verb “to shepherd” means to protect the sheep and provide them with food and water.

- Shepherds watch over the sheep, leading them to places with good food and water. Shepherds also keep the sheep from getting lost and protect them from wild animals.
- This term is often used metaphorically in the Bible to refer to taking care of people’s spiritual needs. This includes teaching them what God has told them in the Bible and guiding them in the way they should live. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- In the Old Testament, God is called the “shepherd” of his people because he takes care of all their needs and protects them. He also leads and guides them.
- Moses was a shepherd for the Israelites as he guided them spiritually in their worship of Yahweh and led them physically on their journey to the land of Canaan.
- In the New Testament, Jesus calls himself the “good shepherd.” The apostle Paul also refers to him as the “great shepherd” over the Church.
- Also in the New Testament, the term “shepherd” is used to refer to a person who is a spiritual leader over other believers. The term “pastor” is the same word as “shepherd.” The elders and overseers were also called shepherds.

Translation Suggestions

- When used literally, the action “shepherd” could be translated as “take care of sheep” or “watch over sheep.”
- The person “shepherd” could be translated as, “person who takes care of sheep” or “sheep tender” or “sheep caregiver.”
- When used as a metaphor, different ways to translate this term could include, “spiritual shepherd” or “spiritual leader” or “one who is like a shepherd” or “one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep” or “one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep” or “one who takes care of God’s sheep.”
- In some contexts, “shepherd” could be translated as “leader” or “guide” or “caregiver.”
- The expression, “to shepherd (a flock)” could be translated as, “to take care of” or “to spiritually nourish” or “to guide and teach” or “to lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep)”
- In figurative uses, it is best to use or include the literal word for “shepherd” in the translation of this term.

(See also: [believer](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [church](#), [Church](#), [Moses](#), [pastor](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [09-11] Moses became a **shepherd** in the wilderness far away from Egypt.to
- [17-02] David was a **shepherd** from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's sheep, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the sheep.
- [23-06] That night, there were some **shepherds** in a nearby field guarding their flocks.
- [23-08] The **shepherds** soon arrived at the place where Jesus was and they found him lying in a feeding trough, just as the angel had told them.
- [30-03] To Jesus, these people were like sheep without a **shepherd**.

shield

Definition:

A shield is an object held by a soldier in battle to protect himself from being injured by the enemy's weapons. "To shield" someone means to protect that person from harm.

- Shields were often circular or oval in shape and were made of materials such as leather, wood, or metal that were sturdy and thick enough to keep a sword or arrow from piercing them.
- Using this term as a metaphor, the Bible refers to God as a protective shield for his people. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Paul also talks about the "shield of faith," which is a figurative way of saying that believing in Jesus, and living out that faith in obedience to God, will protect believers from spiritual attacks from Satan.

(See also: [faith](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Shiloh

Facts:

Shiloh was a walled Canaanite city that was conquered by the Israelites under the leadership of Joshua.

- The city of Shiloh was located west of the Jordan River and northeast of the city of Bethel.
- During the time that Joshua was leading Israel, the city of Shiloh was a meeting place for the people of Israel.
- The twelve tribes of Israel met together at Shiloh to hear Joshua tell them which portion of the land of Canaan had been assigned to each of them.
- Before any temple was built in Jerusalem, Shiloh was the place where the Israelites came to sacrifice to God.
- When Samuel was a young boy, his mother Hannah took him to live in Shiloh to be trained by the priest Eli to serve Yahweh.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Bethel](#), [dedicate](#), [dedication](#), [Hannah](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Jordan River](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [Samuel](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

siege, besiege**Definition:**

The term “siege” refers to when an attacking army surrounds a city and keeps it from being able to receive any supplies of food and water. To “besiege” a city means to cause that city to be under a siege.

- When Babylon came to attack Israel, they used a siege tactic on Jerusalem to weaken the people inside the city.
- Often during a siege attack, ramps of dirt are gradually constructed to enable the attacking army to cross over the city walls and invade the city.
- The expression “lay siege” means to perform a siege. It has the same meaning as “besiege.”
- The term “besieged” has the same meaning as the expression “under siege.” Both these expressions describe a city that an enemy army is surrounding and besieging.

Bible References:

Waiting

sign, proof, reminder

Definition:

A sign is an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- Signs can be reminders of something that was promised:
 - The rainbow God created in the sky was a sign to remind people that he would never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
 - God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign of his covenant with them.
- Signs can reveal or point to something:
 - An angel told shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
 - Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.
- Signs can prove that something is true:
 - The miracles done by the prophets and apostles were signs that proved they were speaking God's message.
 - The miracles that Jesus performed were signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on its context, “sign” could also be translated as “signal” or “symbol” or “mark” or “evidence” or “proof” or “gesture.”
- To “make signs with the hands” could also be translated as, “motion with the hands” or “gesture with the hands” or “make gestures.”
- In some languages, there may be one word for a “sign” that proves something and a different word for a “sign” that is a miracle.

(See also: [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#), [apostle](#), [apostleship](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [covenant](#), [circumcise](#), [circumcision](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

silver

Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The containers would include silver cups and bowls, among other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, silver coins and silver weights called shekels were used.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Simeon

Facts:

In the Bible, there are several men named Simeon.

- In the Old Testament, the second son of Jacob (Israel) and Leah was named Simeon. His descendants became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The tribe of Simeon occupied the southernmost territory in the promised land of Canaan, an area that was part of Judah's inheritance.
- When Joseph and Mary brought the baby Jesus to the temple in Jerusalem to dedicate him to God, an elderly man named Simeon praised God for allowing him to see the Messiah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [dedicate](#), [dedication](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Judah](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a sinful nature that controls them.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- “To sin” could also be translated as “to disobey God” or “to do wrong.”
- Depending on the context, “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include, “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- In expressions like “slaves to sin” or “ruled by sin,” the term “sin” could be translated as “disobedience” or “evil desires and actions.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [flesh](#), [tax collector](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- * **[03-15]** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- * **[13-12]** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- * **[20-01]** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- * **[21-13]** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- * **[35-01]** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- * **[38-05]** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- * **[43-11]** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- * **[48-08]** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- * **[49-17]** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

sin offering

Definition:

The “sin offering” was one of several sacrifices that God required the Israelites to offer.

- This offering involved sacrificing a bull, burning its blood and fat on the altar, and taking the rest of the animal’s body and burning it on the ground outside the Israelite camp.
- The complete burning up of this animal sacrifice shows how holy God is and how terrible sin is.
- The Bible teaches that in order for there to be a cleansing from sin, blood must be shed to pay the cost for the sin that was committed.
- Animal sacrifices could not permanently bring about forgiveness of sin.
- Jesus’ death on the cross paid the penalty for sin, for all time. He was the perfect sin offering.

(See also: [altar](#), [cow](#), [calf](#), [bull](#), [cattle](#), [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

slaughter

Definition:

The term “slaughter” refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it.

- When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
- The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
- 1 Samuel records a great slaughter where 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies. because of disobedience to God.
- “Weapons of slaughter” could be translated as “weapons for killing.”
- The expression, “the slaughter was very great” could also be translated as “a large number were killed” or “the number of deaths was very great” or “a terribly high number of people died.”
- Other ways to translate “slaughter” could include, “kill” or “slay” or “killing.”

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [cow](#), [calf](#), [bull](#), [cattle](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [Ezekiel](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#), [slay](#), [slain](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Solomon

Facts:

Solomon was one of King David's sons. His mother was Bathsheba.

- When Solomon became king, God told him to ask for anything he wanted. So Solomon asked for wisdom to rule the people justly and well. God was pleased with Solomon's request and gave him both wisdom and much wealth.
- Solomon is also well-known for having a magnificent temple built in Jerusalem.
- Although Solomon ruled wisely in the beginning years of his reign, later on he foolishly married many foreign women and started worshiping their gods.
- Because of Solomon's unfaithfulness, after his death God divided the Israelites into two kingdoms: Israel and Judah. These kingdoms often fought against each other.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Bathsheba](#), [David](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[17-14]** Later, David and Bathsheba had another son, and they named him **Solomon**.
- **[18-01]** After many years, David died, and his son **Solomon** began to rule. God spoke to **Solomon** and asked him what he wanted most. When **Solomon** asked for wisdom, God was pleased and made him the wisest man in the world. **Solomon** learned many things and was a very wise judge. God also made him very wealthy.
- **[18-02]** In Jerusalem, **Solomon** built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **[18-03]** But **Solomon** loved women from other countries. ... When **Solomon** was old, he also worshiped their gods.
- **[18-04]** God was angry with **Solomon** and, as a punishment for **Solomon's** unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after **Solomon's** death.

son, son of

Definition:

The term “son” refers to a boy or man in relation to his parents. It can refer either to someone’s male offspring or to an adopted son.

- “Son” is often used figuratively in the Bible to refer to any male descendant, such as a grandson or great-grandson.
- The term “son” can also be used as a polite form of address to a boy or man who is younger.
- Sometimes “sons of God” is used in the New Testament to refer to believers in Christ.
- God calls Israel his “firstborn son.” This refers to God’s choosing of the nation of Israel to be his special people. It is through them that God’s message of redemption and salvation came, with the result that many other people have become his spiritual children.
- The phrase “son of” often has the figurative meaning, “having the characteristics of.” Examples of this include, “sons of the light,” “sons of disobedience,” “a son of peace,” and “sons of thunder.”
- The phrase “son of” is also used to tell who a person’s father is. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah, son of Zadok” and “Azariah, son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah, son of Amaziah in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” using the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- When used to refer to a descendant rather than a direct son, the term “descendant” could be used, as in referring to Jesus as the “descendant of David” or in genealogies where sometimes “son” refers to a male descendant, not an actual son.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.
- The figurative expression “son of” could also be translated as “someone who has the characteristics of” or “someone who is like” or “someone who has” or “someone who acts like.”

(See also: [Azariah](#), [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#), [firstborn](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#), [sons of God](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-08]** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **[04-09]** God said, "I will give you a **son** from your own body."
- **[05-05]** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's **son**.
- **[05-08]** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, "Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me."
- **[09-07]** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **[11-06]** God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn **sons**.
- **[18-01]** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **[26-04]** "Is this the **son** of Joseph?" they said.

sorcery, sorcerer, witchcraft

Definition:

“Sorcery” or “witchcraft” refers to using magic, which involves doing powerful things through the help of evil spirits. A “sorcerer” is someone who does these powerful, magical things.

- The use of magic and sorcery can involve both beneficial things (such as healing someone) and harmful things (such as putting a curse on someone). But all kinds of sorcery are wrong, because they use the power of evil spirits.
- In the Bible, God says that the use of sorcery is as evil as other terrible sins (such as adultery, worshiping idols, and child sacrifice).
- The terms “sorcery” and “witchcraft” could also be translated as, “evil spirit power” or “casting spells.”
- Possible ways to translated “sorcerer” could include, “worker of magic” or “person who casts spells” or “person who does miracles using evil spirit power.”
- Note that “sorcery” has a different meaning than the term “divination,” which refers to attempting to contact the spirit world.

(See also: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [divination](#), [diviner](#), [soothsaying](#), [soothsayer](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [magic](#), [magician](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

soul

Definition:

The soul is the inner, invisible, and eternal part of a person. It refers to the non-physical part of a person.

- The terms “soul” and “spirit” may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
- When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
- The word “soul” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to the whole person. For example, “the soul who sins” means, “the person who sins” and “my soul is tired” means, “I am tired.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “soul” could also be translated as “inner self” or “inner person.”
- In some contexts, “my soul” could be translated as, “I” or “me.”
- Usually the phrase “the soul” can be translated as “the person” or “he” or “him,” depending on the context.
- Some languages might only have one word for translating the terms “soul” and “spirit.”
- In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase, “dividing soul and spirit” could mean, “deeply discerning or exposing the inner person.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

spear**Definition:**

A spear is a weapon with a long wooden handle and sharp metal blade on one end that is thrown a long distance.

- Spears were commonly used for war in biblical times. They are sometimes still used in present-day conflicts between certain people groups.
- A spear was used by a Roman soldier to pierce the side of Jesus while he hung on the cross.
- Sometimes people throw spears to catch fish or other prey to eat.
- Similar weapons are the “javelin” or “lance.”
- Make sure that the translation of “spear” is different from the translation of “sword,” which is a weapon that is used for thrusting or stabbing, not throwing. Also, a sword has a long blade with a handle, while a spear has a small blade on the end of a long shaft.

(See also: [prey, to prey on](#), [Rome, Roman](#), [sword](#), [warrior](#), [soldier](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

spirit, spiritual

Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. “Spirit” can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person’s spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, “spiritual food” refers to God’s teachings that give nourishment to a person’s spirit, “spiritual wisdom” refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in, “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.”
- Examples of “spirit” as an attitude or emotion would include “spirit of fear” or “spirit of jealousy.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include, “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person as in, “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as, “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as, “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as, “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The figurative expression “spiritual milk” could also be translated as, “basic teachings from God” or “God’s teachings that nourish the spirit (like milk does).”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- A “spiritual gift” could be translated as, “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives.”

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [soul](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-03]** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **[40-07]** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **[45-05]** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **[48-07]** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

statute, statutes

Definition:

A statute is a specific written law that provides guidance for people to live by.

- The term “statute” is similar in meaning to “ordinance” or “command” or “law” or “decree.” All these terms involve instructions and requirements that God gives to his people.
- King David said that he delighted himself in Yahweh’s statutes.
- The term “statute” could also be translated as “specific command” or “special decree.”

(See also: [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [decree](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [ordinance](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

stone, stoning

Definition:

A stone is a small rock. The term “stoning” refers to throwing stones and larger rocks at a person in order to kill him.

- In ancient times, stoning was a common method of executing people as punishment for crimes they had committed.
- God commanded the Israelite leaders to stone people for certain sins, such as adultery.
- The New Testament tells of a time that Jesus forgave a woman caught in adultery and stopped people from stoning her.
- Stephen, who was the first person in the Bible to be killed because of testifying about Jesus, was stoned to death.
- In the city of Lystra, the apostle Paul was stoned, but he did not die from his wounds.

(See also: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#), [commit](#), [committed](#), [commitment](#), [crime](#), [criminal](#), [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [Lystra](#), [testimony](#), [testify](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

storehouse

Definition:

A “storehouse” is a large building that is used for keeping food or other things, often for a long time.

- In the Bible a “storehouse” was usually used to store extra grain and other food to be used later when there was a shortage of food because of famine.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to all the good things that God wants to give to his people.
- The storehouses of the temple contained valuable things, such as gold and silver, that had been dedicated to Yahweh. Some of these things were used to repair and maintain the temple.
- Other ways to translate “storehouse” could include, “a building for storing grain” or “place for keeping food” or “room for keeping valuable things safe.”

(See also: [consecrate](#), [dedicate](#), [dedication](#), [famine](#), [gold](#), [grain](#), [silver](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

stronghold, fortress, fortified

Definition:

The terms “stronghold” and “fortress” both refer to places that are well protected against an attack by enemy soldiers. The term “fortified” describes a city or other place that has been made safe from attack.

- Often, strongholds and fortresses are manmade structures with defensive walls. They can also be natural protective barriers such as rocky cliffs or high mountains.
- People fortify strongholds by building thick walls or other structures that make it difficult for an enemy to break through.
- “Stronghold” or “fortress” could be translated as “securely strong place” or “strongly protected place.”
- The term “fortified city” could be translated as “securely protected city” or “strongly built city.”
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to God as a stronghold or fortress for those who trust in him. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Another figurative meaning for the term “stronghold” refers to something that someone wrongly trusts in for security, such as a false god or other thing that is worshiped instead of Yahweh. This could be translated as, “false strongholds.”
- This term should be translated differently from “refuge,” which emphasizes safety more than the concept of being fortified.

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [refuge](#), [shelter](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Succoth

Definition:

Succoth is the name of two Old Testament cities. The word, “succoth” (or “sukkoth”) means “shelters.”

- The first city called Succoth was located on the east side of the Jordan River.
- Jacob stayed at Succoth with his family and flocks, building shelters for them there.
- Hundreds of years later, Gideon and his exhausted men stopped at Succoth as they were chasing the Midanites, but the people there refused to give them any food.
- The second Succoth is located on the northern border of Egypt and was one place where the Israelites stopped after they crossed the Red Sea as they were escaping from slavery in Egypt.

Bible References:

Waiting

suffer, suffering

Definition:

The terms “suffer” and “suffering” refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

- When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.
- Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
- Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
- The phrase “suffer me” means to “bear with me” or “hear me out” or “listen patiently.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “suffer” can be translated as “feel pain” or “endure difficulty” or “experience hardships” or “go through difficult and painful experiences.”
- Depending on the context, “suffering” could be translated as “extremely difficult circumstances” or “severe hardships” or “experiencing hardship” or “time of painful experiences.”
- The phrase “suffer thirst” could be translated as, “experience thirst” or “suffer with thirst.”
- To “suffer violence” could also be translated as “undergo violence” or “be harmed by violent acts.”

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [09-13] God said, “I have seen the **suffering** of my people.”
- [38-12] Jesus prayed three times, “My Father, if it is possible, please let me not have to drink this cup of **suffering**.”
- [42-03] He (Jesus) reminded them that the prophets said the Messiah would **suffer** and be killed, but would rise again on the third day.
- [42-07] He (Jesus) said, “It was written long ago that the Messiah would **suffer**, die, and rise from the dead on the third day.”
- [44-05] “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to fulfill the prophecies that the Messiah would **suffer** and die.”
- [46-04] God said, “I have chosen him (Saul) to declare my name to the unsaved. I will show him how much he must **suffer** for my sake.”
- [50-17] He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more **suffering**, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.

sword

Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- The blade of a sword in ancient times was around 60 to 91 centimeters long.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called “double-edged” or “two-edged” swords.
- Jesus’ disciples had swords they planned to use to defend themselves. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest’s servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God’s word. God’s teachings in the Bible expose people’s innermost thoughts and convict them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, “God’s word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin.”
- Another figurative use of this term is in the book of Psalms where the tongue or speech of a person is compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as, “the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone.”
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a “sharp weapon” or “long knife.” Some translations may decide to include a picture of a sword.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [James \(brother of Jesus\)](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [tongue](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Syria

Facts:

Syria is a country located northeast of Israel. During the time of the New Testament, it was a province under the rule of the Roman Empire.

- In the Old Testament time period, the Syrians were strong military enemies of the Israelites.
- Naaman was a commander of the Syrian army who was cured of leprosy by the prophet Elisha.
- Many of the inhabitants of Syria are descendants of Aram, who was descended from Noah's son Shem.
- Damascus, the capital city of Syria, is mentioned many times in the Bible.
- Saul went to the city of Damascus with plans to persecute Christians there, but Jesus stopped him.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Aram](#), [Aramean](#), [Aramaic](#), [commander](#), [command](#), [Damascus](#), [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [Elisha](#), [leprosy](#), [leper](#), [leprous](#), [Naaman](#), [persecute](#), [persecution](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

tabernacle

Definition:

The tabernacle was a special tent-like structure where the Israelites worshiped God during the 40 years they traveled around in the desert.

- God had given the Israelites detailed instructions for building this large tent, which had two rooms and was surrounded by an enclosed courtyard.
- Each time the Israelites moved to a different place in the desert to live, the priests would take apart the tabernacle and carry it to their next campsite. Then they would set it up again in the center of their new camp.
- The tabernacle was constructed of wood frames hung with curtains made of cloth, goat hair, and animal skins. The courtyard surrounding it was enclosed with more curtains.
- The two sections of the tabernacle were the Holy Place (where the altar for burning incense was located) and the Most Holy Place (where the ark of the covenant was kept).
- The courtyard of the tabernacle had an altar for burning animal sacrifices and a special washbasin for ritual cleansing.
- The Israelites stopped using the tabernacle when Solomon's temple in Jerusalem was built.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word "tabernacle" means "dwelling place." Other ways to translate it could include, "sacred tent" or "tent where God was" or "God's tent."
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of "temple."

(See also: , [altar](#), [altar of incense](#), [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [temple](#), [tent of meeting](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

tax, taxes**Definition:**

The terms “tax” and “taxes” refer to money or goods that people pay to a government that is in authority over them.

- The amount of money that is paid for tax is usually based on the value of an item or on how much a person’s property is worth.
- If taxes are not paid, the government can take legal action against a person to get the money that is owed.
- Joseph and Mary traveled to Bethlehem to be counted in the census that was for the purpose of taxing everyone living in the Roman empire.
- There was also a “temple tax” which was money that people put in the temple offering box. Some of this money was used for taking care of the temple building.
- The term “tax” could also be translated as, “required payment” or “government money” or “temple money,” depending on the context.
- Phrases such as, “collect taxes” and “pay taxes” could also be translated as, “pay money to the government” or “receive money for the government” or “make the required payment.”
- A “tax collector” is someone who works for the government to receive the money that people are required to pay them.

(See also: [Bethlehem](#), [Ephrathah](#), [census](#), [citizen](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#), [tax collector](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

temple

Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” refers to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it refers only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- During the reign of King Solomon he built the Temple, which was the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term “temple of the Holy Spirit” is used to refer to believers in Jesus, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- When it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations will translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it clear what is being referred to.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God’s holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [Solomon](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [tabernacle](#), [courtyard](#), [court Zion](#), [Mount Zion house](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [17-06] David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- [18-02] In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.
- [20-07] They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.

- [20-13] When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- [25-04] Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- [40-07] When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

tent

Definition:

A tent is a portable shelter made of sturdy fabric that is draped over a structure of poles and attached to them.

- Tents can be small, with just enough space for a few people to sleep in, or they can be very large, with space for an entire family to sleep, cook, and live in.
- For many people, tents are used as permanent dwelling places. For example, during most of the time that Abraham's family lived in the land of Canaan, they dwelled in large tents made of sturdy cloth made of goat hair.
- The Israelites also lived in tents during their forty-year wanderings through the desert of Sinai.
- The tabernacle building was a kind of very large tent, with thick walls made of cloth curtains.
- When the apostle Paul traveled to different cities to share the gospel, he made tents to earn money to support himself.
- The term "tents" is sometimes used figuratively to refer generally to where people live. This could also be translated as "homes" or "dwellings" or "houses." (See: [Synecdoche](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [curtain](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#), [Sinai](#), [Mount Sinai](#), [tabernacle](#), [tent of meeting](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

tenth, tithe

Definition:

The terms “tenth” and “tithe” refer to “ten percent” or “one-out-of-ten portion” of one’s money, crops, livestock, or other possessions that is given to God.

- In the Old Testament, God instructed the Israelites to set aside a tenth of their belongings to give as an offering of thanksgiving to him.
- This offering was used to support the Levite tribe of Israel who served the Israelites as priests and caretakers of the tabernacle and later, the temple.
- In the New Testament, God does not require giving a tithe, but instead he instructs believers to generously and cheerfully help people in need and support the work of Christian ministry.
- This could also be translated as “one-tenth” or “one out of ten.”

(See also: [believer](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Levite](#), [Levi](#), [livestock](#), [Melchizedek](#), [minister](#), [ministry](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

tent of meeting

Facts:

The term “tent of meeting” refers to a tent which was a temporary place where God met with Moses before the tabernacle was built.

- The tent of meeting was set up outside the camp of the Israelites.
- When Moses went into the tent of meeting to meet with God, a pillar of cloud would stand at the entrance to the tent as a sign of God’s presence there.
- After the Israelites built the tabernacle, the temporary tent was no longer needed and the term “tent of meeting” was sometimes used to refer to the tabernacle.

(See also: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Moses](#), [pillar](#), [column](#), [tabernacle](#), [tent](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-08]** God gave the Israelites a detailed description of a tent he wanted them to make. It was called the **Tent of Meeting**, and it had two rooms, separated by a large curtain.
- **[13-09]** Anyone who disobeyed God’s law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the **Tent of Meeting** as a sacrifice to God.
- **[14-08]** God was very angry and came to the **Tent of Meeting**.
- **[18-02]** Instead of at the **Tent of Meeting**, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the Temple.

terror, terrify**Definition:**

The term “terror” refers to a feeling of extreme fear. To “terrify” someone means to cause that person to feel very afraid.

- A “terror” (or “terrors”) is something or someone that causes great fear or dread. An example of a terror could be an attacking enemy army or a plague or disease that is widespread, killing many people.
- These terrors can be described as “terrifying.” This term could be translated as, “fear-causing” or “terror-producing.”
- The judgment of God will someday cause terror in unrepentant people who reject his grace.
- The “terror of Yahweh” could be translated as, “the terrifying presence of Yahweh” or “the dreaded judgment of Yahweh” or “when Yahweh causes great fear.”
- Ways to translate “terror” could also include, “extreme fear” or “deep dread.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [enemy](#), [fear](#), [afraid](#), [fear of Yahweh](#), [judge](#), [judgment](#), [plague](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

test

Definition:

The term “test” refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person’s strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people’s sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To “put to the test” can mean, “challenge something or someone to prove its value.”
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to keep disobeying him, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “to test” could also be translated as, “to challenge” or “to cause to experience difficulties” or “to prove.”
- Ways to translate “a test” could be, “a challenge” or “a difficult experience.”
- To “put to the test” could be translated as “to test” or “to set up a challenge” or “to force to prove oneself.”
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as, “trying to force God to prove his love.”
- In some contexts, the term “test” can mean “tempt.”

(See also: [tempt](#), [temptation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

testimony, testify

Definition:

The terms “testimony” and “testify” refer to making a statement about something that one knows to be true.

- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term is often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as, “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as, “to show them what is true” or “to prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as, “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”

(See: [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of the testimony](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [witness](#), [eyewitness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

thresh, threshing

Definition:

The terms “thresh” and “threshing” refer to the first part of the process of separating wheat grain from the rest of the wheat plant.

- Threshing the wheat plant loosens the grain from the straw and the chaff. Afterwards the grain is “winnowed” to completely separate the grain from all unwanted materials, leaving only the part the grain that can be eaten.
- In Bible times, a “threshing floor” was a large flat rock or an area of packed-down dirt, giving a hard, level surface to crush the grain stalks and remove the grain.
- A “threshing cart” or “threshing wheel” was sometimes used to crush the grain and help separate it from the straw and chaff.
- A “threshing sledge” or “threshing board” was also used for separating grain. It was made of wooden boards that had sharp metal spikes on the end.

(See also: [chaff](#), [grain](#), [winnow](#), [sift](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

threshold

Definition:

The term “threshold” refers to the bottom part of a doorway or the part of a building that is just inside the door.

- Sometimes a threshold is a strip of wood or stone that must be stepped over in order to enter a room or building.
- Both a gate and the opening to a tent can also have a threshold.
- This term should be translated with a term in the project language that refers to the place at the very entrance to a home that a person steps across.
- If there is no term for this, “threshold” could also be translated as, “doorway” or “opening” or “entranceway,” depending on the context.

(See also: [gate](#), [gate bar](#), [tent](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

throne

Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a king sits to decide important matters and to listen to requests from his people.

- A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a king has.
- The word “throne” is often used figuratively to refer to the king, his reign, or his power. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- In the Bible, God is often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus is described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
- Jesus said that heaven is God’s throne. One way to translate this could be, “where God reigns as king.”

(See also: [authority](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [king](#), [reign](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

tomb, grave, burial place

Definition:

The terms “tomb” and “grave” refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A “burial place” is a more general term that also refers to this.

- The Jews sometimes used natural caves as tombs, and sometimes they dug caves into rock in the side of a hill.
- In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
- If the word for a tomb or a grave can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include, “cave” or “hole in the side of a hill.”
- The phrase “the grave” is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: [bury](#), [buried](#), [burial](#), [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[32-04]** The man lived among the **tombs** in the area.
- **[37-06]** Jesus asked them, “Where have you put Lazarus?” They told him, “In the **tomb**. Come and see.”
- **[37-07]** The **tomb** was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening.
- **[40-09]** Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two Jewish leaders who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus’ body. They wrapped his body in cloth and placed it in a **tomb** cut out of rock. Then they rolled a large stone in front the **tomb** to block the opening.
- **[41-04]** He (the angel) rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the **tomb** and sat on it. The soldiers guarding the **tomb** were terrified and fell to the ground like dead men.
- **[41-05]** When the women arrived at the **tomb**, the angel told them, “Do not be afraid. Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would! Look in the **tomb** and see.” The women looked into the **tomb** and saw where Jesus’ body had been laid. His body was not there!

transgress, transgression

Definition:

The terms “transgress” and “transgression” refer to breaking a command, rule, or moral code.

- Figuratively, “transgression” can also be described as “crossing a line,” that is, going beyond a limit or boundary that has been set for the good of the person and others.
- The terms “transgression”, “sin”, “iniquity”, and “trespass” all include the meaning of acting against God’s will and disobeying his commands.

Translation Suggestions:

- “To transgress” could be translated as “to sin” or “to disobey” or “to rebel.”
- If a verse or passage uses two terms that mean “sin” or “transgress” or “trespass,” it is important, if possible, to use different ways to translate these terms. When the Bible uses two or more terms with similar meanings in the same context, usually its purpose is to emphasize what is being said or to show its importance. (See: [parallelism](#))

(See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [trespass](#), [iniquity](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

trespass**Definition:**

To “trespass” means to break a law or to violate the rights of another person.

- A trespass can be a violation of moral or civil law or a sin committed against another person.
- This term is related to the terms “sin,” and “transgress,” especially as it relates to disobeying God.
- All sins are trespasses against God.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “to trespass against” could be translated as “to sin against” or “to break the rule.”
- Some languages may have an expression like “cross the line” that could be used to translate “trespass.”
- Consider how this term fits with the meaning of the surrounding Bible text and compare it to other terms that have a similar meaning, such as “transgress” and “sin.”

(See also: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [iniquity](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [transgress](#), [transgression](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

tribe

Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: [clan](#), [nation](#), [people group](#), [peoples](#), [the people](#), [a people](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

tribute

Definition:

The term “tribute” refers to a gift from one ruler to another ruler, for the purpose of protection and good relations between their nations.

- A tribute can also be a payment that a ruler or government requires from the people, such as a toll or tax.
- In Bible times, traveling kings or rulers might pay a tribute to the king of the region they were traveling through to make sure they would be protected and safe.
- Often the tribute would include other things besides money, such as foods, spices, rich clothing, and expensive metals such as gold.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “tribute” could be translated as “official gifts” or “special tax” or “required payment.”

(See also: [gold](#), [king](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [tax](#), [taxes](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

trouble, troubles, troubled

Definition:

The term “trouble” refers to experiences in life that are very difficult and distressing. To be “troubled” means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of “trouble” also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.
- The action, “to trouble” someone means “to bother” that person or to cause him distress.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “trouble” or “troubles” could also be translated as, “danger” or “painful things that happen” or “persecution” or “difficult experiences” or “distress.”
- The term “troubled” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “undergoing distress” or “feeling terrible distress” or “worried” or “anxious” or “distressed” or “terrified” or “disturbed.”
- “Don’t trouble her” could also be translated as, “don’t bother her” or “don’t criticize her.”
- The phrase “day of trouble” or “times of trouble” could also be translated as, “when you experience distress” or “when difficult things happen to you” or “when God causes distressing things to happen.”
- Ways to translate “make trouble” or “bring trouble” could include, “cause distressing things to happen” or “cause difficulties” or “make them experience very difficult things.”

(See also: [afflict](#), [affliction](#), [persecute](#), [persecution](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

true, truth, come true

Definition:

The terms “true” and “truth” refer to concepts that are facts, events that actually happened, and statements that were actually said.

- True things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- The truth is an understanding, belief, fact, or statement that is true.
- The expression “come true” or “came true” is an expression that means that a prophecy actually happened as it was predicted that it would.
- Truth includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God’s truth in the words that he spoke.
- God’s word is truth. It tells about things that actually happened and teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term “true” could also be translated by “real” or “factual” or “correct” or “right” or “certain” or “genuine.”
- Ways to translate the term “truth” could include, “what is true” or “fact” or “certainty” or “principle.”
- The expression “come true” could also be translated as, “actually happen” or “be fulfilled” or “happen as predicted.”
- The expression “tell the truth” or “speak the truth” could also be translated as, “say what is true” or “tell what really happened” or “say things that are reliable.”
- To “accept the truth” could be translated as, “believe what is true about God.”
- In an expression such as, “worship God in spirit and in truth,” the expression “in truth” could also be translated by, “faithfully obeying what God has taught us.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [fulfill](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [understand](#), [understanding](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-04]** The snake responded to the woman, “That is not **true**! You will not die.”
- **[14-06]** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, “It is **true** that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!”
- **[16-01]** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the **true** God.

- [31-08] They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God."
- [39-10] "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"

trumpet**Definition:**

The term “trumpet” refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

- A trumpet was commonly made from either metal, seashell, or an animal horn.
- Trumpets were most commonly blown to call people to come together for battle, and for Israel’s public assemblies.
- The book of Revelation describes a scene in the end times in which angels blow their trumpets to signal the outpouring of the wrath of God on the earth.

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [assembly](#), [assemble](#), [earth](#), [earthly](#), [horn](#), [horns](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [wrath](#), [fury](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness

Definition:

The term “trust” refers to believing that something or someone is true or dependable. A “trustworthy” person can be relied on to do and say what is right and true.

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God and that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include, “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as, “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: , [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [confidence](#), [confident](#), [faith](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [12-12] When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- [14-15] Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- [17-02] David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- [34-06] Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

turn, turn away, turn back

Definition:

To “turn” means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

- The term “turn” can also mean “turn around” to look behind or to face a different direction.
- To “turn back” or “turn away” means to “go back” or “go away” or “cause to go away.”
- To “turn away from” can mean to “stop” doing something or to reject someone.
- To “turn toward” someone means to look directly at that person.
- To “turn and leave” or “turn his back to leave” means to “go away.”
- To “turn back to” means to “start doing something again.”
- To “turn away from” means to “stop doing something.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “turn” can be translated as “change direction” or “go” or “move.”
- In some contexts, “turn” could be translated as, “cause” (someone) to do something. To “turn (someone) away from” could be translated as “cause (someone) to go away” or “cause (someone) to stop.”
- The phrase “turn away from God” could be translated as “stop worshiping God.”
- The phrase “turn back to God” could be translated as, “start worshiping God again.”
- When enemies “turn back,” it means they “retreat.” To “turn back the enemy” means to “cause the enemy to retreat.”
- Used figuratively, when Israel “turned to” false gods, they “started to worship” them. When they “turned away” from idols, they “stopped worshiping” them.
- When God “turned away from” his rebellious people, he “stopped protecting” or “stopped helping” them.
- The phrase “turn the hearts of the fathers to their children” could be translated as, “cause fathers to care for their children again.”
- The expression, “turn my honor into shame” could be translated as, “cause my honor to become shame” or “dishonor me so that I am shamed” or “shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me.”
- “I will turn your cities into ruin” could be translated as, “I will cause your cities to be destroyed” or “I will cause enemies to destroy your cities.”
- The phrase “turn into” could be translated as “become.” When Moses’ rod “turned into” a snake, it “became” a snake.” It could also be translated as “changed into.”

(See also: [idol](#), [leprosy](#), [leper](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Tyre, Tyrians

Facts:

Tyre was an ancient Canaanite city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, in a region that is now part of the modern-day country of Lebanon. Its people were called “Tyrians.”

- Part of the city was also located on an island in the sea, about one kilometer from the coast.
- Because of its location and valuable natural resources such as cedar trees, Tyre had a prosperous trading industry and was very wealthy.
- King Hiram of Tyre sent wood from cedar trees and skilled laborers for building a palace for King David.
- Years later, Hiram also gave King Solomon wood and skilled laborers for building the temple. Solomon paid him with large amounts of wheat and olive oil.
- Tyre was often associated with the nearby ancient city of Sidon. These were the most important cities of the region of Canaan called Phoenicia.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [cedar](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [the sea](#), [the Great Sea](#), [the western sea](#), [Mediterranean Sea](#), [Phoenicia](#), [Sidon](#), [Sidonians](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

unclean

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “unclean” is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be “unclean” until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something “unclean,” they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God’s commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God’s service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an “unclean spirit” refers to an evil spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “unclean” could also be translated as “not clean” or “unfit in God’s eyes” or “physically unclean” or “defiled.”
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, “unclean” could be translated as “evil” or “defiled.”
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: [clean](#), [cleanse](#), [defile](#), [be defiled](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [unholy](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

unfaithful, unfaithfulness

Definition:

The term “unfaithful” describes people who do not do what God has commanded them to do. The condition or practice of being unfaithful is “unfaithfulness.”

- The people of Israel were called “unfaithful” when they began to worship idols and when they disobeyed God in other ways.
- In marriage, someone who commits adultery is “unfaithful” to his or her spouse.
- God used the term “unfaithfulness” to describe Israel’s disobedient behavior. They were not obeying God or honoring him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “unfaithful” could be translated as, “not faithful” or “unbelieving” or “not obedient” or “not loyal.”
- The phrase “the unfaithful” could be translated as, “people who are not faithful (to God)” or “unfaithful people” or “those who disobey God” or “people who rebel against God.”
- The term “unfaithfulness” could be translated as, “disobedience” or “disloyalty” or “not believing or obeying.”
- In some languages, the term “unfaithful” is related to the word for “unbelief.”

(See also: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [unbeliever](#), [unbelief](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

unleavened bread, Festival of Unleavened Bread

Definition:

The term “unleavened bread” refers to bread that is made without yeast or other leavening. This kind of bread is flat because it has no leaven to make it rise. The “Festival of Unleavened Bread” is part of the Passover celebration.

- When God freed the Israelites from slavery in Egypt, he told them to flee Egypt quickly without waiting for their bread to rise. So they ate unleavened bread with their meal. Since then unleavened bread is used in their yearly Passover celebrations to remind them of that time.
- For this reason, the week leading up to Passover is called the “Festival of Unleavened Bread.”
- Since leaven sometimes is used as a picture of sin, “unleavened bread” represents the removal of sin from a person’s life in order to live in a way that honors God.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include, “bread with no yeast” or “flat bread that did not rise.”
- Make sure the translation of this term is consistent with how you translate the term “yeast, leaven.”
- In some contexts, the term “unleavened bread” refers to the “Feast of Unleavened Bread” and can be translated that way.

(See also: [bread](#), [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [feast](#), [Passover](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [yeast](#), [leaven](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Uzziah, Azariah

Facts:

Uzziah became king of Judah at the age of 16 and reigned 52 years, which was an unusually long reign. Uzziah was also known as “Azariah.”

- King Uzziah was well-known for his organized and skilled military. He had towers built to protect the city and had specially-designed weapons of war mounted on them to hurl arrows and large stones.
- As long as Uzziah served the Lord, he prospered. Toward the end of his reign, however, he became proud and he disobeyed the Lord by burning incense in the temple, which only the priest was permitted to do.
- Because of this sin, Uzziah became sick with leprosy and had to live separately from other people until the end of his reign.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [king](#), [leprosy](#), [leper](#), [leprous](#), [reign](#), [watchtower](#), [tower](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

vine**Definition:**

The term “vine” refers to a plant that grows by trailing along the ground or by climbing trees and other structures. The word “vine” in the Bible is used only of fruit-bearing vines and usually refers to grape vines.

- In the Bible, the word “vine” almost always means, “grapevine.”
- The branches of the grapevine are attached to the main stem which gives them water and other nutrients so that they can grow.
- Jesus called himself the “vine” and called his people the “branches.” In this context, the word “vine” could also be translated as “grapevine stem” or “grape plant stem.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [grape](#), [vineyard](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

virgin

Definition:

A virgin is a woman who has never had sexual relations.

- The prophet Isaiah said that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- Mary was a virgin when she was pregnant with Jesus. He did not have a human father.
- Some languages may have a term that is a polite way of referring to a virgin. (See: [Euphemism](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [Isaiah](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [Mary](#), [the mother of Jesus](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[21-09]** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a **virgin**.
- **[22-04]** She (Mary) was a **virgin** and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph.
- **[22-05]** Mary replied, "How can this be, since I am a **virgin**?"
- **[49-01]** An angel told a **virgin** named Mary that she would give birth to God's Son. So while she was still a **virgin**, she gave birth to a son and named him Jesus.

vision

Facts:

The term “vision” refers to something that a person sees. It especially refers to something unusual or supernatural that God shows people in order to give them a message.

- Usually, visions are seen while the person is awake. However sometimes a vision is something a person sees in a dream while asleep.
- God sends visions to tell people something that is very important. For example, Peter was shown a vision to tell him that God wanted him to welcome Gentiles.

Translation Suggestion

- The phrase “saw a vision” could be translated as, “saw something unusual from God” or “God showed him something special.”
- Some languages may not have separate words for “vision” and “dream.” So a sentence such as, “Daniel had dreams and visions in his mind” could be translated as something like, “Daniel was dreaming while asleep and God caused him to see unusual things.”

(See also: [dream](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

walk

Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as, “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#), [\[:en:obe:other:obey\]](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

watchtower, tower

Definition:

The term “watchtower” refers to a tall structure built as a place from which guards could look out for any danger. These towers were often made of stone.

- Landowners sometimes built watchtowers from which they could guard their crops and protect them from being stolen.
- The towers often included rooms where the watchmen or family lived, so that they could guard the crops day and night.
- Watchtowers for cities were built higher than the city walls so that watchmen could see if any enemies were coming to attack the city.
- The term “watchtower” is also used as a symbol of protection from enemies. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [adversary](#), [enemy](#), [watch](#), [watchman](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

water, waters**Definition:**

In addition to its primary meaning, “water” also often refers to a body of water, such as an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

- The term “waters” refers to bodies of water or many sources of water. It can also be a general reference for a large amount of water.
- A figurative use of “waters” refers to great distress, difficulties, and suffering. For example, God promises that when we “go through the waters” he will be with us.
- The phrase “many waters” emphasizes how great the difficulties are.
- To “water” livestock and other animals means to “provide water for” them. In Bible times, this usually involved drawing water from a well with a bucket and pouring the water into a trough or other container for the animals to drink from.
- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as the spring or fountain of “living waters” for his people. This means he is the source of spiritual power and refreshment.
- In the New Testament, Jesus used the phrase “living water” to refer to the Holy Spirit working in a person to transform and bring new life.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase, “draw water” could be translated as, “pull water up from a well with a bucket.”
- “Streams of living water will flow from them” could be translated as, “the power and blessings from the Holy Spirit will flow out of them them like streams of water.” Instead of “blessings” the term “gifts” or “fruits” or “godly character” could be used.
- When Jesus is talking to the Samaritan woman at the well, the phrase “living water” could be translated as “water that gives life” or “lifegiving water.” In this context, the imagery of water must be kept in the translation.
- Depending on the context, the term “waters” or “many waters” could be translated as “great suffering (that surrounds you like water)” or “overwhelming difficulties (like a flood of water)” or “large amounts of water.”

(See also: [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [power](#), [powers](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

wheat

Definition:

Wheat is a type of grain that people grow for food. When the Bible mentions “grain” or “seeds,” it is often talking about wheat grain or seeds.

- The wheat seeds or grains grow at the top of the wheat plant.
- After harvesting the wheat, the grain is separated from the stalk of the plant by threshing it. The stalk of the wheat plant is also called “straw” and is often placed on the ground for animals to sleep on.
- After threshing, the chaff surrounding the grain seed is separated from the grain by winnowing and is thrown away.
- People grind the wheat grain into flour, and use this for making bread.

(See also: [barley](#), [chaff](#), [grain](#), [seed](#), [thresh](#), [threshing](#), [winnow](#), [sift](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

will of God

Definition:

The “will of God” refers to God’s desires and plans.

- God’s will especially relates to his interactions with people and how he wants people to respond to him.
- It also refers to his plans or desires for the rest of his creation.
- The term “to will” means “to determine” or “to desire.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The “will of God” could also be translated as, “what God desires” or “what God has planned” or “God’s purpose” or “what is pleasing to God.”

Bible References:

Waiting

wine, wineskin, new wine

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also refer to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as, “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include, “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: [grape](#), [vine](#), [vineyard](#), [winepress](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

smashed

wise, wisdom

Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- In the Bible, the term “worldly wisdom” is a figurative way of referring to what people in this world think is wise, but which is actually foolish.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love and patience.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include, “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See: [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [fruit](#), [fruitful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [02-05] She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- [18-01] When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- [23-09] Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- [45-01] He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

word**Definition:**

A “word” refers to something that someone has said.

- An example of this would be when the angel told Zechariah, “You did not believe my words,” which means, “You did not believe what I said.”
- This term almost always refers to an entire message, not just one word.
- Often in the Bible “the word” refers to everything God has said or commanded, as in “the word of God” or “the word of truth.”
- Sometimes “word” refers to speech in general, such as “powerful in word and deed” which means “powerful in speech and behavior.”
- A very special use of this term is when Jesus is called “the Word.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways of translating “word” or “words” include, “teaching” or “message” or “news” or “a saying” or “what was said.”
- When it refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Saying.”

(See also: [word of God](#), [God’s word](#), [scripture](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called “the Word of God.”

- The term “scriptures” means “writings.” It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures or “Old Testament.” These writings were God’s message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people can still read it.
- The related terms “word of Yahweh” and “word of the Lord” often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply “the word” or “my word” or “your word” (when talking about God’s word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called “the Word” and “the Word of God.” These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include, “the message of Yahweh” or “God’s message” or “the teachings from God.”
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say “God’s words” or “the words of Yahweh.”
- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as, “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”
- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.” This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”
- When “word” occurs alone, it could be translated as “message” or “God’s word” or “teachings,” depending on the context. Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.

(See also: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [word](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[25-07]** In **God’s word** he commands his people, ‘Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- **[33-06]** So Jesus explained, ”The seed is the **word of God**.

- [42-03] Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- [42-07] Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled." Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word**.
- [45-10] Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- [48-12] But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**.
- [49-18] God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

works, deeds, work, acts

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “works,” “deeds,” and “acts” are used to refer generally to things that God or people do.

- The term “work” refers to doing labor or anything that is done to serve other people.
- God’s “works” and the “work of his hands” are expressions that refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place. The terms “deeds” and “acts” are also used to refer to God’s miracles in expressions such as, “mighty acts” or “marvelous deeds.”
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.
- The Holy Spirit empowers believers to do good works, which are also called “good fruit.”
- People are not saved by their good works; they are saved through faith in Jesus.
- A person’s “work” can be what he does to earn a living or to serve God. The Bible also refers to God as “working.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “works” or “deeds” could be, “actions” or “things that are done.”
- When referring to God’s “works” or “deeds” and the “work of his hands,” these expressions could also be translated as, “miracles” or “mighty acts” or “amazing things he does.”
- The expression, “the work of God” could be translated as, “the things that God is doing” or “the miracles God does” or “the amazing things that God does” or “everything God has accomplished.”
- The term “work” can just be the singular of “works” as in, “every good work” or “every good deed.”
- The term “work” can also have the broader meaning of “service” or “ministry.” For example, the expression, “your work in the Lord” could also be translated as, “what you do for the Lord.”
- The expression, “examine your own work” could also be translated as, “make sure what you are doing is God’s will” or “make sure that what you are doing pleases God.”
- The expression “the work of the Holy Spirit” could be translated as, “the empowering of the Holy Spirit” or “the ministry of the Holy Spirit” or “the things that the Holy Spirit does.”

(See: [fruit](#), [fruitful](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

worship

Definition:

“To worship” means to honor, praise and obey someone, especially God.

- This term often means literally, “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- Some people worship false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [praise](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-04]** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.”
- **[14-02]** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.
- **[17-06]** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.
- **[18-12]** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- **[25-07]** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, “**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.””
- **[26-02]** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- **[47-01]** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- **[49-18]** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless

Definition:

The term “worthy” describes someone or something that deserves respect or honor. To “have worth” means to be valuable or important. The term “worthless” means to not have any value.

- Being worthy is related to being valuable or having importance
- To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any special notice.
- To not feel worthy means to feel less important than someone else or to not feel deserving of being treated with honor or kindness.
- The term “unworthy” and the term “worthless” have related, but different meanings. To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any honor or recognition. To be “worthless” means to not have any purpose or value.

Translation Suggestions:

- “Worthy” could be translated as “deserving” or “important” or “valuable.”
- The word “worth” could be translated as, “value” or “importance.”
- The phrase “to have worth” could also be translated as “to be valuable” or “to be important.”
- The phrase, “is worth more than” could be translated as, “is more valuable than.”
- Depending on the context, the term, “unworthy” could also be translated as “unimportant” or “dishonorable” or “undeserving.”
- The term “worthless” could be translated as, “with no value” or “with no purpose” or “worth nothing.”

(See: [honor](#), [to honor](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

wrath, fury

Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. It especially refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.

- In the Bible, "wrath" usually refers to God's anger toward those who sin against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include, "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage. God's wrath is just and holy.

(See: [judge](#), [judgment](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

written

Definition:

The phrase “as it is written” or “what is written” occurs frequently in the New Testament and usually refers to commands or prophecies that were written in the Hebrew scriptures.

- Sometimes “as it is written” refers to what was written in the Law of Moses.
- Other times it is a quote from what one of the prophets wrote in the Old Testament.
- This could be translated: “as it is written in the Law of Moses” or “as the prophets wrote long ago” or “what it says in God’s laws that Moses wrote down long ago”.
- Another option is to keep “It is written” and give a footnote that explains what this means.

(See also: [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Yahweh

Facts:

The term “Yahweh” is God’s personal name that he revealed when he spoke to Moses at the burning bush.

- The name “Yahweh” comes from the word that means, “to be” or “to exist.”
- Possible meanings of “Yahweh” include, “he is” or “I am” or “the one who causes to be.”
- This name reveals that God has always lived and will continue to live forever. It also means that he is always present.
- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term “LORD” or “the LORD” to represent “Yahweh.” This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh’s name and started saying “Lord” every time the term “Yahweh” appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write “LORD” with all capital letters to show respect for God’s personal name and to distinguish it from “Lord” which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULB and UDB texts always translate this term as, “Yahweh,” as it literally occurs in the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term “Yahweh” does not ever occur in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for “Lord” is used, even in quotes from the Old Testament.

Translation Suggestions:

- “Yahweh” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “I am” or “living one” or “the one who is” or “he who is alive.”
- This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how “Yahweh” is spelled.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term “Yahweh” and instead use the traditional rendering, “LORD.” An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title “Lord.” Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish “LORD” as a name (Yahweh) from “Lord” as a title.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [Lord](#), [Moses](#), [reveal](#), [revelation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-14]** God said, “I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, ‘I AM has sent me to you.’ Also tell them, ‘I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.’”

- [13-04] Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am **Yahweh**, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- [13-05] "Do not make idols or worship them, for I, **Yahweh**, am a jealous God."
- [16-01] The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of **Yahweh**, the true God.
- [19-10] Then Elijah prayed, "O **Yahweh**, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant."

yoke

Definition:

A yoke is a piece of wood or metal attached to two or more animals to connect them for the purpose of pulling a plow or a cart. There are also several figurative meanings for this term.

- The term “yoke” is used figuratively to refer to something that joins people for the purpose of working together, such as in serving Jesus.
- Paul used the term “yokefellow” to refer to someone who was serving Christ as he was. This could also be translated as “fellow worker” or “fellow servant” or “coworker.”
- The term “yoke” is also often used figuratively to refer to a heavy load that someone has to carry, such as when being oppressed by slavery or persecution.
- In most contexts, it is best to translate this term literally, using the local term for a yoke that is used for farming.
- Other ways to translate the figurative use of this term could be, “oppressive burden” or “heavy load” or “bond,” depending on the context.

(See also: [bind](#), [bond](#), [bound](#), [burden](#), [oppress](#), [oppression](#), [oppressor](#), [persecute](#), [persecution](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Zadok

Facts:

Zadok was the name of an important high priest in Israel during the reign of King David.

- When Absalom rebelled against King David, Zadok supported David and helped bring the ark of the covenant back into Jerusalem.
- Years later, he also took part in the ceremony to anoint David's son Solomon as king.
- Two different men by the name of Zadok helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem during Nehemiah's time.
- Zadok was also the name of King Jotham's grandfather.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [David](#), [Jotham](#), [Nehemiah](#), [reign](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Zebulun

Facts:

Zebulun was the last son born to Jacob and Leah and is the name of one of the twelve tribes of Israel

- The Israelite tribe of Zebulun was given the land directly west of the Salt Sea.
- Sometimes the name “Zebulun” is also used to refer to the land where this Israelite tribe lived.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Leah](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Zechariah (OT)

Facts:

Zechariah was a prophet who prophesied during the reign of King Darius I of Persia. The Old Testament book of Zechariah contains his prophecies, which urged the returning exiles to rebuild the temple.

- The prophet Zechariah lived during the same time period as Ezra, Nehemiah, Zerubbabel and Haggai. He was also mentioned by Jesus as the last of the prophets who were murdered during Old Testament times.
- Another man named Zechariah was a gatekeeper at the temple during the time of David.
- One of King Jehoshaphat's sons who was named Zechariah was murdered by his brother Jehoram.
- Zechariah was the name of a priest who was stoned by the people of Israel when he rebuked them for their idol worship.
- King Zechariah was the son of Jeroboam and he reigned over Israel for only six months before being murdered.

(Translation Suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Darius](#), [Ezra](#), [Jehoshaphat](#), [Jeroboam](#), [Nehemiah](#), [Zerubbabel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Zedekiah

Facts:

Zedekiah, son of Josiah, was the last king of Judah (597-587 B.C.). There are also several other men named Zedekiah in the Old Testament.

- King Nebuchadnezzar made Zedekiah king of Judah after capturing King Jehoiachin and taking him away to Babylon. Zedekiah later rebelled and as a result Nebuchadnezzar captured him and destroyed all of Jerusalem.
- Zedekiah, son of Kenaanah, was a false prophet during the time of King Ahab of Israel.
- A man named Zedekiah was one of those who signed an agreement to the Lord during the time of Nehemiah.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Ezekiel](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Jehoiachin](#), [Jeremiah](#), [Josiah](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#), [Nehemiah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Zion, Mount Zion

Definition:

Originally, the term “Zion” or “Mount Zion” referred to a stronghold or fortress that King David captured from the Jebusites. Both these terms became other ways of referring to Jerusalem.

- Mount Zion and Mount Moriah were two of the hills that the city of Jerusalem was located on. Later, “Zion” and “Mount Zion” became used as general terms to refer to both of these mountains and to the city of Jerusalem. Sometimes they also referred to the temple that was located in Jerusalem. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- David named Zion, or Jerusalem, the “City of David.” This is different from David’s hometown, Bethlehem, which was also called the City of David.
- The term “Zion” is used in other figurative ways, to refer to Israel or to God’s spiritual kingdom or to the new, heavenly Jerusalem that God will create.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [David](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Bethlehem](#), [Ephrathah](#), [Jebusites](#), [Jebus](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

translationAcademy

Active or Passive

This answers the question: What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Sentence Structure*
- *Verbs*

Some languages have both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences the subject is the one that the action is done to. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- **ACTIVE:** My father built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** The house was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not have passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when not to.

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

ACTIVE: My father built the house in 2010.

PASSIVE: The house was built by my father in 2010.

PASSIVE: The house was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

All languages have active forms. Some languages have passive forms, and some do not. The passive form is not used for the same reasons in all of the languages that have it.

Purposes for the passive:

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples from the Bible

And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants *were killed*, and your servant Uriah the Hittite *was killed* too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULB)

This means that the enemies shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal *was broken down* ... (Judges 6:28 ULB)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down.

No stonework *was seen* there. (1 Kings 6:18 ULB)

This means that no one saw stonework there. The point is that no stonework was done there.

Translation Strategies

If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action.
3. Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action.

- **A loaf of bread *was given* him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
 - *The king's servants gave* Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead use a generic expression like "they," or "people," or "someone."

- **It would be better for him if a millstone *were put* around his neck and he *were thrown* into the sea** (Luke 17:2 ULB)
 - It would be better for him if *they were to put* a millstone around his neck and *throw* him into the sea.
 - It would be better for him if *someone were to put* a heavy stone around his neck and *throw* him into the sea.

3. Use a different verb in an active sentence.

- **A loaf of bread *was given* him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
 - He *received* a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Abstract Nouns*
- *Word Order*

Double Negatives

This answers the question: What are double negatives?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Parts of Speech*
- *Sentences*

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that express the meaning of “not.”

It is *not* that we do *not* have authority (2 Thessalonians 3:9)

Be sure of this—wicked people will *not* go *unpunished* (Proverbs 11:21)

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

Description

Most languages express the negative near the verb or at the beginning or end of the sentence. Some languages also have prefixes or suffixes that express the negative as in “*unhappy*,” “*impossible*,” and “*useless*.” Some languages can also express the negative with pronouns like “none,” “nothing,” and “no one,” with adverbs like “nowhere,” and with prepositions like “without.”

A double negative occurs when a sentence has two words that express the meaning of “not.”

It is *not* that we do *not* have authority (2 Thessalonians 3:9 ULB)

And this better confidence did *not* happen *without* the taking of an oath, (Hebrews 7:20 ULB)

Be sure of this—wicked people will *not* go *unpunished* (Proverbs 11:21 ULB)

Reason this is a translation issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as Spanish, a double negative emphasizes the negative. The following Spanish sentence *No ví a nadie* is literally “I did not see no one.” It has both the word ‘no’ next to the verb and ‘nadie,’ which means “no one.” It emphasizes the negative, and means “I did not see anyone.”
- In some languages a double negative simply means a positive. So “She is not unattractive” means “She is attractive.”
- In some language the double negative weakens the adjective. So “She is not unattractive” means “She is a little bit attractive.”
- In some languages, such as the languages of the Bible, the double negative often strengthens the adjective. So “She is not unattractive” means “She is very attractive.”

To translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

Examples from the Bible

so that they may *not* be *unfruitful*. (Titus 3:14 ULB)

This means “so that they will be fruitful.”

All things were made through him and *without* him there was *not* one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULB)

By using a double negative John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything.

Translation Strategies

If double negatives are natural and are used to express the positive in your language, consider using them. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

1. If the double negative simply expresses the positive, remove the two negatives.
2. If the double negative emphasizes the positive, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the double negative simply expresses the positive, remove the two negatives.
 - **For we do *not* have a high priest who cannot feel sympathy for our weaknesses** (Hebrews 4:15 ULB)
 - “For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses”
 - **so that they may *not* be *unfruitful*** (Titus 3:14 ULB)
 - “so that they may be fruitful”
2. If the double negative emphasizes the positive, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “certainly.”
 - **Be sure of this—wicked people will *not* go *unpunished*** (Proverbs 11:21 ULB)
 - “Be sure of this—wicked people will *certainly* be punished”
 - **All things were made through him and *without* him there was *not* one thing made that has been made.** (John 1:3 ULB)

- "All things were made through him. He made *absolutely* everything that has been made."

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Verbs*

Doublet

This answers the question: What are doublets and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

A doublet is a pair of words used together that mean nearly the same nearly thing. In some languages people do not use doublets, or they may use them only in certain situations. Translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning.

King David was *old* and *advanced in years*. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean “very old.”

Description

We are using the word doublet to refer to two words or very short phrases that mean the same thing and that are used in the same phrase. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Often they are used to emphasize or intensify the idea expressed by the two words.

Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but they may do it for a reason that would not fit in a particular verse.

Examples from the Bible

King David was *old* and *advanced in years*. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

This means that he was “very old.”

he attacked two men *more righteous* and *better* than himself (1 Kings 2:32 ULB)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare *false* and *deceptive* words (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

This means that they had prepared “many false things to say.”

as of a lamb *without blemish* and *without spot*. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any blemish—not even one.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using one. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use your culture’s way of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate only one of the words.

- **You have decided to prepare *false* and *deceptive* words** (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

- “You have decided to prepare *false* things to say.”

2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

- **King David was *old* and *advanced in years***. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

- “King David was *very old*.”

3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

- **a lamb *without blemish* and *without spot***. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB) - English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

- “a lamb *without any blemish at all*”

Ellipsis

This answers the question: What is ellipsis?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Sentences*

Ellipsis is where a speaker or writer leaves one or more words out of a sentence because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and fill in the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there.

Description

Ellipsis is where one or more words are left out of the sentence because the sentence can be understood without them. The information that is omitted has usually already been stated in a preceding sentence or phrase.

the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous
(Psalm 1:5)

This is ellipsis because “sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous.

Reason this is a translation issue: Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know what the missing information is.

Examples from the Bible

when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?”
He said, “Lord, *that I might receive my sight.*” (Luke 18:40-41 ULB)

The man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite by giving Jesus only as much information as necessary. He did not say that he wanted Jesus to heal him, because he knew that Jesus would understand that if he wanted to receive his sight, Jesus would have to heal him.

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf *and Sirion like a young ox.* (Psalm 29:6 ULB)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. He did not say that Yahweh makes Sirion skip like a young ox because he knew that his readers could fill in the information themselves.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

- **the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor *sinner*s in the assembly of the righteous** (Psalm 1:5)
 - "the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and *sinner*s will not stand in the assembly of the righteous"
- **when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, *that I might receive my sight.*"** (Luke 18:40-41)
 - "when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, 'What do you want me to do for you?' He said, 'Lord, I want you to heal me that I might receive my sight.'"
- **He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6)
 - "He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and he makes Sirion skip like a young ox."

Euphemism

This answers the question: What is a Euphemism?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private. Its purpose is to avoid offending the people who hear or read it.

Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable. Its purpose is to avoid offending the people who hear or read it.

they found Saul and his sons fallen on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULB)

This means that Saul and his sons were dead. It is euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

Reason this is a translation issue: Readers may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

Examples from the Bible

where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so he does not say specifically what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

whether we are awake or asleep (1 Thessalonians 5:10 ULB)

Paul refers to being dead as being “asleep” so that instead of thinking that they will never see their loved ones again in this life, his readers will remember that they will see them again when Jesus establishes his kingdom.

Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.
2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.

- **where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself** (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB) - Some languages might use euphemisms like these:

- “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet”
- “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to dig a hole”
- “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to have some time alone”

2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

- **whether we are awake or asleep** (1 Thessalonians 5:10 ULB)

- “whether we are alive or dead”

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

This answers the question: What are assumed knowledge, implicit information, and explicit information?

Assumed knowledge is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. There are two types information.

- **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
- **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, although what he says may remind them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly is **implicit information**.

Examples from the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes *have holes*, and the birds of the sky *have nests*, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULB)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**. Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULB)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the

people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that because the people he was speaking to did not repent, they would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For *they do not wash their hands when they eat*. (Matthew 15:2 ULB)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. They were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit*

Hyperbole

This answers the question: What is hyperbole?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Hyperbole is a figure of speech in which the speaker shows that something is very important by describing it as larger or greater than it really is. He may greatly exaggerate something in order to show his strong feeling or opinion about it, or he may generalize the situation by using words like “every” or “all” to mean “many.”

Description

Hyperbole is a figure of speech in which the speaker shows that something is very important by describing it as larger or greater than it really is. There are two kinds of hyperbole:

1. Exaggeration: This is when a speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it.

Whoever does not *carry his own cross* and come after me cannot be my disciple. (Luke 14:27 ULB) - This is an exaggeration. It means that whoever wants to be Jesus’ disciple must be determined to follow him faithfully, even if his enemies were to kill that person.

2. Generalization: This is when a speaker uses words like “every” or “all” to mean something like “very many,” but not “every one.” (Some people may not call generalization like this “hyperbole.”)

Moses was educated in *all the learning of the Egyptians* (Acts 7:22 ULB) - This is a generalization. It means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught.

Reason this is a translation issue

If readers do not understand that a statement is a hyperbole, they may either think that something happened that did not happen, or they may think that the speaker or writer was saying something that is not true.

Examples from the Bible

Examples of Exaggeration

If your hand causes you to stumble, *cut it off*. It is better for you to enter into life maimed... (Mark 9:43 ULB)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should do whatever extreme things we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

If anyone comes to me and does not *hate* his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple. (Luke 14:26 ULB)

Because of many other things that Jesus said, we know that his use of the word “hate” here is hyperbole. He meant that we must not love even our own family members more than we love him. We must love him more than we love ourselves or anyone else.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops *as numerous as the sand on the seashore*. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration. It means that there were many, many soldiers in the Philistine army.

Examples of Generalization

They found him, and they said to him, “*Everyone* is looking for you.” (Mark 1:37 ULB)

The disciples told Jesus that everyone was looking looking for him. They probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for him, but that many people were looking for him, or that all of Jesus closest friends there were looking for him.

But as his anointing teaches you about *all things* and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULB)

This is a generalization. God’s Spirit teaches us about all things that we need to know.

Caution

Do not assume that something is hyperbole just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

... they saw Jesus *walking on the sea* and coming near the boat ... (John 6:19 ULB)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

... for *all* have sinned and come short of the glory of God. (Romans 3:23 ULB)

The word “all” here is not hyperbole. All humans have sinned. The only human who has never sinned is Jesus Christ, the Son of God.

Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here is another option.

1. Express the meaning without the hyperbole. For example “all the people” could be translated as “large crowds of people.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Express the meaning without the hyperbole.

- **If anyone comes to me and does not *hate* his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple.** (Luke 14:26 ULB)
 - “If anyone comes to me and does not *love me much more than* he loves his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple.”
- **The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops *as numerous as the sand on the seashore*.** (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)
 - “The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and *a great number of troops*.”

Hypothetical Situations

This answers the question: What is a hypothetical situation?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Writing Styles*

“If the sun stopped shining...” “What if the sun stopped shining...” “Suppose the sun stopped shining...” “If only the sun had not stopped shining.” We use such expressions to set up hypothetical situations, imagining what might have happened or what could happen in the future but probably will not. We also use them to express regret or wishes. These occur often in the Bible. We need to translate them in a way that people will know that the event did not actually happen, and that they’ll understand why the event was imagined.

Description

Hypothetical situations are situations that are not real. They can be in the past, present, or future. Hypothetical situations in the past and present have not happened, and ones in the future are not expected to happen.

People sometimes tell about conditions and what would happen if those conditions were met, but they know that these things have not happened or probably will not happen. (The conditions are the phrase that start with “if.”)

- If he had known about the party, he would have come to it. (But he did not come.)
- If he knew about the party, he would be here. (But he is not here.)
- If he knew about the party, he would come to it. (But he probably will not come.)

People sometimes express wishes about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- I wish he had come.
- I wish he were here.
- I wish he would come.

People sometimes express regrets about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- If only he had come.
- If only he were here.
- If only he would come.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Translators need recognize the different kinds of hypothetical situations in the Bible.
- Translators need to know their own language’s ways of talking about different kinds of hypothetical situations.

Examples from the Bible

1. Hypothetical situation in the past

“Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes.” (Matthew 11:21 ULB)

Here in Matthew 11:21 Jesus said that if the people living in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon had been able to see the miracles that he performed, they would have repented long ago. He said this to rebuke the people of Chorazin and Bethsaida who had seen his miracles yet did not repent. The people of Tyre and Sidon did not actually see his miracles and repent.

2. Hypothetical situations in the present

Also, no man puts new wine into old wineskins. If he did that, the new wine would burst the skins, and the wine would be spilled, and the wineskins would be destroyed. (Luke 5:37 ULB)

Jesus told about what would happen if a person were to put new wine into old wineskins. But no one would do that. He used this imaginary situation as an example to show that people do not mix new things with old things. He did this so that people could understand why his disciples were not fasting as people traditionally did.

Jesus said to them, “What man would there be among you, who, *if* he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a deep hole on the Sabbath, would not grasp hold of it and lift it out? (Matthew 12:11 ULB)

Jesus asked the religious leaders what they would do on the Sabbath if one of their sheep fell into a hole. He was not saying that their sheep would fall into a hole. He used this imaginary situation to show them that they were wrong to judge him for healing people on the Sabbath.

3. Hypothetical situation in the future

Unless those days are shortened, no flesh would be saved; but for the sake of the elect, those days will be shortened. (Matthew 24:22 ULB)

Jesus was talking about a future time when very bad things would happen. He told what would happen if those days of trouble were to last a long time. He did this to show about bad those days will be - so bad that if they lasted a long time, no one would be saved. But then he clarified that God will shorten those days of trouble, so that the elect (those he has chosen) will be saved.

4. Expressing emotion about a hypothetical situation

Regrets and wishes are very similar.

The Israelites said to them, “*If only we had died by Yahweh’s hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full.* For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger.” (Exodus 16:3 ULB)

Here the Israelites were afraid they would have to suffer and die of hunger in the wilderness, and so they wished that they had stayed in Egypt and died there with full stomachs. They were complaining.

I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. *I wish that you were either cold or hot!* (Revelation 3:15 ULB)

Jesus' wished that the people were either hot or cold. He was rebuking them.

Translation Strategies

Know how people speaking your language show

- that something could have happened, but did not.
- that something could be true now, but is not.
- that something could happen in the future, but will not unless something changes.
- that they wish for something, but it does not happen.
- that they regret that something did not happen.

Use your language's ways of showing these kinds of things.

Also watch the video for computer (see <http://youtu.be/GfFX1wWjJhA>) or tablet/phone (see <http://youtu.be/jlbY2ikNtHU>).

Idiom

This answers the question: What are idioms and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

An idiom is a certain kind of figure of speech, the kind that usually cannot be correctly understood without being told its true meaning. Every language has them. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg (This means, “You are telling me a lie”)
- Do not push the envelope (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme”)
- This house is under water (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value”)
- We are painting the town red (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely”)

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture that uses it. Its meaning may be different from what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

he resolutely *set his face* to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULB)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you should *enter under my roof*. (Luke 7:6 ULB)

The words “enter under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Let these words go deeply into your ears (Luke 9:44 ULB)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

Purpose: An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that originally wrote the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.

Examples from the Bible

“Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, ”Look, we are your flesh and bone.”
(1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

The kings of the earth take their stand together (Psalm 2:2 ULB)

This means, “The kings on earth plan together.”

the one who lifts up my head” (Psalm 3:3 ULB)

This means, “the one who helps me.”

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

- **Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your flesh and bone.”** (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)
 - “...Look, we all belong to the same nation.”
- **he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem.** (Luke 9:51 ULB)
 - “He started to travel to Jerusalem, determined to reach it.”
- **I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof.** (Luke 7:6 ULB)
 - “I am not worthy that you should enter my house.”

2. Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

- **Let these words go deeply into your ears** (Luke 9:44 ULB)
 - “Be all ears when I say these words to you.”
- **”My eyes grow dim from grief** (Psalm 6:7ULB)
 - “I am crying my eyes out”

Irony

This answers the question: What is irony and how can I translate it?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Description

Irony is a figure of speech in which a person pretends to say what he really believes, when in fact he is saying what someone else believes, and he does it in a way that shows that other belief is wrong. People do this to emphasize how different something is from what it should be, or how someone else's belief is foolish. It is often humorous.

Jesus answered them, "People who are in good health do not need a physician, only people who are sick need one. I did not come to call righteous people to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance." (Luke 5:31-32 ULB)

When Jesus spoke of "righteous people," he was not referring to people who were truly righteous. He was speaking to people who wrongly believed that they were righteous and who were criticizing him for welcoming sinners. Jesus implied that they were wrong to think that they were better than others and did not need to repent.

Reason this is a translation issue

- If someone does not realize that a speaker is using irony, he will think that the speaker actually believes what he is saying. He will not realize that the speaker is ridiculing the idea.

Examples from the Bible

After blindfolding him, they asked him, saying, "*Prophecy! Who is the one who hit you?*" (Luke 22:64ULB)

The fact that the soldiers were beating Jesus shows us that they did not believe that he was a prophet. They knew that other people thought that Jesus was a prophet, and they may have also thought that Jesus himself claimed to be a prophet. When they told him to prophesy, they were using irony. They were mocking him and implying that if he really was a prophet, then he should be able to tell who hit him without seeing them.

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. "Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled." (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULB)

People worshiped idols as if their idols had any knowledge or power, and Yahweh was angry at them for doing that. So he used irony and challenged their idols to tell what would happen in the future. He knew that the idols could not even speak, but he did this to mock the idols and rebuke the people for worshiping them.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?
 Can you find the way back to their houses for them?
Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;
"the number of your days is so large!" (Job 38:20, 21 ULB)

Job thought that he was wise. Yahweh used irony to show Job that he was not so wise. The two underlined phrase above emphasize that Job could not possibly answer God's questions about the creation of light because Job was not born until many many years later.

Translation Strategies

If the irony would be understood correctly in your language, translate it as it is stated. If not, here is another strategy.

1. Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.
2. Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony. The actual meaning of the irony is *not* found in the literal words of the speaker, but instead the true meaning is found in the opposite of the literal meaning of the speaker's words.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

- **After blindfolding him, they asked him, saying, "Prophesy! Who is the one who hit you?"** (Luke 22:64 ULB)
 - "After blindfolding him, they asked him, saying, "You call yourself a prophet. Then prophesy! Who hit you?"
 - "After blindfolding him, they said to him, "Prophesy! If you were really a prophet, you would be able to tell us who hit you."
- **I did not come to call *righteous people* to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.** (Luke 5:32 ULB)
 - "I did not come to call *people who think that they are righteous* to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance."

2. Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony.

- **After blindfolding him, they asked him, saying, "Prophesy! Who is the one who hit you?"** (Luke 22:64 ULB)

- “After blindfolding him, they said to him, *”You are not a prophet because you cannot even tell us who struck you!”* ”
- **“Present your case,” says Yahweh; “present your best arguments for your idols,” says the King of Jacob. “Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.”** (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULB)
 - ” ‘Present your case,’ says Yahweh; ‘present your best arguments for your idols,’ says the King of Jacob. Your idols *cannot bring us their own arguments or even come forward to declare to us what will happen*. We cannot hear them because *they cannot speak* to tell us their earlier predictive declarations, so we cannot reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.”

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?

Can you find the way back to their houses for them?

Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;

the number of your days is so large!” (Job 38:20, 21 ULB)

- ”Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? *You act like you know how light and darkness were created, as if you were there; as if you are as old as creation!*”

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Litotes*

Litotes

This answers the question: What is litotes?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Litotes is a strong statement made by negative phrases to strengthen a positive meaning. It is used to show that the opposite idea is not true.

Description

Litotes is a strong statement made by negative phrases to strengthen a positive meaning. It is used to show that the opposite idea is not true.

Reason this is a translation issue

People who speak some languages do not use litotes and would fail to understand that the statement is strengthened. They might think that it is weakened or even canceled.

Examples from the Bible

For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was *not useless*, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULB)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was very worthwhile.

All things were made through him. *Without him was not one thing* made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULB)

By using litotes John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything.

Now when it became day, there was *no small excitement* among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULB)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a lot of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very concerned.)

And you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,
are *not the least* among the leaders of Judah,
for from you will come a ruler
who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULB)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a very important city.

Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

1. If the meaning would not be clear, say in a strong way what *is* true.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the meaning would not be clear, say in a strong way what *is* true.

- **For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was *not useless*,** (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULB)
 - "For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you *did much good*."
- **Now when it became day, there was *no small excitement* among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter.** (Acts 12:18 ULB)
 - "Now when it became day, there was *great excitement* among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter."
 - "Now when it became day, the soldiers were *very concerned* because of what had happened to Peter."

Merism

This answers the question: What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it.

Description

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it.

“I am the Alpha and the Omega,” says the Lord God, “the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.” (Revelation 1:8, ULB)

I am the Alpha and the Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End. (Revelation 22:13, ULB)

“Alpha and Omega” is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

I praise you, Father, Lord of *heaven and earth*, (Matthew 11:25 ULB)

“Heaven and earth” is a merism that includes everything that exists.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some readers may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

Examples from the Bible

From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULB)

This underlined phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means “everywhere.”

He will bless those who honor him, both *young and old*. (Psalm 115:13)

The underlined phrase is merism because it speaks of old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone.”

Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

- **I praise you, Father, Lord of *heaven and earth*** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
 - "I praise you, Father, Lord of *everything*"
- ***From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh's name should be praised.*** (Psalm 113:3 ULB)
 - "*In all places*, people should praise Yahweh."

2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

- **I praise you, Father, Lord of *heaven and earth*** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
 - "I praise you, Father, Lord of *everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth*"
- **He will bless those who honor him, both *young and old*.** (Psalm 115:13 ULB)
 - "He will bless *all those* who honor him, regardless of whether they are *young or old*."

Metaphor

This answers the question: What is a metaphor and how can I translate a sentence that has one?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- [Figures of Speech](#)
- [Simile](#)

Description

A metaphor is the use of words to speak of one thing as if it were a different thing. Sometimes a speaker does this in ways that are very common in the language. At other times, a speaker does this in ways that are less common in the language and that might even be unique.

1. First we will discuss very common metaphors.

The metaphors that are very common in a language are usually not very vivid. They may even be “dead.” Examples in English are “table leg,” “family tree,” and “the price of food is going up.” Examples in biblical languages are “hand” to mean “power,” “face” to mean “presence,” and “clothing” to mean emotions or moral qualities.

Metaphors like these are in constant use in the world’s languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, languages speak of abstract qualities, such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities, as if they were objects that can be seen or held, or as if they were body parts, or as if they were events that you can watch happen.

When these metaphors are used in their normal ways, the speaker and audience do not normally even regard them as figurative language. This is why, for example, it would be wrong to translate the English expression, “The price of petrol is going up” into another language in a way that would draw undeserved attention to it, because English speakers do not view it as a vivid expression, that is, as an unusual expression that carries meaning in an unusual manner.

For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor, please see [Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns](#) and the pages it will direct you to.

2. Next we will discuss the less common metaphors, metaphors that are sometimes even unique in a language.

The speaker usually produces metaphors of this kind in order to emphasize the importance of what he is talking about. For example,

For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.
(Malachi 4:2 ULB)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. And he speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people.

We call this kind of metaphor “live.” It is unique in the biblical languages, which means that it is very memorable.

Parts of a Metaphor

When talking about metaphors, it can be helpful to talk about their parts. The thing someone speaks of is called the **topic**. The thing he calls it is the **image**. The way that they are similar is the **point of comparison**.

In the metaphor below, the speaker describes the woman he loves as a rose. The woman (his “love”) is the topic and the red rose is the image. Both are beautiful and delicate.

- My love is a red, red rose.

1. Sometimes the **topic** and the **image** are both stated clearly.

Jesus said to them. *“I am the bread of life. He who comes to me will not hunger, and he who believes on me will never thirst.”* (John 6:35 ULB)

Jesus called himself the bread of life. The topic is “I” and the image is “bread.” Bread is a food that people ate all the time. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have spiritual life.

2. Sometimes only the **image** is stated clearly.

Produce *fruits* that are worthy of repentance (Luke 3:8 ULB)

The image here is “fruits”. The topic is not stated, but it is actions or behavior. Trees can produce good fruit or bad fruit, and people can produce good behavior or bad behavior. Fruits that are worthy of repentance are good behavior that is appropriate for people who have repented.

Purposes of this second kind of metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already know (the **image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something has a particular quality or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about one thing as they would feel toward another.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not realize that a word is being used as an image in a metaphor.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know how the topic and the image are alike.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.

- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than it was to the original audience.

Examples from the Bible

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

The example above has two metaphors. The topics are “we” and “you” and the images are “clay and ”potter.” Just as a potter takes clay and forms a jar or dish out of it, God makes us into what he wants us to be.

Jesus said to them, ”Take heed and beware of *the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.*” The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we took no bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULB)

Jesus used a metaphor, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the image in his metaphor about the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is common and seems to be a normal way to say something in the biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.
2. If the target audience would think that the phrase should be understood literally, change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”
3. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
4. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
5. Or, if the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, simply state the truth that the metaphor was used to communicate.
6. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)
7. If the target audience would not know how the topic is like the image, state it clearly.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the metaphor is common and seems to be a normal way to say something in the biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

- **For after David had in his own generation served the desires of God, *he fell asleep*, was laid with his fathers, and saw decay,** (Acts 13:36 ULB)

- "For after David had in his own generation served the desires of God, *he died*, was laid with his fathers, and saw decay."

2. If the target audience would think that the phrase should be understood literally, change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding "like" or "as."

- **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are *like* clay. You are *like* a potter; and we all are the work of your hand."

3. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

- **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to *kick a goad*.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)

- "Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick against a pointed stick."

4. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

- **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *wood*. You are our *carver*; and we all are the work of your hand."

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *string*. You are the *weaver*; and we all are the work of your hand."

5. Or, if the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, simply state the truth that the metaphor was used to communicate.

- **I will make you become *fishers of men*.** (Mark 1:17 ULB)

- "I will make you become *people who gather men*."

- "Now you gather fish. I will make you *gather people*."

6. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

- **Yahweh lives; may *my rock* be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)

- "Yahweh lives; *He is my rock*. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

7. If the target audience would not know how the topic is like the image, state it clearly.

- **Yahweh lives; may *my rock* be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
 - "Yahweh lives; may he be praised because like a huge rock, *he shields me from my enemies*. May the God of my salvation be exalted."
- **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you *to kick a goad*.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)
 - "Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You *fight against me and hurt yourself* like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick."

To learn more about common metaphors read:

- [Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns](#)

Metonymy

This answers the question: What is a metonymy?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Many times the Bible uses metonymy. If you do not recognize it as a metonymy you will not understand the passage or worse yet, get the wrong understanding of the passage.

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which a thing or idea is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something it is associated with.

and *the blood* of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULB)

The blood represents Christ's death.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "*This cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULB)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a concrete object associated with it.

Reason this is a translation issue

- If a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples from the Bible

The Lord God will give him *the throne* of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULB)

A throne represents the authority of a king. Throne is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship" or, "reign." This means that God would make him become the king who was to follow King David.

Immediately his mouth was opened (Luke 1:64 ULB)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

who warned you to flee from *the wrath* that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULB)

The word “wrath” or “anger” is a metonym for “punishment.” God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here is an option.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

- **He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “*This cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.** (Luke 22:20 ULB)
 - “He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “*The wine in this cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.”

2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

- **The Lord God will give him *the throne* of his father, David.** (Luke 1:32 ULB)
 - “The Lord God will give him *the kingly authority* of his father, David.”
 - “The Lord God will *make him king* like his ancestor, King David.”
- **who warned you to flee from *the wrath* to come?** (Luke 3:7 ULB)
 - “who warned you to flee from God’s coming *punishment*?”

To learn about some common metonymies, we suggest you read:

- [Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies](#)

Parables

This answers the question: What is a parable?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

A parable is a short story that makes truth easy to understand and hard to forget.

Description

A parable is a short story that is told to teach a truth. Though the events in a parable could happen, they did not actually happen. They are told only to teach a truth. Parables rarely contain the names of specific people. (This may help you identify what is a parable and what is an account of a real event.) Parables often have figures of speech such as simile and metaphor.

Then he also told them a parable. “Can a blind person guide another blind person? If he did, they would both fall into a pit, would they not?” (Luke 6:39 ULB)

This parable teaches that if a person does not have spiritual understanding, he cannot help someone else to understand spiritual things.

Examples from the Bible

Neither do people light a lamp and put it under a basket, but rather, on the lampstand, and it shines for everyone in the house. Let your light shine before people in such a way that they see your good deeds and praise your Father who is in heaven. (Matthew 5:15-16 ULB)

This parable teaches us not to hide the way we live for God from other people.

Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, “The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches.” (Matthew 13:31-32 ULB)

This parable teaches that the kingdom of God may seem small at first, but it will grow and spread throughout the world.

Translation Strategies

1. If a parable is hard to understand because it has unknown things in it, you can replace the unknown things with things that people in your culture know. However, be careful to keep the teaching the same. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

2. If the teaching of the parable is unclear, consider telling a little about what it teaches in the introduction, such as “Jesus told this story about being generous.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If a parable is hard to understand because it has unknown things in it, you can replace the unknown things with things that people in your culture know. However, be careful to keep the teaching the same.

- **Jesus said to them, “Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on a lampstand”.** (Mark 4:21 ULB) - If people do not know what a lampstand is, you could substitute something else that people put a light on so it can give light to the house.
 - Jesus said to them, “Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on a *high shelf*.”
- **Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, “The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches.”** (Matthew 13:31-32) - To sow seeds means to toss them so that they scatter on the ground. If people are not familiar with sowing, you can substitute planting.
 - “Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, “The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and *planted* in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches.” ”

2. If the teaching of the parable is unclear, consider telling a little about what it teaches in the introduction, such as “Jesus told this story about being generous.”

- **Jesus said to them, “Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on a lampstand”.** (Mark 4:21 ULB)
 - *”Jesus told them a parable about why they should witness openly. “Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on a lampstand.” ”* (Mark 4:21 ULB)
- **He said, “To what can we compare the kingdom of God and what parable can we use to explain it? It is like a mustard seed, which when it is sown it is the smallest of all the seeds sown that lay upon the ground. Yet when it is sown, it grows up and becomes greater than all the garden plants. It puts out great branches, so even the birds of heaven can make their nests under its shade.”** (Mark 4:30-32 ULB)

- *”He told them a story about how the Kingdom of God grows. “To what can we compare the kingdom of God and what parable can we use to explain it? It is like a mustard seed, which when it is sown it is the smallest of all the seeds sown that lay upon the ground. Yet when it is sown, it grows up and becomes greater than all the garden plants. It puts out great branches, so even the birds of heaven can make their nests under its shade.”*

Parallelism

This answers the question: What is parallelism?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Description

In **parallelism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use the kind of parallelism in which the two phrases mean the same thing. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning.

Examples from the Bible

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULB)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.

The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere,
keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULB)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

3. The second completes what is said in the first.

I lift up my voice to Yahweh,
and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULB)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

4. The second says something that contrasts with the first.

For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous,
but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULB)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

A gentle answer turns away wrath,
but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULB)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

Translation Strategies

1. For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases.
2. When the two clauses or phrases mean the same thing, some languages would not translate them both. (See [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#))

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(See [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#))

Next we recommend you learn about:

- [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#)

Personification

This answers the question: What is personification?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often speak this way because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see, such as wisdom and sin.

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

Some languages do not use personification, and some languages use it only in certain situations.

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see, such as wisdom, sin, and wind. For example:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about relationships between people and other people than about relationships between people and non-human things, such as wealth.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Reason this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples from the Bible

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. They are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would not be understood clearly, here are some strategies for dealing with it.

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.
2. Use the words “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.

- **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - God speaks of sin as a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.
 - “sin is at your door, waiting to attack you”

2. Use the words “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.

- **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - This can be translated with the word “as.”
 - ”sin is about to destroy you, just *as* a wild animal could harm a person.”

3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

- **even the winds and the sea obey him** (Matthew 8:27 ULB) - The men speak of the wind and the sea as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.
 - “He even controls the winds and the sea.”

Note: We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had human characteristics).

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Apostrophe*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns*

Reflexive Pronouns

This answers the question: What are reflexive pronouns?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Pronouns*
- *Sentences*

All languages have ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. This page will help you understand how English shows this and will help you to see how your language handles this.

Description

Reflexive pronouns are pronouns that refer to someone or something that has already been mentioned in a sentence. In English the reflexive pronouns are: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, and themselves.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Languages have different ways of referring to someone or something more than once in a sentence.
- The reflexive pronouns in English have other functions.

Uses of Reflexive Pronouns

- to show that the same person or things fills two different roles in a sentence
- to emphasize a person or thing in the sentence
- to show that someone did something alone
- to show that someone or something was alone

Examples from the Bible

1. Reflexive pronouns used to that show that the same person or things fills two different roles in a sentence

If *I* should testify about *myself* alone, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31 ULB)

Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and *many* went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to purify *themselves*. (John 11:55 ULB)

2. Reflexive pronouns used to emphasize a person or thing in the sentence

Jesus himself was not baptizing, but his disciples were (John 4:2 ULB)

So they left the crowd, taking *Jesus* with them, since he was already in the boat. Other boats were also with him. And a violent windstorm arose and the waves were breaking into the boat so that the boat was already full. But *Jesus himself* was in the stern, asleep on a cushion. (Mark 4:36-38 ULB)

3. Reflexive pronouns used to show that someone did something alone

When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain *by himself*. (John 6:15 ULB)

4. Reflexive pronouns used to show that someone or something was alone

He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. *It* was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up in its place *by itself*. (John 20:6-7 ULB)

Translation Strategies

If a reflexive pronoun would have the same function in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.
2. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.
3. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it.
4. In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone.”
5. In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.

- **If I should testify about *myself* alone, my testimony would not be true.** (John 5:31)
 - “If I should *self-testify* alone, my testimony would not be true.”
- **Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to *purify themselves*.** (John 11:55)
 - “Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to *self-purify*.”

2. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.

- **He himself took our sickness and bore our diseases.** (Matthew 8:17 ULB)

- "It was *he who* took our sickness and bore our diseases."

- **Jesus himself was not baptizing, but his disciples were.** (John 4:2)

- "It was *not Jesus who* was baptizing, but his disciples were."

3. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it. English adds the reflexive pronoun.

- **Now Jesus said this to test Philip, for he himself knew what he was going to do.** (John 6:6)

4. In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like "alone."

- **When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain by himself.** (John 6:15)

- "When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again *alone* up the mountain."

5. In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

- **He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up in its place by itself.** (John 20:6-7 ULB)

- "He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up and lying *in a different place*."

Rhetorical Question

This answers the question: What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Sentences*

A rhetorical question is a question to which the speaker does not expect an answer because he is not looking for information. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express sarcasm or to rebuke or scold the hearer. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other reasons as well.

Description

A rhetorical question is a question to which the speaker does not expect an answer because he is not looking for information. Speakers often use rhetorical questions to rebuke or scold people.

Those who stood by said, *Is this how you insult God's high priest?*" (Acts 23:4 ULB) The people did not ask this question in order to get information. Rather they used it to scold Paul because they did not think he should have spoken as he did to the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. Some of the purposes of these rhetorical questions are to remind people of something that they already know, to express strong emotion, to say something in a strong way, or to introduce something they want to talk about.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may think that a question is a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions only for scolding.
- Some readers might think that the purpose of a question is something other than what it really is.

Examples from the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel he should feel free to take the man's property.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a woman would never forget her jewelry and veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULB)

Job used the question above to show how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULB)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat.

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULB)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed which a man took and threw into his garden... (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was going to compare the kingdom of God to something.

Translation Strategies

Be sure you know that you are dealing with a rhetorical question and not an information question. Then be sure you know what the purpose of the rhetorical question is. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the answer after the question.

- **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!** (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)
 - *Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Of course not! Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!*
- **Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?** (Matthew 7:9 ULB)
 - *”Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? None of you would do that!”*

2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

- **What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed...** (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)
 - *“This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed...”*
- **Is this how you insult God’s high priest?** (Acts 23:4 ULB)
 - *You should not insult God’s high priest!”*
- **Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?** (Job 3:11 ULB)
 - *I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!”*
- **And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?** (Luke 1:43 ULB)
 - *“How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!”*

3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

- **Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel?** (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)
 - *”You still rule the kingdom of Israel, don’t you?”*

Simile

This answers the question: What is a simile?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be “like” the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were like sheep without a shepherd. (Matthew 9:36 ULB)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves*, so be as wise *as serpents* and harmless *as doves*. (Matthew 10:16 ULB)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus’ enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper *than any two-edged sword*. (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)

God’s word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person’s flesh. God’s word is very effective in showing what is in a person’s heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people’s attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

Examples from the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, *as a good soldier of Christ Jesus*. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULB)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

for as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky, so will the Son of Man be in his day. (Luke 17:24 ULB)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lightning flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1 If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.
 - "See, I send you out among wicked people and you will be in danger from them as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves."
- **For the word of God is living and active and sharper *than any two-edged sword***. (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)
 - "For the word of God is living and active and *more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword*"

2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.
 - "See, I send you out *as chickens in the midst of wild dogs*,"
- **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
 - How often I wanted to gather your children together, as a mother closely watches over her infants, but you refused!
- **If you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard**, (Matthew 17:20 ULB)
 - "If you have faith even as small as a tiny seed"

3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB)
 - "See, I send you out and people will want to harm you."
- **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
 - "How often I wanted to protect you, but you refused!"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Metaphor*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns*

Synecdoche

This answers the question: What does the word synecdoche mean?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

Description

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

My soul exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULB)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul”, the part of herself that has emotions, to refer to her whole self.

the Pharisees said to him, “Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful ...?”
(Mark 2:24 ULB)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may understand the words literally.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example from the Bible

I looked on all the deeds that *my hands* had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the legs and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

- **My soul exalts the Lord.** (Luke 1:46 ULB)
 - "I exalt the Lord."
- **the Pharisees said to him** (Mark 2:24 ULB)
 - "a representative of the Pharisees said to him"
- **I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished** (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)
 - "I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Metonymy*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies*

Biblical Distance

This answers the question: How can I translate the lengths and distances that are in the Bible?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Decimal Numbers*
- *Fractions*

Description

The following terms are the most common measures for distance or length that were originally used in the Bible. Most of these are based on the sizes of the hand and forearm.

- The **handbreadth** was the width of the palm of a man's hand.
- The **span** or handspan was the width of a man's hand with the fingers spread out.
- The **cubit** was the length of a man's forearm, from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger.
- The **"long" cubit** is used only in Ezekiel 40-48. It is the length of a normal cubit plus a span.
- The **stadium** (plural, **stadia**) referred to a certain footrace that was about 185 meters in length. Some older English versions translated this word as "furlong", which referred to the average length of a plowed field.

Original Measure	Centimeters	Meters
handbreadth	8 centimeters	.08 meters
span	23 centimeters	.23 meters
cubit	46 centimeters	.46 meters
"long" cubit	54 centimeters	.54 meters
stadia	-	185 meters

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.

Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 25:10 below.

- **They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half.** (Exodus 25:10 ULB)

1. Use the measurements given in the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

- "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be *two and a half kubits*; its width will be *one kubit and a half*; and its height will be *one kubit and a half*."

2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

- "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be *one meter*; its width will be *0.7 meter*; and its height will be *0.7 meter*."

3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement. For example, if you measure things using the standard foot length, you could translate it as below.

- "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be *3 3/4 feet*; its width will be *2 1/4 feet*; and its height will be *2 1/4 feet*."

4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

- "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be *two and a half cubits (one meter)*; its width will be *one cubit and a half (0.7 meter)*; and its height will be *one cubit and a half (0.7 meter)*."

5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULB measurements in notes.

- "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be *one meter*¹; its width will be *0.7 meter*²; and its height will be *0.7 meter*." The footnotes would look like:
 - ^[1] one meter two and a half cubits
 - ^[2] one cubit and a half

Biblical Money

This answers the question: How can I translate the values of money in the Bible?

Description:

In early Old Testament times, people weighed their metals such as silver and gold in order to buy things. Later people started to make coins. The daric is one such coin. In New Testament times, people used silver and copper coins.

The two tables below show some of the most well-known units of money found in the Old Testament (OT) and New Testament (NT). The table for Old Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it weighed. The table for New Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it was worth in terms of a day's wage.

Unit in OT	Metal	Weight
daric	gold coin	8.4 grams
shekel	various metals	11 grams
talent	various metals	33 kilograms

Unit in NT	Metal	Day's Wage
denarius/denarii	silver coin	1 day
drachma	silver coin	1 day
mite	copper coin	1/64 day
shekel	silver coin	4 days
talent	silver	6,000 days

Translation Principle

Do not use modern money values since these change from year to year. Using them will cause the Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate.

Translation Strategies

The value of most money in the Old Testament was based on its weight. So when translating these weights in the Old Testament, see [Biblical Weight](#). The strategies below are for translating the value of money in the New Testament

1. Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))
2. Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many coins were used.

3. Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
4. Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a note.
5. Use the Bible term and explain it in a note.

Translation Strategies

The translations strategies are all applied to Luke 7:41 below.

- **The one owed five hundred denarii, and the other owed fifty denarii.** (Luke 7:41 ULB)

1. Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

- "The one owed *five hundred denali*, and the other owed *fifty denali*." (Luke 7:41 ULB)

2. Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many pieces or coins were used.

- "The one owed *five hundred silver coins*, and the other owed *fifty silver coins*." (Luke 7:41 ULB)

3. Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.

- "The one owed *five hundred days' wages*, and the other owed *fifty days' wages*."

4. Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

- "The one owed *five hundred denarii*¹, and the other owed *fifty denarii*."² (Luke 7:41 ULB) The footnotes would look like:

- ^[1] five hundred days's wages
- ^[2] fifty day's wages

5. Use the Bible term and explain it in a footnote.

- "The one owed *five hundred denarii*¹, and the other owed *fifty denarii*." (Luke 7:41 ULB)
 - ^[1] A denarius was the amount of silver that people could earn in one day of work.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- [Copy or Borrow Words](#)
- [Translate Unknowns](#)

Biblical Volume

This answers the question: How can I translate the measures of volume that are in the Bible?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Decimal Numbers*

Description

The following terms are the most common units of volume used in the Bible to state how much a certain container could hold. The containers and measurements are given for both liquids (such as wine) and dry solids (such as grain).

Type	Original Measure	Liters
Dry	omer	2 liters
Dry	ephah	22 liters
Dry	homer	220 liters
Dry	kor	220 liters
Dry	seah	7.7 liters
Dry	letheke	114.8 liters
Liquid	metrete	40 liters
Liquid	bath	22 liters
Liquid	hin	3.7 liters
Liquid	kab	1.23 liters
Liquid	log	0.31 liters

Translation Principles

- The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
- Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
- Whatever measures you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kinds of measures in the text or a footnote.

Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Isaiah 5:10 below.

- **For four hectares of vineyard will yield only one bath, and one homer of seed will yield only an ephah.** (Isaiah 5:10 ULB)

1. Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

- "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only one *bat*, and one *homer* of seed will yield only an *efa*."

2. Use the measurements given in the UDB. Usually they are metric measurements. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

- "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only *twenty-two liters*, and *ten baskets* of seed will yield only *one basket*."
 - "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only *twenty-two liters* and *220 liters* of seed will yield only *twenty-two liters*."

3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

- "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only six gallons, and *six and a half bushels* of seed will yield only twenty quarts."

4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

- "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only *one bath (six gallons)*, and *one homer (six and a half bushels)* of seed will yield only *an ephah (twenty quarts)*."

5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULB measurements in footnotes.

- "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only twenty-two liters¹, and 220 liters² of seed will yield only twenty-two liters²." The footnotes would look like:

- ^[1]one bath
- ^[2]one home
- ^[3]one ephah

When the unit of measure is implied

Sometimes the Hebrew does not specify a particular unit of volume but only uses a number. In these cases, many English versions, including the ULB and UDB, add the word “measure.”

- **whenever anyone came to the grainery for *twenty measures* of grain, there were only *ten*, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out *fifty measures* of wine, there were only *twenty*.** (Haggai 2:16 ULB)

Translation Strategies

1. Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
2. Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount.”
3. Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.
4. Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Haggai 2:16 below.

- **whenever anyone came to the grainery for *twenty measures* of grain, there were only *ten*, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out *fifty measures* of wine, there were only *twenty*.** (Haggai 2:16 ULB)

1. Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
 - “whenever anyone came to the grainery for *twenty* of grain, there were only *ten*, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out *fifty* of wine, there were only *twenty*.”
2. Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount.”
 - “whenever anyone came to the grainery for *twenty amounts* of grain, there were only *ten*, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out *fifty amounts* of wine, there were only *twenty*.”
3. Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.
 - “whenever anyone came to the grainery for *twenty baskets* of grain, there were only *ten*, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out *fifty jars* of wine, there were only *twenty*.”
4. Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

- "whenever anyone came to the grainery for *twenty liters* of grain, there were only *ten liters*, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out *fifty liters* of wine, there were only *twenty liters*."

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Fractions*
- *Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit*

Biblical Weight

This answers the question: How can I translate the values of weight in the Bible?

Description

The following terms are the most common units of weight in the Bible. The term “shekel” means “weight” and many other weights are described in terms of the shekel. Some of these weights were used for money. The exact weights are uncertain, but the approximate amounts are:

Original Measure	Shekels	Grams	Kilograms
shekel	1 shekel	11 grams	-
bekah	1/2 shekel	5.7 grams	-
pim	2/3 shekel	7.6 grams	-
gerah	1/20 shekel	-	0.57 kilograms
mina	50 shekels	570 grams	0.57 kilograms
talent	3,000 shekels	-	34 kilograms

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.

Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 38:29 below.

- **The bronze from the offering weighed *seventy talents and 2,400 shekels*.** (Exodus 38:29 ULB)

1. Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

- "The bronze from the offering weighed *seventy talents and 2,400 sekels*."

2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

- "The bronze from the offering weighed *2,400 kilograms*."

3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

- "The bronze from the offering weighed *5,300 pounds*"

4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a footnote. The following shows both measurements in the text.

- "The bronze from the offering weighed *seventy talents (2,380 kilograms) and 2,400 shekels (26.4 kilograms)*."

5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a footnote. The following shows the ULB measurements in notes.

- "The bronze from the offering weighed *seventy talents and 2,400 shekels*.¹" The footnote would look like:
 - ^[1] This was a total of about 2,400 kilograms.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- [Decimal Numbers](#)
- [Fractions](#)

Hebrew Months

This page answers the question: What are the Hebrew months?

In order to understand this page, it would be good to read

- [Ordinal Numbers](#)

Description

The Hebrew calendar used in the Bible has twelve months. Unlike the western calendar, its first month begins in the spring of the northern hemisphere. Sometimes a month is called by its name (Abib, Ziv, Sivan), and sometimes it is called by its order in the Hebrew calendar year (first month, second month, third month).

Reasons this is a translation issue

1. Readers may be surprised to read of months that they have never heard of, and they may wonder how those months correspond to the months they use.
2. Readers may not realize that phrases such as “the first month” or “the second month” refer to the first or second month of the Hebrew calendar, not some other calendar.
3. Readers may not know when the first month of the Hebrew calendar begins.
4. The scripture may tell about something happening in a certain month, but readers will not be able to fully understand what is said about it if they do not know what season of the year that was.

List of Hebrew Months

This is a list of the Hebrew months with information about them that may be helpful in the translation.

Abib - (This month is called **Nisan** after the Babylonian exile) - This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It marks when God brought the people of Israel out of Egypt. It is at the beginning of the spring season when the late rains come and people begin to harvest their crops. It is during the last part of March and the first part April on western calendars. The Passover celebration started on Abib 10, the Festival of Unleavened Bread was right after that, and the Festival of Harvest was a few weeks after that.

Ziv - This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the harvest season. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on western calendars.

Sivan - This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the harvest season and the beginning of the dry season. It is during the last part of May and the first part of June on western calendars. The Feast of Weeks is celebrated on Sivan 6.

Tammuz - This is the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of June and the first part of July on western calendars.

Ab - This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of July and the first part of August on western calendars.

Elul - This is the sixth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the dry season and the beginning of the rainy season. It is during the last part of August and the first part of September on western calendars.

Ethanim - This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the early rain season which would soften the land for sowing. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on western calendars. The Feast of Ingathering and the Day of Atonement are celebrated in this month.

Bul - This is the eighth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the rainy season when people plough their fields and sow seed. It is during the last part of October and the first part of November on western calendars.

Kislev - This is the ninth month of the Hebrew calendar. This is at the end of the sowing season and the beginning of the cold season. It is during the last part of November and the first part of December on western calendars.

Tebeth - This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the cold season when there may be rain and snow. It is during the last part of December and the first part of January on western calendars.

Shebat - This is the eleventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is the coldest month of the year, and it has heavy rain fall. It is during the last part of January and the first part of February on western calendars.

Adar - This is the twelfth and last month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the cold season. It is during the last part of February and the first part of March on western calendars. The feast called Purim is celebrated in Adar.

Examples from the Bible

You are going out of Egypt on this day, in *the month of Abib*. (Exodus 13:4 ULB)

You must eat unleavened bread from twilight of the fourteenth day *in the first month of the year*, until twilight of the twenty-first day of the month. (Exodus 12:18 ULB)

Translation Strategies

You may need to make some information about the months explicit. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

1. Tell the the number of the Hebrew month.
2. Use the months that people know.
3. State clearly what season the month occurred in.
4. Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month. (If possible, use a footnote to show the Hebrew month and day.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The examples below use these two verses.

- **At that time, you will appear before me in *the month of Abib*, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.** (Exodus 23:15 ULB)
- **It will always be a statute for you that in *the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month*, you must humble yourselves and do no work** (Leviticus 16:29 ULB)

1. Tell the number of the Hebrew month.

- "At that time, you will appear before me in *the first month of the year*, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt."

2. Use the months that people know.

- "At that time, you will appear before me in *the month of March*, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt."
- "It will always be a statute for you that *on the day I choose in late September* you must humble yourselves and do no work"

3. State clearly what season the month occurred.

- "It will always be a statute for you that *in the autumn, on the tenth day of the seventh month*, you must humble yourselves and do no work"

4. Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month.

- "It will always be a statute for you that in *the day I choose in early autumn* you must humble yourselves and do no work"

How to Translate Names

This answers the question: How can I translate names that are new to my culture?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Translate Unknowns*

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. All names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this *Melchizedek*, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1ULB)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” simply to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” simply to tell us something about Melchizedek.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace. (Hebrews 7:2 ULB)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples from the Bible

You went over the *Jordan* and came to *Jericho*. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the *Amorites* (Joshua 24:11 ULB)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Beerlahairoi*; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the the Living One who sees me.”

She named him *Moses* and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULB)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name *Moses* sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out.”

Saul was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULB)

It came about in Iconium that *Paul* and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULB)

Readers may not know that the names *Saul* and *Paul* refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name all of the time and write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that explains who or what the name refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

- **You went over the *Jordan* and came to *Jericho*. The leaders of *Jericho* fought against you, along with the *Amorites*** (Joshua 24:11 ULB)
 - “You went over the *Jordan River* and came to the city of *Jericho*. The leaders of *Jericho* fought against you, along with *the tribe of the Amorites*”
- **Shortly after, some *Pharisees* came and said to him, “Go and leave here because *Herod* wants to kill you.”** (Luke 13:31 ULB)

- “Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because *King Herod* wants to kill you.”

2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

- **She named him *Moses* and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”** (Exodus 2:11 ULB)
 - “She named him *Moses*, which sounds like ‘drawn out,’ and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”

3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name.

- **she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Beerlahairoi*;** (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)
 - “she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Well of the One who sees me*;

4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text talks about that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.

For example, Paul is called “Saul” before Acts 13 and “Paul” after Acts 13. You could translate his name as “Paul” all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

- **a young man named *Saul*** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
 - “a young man named *Paul*”¹ The footnote would look like:
 - ◇ ^[1]Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.

- **But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9 ULB)
 - “But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;”

5. Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that explains who or what the name refers to.

For example, you could write “Saul” where the source text has “Saul” and “Paul” where the source text has “Paul.”

- **a young man named *Saul*** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
 - “a young man named *Saul*”
- **But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9 ULB) *
 “But __Saul__, who is also called __Paul__, was filled with the Holy Spirit;” * **It came about in Iconium that __Paul__ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue**
 ([[en:bible:notes:act:14:01 | Acts 14:1 ULB)

- "It came about in Iconium that *Paul*¹ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue"
(Acts 14:1 ULB) The footnote would look like:
 - ◇ ^[1]This is the man that was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Copy or Borrow Words*

Numbers

This answers the question: How do I translate numbers?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Translate Unknowns*

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words, such as “five” or as numerals, such as “5”. Some numbers are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), “twenty-two thousand” (22,000) or “one hundred million” (100,000,000.) Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. Some are small, such as “five” (5) and “fifteen” (15). Others are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), twenty-two thousand (22,000) or “one hundred million” (100,000,000). Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

Abram was *eighty-six* years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULB)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

That day about *three thousand* men out of the people died. (Exodus 32:28 ULB)

Here the number three thousand is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number.

Reason this is a translation issue: Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

Examples from the Bible

When Jared had lived *162* years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived *eight hundred* years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived *962* years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULB)

The numbers 162, eight hundred, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

Our sister, may you be the mother of *thousands of ten thousands*. (Genesis 24:60 ULB)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

Translation Strategies

1. Write numbers using numerals.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- **Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, one million talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.** (1 Chronicles 22:14 ULB)

1. Write numbers using numerals.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, one 1,000,000 talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities."

2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *one hundred thousand* talents of gold, *one million* talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. "

3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *one hundred thousand (100,000)* talents of gold, *one million (1,000,000)* talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

4. Combine words for large numbers.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *one hundred thousand* talents of gold, *a thousand thousand* talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents),* and bronze and iron in large quantities.

Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

Consistency in the ULB and UDB

The ULB (Unlocked Literal Bible) and the UDB (Unlocked Dynamic Bible) use words for numbers that have only one or two words (nine, sixteen, three hundred). They use numerals for numbers that have more than two words (the numerals “130” instead of “one hundred thirty”).

When Adam had lived *130* years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived *eight hundred* years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived *930* years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULB)

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Ordinal Numbers*
- *Fractions*

Ordinal Numbers

This answers the question: What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Numbers*

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

He gave to the church *first* apostles, *second* prophets, *third* teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULB)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

He gave to the church *first* apostles, *second* prophets, *third* teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULB)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have “-th” added to the end.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
4	four	fourth
10	ten	tenth
100	one hundred	one hundredth
1,000	one thousand	one thousandth

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
1	one	first
2	two	second
3	three	third
5	five	fifth
12	twelve	twelfth

Reason this is a translation issue: Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the

order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

Examples from the Bible

The *first* lot went to Jehoiarib, the *second* to Jedaiah, the *third* to Harim, the *fourth* to Seorim, ... the *twenty-third* to Delaiah, and the *twenty-fourth* to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)

People tossed lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The *first* row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The *second* row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The *third* row must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The *fourth* row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULB)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably be the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

1. Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.

- **The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)
 - ”There were *twenty-four* lots. *One lot* went to Jehoiarib, *another* to Jedaiah, *another* to Harim,... *another* to Delaiah, *and the last* went to Maaziah.”
 - ”There were *twenty-four* lots. *One lot* went to Jehoiarib, *the next* to Jedaiah, *the next* to Harim,... *the next* to Delaiah, *and the last* went to Maaziah.”
- **A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became *four* rivers. The name of *the first* is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of *the second* river is Gihon. This one flows**

throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of *the third* river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. *The fourth* river is the Euphrates.(Genesis 2:10-14 ULB)

- "A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became *four* rivers. The name of *one* is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of *the next* river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of *the next* river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The *last* river is the Euphrates."

2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

- **The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)

- "They cast *twenty-four* lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim, ... Delaiah, and Maaziah."

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Fractions*

Translate Unknowns

This answers the question: *How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Sentences*

How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?

Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The translationWords pages and the translationNotes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

We have here only five loaves of *bread* and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULB)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread or know what it is.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

Examples from the Bible

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *jackals* (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous *wolves*. (Matthew 7:15 ULB)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *myrrh*. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULB)

People may not know what *myrrh* is and that it was used as a medicine.

to him who made *great lights* (Psalm 136:7ULB)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

your sins ... will be white like *snow* (Isaiah 1:18 ULB)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes the part of the meaning that is important in the particular verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use a phrase that describes the part of the meaning that is important in the particular verse being translated.

- **Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly *ravenous wolves*.** (Matthew 7:15 ULB)
 - "Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but *are truly hungry and dangerous animals*."
- **We have here only five *loaves of bread* and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
 - "We have here only five *loaves of baked grain seeds* and two fish"

2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

- **your sins ... will be white like snow** (Isaiah 1:18 ULB) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.
 - "your sins ... will be white like *milk*"
 - "your sins ... will be white like *the moon*"

3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

- **Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with myrrh. But he refused to drink it.** (Mark 15:23 ULB) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word "medicine."
 - "Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *a medicine called myrrh*. But he refused to drink it."
- **We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).
 - "We have here only five loaves of *baked crushed seed bread* and two fish"

4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.

- **I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)
 - "I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *wild dogs*"
- **We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
 - "We have here only five *loaves of baked food* and two fish"

5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

- **to him who made great lights** (Psalm 136:7 ULB)
 - "to him who made *the sun and the moon*"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Copy or Borrow Words*
- *How to Translate Names*